

# ANSWERS

by Keith Piper

**A Series of Follow Up Bible Studies  
On Life's Key Questions**

## **FALSE RELIGIONS**



**Are you “ABLE TO TEACH OTHERS ALSO”?**

“And the things that thou hast heard of me  
among many witnesses,  
the same commit thou to faithful men,  
who shall be able to teach others also.” II Timothy 2:2

Website: [www.keithpiper.org](http://www.keithpiper.org)

## False Religions

110.	<b>Roman Catholic Church</b> .....	707
111.	<b>Seventh Day Adventism:</b> Errors of SDAs .....	735
112.	Why it is Right for Christians to Meet on Sunday, not Saturday.....	737
113.	Seventh Day Adventism Refuted .....	745
114.	<b>Mormonism:</b> Errors of Mormonism.....	793
115.	120 OT Passages Referring to Jehovah, Quoted and Applied to Christ in the NT ....	811
116.	What You Will Not Be Told At the Door by Jehovah's Witnesses .....	821
117.	<b>Jehovah's Witnesses</b> and the Watchtower .....	822
118.	<b>Judaism:</b> 10 Proofs that Jesus Christ is the Messiah .....	948
119.	<b>Islam:</b> Jesus Greater than Mohammed.....	951
120.	Main <u>Quotes</u> in the Koran .....	953
121.	Main <u>Topics</u> in the Koran .....	973
122.	Why Nobody should Become a Muslim .....	993
123.	Islam—A Case of Mistaken Identity .....	994

## **110. THE ROMAN CATHOLIC CHURCH**

The Roman Catholic Church believes many false doctrines that are contrary to the Bible, and were unknown to the early Church, such as:

1. Human Tradition is Elevated to or above the Word of God. 1545 AD.
2. Wrong Gospel, Wrong Message of Salvation.
3. Confession of Sins to a Priest to Obtain Absolution of Sins.
4. Penance.
5. Priests.
6. Celibacy of Priests and Nuns. 1079 AD.
7. Confirmation.
8. Extreme Unction. 526 AD.
9. Infant Baptism. 370 AD.
10. Transubstantiation. 1215 AD.
11. Adoration of the Host (wafer bread). 1220 AD
12. The Mass. 394 AD.
13. Other Mediators Between God and Man.
14. Prayers to Saints. 375 AD.
15. Purgatory. 593 AD.
16. Papal Infallibility. 1870 AD.
17. Indulgences. 1190 AD.
18. Idolatry = Making Images. 786 AD.
19. Mary Veneration. 431 AD.
20. Catholic Attitudes to the Bible. 1229 AD.
21. Peter as the Rock.
22. 15 Apocrypha Books Added to the Old Testament Bible. 1546 AD.
23. Names of Blasphemy. 350 AD.
24. Rosary Prayer Beads. 1090 AD.
25. Low Moral Standards.
26. Devotion to the Sacred Heart of Jesus and Mary.
27. Crossing Oneself. 300 AD.
28. Was Peter the First Pope?
29. Roman Catholic Lies, Immorality, Corruption.
30. The Inquisition, Torture, Massacres, Murders, Wars. 1184 AD.
31. 15 Evidences that the Roman Catholic Church is Mystery Babylon the Great, the Whore of Revelation 17.
32. Who gave us the Bible? God or the Roman Catholic Church?
33. They turn people away from Christ to honour twelve other things.

### **Conclusion.**

The Roman Catholic Church has developed many doctrines which cannot be remotely proven from the Bible. For example, the Assumption of Mary is not in the Bible.

**Question:** Did God leave important teachings out of the Bible? Is God forgetful?

The Roman Catholic Church cannot clearly and easily show its history before 320 AD, when the Roman Emperor Constantine professed conversion, amalgamated pagans and Christians, and declared himself to be the head or pontif of the Universal (Catholic) Church.

The early Church never had many of the doctrines that the Roman Catholic Church now has. Isaiah 8:20 says: "If they speak not according to this Word, it is because there is no light in them."

**Question: What are some errors of the Roman Catholic Church?**

## **ERROR 1: HUMAN TRADITION** is elevated to or above the Word of God.

"Beware lest any man spoil you through philosophy or vain deceit, after the **tradition of man**, .... and not after Christ." Colossians 2:8.

Jesus charged the Pharisees for exalting tradition above the Word of God in the same way that the Roman Catholic Church does:

1. "Why do ye also **transgress the commandment of God** by your tradition?" Matthew 15:3.
2. "Ye made the **commandment of God** of **none effect** by your tradition. Ye hypocrites." Matt 15:6,7
3. "In vain they do worship me, **teaching for doctrines** the commandments of men." Matthew 15:9.
4. "Let them alone: they be **blind leaders** of the blind." Matthew 15:3,6,7,9,14.

I challenge Catholics to test their doctrines by God's Word.

The Church does not give birth to the Word of God, but the **Word of God gives birth** to the **Church**.

"Of his own will **begat he us** with the **word of truth**." James 1:18; 1 Peter 1:23.

The Word of God saves us, and we become part of a local Church. This has always been the case.

"He that rejecteth me, and receiveth not my words, hath one that judgeth him: the **word** that I have spoken, the same shall judge him in the last day." John 12:48.

Roman Catholicism quotes Church traditions as the authority as to why they add unbiblical doctrines.

## **ERROR 2: WRONG GOSPEL**, wrong message of salvation.

Roman Catholics, since childhood are taught that to get to heaven one must keep the **sacraments**, the **mass**, and **do good works**. This is different from the Bible's definition of the Gospel.

**Question:** What is the Gospel?

**Answer:** "I declare unto you the **Gospel** ... how that **Christ died for our sins** ... that he was **buried**, and that he rose again the **third** day, according to the scriptures." 1 Corinthians 15:1-4.

The Gospel message saves us: "I am not ashamed of the **Gospel** of Christ, for it is the **power** of God unto **salvation**, to every one that **believeth**." Romans 1:16.

Therefore the Gospel is this: Christ died for our sins, was buried and rose again. We are saved when we believe this message, receiving Christ as our Saviour. This means that we must trust Christ's blood sacrifice on the cross as being the full payment for all our sins.

Paul strongly warns against preaching or believing "another Gospel" in Galatians 1:6-9.

"So say I now again, If any man preach **any other gospel** unto you than that ye have received, LET HIM BE ACCURSED." Galatians 1:9.

**Question:** What is this OTHER FALSE Gospel?

**Answer:** Any idea that we can **earn salvation** by **our good works**.

1. "Knowing that a man is **NOT** justified by the **WORKS** of the law, but by the **FAITH** of Jesus Christ,
2. Even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the **FAITH** of Christ, and **NOT by the WORKS** of the LAW:
3. For by the **WORKS** of the law shall NO FLESH be justified." Galatians 2:16.

Note that **three** times we are told that we are not saved by keeping the **WORKS** of the law.

Other verses that say the same thing are as follows: Ephesians 2:8,9,10. Galatians 3:2,10,11,26; 5:4; Philippians 3:9; Romans 3:20,28; 4:5; 11:6; Titus 3:5.

The Bible says that NO AMOUNT of good works can save us.

Several problems exist for those who trust their works to save them:

1. They **never know if they've done enough good works** to make it into heaven. They never know for sure if they are going to heaven. The pope doesn't know for sure. So how can he help you to become sure of eternal life.
2. They are saying that Christ's death on the cross was **not good enough** to save them and it was a **waste of time**. "If righteousness come by the law, then Christ is dead in vain." Galatians 2:21.
3. They are **rejecting Christ** from being their Saviour.
4. They are grouping themselves with **every other false religion** whose one thing in common is trusting their **own works**, or merits, or law-keeping to get them into heaven.

Ephesians 2:8-10 states that we are not saved by our works, but that after we have received Christ as our Saviour, we will show good works. Paul says:

"Not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ." Philippians 3:9.

To teach the all-sufficiency of the saving work of Christ would undermine the entire structure of Catholicism. People are told that if they leave the Roman Catholic Church, they'll surely go to hell. People are kept in bondage of fear of missing salvation if they leave the Roman Catholic Church.

The Catholic "gospel" leaves Christ out. It teaches people that if they perform well enough such things as: attending mass, partaking of sacraments, praying to Mary (saying the "Hail Mary"), confessing sins to a priest, doing good works etc, they may eventually pass through the fires of purgatory after hundreds of years to then enter heaven.

Do you have real salvation in Christ, or are you trusting in keeping Catholic Church rules to save you? Many times I have asked Catholics how they were saved. They reply "That's personal, I don't need to tell you." I say: "Then that proves that you are not saved and that if you died now, you would surely go to hell, because Romans 10:11 says "Whosoever believeth on him **SHALL NOT BE ASHAMED**." If you were really saved you would be happy to tell me how Jesus saved you.

### **ERROR 3: CONFESSON OF SINS to a priest to obtain absolution of sins.**

Catholic Canon law 870 and 888 state that a priest has power to forgive sins, and confession to a priest at least once a year is necessary unto salvation.

Early church writers such as Chrysostom (350AD), and Basil (350AD) wrote strongly in favour of confessing sins to God only.

The Bible gives these examples of confessing sins to God only:

1. When Simon of Samaria sinned after being baptized, he was told to pray to God for forgiveness. Acts 8:22.
2. The apostles never heard confessions, but said in Acts 10:43 that: "through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins."
3. Peter never forgave the sins of Cornelius. Acts 10:44-48.
4. Paul never forgave the sins of the Philippian jailer. Acts 16:30-34.
5. Only God can forgive sins. "Who can forgive sins but God only." Mark 2:5-11.
6. When Peter sinned by denying Christ, he confessed to God and was forgiven. When Judas sinned by betraying Christ, he confessed to some priests and then committed suicide. Matthew 27:3-5.

**Question:** What about James 5:16 "Confess your faults one to another, and pray one for another that ye may be healed."

**Answer:** This confession contributes to restoration of health, because the sickness has come on the patient as a punishment for some sins that he committed.

See 1 Corinthians 11:29-31. If we are sick, and are conscious that we have hurt any person, we should make confession to them. The reason is "that ye may be healed." This verse in no way proves that if we confess our sins to a priest, that the priest has power to declare such sins to be forgiven because:

1. This confession is not to be made by a person in health to obtain salvation, but by a **sick person** that he may be healed.
2. This verse commands **mutual confession**, meaning that the priest should also confess his sins to the people, "one to another."
3. No mention is made of confession to a priest, or any minister of religion.
4. This confession is for faults where **one has injured another**. Nothing is said about confessing sins to those we have not injured such as a priest.
5. There is **no mention here of absolution**, by a priest or by any person.
6. Only **He (God) whose law has been violated** can pardon or forgive an offence. No third person can forgive a sin between two people.
7. Catholic "auricular confession" is so evil because:
  - it gives so much **power** to the priesthood to suppose that they can absolve sins.

- it **pollutes the mind** by keeping impure thoughts in the mind long enough to make confession and to state them in words.
- it gives a man **such power over a female** to suppose that it is required by religion that all sins passing in her mind should be disclosed to him. The very things that a seducer would like to know are the thoughts of his intended victim. Virtue would be safe nowhere. This practice has greatly corrupted community morals as seen by so many Catholic priests being sued for sexual abuse of women and children.

**Question:** But doesn't John 20:23 say that a priest has power to forgive sins, "Whosoever sins ye remit, they are remitted unto them; and whosoever sins ye retain, they are retained?"

**Answer:** The meaning is, not that man can forgive sins (because only God can), but that they were to declare on **what terms** and **conditions**, to **what characters**, and to **what attitude of mind**, God would forgive sins.

God was saying that people might have assurance of forgiveness who would comply with those terms. Those who did not comply should not be forgiven, and their sins should be retained.

Jesus here is giving the apostles (and by extension all Christians) the privilege of announcing heaven's **terms on how a person can receive forgiveness of sins**. If a person believes in Jesus Christ, then a Christian has the right to announce his **forgiveness**. If a person rejects Jesus Christ's blood sacrifice on the cross as the full payment for his sins, then a Christian can announce that persons sins are **not forgiven**.

Jesus Christ is the **only** mediator between God and man, not a priest, not Mary and not the saints. "There is one God, and **one mediator** between God and man, the man Christ Jesus." 1 Timothy 2:5.

#### **ERROR 4: PENANCE.**

Catholicism believes that a priest has the power to forgive or retain sins and **impose penance** as a means of **testing** the genuineness of the person's confession, and of making a **satisfaction** to God for that sin.

**Answer:** "Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ and thou shalt be saved." Acts 16:31.

"If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness." 1 John 1:9.

We only confess our sins to God. No mention is made of penance here or anywhere. No good works that we do by penance will ever satisfy God, but sinners can be accepted and forgiven only on the ground of Christ's sacrifice, through which alone the justice and wrath of God against sin have been satisfied. Romans 3:24-28.

**He** is the propitiation for our sins ..." 1 John 2:2.

Penance is performing outward acts such as repeating prayers, like the "Hail Mary" or the "Rosary", as a payment for sin and to satisfy God. Roman Catholicism bases penance on Ezekiel 18:30, Luke 13:5 and Acts 2:38 where they incorrectly translate "repentance" (metanoeo = to turn, repent, to change one's mind) as "penance".

#### **ERROR 5: PRIESTS.**

A Roman Catholic priest is one who acts in the place of Christ, supposedly making unbelievers into Christians by "baptizing" them. He claims to convert the bread into Christ's flesh in the mass, and he claims to forgive sins in the confessional.

In the Bible, all ministers are called elders, bishops or pastors, all referring to the one office, but there is no office of "priest". Christ is our Great High Priest, the only mediator between God and man (1 Timothy 2:5), so there is no need for other priests to mediate for us. **Peter never** called himself a priest, but did call himself a "**fellow elder**". 1 Peter 5:1.

In **Acts**, there is no reference anywhere to a sacrificing priesthood. In Revelation 1:6 ("hath made us kings and priests unto God"), and in 1 Peter 2:5,9 ("ye are a holy priesthood", "ye are a royal priesthood"), **all believers are priests** and have **direct access to God** through Christ. We don't offer an atoning sacrifice because only Christ did this on the cross. The only sacrifices we offer to God are **prayers** (Ephesians 6:18), **praise** and **money** (Hebrews 13:15,16), and **ourselves** in service to God

(Romans 12:1) This Biblical truth of the **priesthood of all believers** was rediscovered in the Protestant Reformation of the 1500's. A pastor's real job is to preach the gospel, teach the Word of God and pray, not to hear confession, or change bread to flesh etc. Peter in 1 Peter 5, when he instructed fellow preachers, made no mention of any Roman Catholic priest's practices of today.

## **ERROR 6: CELIBACY of priests and nuns.**

Forbidding priests and nuns to marry was introduced in 1079 and has led to much immorality.

What does the Bible say?

1. "A **Bishop** must be blameless, the **husband** of **one wife**." 1 Timothy 3:2.
2. "Have we not power to lead about a sister, a **wife**, as well as other apostles, and **Cephas**?" 1 Corinthians 9:5.
3. Peter was married, because Jesus healed his mother in law. Matthew 8:14; Luke 4:38.
4. "It is not good that the man should be alone." Genesis 2:18.
5. "To avoid fornication, let **EVERY** man have his own wife, and let **EVERY** woman have her own husband." 1 Corinthians 7:2.
6. a) "Now the Spirit speaketh expressly, that in the latter times some shall **depart from the faith**,  
b) giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of devils;  
c) Speaking lies in hypocrisy;  
d) having their conscience seared with a hot iron;  
e) **FORBIDDING TO MARRY**, and commanding to abstain from meats." 1 Timothy 4:1-3.

Here God describes the Catholic Church's forbidding priests and nuns from marrying.

The Catholic church, in support of celibacy quotes Matthew 19:11,12 and 1 Corinthians 7:8,32-34.

These passages say it is **permissible to be** celibate if one so chooses, but it is **never to be commanded**. Priestly celibacy has caused so much sexual immorality between priests, women and boys, as priests sexually proposition women for fornication and boys for homosexual relations.

## **ERROR 7: CONFIRMATION.**

Catholic Confirmation is supposed to be the conferring of the Holy Spirit by the laying on of hands. One false doctrine leads to another false doctrine. The false unbiblical doctrines of infant sprinkling and salvation by works lead to the false doctrine of Confirmation.

Confirmation of children is not in the Bible. Check it yourself. Laying on of hands is used to set apart men for a ministry:

1. "When they had prayed, they laid their hands on them." (7 men of honest report). Acts 6:6.
2. "When they had fasted and prayed and laid their hands on them, they sent them away." Acts 13:3.  
They laid hands on Paul and Barnabas as they sent them on their first missionary journey.
3. "Lay hands suddenly on no man." 1 Timothy 5:22. Don't ordain pastors suddenly.
4. "Neglect not the gift that is in thee, which was given thee by prophecy, with the laying on of the hands of the presbytery." 1 Timothy 4:14.
5. "doctrine of baptisms, and of laying on of hands ..." Hebrews 6:2.

Nowhere in the New Testament does a preacher lay hands on 8 year old children, who are unsaved.

## **ERROR 8: EXTREME UNCTION.**

This sacrament states that "At the end of life, sin can be totally undone and man is prepared for immediate entrance into everlasting glory." This idea is found NOWHERE in the Bible. This will not get a dying person into heaven. His only hope is to receive Jesus Christ as his own Saviour, trusting Christ's blood sacrifice on the cross as the full payment for all his sin.

Mark 6:13 is the Catholic defence for this error, yet this verse says nothing about dying people, but only about demonized and sick people being healed. When Pope Pius XII died in 1958, his personal physician was dismissed for telling of his frightful and terrifying fear of death and hell.

**Question:** Since the Pope isn't sure of heaven, how can he help Catholics get to heaven?

**Answer:** Keeping the sacraments is a net that traps Catholics into believing that they will get to heaven by good works. The sacrament system enslaves a person's mind to the Roman Catholic church from the cradle to the grave.

Nobody was ever saved in the Bible by keeping the sacraments. **Catholic children** are trapped into the sacrament system around age seven or eight years old, when they have neither the knowledge of the Bible nor the maturity to test it with the Word of God.

**Question:** How can Catholics escape the trap of the sacraments?

**Answer:** By calling on Jesus Christ to be their only Saviour and by basing their life on the Bible.

#### **ERROR 9: INFANT "BAPTISM" (370 AD).**

The Catholic infant "baptism" is NOT Bible baptism because:

1. Baptism in the New Testament Greek means "**immerse**, dip, fully whelm" as one may check in Strong's Concordance dictionary. "Baptizo" in Greek means "immerse"; "Rhantizo" (4472) in Greek means "sprinkle." Catholic sprinkling is not Biblical immersion.
2. **No baby** was ever sprinkled in the Bible. Check it.

**Question:** "What doth hinder me to be baptized?"

**Answer:** "If you believe with all your heart you may. I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God."

Acts 8:36,37. **Question: How can a baby believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God?**

3. Baptism means nothing unless a person has received Jesus Christ as their Saviour. It is always **saved first, then baptized**. Never does anyone get baptized in order to be saved. "Baptism is the answer of a good conscience towards God." 1 Peter 3:21.

**Question:** How can a baby show a good conscience towards God?

**Answer:** He can't. Baptism is something that each person must decide to do himself to publicly show that he is trusting Christ's death to pay for his sins, burial of the old lifestyle, and resurrection with Christ to a new way of life. Romans 6:1-5. Sprinkling does not picture Christ's death, burial and resurrection.

4. Baptism **does not save a person**, as the Catholic church claims. Only Christ's blood can cleanse us from sin. If we were saved by baptism, then Christ's death was a waste of time. Galatians 2:21.
5. **The repentant thief** on the cross was not sprinkled by water, yet he was saved by trusting Christ alone to save Him, not his good works. "... we receive the due reward of our deeds: ...Lord, remember me when thou comest into thy kingdom." Jesus said unto him, "Verily I say unto thee, today shalt thou be with me in paradise." Luke 23:41-43.

Notice that he was promised eternal life, being unable to lose it. The Catholic Church says that you can't be sure of eternal life and that you can lose it.

6. **Ananias** who was not a Catholic priest, but just a layman, baptized Paul (Acts 9:17-19). This shows that baptism by a non-Catholic is valid.

7. **Children** under the age of accountability go to heaven at death.

"children ... of such is the kingdom of heaven." Matthew 18:1-10; Matthew 19:14.

"I (David) shall **go to him**, but he shall not return to me." 2 Samuel 12:22, 23.

**Question:** Doesn't John 3:5 say "Except a man be born of water, and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God?"

**Answer:** It does not say "born of water baptism", but "born of water." What is meant by water? It is the water of the Word of God, because the Word of God produces conviction of sin and shows a person's need of Christ.

Paul says "With the washing of **water** by the **word**." Ephesians 5:26.

Peter says: "being **born again**, ... by the **Word of God**." 1 Peter 1:23.

James says: "of his own will **begat** he us with the **Word** of truth." James 1:18.

Peter says: "Can any man forbid water, that these should not be baptized, which **have** received the Holy Ghost ...?" Acts 10:47.

Cornelius' household here were saved before being baptized, thus proving that baptism does NOT save.

Salvation is appropriated only by calling on Christ to save us. Romans 10:13.

## **ERROR 10: TRANSUBSTANTIATION (1215 AD).**

Definition: The whole substance of the bread and wine is converted into the **actual and real entire body and blood of Christ.**

Answer: Radbertus first invented this doctrine in the 9th century. Catholics support this by a **literal view** of Matthew 26:26-29. "Take eat; this is my body. For this is my blood of the new testament which is shed for many for the remission of sins."

Consider these reasons why the bread and wine were **symbols** of Christ's body and blood, to be partaken in for **remembrance** purposes only, and that there was **no material conversion** of the bread to the body, nor of the wine to the blood of Christ.

1. Jesus, after saying "this is my blood" in Matthew 26:28 also said "I will not drink henceforth of this **FRUIT OF THIS VINE**" in Matthew 26:29, showing that the **grapejuice** was **STILL WINE** and had not been changed to blood.

2. Jesus often referred to Himself in symbols. So why see Him as literal in a symbolic context?

John 10:7 "I am the door." Did Jesus mean he was literally wooden? No.

John 14:6 "I am the way." Did Jesus mean he was literally a road? No.

John 15:5 "I am the vine." Did Jesus mean he was literally a tree? No.

John 8:12 "I am the light." Did Jesus mean he was literally a torch or a sun? No.

John 6:48 "I am the bread of life." Did Jesus mean he was literally a loaf of dough? No.

John 6:63 states clearly that Jesus was **speaking spiritually**, not literally:

"The **words** that I speak unto you, they are **spirit** and they are life."

Luke 22:19 states clearly that the Lord's supper is for **remembrance** purposes: "This do in **remembrance** of me." This is a **metaphor**, where one thing is said to be another thing because of its similarity. A metaphor is a figurative use of terms without indicating their figurative nature, for example, "he shall eat his words".

3. The bread and wine did not become Christ's body and blood because:

a) Christ was still present with them. Christ would have had **2 bodies**, one which died on the cross and one which did not.

b) To drink blood was forbidden in Acts 15:20,29 "We write unto them, that they abstain from pollutions of idols, and from fornication, and from things strangled, and from BLOOD."

In Deuteronomy 12:16 "Only ye shall **not eat the blood.**"

4. The tense of the Greek verbs "EAT" in John 6:50,51,52,53,54,56,57,58 is in the **AORIST** tense showing a **ONCE-FOR-ALL**, point action, that is NOT CONTINUAL. The Biblical Lord's supper is to be a repeated event, and therefore has no saving merit. Roman Catholics are commanded to believe in transubstantiation because it was stated at the Council of Trent (11 October 1551) that this doctrine was essential for salvation. They pronounced curses on anyone who would deny it.

Paul the Apostle, in contrast, pronounced a double curse on anyone who preached a gospel different from the all sufficiency of Christ's death, burial and resurrection to save us from our sins. Galatian 1:6-9 puts a **double curse** on this "other gospel" of transubstantiation for salvation.

5. Before Christ ascended to heaven, He promised to come to us during the Church Age, **NOT in the sacrifice of the MASS**, but by the **Holy Spirit** (John 14:16-18 as Comforter): "He shall give you another Comforter ... even the Spirit of truth ... I will not leave you comfortless: **I WILL COME TO YOU.**" Note: Christ will return to earth a second time visibly in glory. This is what is meant by 1 Corinthians 11:26 "For as often as ye eat this bread, and drink this cup, ye do show the Lord's death **TILL HE COME.**"

Note: This means that Christ does **not come literally** and visibly as the **wafer** in the **mass**, but to the **air** as in 1 Thessalonians 4:16,17.

6. At the Council of Constance in 1415 it was agreed to withhold the cup from the congregation lest the wine be spilt. However, this contradicts 1 Corinthians 11:25-29 where **ALL** Corinthian believers drank of the wine: "Whosoever shall eat this bread and **drink this cup** unworthily."

v.27. **Drinking the cup** is mentioned **six times** in five verses.

Transubstantiation is not a mystery, but an **absurdity**; not a difficulty but a **contradiction**.

**Question: How then do we eat his flesh and drink his blood?**

**Answer:** Through the WORD OF GOD.

John 6:63 "The words that I speak unto you, they are spirit, and they are life."

John 1:14 "The Word was made **flesh**."

John 5:24 "He that heareth my Word and believeth on him that sent me, has everlasting life."

The scribes who knew Jeremiah 31:31-34, "I will put my **law** in their inward parts", and

Jeremiah 15:16, "Thy **words** were found and **I DID EAT THEM**; and thy word was unto me the joy and rejoicing of mine heart", understood the idea of receiving God's Word into one's inner being.

Peter got the **message**, while others planned to desert Jesus:

"Thou hast the WORDS of eternal life." John 6:68.

"Being born again ... by the WORD of God." 1 Peter 1:23-25.

Peter knew that Jesus was speaking about the **WORD** of God, and not about literal flesh and blood.

**Question:** If this doctrine of transubstantiation only arose in the 9th century, and if it is so necessary to Roman Catholic salvation, what happened to those who lived before the 9th century not believing this doctrine? Did they all go to hell?

**Question:** What about the thief on the cross who repented and never took the wafer? Did he go to hell? No! Jesus said he went to paradise.

#### **ERROR 11: ADORATION OF THE HOST (Wafer Bread).**

Catholic doctrine requires Catholics to bow down to and worship the wafer bread as God. "There shall arise false prophets...if it were possible they shall **deceive** the very elect...wherefore if they shall say unto you,...behold, he is in the **SECRET CHAMBERS; BELIEVE IT NOT.**" Matthew 24:24,26.

The Catholic priest does and says precisely this. He says that the **bread** is **Christ** and puts the bread into the monstrance, a secret chamber. Christ says, BELIEVE IT NOT!

#### **ERROR 12: THE MASS (instituted in 394 AD).**

**Definition:** At every mass, Christ is sacrificed again.

Catholic doctrine says: "In the mass, no less than on Calvary, Jesus really offers His life to His heavenly Father."

**Question:** Must Christ be continually sacrificed in the mass, or was His blood sacrifice on the cross 100% sufficient to pay for all our sins for ever?

**Answer:** Christ's blood sacrifice on the cross **IS** 100% SUFFICIENT to pay for our sins, because:

1. In John 19:30 Jesus said, "**IT IS FINISHED**", which in the Greek is "Tetelestai" meaning "to make an end, to accomplish, to complete something, not merely to end it, but to bring it to perfection or its intended goal." It means that the whole work of salvation, the purpose for which Christ came into the world, has been accomplished on the cross. Nothing more can be added to it. This is why we cannot save ourselves by our good works, or religious rituals, as it is adding to Christ's finished work on the cross.

The mass says that Christ's death on the cross is not good enough to fully pay for all our sins or to save us. The mass says that we get to God apart from Christ's blood sacrifice on the cross.

The mass says that Christ's blood sacrifice on the cross was a waste of time, as Galatians 2:21 states: "if righteousness come by the law, then Christ is dead in vain."

2. When Christ died, the **veil** in the Jewish temple was **torn** from top to bottom (Matthew 27:51). This veil separated the Holy of Holies from the Holy Place. The Holy of Holies was entered into once a year by the High Priest on the day of atonement (Exodus 26:33).

The tearing of this veil (60 ft high, 30 ft wide, 1 ft thick) was a type of Christ's human body, torn on the cross. This showed that a "new and living way" was opened for all believers into the very presence of God. No other sacrifice and no other priesthood was needed, just Christ's High

Priesthood. <sup>2</sup>Having therefore, brethren, **boldness** to enter into the holiest by the **BLOOD OF JESUS**, by a **NEW AND LIVING way**, which he hath consecrated for us, through the **veil**, that is to say, **HIS FLESH.**" Hebrews 10:19,20.

We can now enter into the holiest presence of God without priestly sacrifices.

3. The New covenant which operates now in the Church Age states: "Their sins and iniquities will I remember no more. Now where remission of these is, there is <sup>3</sup>"**NO MORE OFFERING FOR SIN.**" Hebrews 10:17,18. The Catholic priest "offering Christ weekly," contradicts this clear statement that there is "**NO MORE OFFERING FOR SIN**" needed.
  4. Christ's sacrifice is clearly stated as **ONCE FOR ALL**, not to be repeated. "We are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ <sup>4</sup>**ONCE FOR ALL.**" Hebrews 10:10.  
 "But this man after he had offered <sup>5</sup>**ONE SACRIFICE FOR SINS FOR EVER**, sat down on the right hand of God." Hebrews 10:12.  
 "By <sup>6</sup>**ONE OFFERING** he has perfected **FOREVER** them that are sanctified." Hebrews 10:14.  
 Not just is Christ's sacrifice the one and only sacrifice for sins forever, but **no more offering is needed:** "Now where remission of these is, there is <sup>7</sup>**NO MORE OFFERING FOR SIN.**" Hebrews 10:18.
  - 8."**Nor** yet that he should **OFFER HIMSELF OFTEN...**" <sup>9</sup>For then must he **OFTEN** have suffered since the foundation of the world: but now <sup>10</sup>**ONCE** in the end of the world hath he appeared to **put away sin** by the sacrifice of himself." Hebrews 9:25,26.  
 "So Christ was <sup>11</sup>**ONCE** offered to bear the sins of many." Hebrews 9:28.  
 "For Christ also has <sup>12</sup>**ONCE** suffered for sins, the just for the unjust, that he might **bring us to God.**" 1 Peter 3:18.
  5. Catholic priests performing the "mass resacrifice" is a waste of time and of **no value** in taking away sins. "Who <sup>13</sup>**needs not daily**, as those high priests, to offer up sacrifice first for his own sins, and then for the people's: for this he did <sup>14</sup>**ONCE**, when he offered up himself." Heb. 7:27.  
 "and every **priest** standeth daily ministering and offering oftentimes the same sacrifices, WHICH <sup>15</sup>**CAN NEVER TAKE AWAY SINS.**" Hebrews 10:11.  
 It is only by this **one** sacrifice of Christ on the cross that people can be saved. The continual sacrifice of the mass is not needed and opposes the Bible.
    - a) Notice that there are **15 statements** that clearly teach the 100% sufficiency of Christ's blood sacrifice on the cross.
    - b) Each clearly says that Christ's sacrifice is **ONCE for all.**
    - c) **No more sacrifice** is required.
    - d) Priests sacrifices **can never take away sins.**  
 The mass is a sacrifice without blood. Yet the Bible says that "without the shedding of **blood** there is no remission." (of sin). We do not need to sacrifice Christ again. His sacrifice 2,000 years ago is sufficient.
    - f) Confession is also called "**RECONCILIATION.**"
- Christ alone on the cross "made **reconciliation** for the sins of the people." Hebrews 2:17.  
 "God was in Christ, **reconciling the world unto himself.**" 1 Corinthians 5:19.  
 "when we were enemies, **WE WERE RECONCILED to God by the death of his Son.**" Roman 5:10.  
 "God, who **HAS RECONCILED** us to himself, by **JESUS CHRIST.**" II Corinthians 5:18.  
 "And you, that were sometime alienated and enemies in your mind by wicked works, yet **NOW HATH HE RECONCILED.**" Colossians 1:21.
- Notice that the Biblical reconciliation is:
1. **Past tense.**
  2. **By Jesus Christ**, not by a Catholic priest.
  3. **We already possess reconciliation**, we don't get it at confession.

## **ERROR 13: OTHER MEDIATORS BETWEEN GOD and MAN.**

We have Christ as our Great High Priest who gives us full access to God's throne of grace. We do not need a human priest, nor Mary, nor dead saints to intercede for us. "Seeing then that we HAVE a GREAT HIGH PRIEST....JESUS CHRIST the Son of God....Let us therefore COME BOLDLY unto the throne of grace, that we may obtain mercy and find grace to help in time of need." Hebrews 4:14,16.

The Catholic priest, not only makes Christ's death on the cross a waste of time, but he also takes Christ's place as **intermediary** between **man** and **God**, when he says that you can't be saved unless you come to mass performed by him. They call him "Vicar" meaning "in the place of". "For there is one God, and ONE MEDIATOR between God and man, the man Christ Jesus." 1 Timothy 2:5. Catholicism calls Mary a "Mediatorix".

Jesus is falsely portrayed as being **ANGRY** with people.

Mary is falsely portrayed as being **MERCIFUL**, and as Jesus' mother, is seen as uniquely able to pacify Jesus Christ's supposed anger towards people.

The Bible says that there is **ONE MEDIATOR** who is Jesus Christ and no one else. Jesus Christ is the merciful and faithful High Priest. Because he has suffered earthly temptations, he is well able to comfort us in earthly temptations. Hebrews 2:17,18.

**Question:** Where does it say that Jesus is angry with Christians?

**Answer:** Nowhere. "I will be **merciful** to their unrighteousness." Hebrews 8:12.

## **ERROR 14: PRAYERS TO SAINTS.**

The Bible states that all true believers are "saints".

"To the saints which are at Ephesus." Ephesians 1:1.

"To all the saints in Christ Jesus which are at Philippi." Philippians 1:1.

"Praying to saints" is a Catholic device to stop people from praying to God and turns people away from developing a personal relationship with Jesus Christ.

Again, this false doctrine teaches that dead saints are more approachable and helpful than Jesus Christ.

**Question:** Do you see that a constant theme of Catholicism is to turn people away from Jesus Christ?

It turns people instead to Mary, saints, a wafer, a priest, traditions, popes, etc.

**Why?** What have they got against Jesus Christ? In fact, prayers to saints are:

1. Contrary to the Bible which says "After this manner pray ye: **"Our Father"**". Matthew 6:9.
2. Contacting the dead is forbidden in Deuteronomy 18:10,11.

"There shall not be found among you any one that ... is a necromancer."

A necromancer is one who seeks to contact the dead. Much of what is attributed to saints is false.

For example, St Philomena was proclaimed a saint by Leo XII, and Pope Gregory XVI blessed one of her images. Rome later admitted that she never existed and in 1961 struck her off the list of saints.

3. There is no Bible example of praying to saints, nor is there any Bible example of them having power to answer prayer. We pray to God the Father with Jesus as our only intercessor. Once again, "There is one mediator between God and man, the man Christ Jesus." 1 Timothy 2:5.

## **ERROR 15: PURGATORY.**

Purgatory is an imaginary half-way place between heaven and hell, where unforgiven sin is purged away. This is a great evil because:

1. It **deceives Catholics** into thinking that they may be lukewarm and easily avoid hell.
2. It **denies that Christ's blood sacrifice on the cross is sufficient to pay for all of our sins.**  
It says that Christ did not die for all our sins, so we must be punished for them in purgatory.
3. It denies the Biblical doctrine of true salvation in Christ and certainty of eternal life, **forcing a person to work for their salvation.**

**Answer:** The Bible states clearly that Christ purged our sins on the cross.

1 "When he had by himself **PURGED OUR SINS.**" Hebrews 1:3, and

2 "There is therefore now **no condemnation** to them that are in Christ Jesus." Rom. 8:1;John 5:24

Why didn't the Apostles discuss purgatory?

Did God and the Apostles forget to tell us something important? No. When a believer dies, he is immediately present with Christ. "To be **absent from the body** and to be **present with the Lord.**"

2 Corinthians 5:8. There is no mention here of having to spend time in purgatory.<sup>4</sup> Jesus in Luke 16:19-31 reveals that there is a **great gulf** between paradise and hell. People cannot pass from one to the other.

Catholics defend purgatory by quoting 2 Maccabees 12:40-46 where a "sin offering" is offered for dead soldiers who had committed the sin of idolatry. This not only contradicts the Bible, but also contradicts Catholic teaching, because idolatry is a mortal sin that would confine a person to hell. The Book of Maccabees has never been regarded as inspired by Jews or Christians.

For the Roman Catholic, purgatory teaching is:

1. A **terrifying prospect** of entering a place of unspeakable torture. Millions of Catholics live and die in great fear of death, to spend an unknown number of years in purgatory. Christ came to "deliver them who through fear of death were all their lifetime subject to bondage." Hebrews 2:15. Roman Catholicism is a religion of fear.
  - a) Fear of purgatory.
  - b) Fear of the priest.
  - c) Fear of the confessional.
  - d) Fear of death.
  - e) Fear of the consequences of missing mass.
  - f) Fear of the discipline of penance.
  - g) Fear of the righteous judgment of an angry God.
2. **A great money raiser**

Suffering in purgatory may be shortened by gifts of money, masses, prayers by the priests, etc.

**Question 1:** If the Pope or priest, really has the power to shorten or stop the suffering of souls in purgatory, why does he not, if he is a good man, render that service freely and willingly as a service to humanity?

Purgatory is a "**gigantic fraud**" and a "**colossal racket**", because it deprives the **poor** of their last pennies and extorts large funds from the **rich** in exchange for NOTHING.

**Question 2:** Mr priest, how do you know when to stop saying masses, or if you've said too many?  
How do you know when the person is out of purgatory?

**Question 3:** Mr priest and pope, when you die, do you know for sure if you'd go to heaven?

**Answer:** I don't know.

This message of purgatory offers NOTHING to a sad and perishing world.

**Problem:** The purgatory doctrine represents God as a respecter of persons. Because of money, a rich man can pay more for prayers and masses, than can a poor man. The rich man therefore passes more speedily through purgatory and into heaven than the poor man. The Bible teaches that entrance into heaven is not based on one's wealth, but on one's response to receiving Jesus Christ as Saviour alone. Compare death for a believing Protestant or Baptist which is the joy of promotion to heaven.

#### **ERROR 16: PAPAL INFALLIBILITY (declared in 1870 AD).**

**Definition:** When a pope is speaking in his official position on any issue of faith or morals, he is speaking infallibly, meaning without error.

**Answer:** The apostles never regarded any man to be infallible. Only the Word of God is regarded as without error.

If Peter was pope, which the Bible says he was not, then he made mistakes as in Galatians 2:11-14 when he was deceived by Judaizers. "But when Peter came to Antioch, I withstood him to the face, because he was to be **blamed**."

The following events from history show the error of papal infallibility.

1. Pope John XII, in the "Liber Pontificalis," the Catholic publication discussing the lives of the popes, states that "He spent his entire life in adultery."

- Popes Innocent III, Gregory XI, Clement IV, Hadrian VI, and Paul IV all disagreed with papal infallibility.
- Pope Stephen VI (896) had the dead pope Formosus (891-6) tried, questioned, fingers hacked off, dragged through Rome and thrown into the Tiber river.
- Pope Hadrian II (867) declared civil marriage to be valid, but Pope Pius VII (1800-23) declared it to be invalid.
- Pope Eugene IV (1431) had Joan of Arc burned alive as a witch, but later Pope Benedict IV in 1919 declared her to be a saint.
- Pope Pius XI in 1929 endorsed Fascism and called Mussolini "a man sent by God." However, before World War II, he warned people against Mussolini.
- The Vatican advised the German Catholic Party to vote for Nazi candidates. In 1933, the Vatican and Hitler signed a concordat, where the Catholic church swore allegiance to the Nazi government. Later on Pope Pius XI condemned Hitler.

How can a supposedly infallible man make so many errors of judgment, and even contradict other so-called infallible popes? Surely this disproves papal infallibility to any honest, open-minded person.

### **ERROR 17: INDULGENCES.**

**Definition:** A person after confessing his sins to a priest, in order to be free from the punishment still due for his sins, requires the church to pray for his rehabilitation. The person must do penance works such as fasting, making pilgrimages, giving money, making prayers or inflicting pain on oneself, as a penalty for sins committed.

Historically, people found it easier to pay money to the Roman Catholic church than to pray for long hours. The Roman Catholic church preferred money because the Pope ran out of cash in building St Peter's Basilica in Rome. So the Roman Catholic church issued the person with an official statement that he had received release from the penalties through the payment of money. This document was called an **indulgence**. They could be bought for friends and relatives who had died and passed into purgatory, thus shortening the time that they would have to spend there.

Martin Luther objected to Tetzel, a Catholic indulgence seller, who publicly announced to people that if they put a coin in a box, a dead relative's soul would immediately pop out of purgatory. His advertising slogan was: "As the coin in you pop, a soul from purgatory doth hop."

**Answer:** Obviously, this teaching cannot be found in the Bible. After Word War II, the Archbishop of Winnipeg asked mothers who had sons killed in the war, to pay \$40 to have masses said on behalf of their sons to guarantee their salvation and entrance to heaven. This practice continues in many parts of the world, and accounts for the great wealth of the Catholic church as seen in the big cathedrals it builds.

Which Bible verses forbid indulgence selling?

- Jesus warns against this practice in Matthew 23:14, a verse that Catholics have cut out of modern Bible versions. "Woe unto you, Scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For ye devour widows houses, and for a pretense make long prayer: therefore ye shall receive the greater damnation." The Pharisees of Jesus' day, as well as Catholic priests of today, tell widows that their dead husband has gone to purgatory. They ask her if she wants him to go to heaven. If yes, she will have to pay the priest to say a mass to pray for his soul to leave purgatory. Widows don't usually have much money, so he tells her to sell her house to pay for it. This is how widows houses are devoured by priests who for a pretense make long prayers.
- The Israelites were forbidden to give money for the dead. "None of them can by any means redeem his brother, nor give to God a ransom for him." Psalms 49:7. No gift of money can save another person. Only the blood of Christ can.
- Peter says: "Forasmuch as ye know that ye were not redeemed with corruptible things, as **silver** and **gold** ... but with the precious **blood of Christ**." 1 Peter 1:18,19. Nobody is redeemed with indulgence money.
- Simon the sorcerer offered the apostles money so that anyone that he laid hands on would receive the gift of the Holy Ghost. Peter rebuked him strongly in Acts 8:20-23 saying: "Thy money

perish with thee, because thou hast thought that the **GIFT OF GOD** may be purchased with money. Thou hast neither part nor lot in this matter: for thy heart is not right in the sight of God. Repent therefore of this thy wickedness." Salvation is the gift of God that each of us must claim freely for ourselves when we call on Christ to be our Saviour. No baptism, eucharist, confessional to a priest, penance, extreme unction, or paying money can save us, only faith in Christ's precious saving blood to pay for our sins.

### **ERROR 18: IDOLATRY. This is MAKING IMAGES.**

The Catholic Council of Trent declares that: "It is lawful to have images in the church and to give honour and **worship** to them. ... Images are put in churches that they may be **worshipped**." The Oxford dictionary defines an **idol** as: "An image used as an object of worship. A person or thing that is the object of excessive devotion." An **Idolater** is a devoted admirer of idols.

**Answer:** What does the Bible say about images and idols?

#### **1. Exodus 20:4, 5.**

- a) Thou shalt not **MAKE** unto thee **ANY** graven image, or any likeness of any thing that is in **heaven** above, or that is in the **earth** beneath, or that is in the **water** under the earth.
- b) Thou shalt not **BOW DOWN** thyself to them.
- c) Nor **SERVE** them.

If you **make** any graven image you've broken this commandment, whether you worship it or not.

**Question 1:** Do Catholics **MAKE** graven images? Yes.

**Question 2:** Do Catholics **KNEEL** down to statues of Mary or Jesus? Yes.

**Question 3:** Do Catholics **SERVE** Mary? Yes, as in "Legion of Mary."

#### **2. Leviticus 26:1.**

- a) "You shall make you **NO IDOLS** nor **GRAVEN IMAGE**.
- b) Neither rear you up a **STANDING IMAGE**.
- c) Neither shall ye set up any **IMAGE OF STONE** in your land to bow down unto it."

**Question 4:** Do Catholics rear up **STANDING IMAGES**? Yes.

**Question 5:** Do Catholics set up any **IMAGE OF STONE**? Yes.

#### **3. Deuteronomy 4:16.**

"Lest ye corrupt yourselves, and **MAKE** you a **GRAVEN IMAGE**, the similitude of **ANY FIGURE**, the likeness of **MALE** or **FEMALE**."

**Question 6:** Do Catholics make graven images of **MALE** or **FEMALE**? Yes.  
Mary is a female. Jesus and the apostles are males.

#### **4. Deuteronomy 16:22.**

"Neither shalt thou **SET** thee **UP ANY IMAGE**: which the Lord thy God **HATES**."

**Question 7:** Do Catholics **SET UP ANY IMAGES**? Yes.

**Question 8:** Does God **HATE IMAGES**? Yes.

#### **5. 1 Thessalonians 1:9.**

"How ye turned to God **FROM IDOLS** to serve the living and true God."

**Question 9:** Did the early Christians turn **FROM IDOLS**? Yes.

#### **6. Deuteronomy 27:15.**

"**CURSED** be the **man** that **MAKES ANY GRAVEN** or **MOLTEN IMAGE**, an **abomination** unto the Lord, the work of the hands of the craftsman, and putteth it in a secret place."

**Question 10:** Does God put a **curse** on any person that makes **any image**? Yes.

**Question 11:** Why does God call an image an **ABOMINATION**? Because He hates it.

#### **7. Isaiah 40:18,19.**

"To whom then will ye liken God? or what **LIKENESS** will ye **compare** unto him? The workman melteth a graven image"

**Note:** God has no visible form and we cannot liken him to any material object.

The **Catholic answer** is that they say that they do not **worship** images.

God's reply is not to **MAKE IMAGES**.

## 8. The early Christians had NO IMAGES.

Early Christian writers such as Irenaeus, Clement, Cyprian, Athanasius and Jerome, wrote strongly **AGAINST** images, statues and any manner of prayer or veneration regarding them. The Council of Constantinople in 381 AD voted unanimously to remove all images from the churches.

## 9. The Catholic church removes the second commandment against MAKING graven images from the list of 10 Commandments in Exodus 20:1-17 in their Catechism. This presents them with the problem of **only having 9 commandments**. They resolve this problem by splitting commandment number 10 into 9 and 10 as follows:

9. You shall not covet your neighbour's **wife**.
10. You shall not covet your neighbour's **goods**.

This is seen in the book "A brief summary of the Ten Commandments" by the Daughters of St. Paul, p.12,13:

## WHAT ARE THE COMMANDMENTS OF GOD?

### The Catholic Catechism

*The Commandments of God are these ten:*

*"I am the Lord your God:*

1. *You shall not have strange Gods before me.*

**[omitted]**

2. *You shall not take the name of the Lord your God in vain.*

3. *Remember to keep holy the Lord's day.*

4. *Honor your father and your mother.*

5. *You shall not kill.*

6. *You shall not commit adultery.*

7. *You shall not steal.*

8. *You shall not bear false witness*

9. *You shall not covet your neighbour's wife.*

10. *You shall not covet your neighbour's goods."*

### The Bible

1. No other gods.

**2. No Graven Images.**

3. Don't take God's Name in vain.

4. Keep Sabbath Day Holy.

5. Honour Father and Mother.

6. Don't Murder.

7. Don't Commit Adultery.

8. Don't Steal.

9. Don't bear False Witness.

10. Don't Covet.

Exodus 20:1-17.

The second Commandment should be "Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image." Exodus 20:4.

Check your Catechism to see if they have left it out.

**Question:** Why do you think they left it out?

10. Every Catholic institution has images of Mary, Jesus, male and female figures. An example of this are two statues at the French Papal Palace of Avignon, one of Jesus about 10 metres above ground level, and the other is an enormous statue of Mary, much larger, grander and higher up than that of Jesus. This gives greater honour to Mary than to Jesus. It also clearly breaks the second commandment forbidding making images of things in heaven.

**Question:** Who do we believe, the Word of God or the Catholic Church?

"We ought to obey God, rather than men." Acts 5:29.

## ERROR 19: MARY VENERATION

Here are some of the many errors associated with Mary veneration:

### 1. Historical connection with Pagan mother and child worship.

Mother and child worship started at the Tower of Babel. Nimrod, King of Babel was killed for his great evil. His wife Semiramis, fearing that she would lose control, devised a plan to maintain the people's loyalty. She and everybody knew about the future birth of a virgin born Messiah/Saviour promised in Genesis 3:15 as the "seed of the woman" who would bruise satan's head. So Semiramis had an illegitimate son, whom she named "Tammuz." She commanded that everyone

worship herself and Tammuz as the fulfilment of Genesis 3:15, claiming that her son was supernaturally conceived and was the promised saviour.

When the people at Babel were scattered, they carried this mother and child worship with them wherever they went. This is why we see so much mother and child worship in so many ancient societies.

"They forsook the Lord, and served Baal and Ashtaroth." Judges 2:13.

When the early Christian church grew through the preaching of Paul and others, no compromise was made with pagan mother and child worship. When the Ephesians were truly converted, they destroyed their idols of the goddess Diana, so that the silversmith craftsmen were going out of business. (Acts 19:24-27). When the Roman Emperor Constantine professed conversion in 320 AD, he commanded that everyone in the Roman Empire become "Christian". At this time, half the empire were pagan worshippers of mother and child, and the other half professed to be Christian. It is obvious that you cannot pass a law to compel everyone to follow a certain religion, as people have their own free will. A compromise was reached which allowed the pagans to continue their mother and child worship, yet still give the appearance of being Christian. They simply changed their pagan mother and child worship to worship Mary and Jesus. For example, in the following ancient cultures, the mother and child were represented as follows:

	Mother	Son
Babylon	Semiramis	Tammuz
China	Shingmoo	
Germany	Hertha	Child
Scandinavia	Disa	
Etruscans	Nutria	
Greece	Aphrodite or Ceres	Bacchus
Rome	Venus	Jupiter
India	Devaki	Krishna
Asia	Cybele	Deoibus
Canaan	Ashtaroth	Baal
Ephesus	Diana	
Egypt	Isis	Horus
Phonecians	Lady of the Sea, Astark	

- This resulted in Mary worship becoming an official doctrine of the Roman Church in 431 AD at the Council of Ephesus. Since then, Mary worship has grown, so that Mary is now called the "Mother of God", the "Queen of Heaven", "Madonna", etc.
- Note also that Mary never claimed to be the "**Queen of Heaven**" as this was a pagan goddess that apostate Israelites made cakes to, thus provoking God to anger.  
"the women knead their dough, to make cakes to the Queen of Heaven,... that they may provoke me to **anger**." Jeremiah 7:18 and 44:17,18,19,25.
- In pagan religions, the mother was worshipped as much or more than her son, yet the Bible clearly shows that Christ is to be worshipped and NEVER Mary.

## 2. The Bible never mentions Mary interceding for us.

Who did the thief on the cross appeal to for salvation? Was it Christ or Mary? Jesus said: "**Come unto ME**, all ye that labour and are heavy laden and I will give you rest." Matthew 11:28. "Him that cometh to me, I will in **no wise cast out**." John 6:37.

"No man cometh unto the Father, but by **ME**." John 14:6.

Praying to Mary is a device to turn people away from praying to Christ. Acts 4:12 states that there is no salvation in anyone but Christ. Luke records a woman saying to Jesus about Mary in Luke 11:27,28, "Blessed is the womb that bare thee, and the paps which thou hast sucked (Mary). But he said, Yea rather, **blessed** are they that **hear the Word of God, and keep it.**"

As a man, Jesus always said "No!" to Mary's requests. For example, in John 2:3,4,5 Jesus rejected Mary's request for more wine by saying: "Woman, what have I to do with thee?" Mary then told the servants, "Whatsoever he saith unto you, DO IT." Jesus did not say "Yes mother, I will do anything you ask."

### 3. The Immaculate Conception.

**Definition:** "Mary was born sinless and led a sinless life." She was declared to be "infallible" and this was made official by Pope Pius IX in 1854. He said, "There is no salvation to those who do not believe this dogma."

**Answer:** Even St Augustine wrote that Mary's flesh was "flesh of sin" and that "Mary springing from Adam, died because of sin." Mary acknowledges that she is a sinner by calling God her Saviour. **Only a sinner needs a Saviour.**

"My spirit hath rejoiced in God my Saviour." Luke 1:47.

"For ALL HAVE SINNED and come short of the glory of God." Romans 3:23.

"There is none righteous, **no not one.**" Romans 3:10.

### 4. Perpetual Virginity.

**Definition:** "Mary remained a virgin all her life, never having sex with her husband Joseph and therefore having no other children."

**Answer:** This idea is found NOWHERE in the Bible. This idea was official dogma in 451 AD. Note these Bible verses disproving this false doctrine:

- a) "Joseph took unto him his wife: and knew her not TILL she had brought forth her firstborn son..." (Matthew 1:25). This means that Joseph knew Mary sexually in normal marriage relations after Jesus was born.
- b) Jesus' fellow Nazareth townsfolk who grew up with him asked: "Is not this the carpenter's son? Is not his **mother** called **Mary**? and his **brothers**, James, Joses, Simon and Judas? And his **sisters**, are they not all with us?" (Matthew 13:55,56). Jesus here has brothers (adelphos) and sisters (adelphai). Catholicism attempts to explain these away as cousins. This cannot be valid because the Greek word for cousin is "anephios." Mark 6:3 also translates these as "brothers" and "sisters".
- c) Jesus had brothers: "Neither did **his brethren** believe in him." John 7:5.  
"These all continued ... with **his brethren**." Acts 1:14.

Nine times the Bible says that Mary was not a perpetual virgin.

### 5. The Assumption of Mary.

**Definition:** "Mary ascended into heaven in a bodily form."

This was made official and "infallible" by Pope Pius XII in 1951.

**Answer:** This is NOWHERE mentioned in the Bible.

"No man has ascended up to heaven, but ... the Son of man ..." John 3:13.

"Ascended" in the Greek means "go up of one's own power" not taken up as was Elijah & Enoch.

**Objection:** Doesn't Revelation 12:1-7 describe a woman in heaven clothed with the sun, having the moon under her feet and a crown of 12 stars on her head, giving birth to a man child (Christ), refer to Mary?

**Answer:** No. Because:

- a) Genesis 37:9,10 shows this woman to be the Israelite nation, with the sun representing Jacob, the moon representing his wife Rachel, and the 12 stars representing the 12 tribes of Israel. Christ was born of Israel. The Israelite nation is often referred to as a woman in Isaiah 54:5, "thy Maker is thine husband," and Jeremiah 31:32, "although I was a husband unto them."
- b) This woman cannot be Mary, because this woman is on earth during the Tribulation, whereas Mary's spirit is in heaven at that time.
- c) This woman is persecuted on earth during this time, yet Mary in heaven cannot be persecuted on earth.

## **6. False Prophecies and Miracles attributed to Mary.**

Many "visions", "miracles" and "prophecies" have been attributed to Mary. For example, the vision attributed to Mary at **Fatima** in 1917 told three shepherd children to repeat the rosary daily. It called for people to reform their lives and to build a chapel in her honour.

Also, the message at **Medjugorje**, Yugoslavia, attributed to Mary said that: "God is not looking for great believers, but simply for those who respect their faith and live peacefully. Peace is more important than conversion, fasting, penance or prayer."

**Question:** Do you believe that every vision a person claims to have is true and from God?

**Answer:** Satan can give false visions, miracles and prophecies to deceive people away from the gospel of salvation by faith in Christ. "Though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel, let him be accursed." Galatians 1:8.

Notice how these visions turn people's attention **AWAY FROM CHRIST** to **something else**, such as, saying the rosary or peace. These visions have three errors in common:

- a) They usually point people to peace and the Catholic church.
- b) They glorify Mary, instead of Jesus.
- c) They contradict and ignore the Bible.

Beware of Satan transforming himself into an angel of light. To avoid being deceived, we must test everything by the Word of God.

Charles Chiniquy, a former priest from Montreal, Canada, who became a Presbyterian minister, tells of the following conversation between himself and his bishop when doubts began to assail him regarding the place given to Mary:

- CC: "My lord, who has saved you and me upon the cross?"  
He answered, "Jesus Christ."  
CC: "And who paid your debt and mine by shedding His blood; was it Mary or Jesus?"  
He said: "Jesus Christ."  
CC: "Now, my lord, when Jesus and Mary were on earth, who loved the sinner more; was it Mary or Jesus?"  
Again he answered that it was Jesus.  
CC: "Did any sinner come to Mary on earth to be saved?"  
"No."  
CC: "Do you remember that any sinner has gone to Jesus to be saved?"  
"Yes, many."  
CC: "Have they been rebuked?"  
"Never."  
CC: Do you remember that Jesus ever said to sinners, 'Come to Mary and she will save you'?"  
"No", he said.  
CC: "Do you remember that Jesus has said to poor sinners, "Come to me?""  
"Yes, He has said it."  
CC: "Has He ever retracted those words?"  
"No".  
CC: "And who was, then, the more powerful to save sinners?"  
"Oh, it was Jesus!"  
CC: "Now my lord, since Jesus and Mary are in heaven, can you show me in the Scriptures that Jesus has lost anything of his desire and power to save sinners, or that He has delegated His power to Mary?"  
And the bishop answered "No."  
CC: "Then, my lord, why do we not go to Him, and to Him alone? Why do we invite poor sinners to come to Mary, when, by your own confession she is nothing compared with Jesus, in power, in mercy, in love, and in compassion for the sinner?"  
To that the Bishop could give no answer. (*Fifty Years in the Church of Rome*, p. 262).

## **ERROR 20: CATHOLIC ATTITUDES TO THE BIBLE.**

1. The Roman Catholic church has a history of **burning Bibles**.
2. When it could not stop Bibles being printed, it denied anti-catholic scriptures by saying "**that's your interpretation**", meaning that the Bible has no authority if anyone can interpret it in any manner.
3. They allow Catholics to read the Bible, but teach that it is wrong and sinful to put any interpretation on scriptures that is contrary to Roman Catholic doctrine. In other words, **don't think for yourself**, you may discover that Catholic doctrine is full of error and contradictions. Just **blindly accept everything Rome tells you**. Trust Rome.

## **ERROR 21: PETER AS THE ROCK (Matthew 16:18,19).**

The whole structure of the Roman Catholic church is built on the assumption that in Matthew 16:13-19, Christ appointed Peter to be the first pope and so established the papacy. If we destroy the papacy of Peter, the foundation of the papacy is destroyed along with the whole Roman Catholic hierarchy.

"And I say also unto thee, that thou art **Peter** (Greek: <sup>1</sup>**Petros**, <sup>2</sup>masculine, <sup>3</sup>a person, <sup>4</sup>a large stone, <sup>5</sup>a piece or fragment of rock such as a man might throw); and upon this **rock**

(Greek: <sup>1</sup>**Petra**, <sup>2</sup>feminine, <sup>3</sup>not a person, but a <sup>4</sup>cliff, a mass of projecting immovable rock.)

I will build my church, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.

And I will give unto thee the keys of the kingdom of heaven: and  **WHATSOEVER** thou shalt bind on earth shall be bound in heaven: and  **WHATSOEVER** thou shalt loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven."

Catholicism claims several false doctrines from this passage:

- a) Peter is the rock.
- b) Peter is the first pope, with special spiritual supremacy over the church.
- c) This same spiritual authority has always resided in the **popes of Rome**, as being Peter's successors. (This idea is nowhere mentioned in Scripture).
- d) Christ built his church on Peter. This is contrary to God's Word which says:  
"For other foundation can no man lay than that is laid, which is Jesus Christ." 1 Corinthians 3:11.
- e) Christ gave Peter keys to admit into heaven only those who came via the Roman Catholic church.
- f) Those not coming through the Roman church would be bound in sin and unable to enter heaven.

Each of these six claims can be shown to be false as follows:

1. **Peter is not the rock**, because the 12 disciples, knowing well the Old Testament, recognised the Rock as a description or name for God.

"He is the Rock, His word is perfect."

Deuteronomy 32:4.

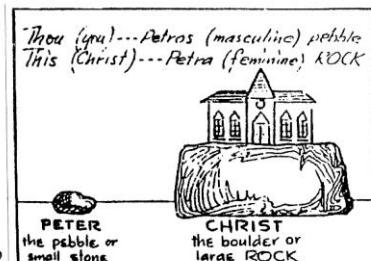
"The Lord is my Rock, and my fortress." Psalms 18:2.

"For who is a God save the Lord? Or who is a Rock save our God." Psalm 18:31.

We see here that there is **NO OTHER ROCK** than God, not even Peter.

Jesus Christ is the foundation rock on which the church is built.

- a) **The Old Testament prophets** said so. (Isaiah 28:16; Psalm 118:22).
- b) **Jesus** said so referring to Himself as "the stone which the builders rejected is become the head of the corner." Matthew 21:42.
- c) **Peter** said so, stating that Christ is "the **stone** ... which is become the head of the corner. Neither is there salvation in **any other** ..." Acts 4:11,12.
- d) **Paul** said so, stating that "the **rock** that followed them was Christ." 1 Corinthians 10:4 and "other **foundation** can no man lay then that is laid which is Jesus Christ." 1 Corinthians 3:11.



**Catholicism is saying that salvation is not in Christ**, but in Peter as the first of a succession of popes. Peter, however, contradicts this wrong idea by saying that, "Christ is the **chief corner stone**" in 1 Peter 2:4-8.

"To whom coming, as unto a **living** stone. (v.4).

Behold I lay in Zion a **Chief corner stone**. he that believeth on him shall not be confounded. v.6. The stone which the builders disallowed is become the head of the corner. (v.7). And a **stone of stumbling, & a rock of offence**, even to them which stumble at the **word**, being disobedient."v.8 Even if we allow Catholicism to believe that Peter is a foundation stone upon which Christ built His church, Catholicism has to admit that **other New Testament apostles** and Old Testament prophets make up the foundation **equally** as much as Peter does, because:

- "And are built upon the foundation of **the apostles** and prophets, **Jesus Christ himself being the chief cornerstone.**" Ephesians 2:20.
- "And the wall of the city had **12 foundations**, and in them the names of the **12 apostles** of the lamb." Revelation 21:14.

Peter is given no greater importance than any of the other apostles.

"Thou art Peter (Petros), and upon this rock (Petra) I will build my church." Matthew 16:18.

**Answer:** In the Greek, the word "**Peter**" is **Petros**, a person, masculine, a rock or stone that a man might throw.

In the Greek, the word "**Rock**" is "**Petra**", not a person, but a cliff, a mass of projecting, immovable rock. It refers **not to Peter**, but to Peter's declaration of Christ's deity, "Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God." Matthew 16:16.

"**PETROS**" means a small, **moveable stone**, but "**PETRA**" means an **immovable foundation**, in this case, Peter's statement on Christ's deity, upon which Christ would build His church.

- Christ made two complete, distinct statements:

He said: 1. Thou art Peter, and

2. Upon this rock (change of gender, showing change of subject), I will build my church.

Peter was **not characterised by a "PETRA" immovable foundation**, as seen in these incidents:

- Peter soon tried to stop Jesus going to the cross, so Jesus gave him a stinging rebuke: "Get thee behind me, Satan." (v.23). These are strong words to use against someone who has just been appointed pope.
- Peter slept in Gethsemane during Christ's agony.
- Christ rebuked Peter for rashly cutting off Malchus' ear.
- Peter boasted that he was ready to die for Christ.
- Peter then shamefully denied with curses that he knew Christ.
- Paul rebuked Peter for error and hypocrisy at Antioch in Galatians 2:11, "But when Peter was come to Antioch, I withstood him to the face, because he was to be **blamed**."
- In Mark 9:33-35, the disciples argued as to who was the greatest among them. Had Jesus already given Peter the chief rank of pope, then Christ would have simply referred to His previous granting of power to Peter. Yet Jesus just said that the greatest shall be last and servant of all.
- Augustine and Jerome state that the Rock is Christ, not Peter. Mark's gospel was written by Mark, assisted by Peter, yet neither Mark's gospel or Peter's letters mention this incident. They would surely mention it if we needed to know it.

God is called the "Rock" 34 times in the Old Testament. It was clearly a title of God. Every Jew would be shocked to call a man the "Rock". Therefore "Peter" and "Rock" are translated as **two different words, with two different meanings**.

**Note:** In John 1:42, Jesus said, "Thou art Simon the son of Jona: thou shalt be called **CEPHAS**, which is by interpretation, a **STONE**." Cephas (2786) is a Syriac surname given to Simon, which is "Petros" in Greek, not "Petra". Peter did not call himself by his Syriac name (Cephas), but by his Greek name (1 Peter 1:1; 2 Peter 1:1). The word for rock (Petra) in Matthew 16:18 is the same word used for the rock fortress at Edom, known as "PETRA." It is 1.4 kilometres long,

226 metres high, 457 metres wide. Jesus did not say that Peter was the PETRA rock fortress, but that Simon was Petros, a piece of rock. Only God is called "a ROCK." Jesus is just saying to Simon, "I will make you a firm and distinguished preacher in building my church."

2. **Peter is NOT the first pope, with supremacy over the Church** because of these reasons:
  - a) At the Jerusalem council in Acts 15:13-19, the advice of **James** not Peter was sought and followed. James, not Peter was the spokesman who handed down the decision.
  - b) If Peter was the first pope, he would have had a greater position than the other disciples. When the disciples discussed which of them was the greatest in Mark 9:33-35, Jesus had a great chance to affirm Peter's headship as the first pope, but Jesus simply said that the greatest shall be a servant of all. Thus Jesus showed **no special** papal leadership to Peter. Nor should we.
3. **Peter was given the keys of the kingdom of heaven** (Christian profession in the Church Age), only in the sense that it was Peter who opened the door of Gospel preaching opportunity to Israel on the day of Pentecost (Acts 2:38-42), and to the Gentiles in the house of Cornelius (Acts 10:34-46). Peter opened the door, and everybody who received Christ as Saviour went into the Kingdom of God through Christ.

#### **ERROR 22: FIFTEEN APOCRYPHA BOOKS added to the Old Testament Bible in 1546 AD.**

Roman Catholicism added these books in order to undermine Protestant belief in the Bible as sole authority. Some apocryphal books seemed to support Catholic dogma. We reject the Apocrypha for these reasons:

**Reason 1:** The Jews never received these books. They were rejected by both Jews and all Christians up till 400 AD. Jesus never quoted from the Apocrypha.

**Reason 2:** They have many errors of time, history, geography, as well as contradictions to the Bible. Examples of errors are:

1. Judith falsely states that Nebuchadnezzar reigns over the Assyrians, but he ruled Babylon instead.
2. Judith has Holohernes moving an immense army 300 miles in 3 days (2:21).
3. Tobit could not have witnessed the division of Israel into the Northern and Southern kingdoms in 931 BC (Tobit 1:4), and have been deported 200 years later in 734 BC (Tobit 1:10).
4. Ecclesiasticus 3:3 states that giving money forgives sins, which contradicts the work of Christ on the cross.

**Reason 3:** Christ and the Apostles in the New Testament quote 260 times from 35 out of 39 Old Testament books, yet they never quote from the Apocrypha.

**Reason 4:** Josephus in 90 AD listed all the 39 Old Testament books, yet he did not include the Apocrypha. The Catholic church only added them at the Council of Trent to defend the Protestants attack on purgatory, where 2 Maccabees 12:40-45 tells of Judas Maccabeus offering a sacrifice for soldiers who died while guilty of the mortal sin of idolatry.

#### **ERROR 23: NAMES OF BLASPHEMY.**

Officials of the Roman Catholic church take names for themselves that are reserved to God, the Lord Jesus Christ such as:

1. **Pontifex Maximus** is a papal title meaning in Latin, "chief bridge maker" between earth and heaven. However, Jesus Christ is the only One who can claim this title because "no man cometh unto the Father, but by me." (John 14:6). This was a title of Julius Caesar and of the Roman Emperors of paganism, thus showing how modern Roman Catholicism is of pagan origin. Constantine, a politician, in 320 AD, hijacked the church of Rome, taking control of it for himself. Hence, all popes accept the title "Pontifex Maximus" which title belonged to the Roman Emperors from Julius Caesar onwards.
2. **Holy Father** is a title the pope claims for himself. However, this title occurs only once in the Bible, and used when Jesus addresses His Heavenly Father in John 17:11 in His great prayer before His betrayal, arrest and crucifixion. It is blasphemy for any man to claim this title for himself. It belongs only to God the Father.

3. **Father** is a title that every Roman Catholic priest claims for himself and expects to be called. Jesus warns in Matthew 23:9, "Call no man your father upon the earth: for one is your father which is in heaven."

**Objection:** But isn't it wrong to call your earthly parent "father"?

**Answer:** No, because in Romans 4:1, "**Abraham our father, as pertaining to the flesh, hath found?**" God refers to Abraham as "our father pertaining to the flesh" which is an acceptable usage. Obviously the Roman Catholic priest is not your physical father, but claims to be a spiritual father, which is what God forbids. We ought not to call a priest "father", unless he is your physical parent.

4. **Monsignor** means "my Lord", and this clearly is a title belonging only to God, the Lord Jesus Christ. This is a name of blasphemy that Romanism takes from God.

5. **Reverend** is a title of many Roman Catholic priests and Protestant ministers. This is also a title for God in Psalms 111:9, "Holy and **Reverend** is his name." It is always blasphemy for any man to take to himself a title of God. No preacher in the early church claimed "Reverend" as his title, nor can we today.

In Revelation 17:3, John saw a whore riding a beast described as "full of names of blasphemy." These five names of blasphemy of the Roman Catholic church **link it** with the whore called "Mystery Babylon the Great, the Mother of Harlots, and abominations of the earth." Rev. 17:5.

6. "**God himself on earth**" is a papal title in the New York Catechism.

7. **Other Blasphemous titles given to Mary** are Queen of Heaven, the Gate of Heaven, our life, Mother of Grace, Mother of Mercy, etc. Heaven has no Queen, only the King. Christ is the Door, the Life etc. For Mary to hear all Catholic prayers she would need to have the omniscient powers of God. This is Blasphemy!

#### **ERROR 24: ROSARY PRAYER BEADS.**

Saying the rosary is often assigned to a person after he has been to confession as a penance or as a means of storing up merit in heaven. The rosary may be defined as:

1. A series of prayers, in its long form consisting of:
  - 15 "Our Fathers" (the Lord's prayer, addressed to God the Father).
  - 15 "Glory be's", and
  - 150 "Hail Mary's" addressed to Mary as follows: "Hail Mary, full of grace ...pray for us sinners."
2. A chain of beads for counting the prayers. Note that the rosary has **TEN TIMES** as many prayers addressed to Mary (150), as are addressed to God the Father (15), with **none addressed to Christ**. It thus exalts Mary **10 TIMES** more than **GOD**.

Jesus forbids the rosary prayer in Matthew 6:7,8 "But when ye pray, **use not vain repetitions**, as the **heathen** do: for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking. **Be not** ye therefore **like unto them**."

The Bible teaches that the true believer should pray to God from the heart reverently, thankfully, humbly, thinking of what he is doing, and of God to whom he is speaking. Buddhists and Moslems use a prayer device similar to rosary beads. Reject the rosary.

#### **ERROR 25: LOW MORAL STANDARDS.**

The Protestant moral code comes directly from the Bible. Example, "Don't steal" means "Don't steal." The Roman Catholic moral code is mainly based on Catholic Canon law, and only secondarily on the Bible. For example, "Don't steal" means "stealing is alright provided that the value of the thing stolen is not excessive." (Liguori)

The authority of the church as interpreted by the priest is what matters. The Catholic standard of morality is not to stir the conscience to decide right and wrong for itself, but to let the papal church decide what is right and wrong. Drinking liquor and gambling considered as vices by Protestants, are not counted as evil by Romanist's except when indulged to excess.

Loyola, the founder of the Jesuits states that "if anything shall appear white to our eyes which the church has defined as black, we likewise must declare it to be black." This means "DON'T THINK, just accept whatever Rome tells you."

Consider these moral sins perpetrated by Roman Catholicism:

1. **Alcoholic Liquor.**

"**LOOK NOT** upon the wine when it is red ... it bites like a serpent." Proverbs 23:31,32.  
"Wine is a mocker, strong drink is raging: whosoever is deceived thereby is not wise." Prov. 20:1.  
"Woe unto him that giveth his neighbour drink...and maketh him drunken..." Habakkuk 2:15.

Roman Catholic theologian Liguori states that, "It is not a mortal sin to get drunk, unless one loses completely the use of his mental facilities for over **one hour**." The Protestant cannot force his will and conscience to approve, believe and do what his mind knows to be wrong.

Jack Kennedy is considered a good Catholic, even though he made his millions illegally selling liquor in the prohibition days. This liquor ruined millions of people's lives through domestic violence, road deaths, deformed children of alcoholic parents, etc.

2. **Gambling.**

Roman Catholicism favours games of chance, especially as they play bingo in church halls. Gambling is an attempt to **get something for nothing** through the throw of dice, turn of a wheel etc. It is an attempt to live off the greed of others, not by honest toil. Gamblers often end up broke. Bingo familiarizes young people with other forms of gambling, and gives gambling the church stamp of approval. Organised gambling flourishes where the muscleman is boss and where business is done by threats, coercion and corruption, which are common methods used to extract gambling debts. Gambling is **addictive** to many people. This enslaves whole families into lives of poverty and fear. "Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself." Matthew 19:19.

Gambling wants to take as much as possible from one's neighbour, not love him as ourself.

3. **Sexual abuse by priests of children.**

The Roman Catholic church has spent hundreds of millions of dollars in compensating the victims of priest's sexual abuse of children. In many cases, these priests have simply been moved to another parish when their crime came to light. If the Roman Catholic church is the mother of holiness, how can this be?

**ERROR 26: DEVOTION TO THE SACRED HEART OF JESUS AND MARY.**

This is simply false, having no foundation in the Bible, yet why do Catholics accept this so blindly?

**ERROR 27: CROSSING ONESELF.**

This is a practice that is not found in the Bible either. Jesus never crossed himself, nor did the apostles, nor should we.

**ERROR 28: WAS PETER THE FIRST POPE?**

No, because:

1. Peter was **married**. Popes cannot marry. Jesus healed Peter's mother in law. "When Jesus was come into Peter's house, he saw his **WIFE'S MOTHER** laid, and sick of a fever." Matt 8:14,15  
"Have we not power to lead about a sister, a **WIFE**, as well as Cephas (Peter)?" 1 Corinthians 9:5
2. Peter would not allow men to **bow down** to him, as he forbade Cornelius in Acts 10:25,26.  
"Cornelius met him, fell down at this feet, and worshipped him. Peter ... said stand up; **I myself am a man.**" The pope likes men to bow down to him.
3. Peter rejected the "**tradition** from your fathers," (1 Peter 1:18), yet the Catholic church and popes base their teachings on man's traditions.
4. Peter wore **no crown** as the pope does.
5. Peter had **no wealth** as the pope has: "Peter said, silver and gold have I none." Acts 3:6.  
Peter never **ACTED** like a pope, never **DRESSED** like a pope, never **SPOKE** like a pope, and people never **APPROACHED** him as a pope.
6. Peter never took to himself the title "**PONTIFIX MAXIMUS**" as all the popes willingly accept, as seen by the initials P.M. after their names in the Vatican. This was a title of the pagan Roman Emperors from Julius Caesar's time on. It means "Chief Bridge Maker between earth and heaven." This is a name of blasphemy for a man to take, and Peter never saw himself as such. Jesus Christ is the only Bridge Maker between earth and heaven. John 1:51.

## **ERROR 29: ROMAN CATHOLIC LIES, IMMORALITY and CORRUPTION.**

More than 50 popes show themselves to be atheists or unbelievers. The history of the popes records homosexuality, rape, murder, adultery, drunkenness, selling religious offices, etc. This behaviour is hardly fitting a "Holy Father" or "The Vicar of Christ".

Examples include the following:

1. Pope Sergius III (904 - 911) obtained his office by murder. He fathered several illegitimate children by Marozia, who assassinated Pope Leo VI (928 - 929) and put her own teenage son (John XI) as Pope.
2. Pope John XII (955 - 964) is described in the Catholic Encyclopedia as a coarse, immoral man. The Catholic collection of the lives of the Popes, the "Liber Pontificalis" said: "He spent his entire life in adultery." Catholic bishop Luitprand states that "he had no respect for single girls, married woman or widows - they were sure to be defiled by him."
3. Pope Boniface VII (984 - 985), John XII and Leo VIII were described by the Bishop of Orleans as "monsters of guilt, reeking in blood and filth."
4. Pope John XV (985 - 996) split the churches finances among his relatives and was described as "covetous of filthy lucre and corrupt in all his acts."
5. Pope Benedict IX (1033 - 1045) committed murders and adulteries in broad daylight, robbed pilgrims, and was regarded as a hideous criminal. The people drove him out of Rome: The Catholic Encyclopedia says, "He was a disgrace to the chair of Peter."
6. Pope Innocent III (1198 - 1216) promoted the Inquisition, surpassing all his predecessors in killing over one million people.
7. Pope Boniface VIII (1294 - 1303). The Catholic Encyclopedia states "Scarcely any possible crime was omitted - heresy, gross and unnatural immorality, idolatry, magic, simony ... his whole pontificate was one record of evil." Dante visited Rome and described the Vatican as a "sewer of corruption" and assigned Boniface VII, Nicholas III and Clement V to the "lowest parts of hell." He proclaimed to be an atheist and in 1302 issued the "Unum Sanctum" officially declaring the Roman Catholic church as the only true church, outside of which no one can be saved.
8. Pope John XXIII (1410-1415) was accused by 37 clergy witnesses of fornication, adultery, incest, sodomy, simony, theft and murder. It was proved by a legion of witnesses that he had seduced and violated 300 nuns. He kept a harem at Boulogne of 200 girls. He was publicly called the devil incarnate. He has been called the most depraved criminal who ever sat on the papal throne.
9. Pope Pius II (1458 - 1464) fathered many illegitimate children and taught others to do likewise.
10. Pope Paul II (1464 - 1471) maintained a house full of concubines.
11. Pope Sixtus IV (1471 - 1484) financed his wars by selling church offices to the highest bidders.
12. Pope Innocent VII (1484 - 1492) fathered 16 illegitimate children by various women.
13. Pope Alexander VI (1492 - 1503) committed incest with his two sisters and daughter. On 31 October 1501, he conducted the worst ever Vatican sex orgy.
14. Pope Paul III (1534-1549) as a cardinal fathered 3 sons and a daughter. He consulted astrologers.
15. Pope Leo X (1513 - 1521) "was possessed by an insatiable love of pleasure, revelry and carousing." (Catholic Encyclopedia). Luther visited Rome and said: "No one can imagine what sins and infamous actions are committed in Rome." A saying was: "If there is a hell, Rome is built over it."
16. Pope Joan was a female pope whose name was changed to Pope Zacharias. Luther, on visiting Rome reported her statue in a back street. John Huss referred to her in his defence at the Council of Constance and this went unchallenged. She died in childbirth while in a public procession.
17. Pope Eugene IV (1431 - 1447) condemned Joan of Arc to be burned alive as a witch, but Pope Benedict IV (1919) declared her a saint.
18. Pope Stephen VI (896 - 897) brought the dead body of former Pope Formosus (891 - 897) to trial, hacked off his decaying finger and had him dragged through the streets of Rome and thrown into the Tiber river.

19. The "great schism" of 1378 lasted 50 years, where Italian and French popes cursed each other. Is this the same morally pure church that Christ left to preach the gospel? When confronted with such evil papal history, the Catholic church, which claims "infallibility", teaches that "A sinful pope ... remains a member of the church, and ... from whom we may not withdraw obedience." Catholic Encyclopedia Volume 4, page 435.

Jesus said in Matthew 7:18,20, "A good tree **cannot** bring forth evil fruit, neither can a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit ... **by their fruits ye shall know them.**"

20. Pope Alexander III decreed in 1170 that wills had to be made in front of a priest, or excommunication (cutting off from church and sentence to hell) would result.

The Catholic church has much to be embarrassed about in its history, as seen from these 20 popes.

#### **ERROR 30: THE INQUISITION TORTURE, MASSACRES, MURDERS AND WARS.**

So openly corrupt was the Catholic church, that many noble people left in protest, looking to Jesus Christ for salvation and to the Bible for truth, while rejecting the false claims of the popes. These were called heretics and bitterly opposed and tortured by the Roman Catholic church.

Pope Innocent IV in 1252 approved torture and ordered civil authorities to burn "heretics" in the "Ad extirpanda" Bull.

This torture was reinforced by Popes Alexander IV, Clement IV, Nicholas IV, Boniface VIII and others from 1254 - 1303.

Roman Catholic documents revealed that they murdered around **68 million** protesters from 1100 to 1800 AD when the Inquisition stopped.

The following torture devices were used against protesters:

1. The rack which stretched and dislocated joints.
  2. Heavy pincers tore out fingernails.
  3. Thumbscrews dislocated fingers.
  4. "Spanish boots" crushed legs and feet.
  5. The Iron virgin was a hollow metal case with knives inside, which pierced the victim placed in it.
  6. Hanging.
  7. Eyes gouged out.
  8. Molten lead poured into ears and mouth.
  9. Being forced to jump off cliffs onto sharp spikes below.
  10. 100,000 Albigenses (Protestants) were massacred in one day in 1211, then burned in heaps.
  11. Pope Pius IV sent the Italian army to massacre many women and children at Orange in 1562.
  12. 10,000 Huguenots (French Protestants) were killed in Paris on St Bartholomew's Day and 75,000 the week after. The Hugenot wars killed 200,000 Protestants.
  13. The "30 Years War" in Germany saw the population drop from 15 million to 5 million due to Catholic armies invading and killing 900,000 Protestants.
  14. The Spanish Armada was sent to conquer Protestant England by Catholic King Philip of Spain. "Bad weather" destroyed this fleet off the coast of England. The inquisition was ordered by papal decree and confirmed by pope after pope. Why did no pope stop the Inquisition torture? Jesus said "turn the other cheek", "love and forgive our enemies", and "do good to them that despitefully use us". Was the Roman Catholic church acting like Jesus Christ here?
  15. Galileo was sent to a dungeon and publicly flogged because he believed that the earth moved around the sun. On 22 June 1613, Galileo had to fall on his knees to escape the cruel death ordered by Pope Urban VIII and sign a retraction "I abjure, curse and detest the error and heresy of the earth moving around the sun ... it is absurd, false and erroneous."
- Truly, the Roman Catholic church is "drunk with the blood of the saints and with the blood of the martyrs of Jesus." Revelation 17:6.

## **Two Roman Catholic devices to muzzle opposition** are:

- a) Accusations of "**bigotry**". A bigot is "one who is obstinately and intolerantly devoted to his own church, party, belief or opinion." Romanists gag opposition by branding their opponents as "BIGOTS". Anyone who opposes Romanism in writing is branded as a "HATE MONGER" or "HATE LITERATURE" distributor, hoping to silence anyone who disagrees with it. "The Jesuits have urged the Catholic church in America to label every criticism of it as "bigotry"."- Christianity Today, October 28, 1957.

When Romanism, Communism and Islam are in the minority, they talk of tolerance and freedom. When they are in the majority, they show very little tolerance or freedom to Protestantism or Democracy. The Roman church shows herself to be the biggest bigot ever. It has been said that:

Rome in the minority is a lamb.

Rome as an equal is a fox.

Rome in the majority is a tiger.

Pope Boniface VIII in 1302 decreed in the "Unam Sanctum", the doctrine of the "two swords": the spiritual sword of the church and the earthly sword of kings which should submit to the Roman Catholic church. Dr de Luca of the University of Rome, was commended by Pope Leo XIII in 1901 by saying: "The Catholic church has the right and duty to kill heretics by fire and sword." This proves that Rome has not changed.

- b) Whenever Rome is refuted by a Bible verse, they reply: "That's just your interpretation", meaning that no one can really interpret the Bible, so leave it up to Rome to be the **authority** rather than the Bible. It is a device to wrest authority from the Bible to Rome. Ask: "Who interprets it?" A Pope?

## **ERROR 31: FIFTEEN EVIDENCES that the ROMAN CATHOLIC CHURCH is MYSTERY BABYLON the GREAT, THE WHORE OF REVELATION 17.**

Who is the whore/woman in Revelation 17? God has given us similarities to prove conclusively that she is the Roman Catholic church. What are these similarities of the whore with the church of Rome?

1. The **WOMAN** which thou sawest is **that great CITY**, which **reigns over the kings of the earth**. Revelation 17:18.

**Question:** Which city reigned over the kings of the earth in the first century?

**Answer:** **Rome**, no doubt. The Roman emperors and popes are called "Pontifex Maximus".

2. She is called the "**GREAT WHORE**" (17:1). A whore is unfaithful to one husband, by having relationships with many suitors. So is the Roman Catholic church, unfaithful to God's Word as seen by her adopting so many false, unbiblical doctrines.
3. "With whom the **KINGS OF THE EARTH** have committed fornication. (17:2). The Roman Catholic Church has always sought to further her purposes by controlling politicians, kings and governments. She is the state church in so many countries like Spain, Portugal, Italy, Poland, South America and Ireland. She seeks to control governments in every country. In Revelation 17:3, she is sitting on a beast, as a rider sits on a horse controlling it.

The early Church kept separate from the State because its task was to win people to Christ, baptize and teach God's Word. The Roman Catholic Church's association with governments is outside God's instructions. God calls her relationship with the kings of the earth, "fornication".

4. "**Inhabitants** of the earth have been made **drunk** with the wine of her **fornication**." 17:2. It is very hard to reason with a drunk person. Alcohol controls his mind so that he cannot see reason. So it is with many Catholics, who are so convinced of Roman Catholic false doctrines, even though the Bible so clearly opposes them. They cannot see the truth of God's Word and salvation. They will not search the Scriptures to see if the Bible's claims are true. Acts 17:11. They are **controlled** by **false doctrines**, like **alcohol controls a drunkard**, so they cannot see Bible truths.
5. She sits on **MANY WATERS**. (17:1). Rev. 17:15 tells us that "The **WATERS** which thou sawest, where the whore sitteth, are **peoples** and **multitudes**, and **nations** and **tongues**." The Roman Catholic church has an influence in many, if not every nation in the world.
6. She is **FULL OF NAMES OF BLASPHEMY**. (17:3). Rome claims titles and attributes which belong only to God, such as <sup>1</sup>"Holy Father", <sup>2</sup>"Father", <sup>3</sup>"Monsignor" = my Lord,

- 4 "His Holiness", 5 "Pontifex Maximus", 6 "Pope" = Father of Christians, 7 "Reverend", 8 "Fili Vicarii Dei" = in the place of the Son of God.
7. "The seven heads are **seven mountains** on which the woman sitteth." (17:9). Rome is well known as being built on seven hills.
  8. The woman was **arrayed in purple and scarlet** colour. (17:4). Popes, cardinals and priests dress in scarlet on festival occasions.
  9. Decked with **gold** and **precious stones**. (17:4). The Roman church has much gold and wealth.
  10. Having a golden cup in her hand full of abominations and filthiness of her **fornication**. (17:4). Much sexual immorality is committed by priests such as fornication, homosexuality, child molestation etc. This is hateful to God.
  11. "**Mystery**". (17:5). Much mystery exists in her services. For example, Latin services, converting bread to the body of Christ, how long must people spend in purgatory, etc.
  12. **Babylon the Great**. (17:5). Roman Catholic mother and child worship was adopted from the ancient mystery religion of Babylon's mother and child worship. As Rome conquered countries, it adopted their religions.
  13. **The Mother of Harlots** (17:5). Rome has given rise to many other religions, of similar practices.
  14. The woman **drunken** with the **blood of the saints**, and with the **blood of the martyrs** of Jesus. (17:6). The Roman church has constantly persecuted, tortured and burned at the stake, any people who disagree with papal control and who try to break away. Eg: John Huss, Savonarola, etc.
  15. **The ten horn nations** that the Roman church tries to control, turn on Rome, **hate her, strip her wealth, EAT HER FLESH**, and burn her with fire. (17:16). Eating her flesh is a clever judgment on a system that claims to eat Christ's flesh daily. As Roman Catholicism claims to eat Christ's flesh, so too will the antichrist eat Roman Catholicism's flesh in the future 7 year Tribulation.

### **ERROR 32: WHO GAVE US THE BIBLE? GOD OR THE ROMAN CATHOLIC CHURCH?**

The Roman Catholic Church claims that it gave us the Bible, and that it determined which books should comprise the New Testament and Old Testament.

**Their argument** is as follows:

"The church existed before a word of the New Testament scriptures was written. After they were written, the church determined the Canon. Therefore the church is the authoritative voice that must be obeyed, for without the church, we would not have the Bible."

*"Q.17 Who can determine what books make up the Bible? Just as Christ's infallible church alone can assure us that the Bible is divinely inspired, so the church alone possesses the authority to indicate which books are included in it."*

"This is Catholicism", John Walsh (Garden City, NY, Image Books, 1959) p.177.

Is this argument correct? Did the Catholic church produce the Bible, or did it come into existence some other way? Catholicism claims that by its authority we have the Bible, and therefore it alone is the official interpreter of Scripture. If we want to know the true meaning of the Bible, we are told that we must listen to the church that gave us the Bible.

This Catholic church claim is false because:

1. The Catholic Church today with its many man made doctrines is an entirely different system as to the first century church.
2. The Bible nowhere claims that the church gave us the Bible. The Bible came as follows:  
From God, to the Apostles and Prophets and then to the Churches.  
The Churches submitted to the Apostles and Prophets, who submitted to God. The Bible is an **expression of the mind of God**. The Bible is authoritative as God.  
The Church is not of higher authority than God.  
God gave the Bible for the church to submit to, and not for the Bible to submit to the church.  
The Apostles and Prophets were part of the church, but even they submitted to the Word of God.
3. Israel was the vehicle through which God gave the Old Testament. When Israel turned from God, God judged them. Because Roman Catholicism has turned from God, God will judge her in the Tribulation.

4. The Old Testament Canon of 39 books of Scripture was **established by 400 BC**, well before the Roman Catholic church was started, as seen by the Dead Sea Scrolls containing all Old Testament books except Esther.
5. **Jesus endorsed** the 39 books of Old Testament Scripture as being the authentic Word of God, well before the Roman Catholic church ever came about.
6. The **main criterion** in determining whether a book should be included in the Canon of Scripture pertained to its **author**. If the author was a **known prophet of God**, his works were preserved. This was at the direction of God, not the Catholic Church. No Pope ever said: "Thus saith the Lord." The Old Testament was accepted by the people of God because it was written by the Prophets of God.  
Though the **people of God** were involved in gathering these sacred writings, this never gave the people authority over Scripture or equal to Scripture.
7. By 96 AD, the early church had accepted the 27 New Testament books as canonical, as seen from early church writings. The early church accepted the Scriptures because it believed them to be from God. The **early church saw itself as subject to the Bible's authority**, not vice versa.  
The Catholic church maintains that the books comprising the New Testament Canon were determined at the Council of Carthage in 397 AD. **THIS IS INCORRECT.**  
This council simply **affirmed** and **restated** what the early churches had **always accepted**.  
We must not make the mistake of thinking that the Scriptures received their authority because some council made a public statement of their acceptance. The early churches, pastors, deacons and people all submitted to the Bible as their authority because it came from God.  
Though the church existed before the New Testament was written, this does not give the church authority over or equality to the Scriptures. The church must **always** be subject to the authority of God's written Word.
8. **Israel as a nation** existed before the Old Testament was written, yet it would be **wrong** for Israel to claim authority equal to or greater than the Old Testament.  
The same must apply today, that no institution (like the church, home or government, even though it is older than the New Testament) can claim authority greater than the New Testament.
9. To support its position, the Catholic church advances the error that the scriptures never claimed to be adequate to meet all our needs, based on John 21:25 "And there are also many other things which Jesus did, the which, if they should be written every one, I suppose that even the world itself could not contain the books that should be written." John here never hints this idea. He just says that God saw fit to give us what He gave us as being able to meet all our spiritual needs.  
**Paul** says the opposite to the Roman Catholic church in 2 Timothy 3:16,17. "All scripture is given by inspiration of God, (not by the Roman Catholic church) and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness: That the man of God may be **PERFECT**, (or complete) throughly furnished unto ALL good works".  
Here the Bible can furnish us to all good works.
10. **Peter** says that the Bible is sufficient to meet all of our needs:  
"His divine power has given unto us all things that pertain unto life and godliness." II Peter 1:3.

10. The procedure which God used to gather these books **did not give the collecting agency** an authority equal to the Scriptures. God gave us the scriptures as our final and only authority in all matters of faith or morals.

### **ERROR 33: THEY TURN PEOPLE AWAY FROM CHRIST TO 12 OTHER THINGS.**

Christians in history who were reproached for the name of Christ, were martyred, glorifying Christ by their death. The Roman Catholic Church, who martyred these Christians for their love and faith in Christ, is described as: "on their part he is evil spoken of, but on your part he is glorified." I Peter 4:14. The Roman Catholic Church **speaks evil of Christ** as follows:

1. People are turned from **trusting Christ alone** to save them, to trust in **church sacraments** and **good works** to save them.

2. People are turned from **trusting Christ's Word, the Bible**, to trust **Catholic ideas and tradition** as the guide to life.
3. People are turned from **confessing sins directly to Christ** as mediator, to confessing sins to a **priest** as mediator.
4. People are turned from trusting **Christ** as the sole sufficient **Saviour**, to trust a **wafer** that is said to become Christ.
5. People are turned from **praying to Christ**, and told to **pray to saints**.
6. People are turned from **trusting Christ for protection**, and pointed to trusting **statues, medals and images** to protect them.
7. People are turned from looking to **Christ lovingly welcoming** them into heaven, and instead are pointed to **fear purgatory** at death.
8. People are pointed to **pray to Mary** as **merciful**, and are turned away from **praying to Christ** as **harsh, unwelcoming and unapproachable**.
9. People are turned away from **Christ** as the **Rock** on which the church is based, and are pointed to **Peter as the Rock**.
10. People are turned away from **Christ** as the **only bridge to heaven**, to **Popes** as **pontif** (bridge builder) instead. John 14:6.
11. People are pointed away from accepting **Christ's promise of forgiveness in I John 1:9**, to do **works of penance** and contrition to regain God's favour instead.
12. People are told to **reject Christ speaking to their consciences** about Rome's errors and evils, and to trust **Catholic doctrines** and **Papal infallibility** instead.

All of this is speaking evil of Christ, His Word and His work.

The Roman Catholic influence in the New International Version has resulted in part of I Peter 4:14 being omitted. Compare the NIV with the King James Version:

NIV.	1 Peter 4:14	King James Version.
If you are insulted for the name of Christ, you are blessed, for the spirit of glory and of God rests on you. ---- OMIT ---- ---- OMIT ----	If ye be reproached for the name of Christ, happy are ye; for the spirit of glory and of God resteth on you: <b>on their part he is evil spoken of, but on your part he is glorified.</b>	

By turning people away from Christ to other things, truly the Catholic Church is speaking evil of Christ. As such, they can be justly called an antichrist.

### CONCLUSION.

God says: "**COME OUT OF HER, MY PEOPLE**, that ye be not partakers of her sins, and that ye receive not of her plagues." Revelation 18:4.

Religion may make a person feel comfortable and righteous, but God reminds us that "all our righteousness are as filthy rags." Isaiah 64:6. Nicodemus was one of the most religious men in Israel, yet he needed to be born again.

Religion is man's efforts to reach God by good works and sacraments, but salvation is trusting in Christ's blood sacrifice on the cross as the full payment for our sins. You can be religious, yet not saved and still go to hell. Receive Jesus Christ as your Saviour and you'll then become a son of God.

There are **seven possible reasons** why some people **choose to remain** in the Roman Catholic church:

1. Lack of knowledge of the Word of God.
2. Fear of rejection by family and friends.
3. Fear of going against ancestors.
4. Fear of becoming a social outcast.
5. Habit.
6. Fear of going to hell.
7. Fear of change to the unknown.

Ask **Christ** to save you rather than a church. Trust the **Bible** to guide you rather than a man made system.

## **111. ERRORS OF SEVENTH DAY ADVENTISM**

Many SDA's are trying to gain acceptance as part of the orthodox Bible based Christian community. However, the following points show them not to hold the "faith once delivered to the saints." Jude 3. These false doctrines of Seventh Day Adventism warn people to leave SDA and not to join with SDAs.

### **1. THE SABBATH.**

SDA's insist that we must keep the Sabbath as a day of worship. This is wrong because:

- a) The New Testament never commands Christians to worship or meet on the Saturday Sabbath. Instead, Christians meet on the first day of the week, Sunday, in the following Bible passages:
  1. 1 Corinthians 16:1,2, to put money in the collection on Sunday. ("no gatherings when I come").
  2. Acts 20:7 Paul preached to Christians at Troas whose habit was to meet to break bread on the first day of the week. Paul preached to Jews in a synagogue on Saturday & Christians on Sunday.
  3. John 20:19,26 Jesus, after His resurrection met with the disciples on the first day of the week.
  4. Romans 14:5,6 Paul, when discussing which day to meet, did not command meeting on the Saturday Sabbath, (as SDAs do). He said "Let every man be fully persuaded in his own mind."
  5. Colossians 2:16,17 "Let no man judge you in ... holy days or Sabbath days: which are a shadow of things to come."

SDA's judge Christians as disobedient who keep Sunday as a holyday. Paul says that SDA's are wrong to judge Christians for not keeping Saturday as a holyday.

- b) SDA's claim that the Roman Catholic church after Constantine in 320 AD changed the day of worship from Saturday to Sunday. This is false, as seen by ten quotes from church writers from 90-300 AD who all say that the practice of Christians everywhere was to meet on Sunday, not the Jewish Saturday Sabbath. SDA's have no early quotes to show early Christians meeting on Saturday.

### **2. SOUL SLEEP.**

SDA's deny that believers at death go to heaven. They say that believers go to soul sleep in the grave until Christ's return. JW's, Christadelphians and other false groups believe this error. See Chapter 97 in this book on "The Error of Soul Sleep". The main verses disproving the soul sleep error are:

1. Philippians 1:23 "I am in a straight betwixt two, having a desire to depart, and to be with Christ".
2. 2 Cor. 5:8 "To be absent from the body (death), and to be present with the Lord." (in heaven).
3. Hebrews 12:1 "We are surrounded by so great a cloud of witnesses". (The departed believers discussed in Hebrews 11, who now watch us from heaven.)
4. Hebrews 12:23,24 "The heavenly Jerusalem ... the church of the firstborn, which are written in heaven and to the spirits of just men made perfect."
5. 1 Thessalonians 4:14 "Them also which sleep in Jesus will God bring with him." (Bring, not take). At Christ's return to raise believers bodies, He brings our spirits & souls from heaven with Him.
6. Revelation 6:9,10 "I saw under the altar the souls of them that were slain for the Word of God."
7. Isaiah 14:9,10 "Hell from beneath..stirs up the dead for thee. All they shall speak and say to thee."
8. Ezekiel 32:21 "The strong among the mighty shall speak to him out of the midst of hell..."
9. Ezekiel 32:30,31 "The Zidonians which are gone down with the slain ... Pharaoh shall see them and shall be comforted, even Pharaoh and all his army slain by the sword."
10. Luke 16:19-31 The dead rich man and dead Abraham spoke to each other.

### **3. SDA'S REGARD ELLEN WHITE (1825-1915) AS A PROPHET or TEACHER.**

"I suffer not a woman to teach, nor to usurp authority over the man, but to be in silence." 1 Tim. 2:12. Ellen White claimed to have received more than 2000 "inspired counsels from the Lord" (visions) from 1844 to 1868. ("he hath not seen." Col. 2:18). SDA's err in allowing a woman teacher to instruct them.

### **4. CHRIST.**

Mrs White said: "Christ took upon His sinless nature our sinful nature. Christ took our nature and it's deteriorating condition." (Q.D. p.654-656). According to White and SDA's, Christ acquired a sinful nature. (False). Christ had a sinless human nature. Christ took our sin punishment, not our sin nature.

### **5. LOSS OF SALVATION.**

"Now while our Great High Priest is making atonement for us, we should seek to become perfect in Christ." (ref: The Great Controversy, E.G.White, 1911, p.623).

SDA's teach that though saved by grace, we are kept saved by keeping the Law. This is partial atonement. Therefore, to stay saved according to SDA's, we must continue to keep the Sabbath, the 10 Commandments and pay the tithe. "by whom we have now received the atonement." (Romans 5:11).

## **6. INVESTIGATIVE JUDGMENT.**

Investigative judgment means no assurance of salvation. According to SDA's, beginning on October 22, 1844, Christ entered upon the "judgment phase" of His ministry, whereby He blots out sin. The SDA "Investigative Judgement" doctrine rests on Ellen White's claimed revelation that Christ entered the Holy of Holies not at His ascension, but in 1844 (The Great Controversy, p.362-373).

Hebrews 9:12 contradicts White's theory: "by His own blood he entered (past tense) in once (not in 1844) into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us." Hebrews 9:12,25.

'now once in the end of the world hath he appeared (33AD) to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself'.v26

SDA's teach that Christ transferred the record of believers sins to the heavenly sanctuary, which will be finally cleansed at the conclusion of the Investigative Judgment, their day of atonement.

White says in "Patriarchs and Prophets", p.357 this heresy: "The blood of Christ, while it was to release the repentant sinner from the condemnation of the law, was not to cancel the sin. It would stand on record in the sanctuary until the final atonement." SDAs filter all Scripture through Ellen White's prophecies. Hence SDA's sins are not cancelled or forgiven yet. What a worry. No wonder they have no assurance of salvation until the imaginary Investigative Judgment is finished.

Q: If Christ can create the universe in 6 days, why does He take from 1844 until now to investigate the books? Is Christ a slow reader? These 6 verses show the SDA Investigative Judgment to be false:

"The Lord knoweth them that are His." 2 Timothy 2:19. "I know my sheep." John 10:14.

"cleanse us from all unrighteousness." 1 John 1:9. "he had by himself purged our sins." Hebrews 1:3.

"yet now hath he reconciled..." Colossians 1:21. "having forgiven you all trespasses." Colossians 2:13.

Christ's judgments are after He returns, not before: "When the Son of Man shall come in his glory then shall he sit upon the throne of His glory:& before Him shall be gathered all nations." Mat25:31,32.

Hebrews 4:13 exposes the SDA limitation on Christ's omniscience: "Neither is there any creature that is not manifest in his sight: but all things are naked and opened unto the eyes of him with whom we have to do." Since Jesus knows all cases already, why must He investigate?

## **7. SATAN AS THE SCAPEGOAT FOR OUR SINS.**

White says in TGC page 422: "When Christ, by virtue of His own blood, removes the sins of His people from the heavenly sanctuary at the close of His ministration, He will place them upon Satan, who, in the execution of the judgment, must bear the final penalty."

According to SDA's, Satan becomes the scapegoat of Leviticus 16. **This lack of clear distinction between the forgiveness of sins at salvation, and the blotting out of sins at some time in the future, makes it impossible for anyone to know, even at death, whether he is saved or not.** (Isaiah 44:22).

SDA's are not allowed to experience assurance of salvation, because there would be no pressure for them to keep the Old Testament law and Sabbath as interpreted by Ellen White.

Having the sins of all men laid on Satan, assigns to Satan an indispensable role in the blotting out of sins. This nullifies the all-sufficiency of the finished work of Christ.

## **8. ANOTHER GOSPEL.**

The Investigative Judgment and Scapegoat theories are "another Gospel" that Paul warns us about in Galatians 1:8,9. Paul places a double curse on those preaching a false gospel such as SDA's.

## **9. THE MARK OF THE BEAST.**

SDA's believe that Sunday keeping will be the mark of the Beast of Revelation 13:16-18.

White says: "In the last days, the Sabbath test will be made plain. When this time comes, anyone who does not keep the Sabbath will receive the mark of the Beast and will be kept from heaven." TGC, p449 This is wrongly dividing the word of truth. This shows SDAs careless, deceitful handling of Scripture.

## **10. SDA'S ARE VERY CONFUSED ON PROPHECY SUBJECTS.**

SDA's think that God has finished with Israel. Romans 11:2,25; Hosea 3:4,5 refute this idea. To SDA's, much of Revelation had been fulfilled by 500 AD. They don't understand Daniel's 70 week prophecy, taking the 69 weeks as literally 173,880 days (correct), but taking the last half of the 70<sup>th</sup> week (3.5 years) as being 1260 years (wrong). (Daniel 9:24-27). Conclusion: Leave the SDA movement today.

## **112. WHY IT IS RIGHT FOR CHRISTIANS TO MEET ON SUNDAY, NOT SATURDAY, THE JEWISH SABBATH**

Seventh Day Adventists accuse Christians of constantly breaking the fourth Commandment to keep the Sabbath (Saturday) holy. Christians meet on the Sunday. Some Christians keep every day holy. Why do we meet on the Sunday, not Saturday? Five main reasons are:

- 1. Keeping the Saturday Sabbath was the sign of the Mosaic Covenant between God and Jews only (Exodus 31:13,14,16,17).**
  - i) "Speak thou also unto the children of Israel, saying, Verily, my sabbaths ye shall keep: for it is a sign between ME and YOU throughout your generations." Exodus 31:13.
  - ii) "Wherefore the children of Israel shall keep the sabbath, to observe the sabbath throughout their generations, for a perpetual covenant." Exodus 31:16.
  - iii) "It is a sign between ME and the children of Israel forever: for in six days the LORD made heaven and earth, and on the seventh day he rested, and was refreshed." Exodus 31:17.  
Also God reiterates this command in Ezekiel 20:12,20.
  - iv) "Moreover also I gave them my sabbaths, to be a sign between me and them." Ezekiel 20:12
  - v) "And hallow my sabbaths; and they shall be a sign between me and you." Ezekiel 20:20.
- Notice that God says on **four occasions** that sabbath-keeping is a sign between **God and Israel**, and that the Sabbath is to be kept throughout their generations, forever.  
"Who are **Israelites**; to whom pertaineth ... the **giving of the law**..." Romans 9:4.

### **2. Early Church Writers Before 300 AD Observed Sunday.**

They never once say that they observed Saturday. For example, Barnabas (100 AD), Ignatius (107 AD), Justin Martyr (145 AD), Tertullian (180 AD), Victorinus (280 AD), Bardaisan (154 AD), Cyprian (200 AD), Irenaeus (178 AD) all write that Christians met on Sunday.

They **never** refer to Christian's day of worship being the Saturday sabbath.

The Edict of Laodicea (320 AD) officially confirmed a long established practice.

This is significant because SDA's say that the Catholic church after 320 AD changed Saturday worship to Sunday worship. This theory is nowhere found in any Church Father's writings, but instead Sunday as the Christian day of worship has always been the rule.

The early church writers, many of whom were taught by the apostles, refer at least 14 times to Sunday as being the day of meeting together for worship.

The SDA Church has never successfully refuted these historical facts.

**Church Fathers Observing SUNDAY, not SATURDAY, are:**

- 1. Justin Martyr 100-165 AD (Volume 1, Page 186).**  
*"And on the day called Sunday, all who live in cities or in the country gather together to one place, and the memoirs of the apostles or the writings of the prophets are read ... But Sunday is the day on which we all hold our common assembly, because it is the first day on which God, having wrought a change in the darkness and matter, made the world; and Jesus Christ our Saviour on the same day rose from the dead."*
- 2. Ignatius (110 AD), Bishop of Antioch.**  
*"If then those who walk in the ancient practices attain to newness of hope, no longer observing the Sabbath, but fashioning their lives after the Lord's Day on which our life also arose through Him, that we may be found disciples of Jesus Christ, our only teacher."*
- 3. The Epistle of Barnabas 120-150 AD.**  
*"Your new moons and your sabbaths I cannot endure". Isaiah 1:13.  
"You perceive how He speaks: your present sabbaths are not acceptable to me, but that which I had made in giving rest to all things, I shall make a beginning of the eighth day, that is a beginning of another world. Wherefore also, we keep the eighth day with joyfulness, a day also in which Jesus rose from the dead."*

4. **Bardaisan (born 154 AD).**  
 "Wherever we be, all of us are called by the one name of the Messiah, namely Christians and upon one day which is the **first day of the week**, we assemble ourselves together and on the appointed days we abstain from food."
  5. **The Teaching of the Apostles 160 AD (Volume 8, Page 668).**  
 "The Apostles further appointed: On the **first day of the week** let there be service and the reading of the Holy Scriptures, and the oblation: because on the **first day of the week** our Lord rose from the place of the dead, and on the **first day of the week** He arose upon the world, and on the **first day of the week** He ascended up to heaven."
  6. **Tertullian 150-240 AD (Volume 3, Page 70).**  
 "The Holy Spirit upbraids the Jews with their holy-days. Your Sabbaths, and new moons, and ceremonies" says He, "My soul hateth." **By us, to whom Sabbaths are strange, and the new moons and festivals formerly beloved by God ..."**
  7. **Cyprian, Bishop of Carthage, 200-258 AD.**  
 "The Lord's Day is both the first and the eighth day."
  8. **Ad Nationes 217 AD (Volume 3, Page 123).**  
 "Others, with greater regard to good manners, it must be confessed, suppose that the **sun** is the God of the Christians, because it is a well known fact that we pray towards the east, or because we make Sunday a day of festivity."
  9. **Victorinus 280 AD (Volume 7, Page 342).**  
 "And let the paraseve become a rigorous fast, lest we should appear to observe any Sabbath with the Jews, which Christ Himself, the Lord of the Sabbath, says by His prophets that "His soul hateth;" which Sabbath He in His body abolished, although, nevertheless, He had formerly Himself commanded Moses that circumcision should not pass over the eighth day, which day very frequently happens on the Sabbath, as we read written in the Gospel."
  10. **Irenaeus, Bishop of Lyons, 155 AD (Volume 8, Page 773).**  
 "The mystery of the Lord's resurrection may not be celebrated any other day than on the Lord's Day."
- SDA's try to equate the Sabbath with the Lord's Day by linking Mark 2:28 with Revelation 1:10. They reason that since "the Son of Man is Lord also of the Sabbath" (Mark 2:27,28), when John says that he "was in the Spirit on the Lord's Day" (Revelation 1:10). Jesus was just saying in Mark 2:28 that as Lord of all, He could do as He pleased on the Sabbath Day.
- Early Christian writers never once say that Saturday was their common day of worship.

3. **Early Christians Met on the First Day of the Week, Sunday, in:**
  - i) "And upon the **first day of the week**, when the **disciples came together** to break bread, Paul preached unto them, ready to depart on the morrow." Acts 20:7.  
 Early Christians met on Sunday for their agape love feast, followed by the Lord's Supper.
  - ii) "Now concerning the **collection** for the saints, as I have given **order** to the **churches of Galatia**, even so do ye. Upon the **first day of the week** let every one of you lay by him in store, as God hath prospered him ..." 1 Corinthians 16:2.  
 Early Christians, **who met on Sunday**, were to **give money** in the collection. They did not meet on Saturday. This order was also given to the churches of Galatia who met on Sunday.
  - iii) "Then the same day at evening, being the **first day** of the week, when the doors were shut where the **disciples were assembled** ... Jesus stood in the midst, and saith unto them, Peace be unto you." John 20:19.  
 "After **eight days** again his disciples were within, then came Jesus ..." John 20:26.  
 Jesus appeared on the Sunday, as well as the following Sunday that the disciples met.

Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
8						

4. **Paul When Discussing Sabbath-Keeping Never Commands Christians to Keep the Sabbath, which He Surely Would Have if it was Meant for Christians.**

- i) "One man esteemeth one day above another (Seventh Day Adventists): another esteemeth every day alike. Let every man be fully persuaded in his own mind." Romans 14:5.  
"he that **regardeth not the day**, to the Lord he doth not regard it." Romans 14:6.  
Note: Paul here had a great chance to say "you must meet on Saturday", but he did not state either day as mandatory. Why did Paul not command sabbath-keeping here? Nor should we.
- ii) "Let no man therefore judge you in meat, or in drink, or in respect of an **holyday**, or of the **new moon**, or of the **SABBATH DAYS**." Colossians 2:16. Jews protested Sunday keeping.  
Note: Don't judge people as being wrong because they don't keep the Jewish Sabbath.
- iii) "Not forsaking the assembling of ourselves together, as the manner of some is." Heb. 10:25.  
No mention here of the need to keep Sabbath Saturday.

5. **Sixteen Times we are told that the MOSAIC LAW is FINISHED for Believers.**

**KEY:** The Mosaic Law (including sabbath) is compared to a dead husband (Rom. 7:1-4), a prison (Gal. 3:23), and a schoolmaster (Gal. 3:24-25).

**Question:** SDA's say "But aren't we supposed to keep the Mosaic 10 Commandments laws?"

**Answer:** We are not under the Mosaic law, but under a different law in the Church Age, "the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus" (Rom.8:2; Gal.6:2) which is an internal Holy Spirit motivated law. Sabbath keeping is never mentioned as part of this law.

- i) "Ye are not under law, but under **grace** ..." Romans 6:14,15 and Galatians 5:18.
- ii) "Ye are dead to the law by the body of Christ; that ye should be **married to another** (ie. to Christ)." Romans 7:1-4.  
Note: As a woman is bound by the law to her husband as long as he lives, yet if the husband is dead, she is **FREE FROM that LAW** (v.2,3). So, Christians are become **DEAD TO THE LAW**, by the body of Christ, and we are **MARRIED TO ANOTHER** (Jesus Christ).  
The Law is likened to the dead husband. This means that **Christians'** relationship to the Law has been severed.
- iii) "Now we are DELIVERED FROM THE LAW, that being **dead** wherein we were held; that we should serve in **NEWNESS OF SPIRIT**, and not in the **oldness of the letter**."  
Romans 7:6.  
"Oldness of the letter" of the law is not how we serve. This states that:
  - a) We are **delivered** from the law,
  - b) the law is dead, which held us,
  - c) we now serve in newness of the **Law of the Spirit**.

- iv) "The **LAW** of the **SPIRIT OF LIFE** in Christ Jesus has made me FREE from the LAW OF SIN and DEATH." Romans 8:2.

This means that now we have Christ, we have the Holy Spirit, and we operate under a **different law**, the **law of the Spirit of life** in Christ Jesus. We are now **FREE** from the **Mosaic law of sin and death**.

v.4 The **righteousness of the law** is possible to be fulfilled in us, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit (by yielding to the leading of the Spirit daily).

v.9 Ye are **not in the flesh**, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you.

- v) "Christ is the END (5056) OF THE LAW for righteousness to every one that believeth." Romans 10:4. Note: "END" (5056) means "termination, completion in respect to **time**."  
"The **law** as a demanded obligation has come to an end because Jesus has fulfilled its demands and imparted his righteousness to those who believe. Christ has freed believers

from its tyranny. The standards of righteousness come to us now **not** from **outside** by **imposition**, but from **inside** by the Spirit who writes the law upon our hearts."

— *The Complete New Testament Word Study Dictionary*, by Spiros Zodhiates. Page 1376.

We are now under a **NEW LAW** from **WITHIN** called:

- a) The **Law of the Spirit of Life** in Christ Jesus. Romans 8:2.
- b) Bear ye one another's burdens, and so fulfil the **Law of Christ**.
- c) Whoso looketh into the perfect **law of liberty**. John 13:34; James 1:25; Galatians 6:2.
- d) If ye fulfil the **royal law**. "Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself" ye do well. James 2:8

vi) **In Galatians 3:23-25 Paul describes the law as:**

- a) a **PRISON**. "before faith came, we were **KEPT UNDER THE LAW, SHUT UP**." v.23  
We were shut up in the prison of the law, until faith in Christ came. Then we were released from the prison of law by Christ, to serve in newness of Spirit.

vii) b) a **SCHOOLMASTER** that controlled us until Christ came.

"the **LAW** was our **SCHOOLMASTER** (3807 a strict, disciplining slave who led boys from home to school) to **bring us unto Christ**, that we might be justified by **faith**."v.24

But after that faith is come, we are "**NO LONGER** under a schoolmaster." v.25.

**Note carefully:** The Law brought conviction of sin to bring us to be saved by faith in Christ. Now that we are saved, we are **NO LONGER** under the Mosaic Law. This means that we are no longer under the Sabbath-keeping Law.

viii) **Colossians 2:14 "Blotting out** the handwriting of **ORDINANCES** (1378) that was against us,...and **took it out of the way**, nailing it to his cross."

**Ordinances** contained the Ten Commandments as Eph. 2:15 and Hebrews 9:1-4 states.

ix) **Ephesians 2:15** "Having **ABOLISHED** (2673) in his flesh the enmity, even the **LAW** (3551) of **COMMANDMENTS** contained in **ordinances** (1378) ..."

**Ordinance** (1378) dogma means decree of the Mosaic Law, external precepts.

**Law** (3551) ("nomos" in Greek) means laws of the **Mosaic statutes**, including:

- a) laws of civil rights and duties, marriage, Levitical priesthood.
- b) laws of external religious rites eg. purification, circumcision, sacrifices.
- c) laws of hearts and conduct of men.
- d) a code or body of laws.

**Abolished** (2673) ("katargeo" in Greek) means to destroy, cause to cease, do away with, put an end to, a complete cessation. Therefore, Christ completely abolished the **Mosaic statutes**, code and body of laws, contained in decrees.

Note: Christ **ABOLISHED** the **LAW OF COMMANDMENTS**.

x) **Hebrews 9:1-4** "The **first covenant** had **ORDINANCES** of divine service....For there was a tabernacle made; the first, wherein was the candlestick, and the table, and the shewbread; which is called the sanctuary.....the **TABLES OF THE COVENANT**." (See Heb. 8:13).

The **first covenant** had **ordinances** which contained the **tables of the covenant** (10 Comm.). Since the **first covenant** has vanished (Heb.8:13), the **ordinances** are taken away (Col.2:14), so the **10 Commandments** are abolished (Eph.2:15) as they are in first cov. & ordinances.(9:1-4)

xi) "For the **priesthood being changed**, there is made of necessity a **CHANGE ALSO OF THE LAW**." **Hebrews 7:12**.

Note: The priesthood is changed from **Levitical** (v.11) to **Christ**. Therefore the **Law of sin and death**, is changed to the **Law of the Spirit of Life in Christ** (Romans 8:2).

The Levitical priests received their authority from the Old Testament law, and since the Levitical priesthood has been changed, the Law has been changed. The Mosaic Law made no provision for a priest from Judah (Hebrews 7:14), so the **entire system of Old Testament law** has been **changed** and **fulfilled** in Jesus Christ and has therefore been

**taken out of the way** (“Blotting out the handwriting of **ordinances** that was against us..and **took it out of the way**” and, “Let no man judge you in..**sabbath days.**” Colossian 2:14,16). The believer has been set **free from the law** (Gal.5:1-6),& is **dead to the law** (Rom. 7:1-4) **Objection:** But does this mean that I am “free to sin?”

**Answer:** No. “Free from the law” does not mean “free to sin,” but it means “free to do the will of God.” We obey, not because of **outward compulsion**, but because of the **inward constraint** of the **love for Christ** (2 Corinthians 5:14) doing the will of God from the heart (Ephesians 6:6). The indwelling Holy Spirit enables us to fulfil the “righteousness of the Law” as we yield to him (Romans 8:1-4).

- xii) “There is verily a **DISANNULLING of the COMMANDMENT** going before for the weakness and unprofitableness thereof.” Hebrews 7:18.

**Note:** The Old Testament Law is now **DISANNULLED** (115) (**CANCELLED**) by Christ.

- xiii) “He **TAKETH AWAY** the **FIRST** (Mosaic Covenant with Old Testament law, sabbath-keeping, etc) that he may **ESTABLISH** the **SECOND** (the New Testament new covenant of Christ).” Hebrews 10:9.

- xiv) “If ye are led of the Spirit, **YE** are **NOT UNDER the LAW.**” Galatians 5:18.

A Godly life is not lived under the rules of the **Law**, but is a life **led by the Holy Spirit**.

- xv) “Certain have troubled you with words, subverting your souls, saying, ye must be circumcised, and KEEP THE LAW: to whom WE GAVE NO SUCH COMMANDMENT.” Acts 15:19,20,24.

**Note:** The Apostles never commanded us to keep the law of the Sabbath day, because we are under the **law of the Spirit** of life.

Seventh Day Adventists are like Judaisers who trouble people with words and subvert people's souls, saying, “You must keep the law of the Sabbath day” or you’re not saved.

- xvi) But if the ministration of death, written and engraven in stones (10 Commandments), was **glorious**,....which glory was to be done away: (v.7)...For if the ministration of condemnation (*10 Commandments*) be glory....(v.9) For if that which is done away was glorious (*10 Commandments engraven in stones*), much more that which remaineth (*New Covenant*) is glorious (v.11).” (II Corinthians 3:7,9,11).

“Done away” (v.11) is “katargoumenon” (Gk) meaning that the 10 Commandments law has “ceased, put an end to, abolished, done away with”-Barnes).It gave way to the law of Christ.

**Question 1:** But doesn’t the Law refer to the Ceremonial Law only, and not to the Ten Commandments?

**Answer:** NO because: **a)** Romans 7:7 gives us an example of the Law as “Thou shalt not covet” (the tenth commandment).

“What shall we say then? Is the law sin? God forbid. Nay, I had not known sin, but by the law: for I had not known lust, except the law had said, Thou shalt not covet.”

If it is true that number 10 is dead to us, then it is also true that number 4 is dead to us also.

**b)** 2 Corinthians 3:7-11(engraven in stones), **c)** Ephesians 2:15 (commandments), **d)** Hebrews 9:1-4 (The first covenant had...tables of the covenant; 8:13 ‘ready to vanish’).

#### **Question to Sabbath-keepers:**

“Ye shall kindle NO FIRE throughout your habitations **UPON THE SABBATH DAY.**” Exodus 35:3. Note: Seventh Day Adventists break the Old Testament sabbath by cooking food, burning a gas fire, driving a car with internal combustion etc, on Saturday.

#### **Question to Sabbath-keepers:**

Every one of the 10 Commandments, **except number four**, “Keep the Sabbath day holy” are **repeated** to be kept by Christians in the New Testament.

We ask, "Why did God see fit to repeat every commandment **except** number four? Did God **forget** to repeat number 4, while he took pains to repeat the other nine? Is God forgetful?"

1. Thessalonians 1:9 Ye turned to God from idols, to serve the living and true God.
2. Galatians 5:20 Works of flesh are ... idolatry.
3. 1 Timothy 1:20 That they may learn not to blaspheme.
4. [NOT COMMANDED IN THE NEW TESTAMENT]
5. Ephesians 6:1-3 Honour thy father and mother.
6. Galatians 5:21 Works of flesh ... murderers.
7. Galatians 5:19 Works of flesh ... adultery.
8. Ephesians 4:28 Let him that stole, steal no more.
9. Ephesians 4:15 Speaking the truth in love. (Titus 2:3 Not false accusers...)
10. Ephesians 4:25 Putting away lying, speak every man the truth ..
10. Ephesians 5:5 Nor covetous man who is an idolater.
- Hebrews 13:5 Let your conversation be without covetousness.

### Conclusion:

1. 15 times we are told that the Mosaic Law is finished for believers:  
Romans 6:14,15 "ye are **not under law**."  
Romans 7:1-4 "**dead to the law** .. married to another." (Law is like a dead husband).  
Romans 7:6 "we are **delivered** from the law."  
Romans 8:2 "the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me **free** from the **law of sin and death**."  
Romans 10:4 "Christ is the **end of the law** ... to every one that believeth."  
II Corinthians 3:7,9,11. "written and **engraven in stones** .....was to be **done away**."  
Galatians 3:2 "we were **kept** under the **law, shut up**" (like in prison).  
Galatians 3:24,25 "after that faith is come, we are **no longer** under a **schoolmaster**" (law).  
Galatians 5:18 "ye are **not under the law**."  
Ephesians 2:15 "Having **abolished** in his flesh the enmity, even the **law of commandments contained in ordinances**;"  
Colossians 2:14 "Blotting out the handwriting of **ordinances** that was against us, **took it out of the way**"  
Hebrews 9:1-4,10 "The first covenant had **ordinances** of divine service, the **tables of the covenant**,"  
Hebrews 7:12 "**priesthood** being **changed**, there is made of necessity a **change also of the law**"  
Hebrews 7:18 "there is verily a **disannulling of the commandment** going before .."  
Hebrews 10:9 "He **taketh away** the **first** (Mosaic law), that he may **establish the second**."  
(new covenant)
2. There is **no reference** anywhere by the Ante-Nicene church writers of Christians meeting on the Saturday before 320 AD. Some of these men were taught by the Apostles. Did the Apostles get it wrong? Not likely. The early church writers refer at least ten times to SUNDAY being the day of meeting together for worship.
3. Saturday Sabbath was the sign of the Mosaic Covenant between **God** and the **Jews only**. (Exodus 31:13,16,17; Ezekiel 20:12,20).
4. Early Christians met on the first day of the week, Sunday in:  
Acts 20:7 "upon the **first day of the week**, when the disciples came together to break bread,"  
1 Corinthians 16:1,2 " upon the **first day of the week** let every one of you lay by him in store.."  
John 20:19,26 "... being the **first day of the week**, ..".
5. Paul when discussing Sabbath keeping, **never commands Christians to keep the Sabbath**, which he surely would have done if it was important for Christians as SDA's insist. (Romans 14:5,6; Colossians 2:16,17; Hebrews 10:24,25). Paul's visits to synagogues on Saturdays were just to witness to Jews. He fellowshiped with Christians on Sunday. He never commanded Christians to attend church on Saturday. Keep meeting on Sunday as the early Christians taught.

## Verses to Refute Seventh Day Adventism

1. The Ten commandments are part of the Mosaic Covenant, both of which are done away, abolished, and vanished. SDAs believe that the Mosaic Covenant is abolished, but not the 10 Commandments.

**Kev:** These verses show that the 10 Commandments are part of the abolished Mosaic Covenant. Hence the 10 Commandments are also abolished. This is fatal to Seventh Day Adventism.

- i) Hebrews 9:1-4 “The first covenant had ORDINANCES … the tables of the covenant.”
- ii) Ephesians 2:15 “Having abolished in his flesh the enmity, even the law of commandments contained in ORDINANCES (1378).” Note the connection with Col. 2:14.
- iii) Colossians 2:14 “Blotting out the handwriting of ORDINANCES (1378) that was against us, which was contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross.”
- iv) 2 Corinthians 3:7-11 “If the ministration of death, written and engraven in stones was glorious, much more that which remaineth was glorious.” (v.11).
- v) Exodus 34:28 “He wrote upon the tables, the words of the covenant, even the ten commandments.”
- vi) Deut. 9:9 “When I was gone up into the mount to receive the tables of stone, even the tables of the covenant.”
- vii) Deut. 4:13 “He declared unto you his covenant, which he commanded you to perform, even ten commandments; and he wrote them upon two tables of stone.”
- viii) 1 Kings 8:9 “There was nothing in the ark save two tables of stone…when the Lord made a covenant with Israel.”
- ix) Hebrews 8:13 “A new covenant, he hath made the first old… ready to vanish away.”

### **2. Verses stating that the Law of Moses is done away:**

- i) “But before faith came, we were kept under the law, shut up (as in prison) unto the faith which should afterwards be revealed.” Galatians 3:23.  
The Law was like a prison which people were shut up in until after faith in Christ came.
- ii) “Wherefore the law (Ten commandments) was our schoolmaster to bring us unto Christ, that we may be justified by faith. But after that faith is come, we are NO LONGER under a schoolmaster (the ten commandments law).” Galatians 3:24,25.
- iii) “He taketh away the first (Mosaic Covenant, including the Law of Moses) that he may establish the second (New covenant, including Law of Christ).” Hebrews 10:9.
- iv) “There is verily a disannulling of the commandment going before for the weakness and unprofitableness thereof.” Hebrews 7:18.
- v) “For the priesthood being changed, there is made of necessity a change also of the LAW.” Heb 7:12  
As the priesthood is changed from Levitical (v.11) to Christ, so the law of sin and death (10 commandments), is changed to the law of the Spirit of life in Christ.” Romans 8:2; Galatians 6:2.
- vi) “Certain have troubled you with words, subverting your souls, saying, ye must be circumcised, and keep the Law: to whom we gave no such commandment.” Acts 15:19,24.
- vii) “If ye are led of the Spirit, ye are NOT under the Law.” Galatians 5:18.
- viii) “Christ is the end of the Law for righteousness, to every one that believeth.” Romans 10:4.
- ix) “Now we are delivered from the Law, that being dead wherein we were held; that we should serve in newness of spirit, and not in the oldness of the letter.” Romans 7:6.
- x) “Ye are not under the law, but under grace.” Romans 6:14,15; Galatians 5:18. (Romans 7:1-4.
- xi) “Ye are dead to the Law by the body of Christ; that ye should be married to another (to Christ).”
- xii) When did the law finish? When Christ came, as seen by the word “TILL” in Galatians 3:19.  
“Wherefore then serveth the Law?” Romans 7:1-4. “It was added because of transgressions, TILL the seed (Christ) should come.” Galatians 3:19.
- xiii) Paul said that the sabbath is a shadow of things to come:  
“the sabbath days; which are a shadow of things to come.” Colossians 2:16,17.
- xiv) “The Law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus has made me free from the Law of sin and death” Romans 8:2. We now operate under the Law of Christ. We are now free from the Mosaic Law of sin and death.

### **3. Nobody knew of or heard of the Sabbath until Mount Sinai:**

- i) "Thou camest down also upon Mount Sinai... And madest known unto them thy holy sabbath by the hand of Moses." Nehemiah 9:13,14.
- ii) It was impossible for the Sabbath law to be practiced before Moses, because God instructed Moses to change the Jewish calendar, making the departure from Egypt "the beginning of months; it shall be the first month of the year to you." (Exodus 12:2). Sabbath observance started from this date.
- iii) On this point Moses needed instruction, which he passed on to the people: " This is that which the Lord hath said, Tomorrow is the rest of the holy sabbath unto the Lord (v.23). Eat that today; for today is a sabbath unto the Lord: today ye shall not find it in the field." Exodus 16:23,25,29,30.

iv) Further instruction was given to Moses and Aaron about the sabbath, because "it was not declared what should be done" to the sabbath breaker who gathered sticks on the sabbath day. Numbers 15:32-36

v) Israelite leaders before Moses did not keep the Sabbath. "The Lord our God made a covenant with us in Horeb (1491BC). The Lord made not this covenant with our fathers, but with us, who are all of us here alive this day." Deuteronomy 5:2,3, (1451 BC).

Hence Adam, Abraham, Isaac, Jacob and Joseph knew nothing about Sabbath keeping.

vi) The Sabbath law came 430 years after the Abrahamic Covenant: "The Law, which was 430 years after Abraham." Galatians 3:17. This shows that Abraham never knew about the Sabbath law.

vii) No one before the Exodus (Exod 16) ever knew about the Sabbath law: "I caused them to go forth out of the land of Egypt. I gave them my Sabbaths, to be a sign between me and them." Ezekiel 20:10,12

viii) The first time something is mentioned, it is introduced with the indefinite article "a" or "an", but never with the definite article "the". This shows that the Sabbath was first introduced in Exodus 16:23.

### **4. The Sabbath was a sign between God and Israel only, not between God and Christians.**

i) "Speak thou also unto the children of Israel, saying, Verily my sabbaths ye shall keep: for it is a sign between ME and YOU throughout your generations." Exodus 31:13.

ii) "Wherefore the children of Israel shall keep the sabbath, to observe the sabbath throughout their generations, for a perpetual covenant." Exodus 31:16.

iii) "It is a sign between ME and the children of Israel forever." Exodus 31:17.

iv) "Moreover also I gave them my sabbaths, to be a sign between me and them." Ezekiel 20:12.

v) "Hallow my sabbaths; and they shall be a sign between me and you." Ezekiel 20:20.

### **5. Early Christians met on Sunday, not Saturday.**

Paul taught Christians at church on Sunday,...and disputed with Jews in their synagogues on Saturday.

i) "And upon the first day of the week, when the disciples came together to break bread, Paul preached unto them, ready to depart on the morrow." Acts 20:7.

ii) "Now concerning the collection for the saints, as I have given order to the churches of Galatia, even so do ye. Upon the first day of the week let every one of you lay by him in store, as God hath prospered him, that there be no gatherings when I come." 1 Corinthians 16:1,2.

iii) "Then the same day at evening, being the first day of the week, when the doors were shut where the disciples were assembled...Jesus stood in the midst, and saith unto them, Peace be unto you." (v.19).

"After eight days again his disciples were within, then came Jesus..." John 20:19,26.

**Question 1:** Did the Jews protest against Christians for worshipping on Sunday? (Yes).

**Question 2:** Did the Jews protest against the Christians for not keeping the Jewish yearly feasts, new moon, and Sabbath days? (Yes). "Let no man therefore judge you in meat, or in drink, or in respect of an holy day, or of the new moon, or of the sabbath days." Colossians 2:16.

iv) See 15 church writers before 350 AD who all state that Christians met on Sunday and not Saturday.

### **6. Some were exempt from Sabbath keeping as a day of rest, priests&boys circumcised on Sabbath. Instead of the Sabbath being a day of rest for the priests, their work was doubled. (Numbers 28:9,10). Jesus asked the Jews, "Have ye not read in the Law how that on the Sabbath days the priests in the temple profane the sabbath, and are blameless." (Matthew 12:5). As New Testament priests (1 Peter 2:9), we are exempt from the Sabbath rest, because our whole lives should be dedicated to God as New Testament priests.**

### **113. TABLE OF CONTENTS (SDA)**

- 1) **Three Basic Positions** on the Christian Day of Worship. (p.746).
- 2) **7 Errors** in the “27 Fundamental Beliefs of SDAs.” (p.747).
- 3) **13 Official SDA Baptismal Vows.** (p.748).
- 4) **12 SDA Statements** that Ellen White was God’s Inspired Prophet. (p.748).
- 5) **5 Failed Prophecies** of Ellen White. (p.749).
- 6) **12 Unbiblical Statements** of Ellen White. (p.750).
- 7) **7 Contradictions** of Ellen White. (p.751).
- 8) **Challenge To SDAs:** Show One NT Verse that tells Christians to keep the Sabbath holy. (p.751)
- 9) SDAs claim Sunday Keeping is Following an **Image of the Beast.** (p.752).
- 10) Most SDAs **Break** the Sabbath they claim to Keep. (p.752).
- 11) Saturday (Sabbath) or Sunday? On Which Day Did **Early Christians Worship?** (p.752).
- 12) **Four Real Reasons** Why SDAs Keep the Sabbath. (p.754).
- 13) **Danger of Sabbath Keeping.** (p.754) i) A Change of the Law. (SDA Objections 1-5). ii) When did Sabbath law commence? iii) Real meaning of the Sabbath. iv) Some were exempt from the Sabbath law. v) How Sabbath should be Observed. vi) Danger of Sabbath keeping. vii) Apostles met on first day.
- 14) **Hebrews 4 background** (p760). Three Rests of Hebrews 4 (p761). viii) Does God change His laws?
- 15) **Debate** Between a Christian and an SDA. (p.762-765).
- 16) **SABBATARIAN ARGUMENTS REFUTED** (p.766).
  - 1) **SDA:** 10 Commandments are not in the Old Mosaic Covenant. (p.766).
  - 2) **SDA:** Sabbath day in Colossians 2:16 is not weekly Sabbath, but monthly or yearly Sabbaths. p.767
  - 3) **SDA:** The Sabbath law is a moral law because it is in the 10 Commandments. (p.768).
  - 4) **SDA:** 10 Commandments and Sabbath existed from the Garden of Eden. (p.769).
  - 5) **SDA:** Christ came to fulfil the law, not to destroy it (Matthew 5:17-18). (p.771).
  - 6) **SDA:** The 10 Commandments are for all mankind for all time. (p.772).
  - 7) **SDA:** If the 10 Commandments were abolished, we could murder, steal, commit adultery. (p.773)
  - 8) **SDA:** The Royal law of James 2:8-12 is the 10 Commandments law. (p.774).
  - 9) **SDA:** Jesus said “Keep my commandments.” John 14:15. SDA read this as 10 commandments.p774
  - 10) **SDA:** The NT quotes some of the **10 Commandments** proving that all 10 are binding today. p775
  - 11) **SDA:** The 10 Commandments contain all we need to know about perfect moral living. (p.775).
  - 12) **SDA:** God does not change, therefore neither does His law. (p.776).
  - 13) **SDA:** The Sabbath must be kept today because God blessed it and made it holy. (p.776).
  - 14) **SDA:** The “Lord’s Day” is the Sabbath because Jesus said He was Lord of the Sabbath. (p.778).
  - 15) **SDA:** John foresaw 21st Century Christians keeping the Sabbath day. (Matthew 24:20). (p.778).
  - 16) **SDA:** “The Sabbath was made for man, not man for the Sabbath.” (Mark 2:27). (p.778).
  - 17) **SDA:** The Sabbath is eternal and endures forever, therefore we must keep it today. (p.779).
  - 18) **SDA:** As the Sabbath was a memorial to 6-day creation, this proves Sabbath will last forever. 779
  - 19) **SDA:** Since the Sabbath will be kept in the Millennium (Isaiah 66:23) we should keep it now. 779
  - 20) **SDA:** The Sabbath is God’s special law above all laws. (p.780).
  - 21) **SDA:** The Sabbath is a sign between God and Christians. (p.780).
  - 22) **SDA:** Hebrew 4:9 proves we must keep the Sabbath. ‘There remains therefore a rest to the people of God
  - 23) **SDA:** Sabbath is not nailed to the Cross. HS still refers to Sabbath day after Christ’s death. p.781
  - 24) **SDA:** The Sabbath was not a shadow, because the Sabbath was given before the Fall. (p.781).
  - 25) **SDA:** The Sabbath is the way we know God sanctifies us. Ezekiel 20:12,20; Exodus 31:13. p.781
  - 26) **SDA:** Christ our example kept the Sabbath. (p.781).
  - 27) **SDA:** The disciples kept the Sabbath one day after Christ’s death. (p.782).
  - 28) **SDA:** Paul preaching on a Sabbath after the Cross proves we must keep the Sabbath today. p782
  - 29) **SDA:** Sunday is worshipping Sun. 30) **SDA: Ananias,** a devout Christian kept 10 Commandments.
  - 31) **SDA:** History shows that the very earliest Christians kept the Sabbath. (p.783).
  - 32) **SDA:** Christians copied Sunday keeping off the pagan religion of Mithraism. (p.783).
  - 33) **SDA:** The Pope changed the Sabbath from Saturday to Sunday. (p.784).
  - 34) **SDA:** Constantine changed Sabbath to Sunday. 35) **SDA:** ‘First day of week’ is mistranslated.p784
  - 36) **SDA:** Evening meeting in Acts 20:7 was on a Sabbath. (p.785).

## 113. SEVENTH- DAY ADVENTISM REFUTED

### 1) Three Basic Positions on The Christian Day of Worship

#### a) Seventh Day Adventist Position

- i) SDAs claim that Christians kept the Sabbath from 33-320AD, but due to the devil, Christians went into apostasy until Ellen White, the SDA prophetess, claimed to have a vision that the Sabbath law was not nailed to the cross. This is against Colossians 2:14.
- ii) In 1844, the first Adventists (known as Millerites) started keeping the Sabbath day. This was because a Seventh Day Baptist convinced his Methodist Minister that the Bible teaches us to keep the Sabbath.
- iii) Only in the 1800's did God, through Ellen White and the SDA Movement, restore by direct revelation the 'truth' that the day of Christian worship should be Saturday.
- iv) SDAs claim that Christians around 140AD borrowed Sunday worship from the pagan religion of Mithraism.
- v) Gradually, SDAs claim Sunday worship replaced Saturday worship.
- vi) SDAs interpret the "Seal of God" to be "Saturday Sabbath keeping". They claim that the mark of the beast is "Sunday Sabbath keeping", not now, but after some presumed future Sunday keeping law is passed.

#### b) The Bible's Position (the TRUTH)

- i) The 10 Commandments Law (including the requirement to keep the Sabbath day), along with all the laws of Moses, were abolished at the cross. (2 Cor. 3:7-11; Ephesians 2:15).
- ii) God gave the Old Mosaic Covenant at Mt Sinai through Moses, only to the Jews. The 10 Commandments are the foremost representation of this Old Covenant, which was replaced with the New Covenant, called the "Law of Christ" (Rom8:2; Gal 6:2; ICor9:21).
- iii) 100% of the Old Mosaic Covenant was abolished at the cross. (Col. 2:14; Ephes. 2:15).
- iv) No one before Moses (Adam, Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Job) ever heard of the Sabbath Law, nor did they ever keep it ("madest known" Nehem 9:13,14; Deut.5:2,3; Eze.20:12).
- v) The very first time anyone was commanded to keep the Sabbath was in Exodus 16:23-30. Genesis 2:2-3 was written by Moses to tell Jews at Sinai WHY they were to keep the Sabbath, NOT to teach WHEN the Sabbath was instituted.
- vi) The universal meeting day of Christians after Christ's resurrection was Sunday, and so it has been to today (Acts 20:7; I Cor. 16:1,2).
- vii) Sunday is not a Christian Sabbath, or a day of rest to be kept. It is the day God requires all Christians to meet together to worship God (Acts 20:7) and to provoke each other to love and good works. (Hebrews 10:24,25).
- viii) Christians do not keep the 10 Commandments Law of Moses. This does not mean that Christians are free to steal, murder and commit adultery just because the 10 Commandments are abolished. No! Christians are under a new and better law which is the Law of Christ (Galatians 3:24-25; 6:2; I Corinthians 9:20,21; Romans 8:2; Hebrews 7:12) and a new and better covenant (Hebrews 8:6-13).
- ix) We listen to Christ in all things, as our Head, and not to Moses. This is NT Christianity.
  - 1) Paul said, "If any man think himself to be a prophet, or spiritual, let him acknowledge that the things that I write unto you are the Lord's Commandments." (I Cor. 14:37).
  - 2) Peter quoted Moses, "A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things ... he shall say unto you" Acts 3:22

#### c) The General Protestant Position (vulnerable to SDA deception).

Protestants generally claim that the meaning of the Sabbath was transferred to Sunday to commemorate Christ's resurrection. They are doing the right thing (commemorating Christ's resurrection) but for the wrong reason (keeping the 4<sup>th</sup> Commandment).

- i) When Christians wrongly apply the 4<sup>th</sup> Commandment as the reason why they worship on Sunday, they are 1) Mistaken; 2) Opening themselves to manipulation by SDAs.

- ii) If a Christian justifies Sunday keeping by quoting the fourth Commandment (“Six days shalt thou labour, . . . but the seventh is the Sabbath”), all that an SDA needs to convert him to become an SDA is a calendar showing that if Saturday is the 7<sup>th</sup> day Sabbath, then ask, “Why aren’t you keeping it?”
- 2) 7 Errors in the “27 Fundamental Beliefs of SDAs”**
- a) They deny that man has a spirit. “Though created free beings, each person is an indivisible unity of body, mind and soul”. (Clause 7: *The Nature of Man*).  
Bible refutation: “I pray God your whole spirit, and soul and body be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.” (I Thessalonians 5:23).  
 Man’s makeup is spirit, soul (mind, emotions, will) and body. Not as SDAs think: “body, mind and soul.” (Soul = mind, emotions, will).
  - b) They claim that the “SDA church is the only true remnant church that keep God’s commandments.” The universal church (WRONG. Because it has not met yet) is composed of all who truly believe in Christ, but in the last days, a time of widespread apostasy, a remnant has been called out to keep the commandments of God (WRONG: No-one fully keeps the Commandments) and the faith of Jesus. This remnant announces the arrival of the judgment hour (WRONG: because SDAs invent an Investigative Judgment, saying it is now occurring in heaven.) This proclamation coincides with the work of judgment in heaven.” (WRONG: because judgment occurs after Christ’s return, not before. See 2 Corinthians 5:10). (Clause 12: *The Remnant and Its Mission*).
  - c) They claim Ellen White had the spiritual gift of prophecy:  
 “One of the gifts of the Holy Spirit is prophecy.” (WRONG: Prophecy as new revelations from God ceased with the completion of the NT in 96AD. (I Corinthians 13:8-13). “This gift is an identifying mark of the remnant church” (WRONG: No Bible proof), “and was manifested in the ministry of Ellen G White.” (WRONG: She was a false prophet because of her many false prophecies. (Deuteronomy 18:20-22). Joel 2:28,29 is fulfilled AFTER Christ’s 2<sup>nd</sup> Coming, not before. (Clause 17: *The Gift of Prophecy*).
  - d) They claim that Christians must keep the Jewish Sabbath: “The benevolent Creator, after six days of Creation, rested on the seventh day and instituted the Sabbath for all people” (WRONG: Only as a sign between God and the Jews – Exodus 31:13) “as a memorial of creation. The fourth commandment of God’s unchangeable law.” (WRONG: Many of God’s laws have changed, eg circumcision, animal sacrifices, etc.) “requires the observance of this seventh day Sabbath.....The Sabbath is God’s perpetual sign of His eternal covenant between Him and His people” (WRONG: It is not perpetual because it finished when Christ died. It was only between God and the Jews). “Joyful observance of this holy time is from sunset to sunset.” (Clause 19: *The Sabbath*).
  - e) They claim Christ began an Investigative Judgment in 1844.  
 “In 1844 at the end of the prophetic period of 2300 days (error 1) He entered the second and last phase of His atoning ministry (error 2). It is a work of investigative judgment which is part of the ultimate disposition of all sin (error 3).  
 The investigative judgment reveals to heavenly intelligences who among the dead are asleep in Christ and therefore, in Him, are deemed worthy (error 4) to have part in the first resurrection. . . . This judgment vindicates the justice of God in saving those who believe in Jesus. It declares that those who have remained loyal to God (error 5) shall receive the Kingdom.” (Clause 23: *Christ’s Ministry in the Heavenly Sanctuary*).  
Error 1 corrected: 2300 days are “days” from 6 September 171BC to 25 December 165 BC (Daniel 8:14) from when Antiochus IV Epiphanes desecrated the Temple up to its cleansing.  
Error 2,3 corrected: Christ’s atonement for our sins was fully completed on the cross. (“we have now received the atonement” Romans 5:11). There is no second phase of Christ’s atonement. SDAs say that Christ’s sacrifice is insufficient to fully atone or take away our sins  
Error 4 corrected: To say who among the dead are “deemed worthy” to have part in the first resurrection, is to claim works for salvation.

- Error 5 corrected:** To say that only those who remain loyal to God receive the Kingdom, denies Christ's ability to keep us saved. This teaches loss of salvation. Hence NO SDA can be sure of eternal life. God says: "that ye may know that ye have eternal life." (I John 5:13).
- f) They claim that nobody now has eternal life. "But God, who alone is immortal, will grant eternal life to His redeemed." (Clause 25: *Death and Resurrection*).
- Error 6 corrected:** "He that has the Son, has life." (present tense NOW). (I John 5:12; 2:25).
- g) They deny that believers go to heaven at death. They believe in soul sleep: "Until that day, death is an unconscious state for all people." (Clause 25: *Death & Resurrection*).
- Error 7 corrected:** "The mighty shall speak to him out of the midst of hell." Ezekiel 32:21.
- h) They are very confused about the Millennium: "The millennium is the 1000 year reign of Christ with His saints in heaven." (WRONG: It is on earth, Zechariah 14:1-5; 8-21) between the first and second resurrections. During this time the wicked dead will be judged." (WRONG: the wicked dead will be judged after the 1000 years – Revelation 20:7-15: "And when the thousand years are expired, Satan shall be loosed out of his prison...") "the earth will be utterly desolate" (WRONG: "the desert shall rejoice & blossom as the rose" (Isaiah 35:1), "without living human inhabitants" (WRONG: "the inhabitants of the earth are burned, and few men left." Isaiah 24:6.

### 3) Thirteen Official SDA Baptismal Vows

In order to be baptized, SDAs must agree to 13 vows. The ones that are false are:

6. "I accept the 10 Commandments as still binding upon Christians, and it is my purpose by the power of the indwelling Christ, to keep this law, including the 4<sup>th</sup> Commandment, which requires the observance of the seventh day of the week as the Sabbath of the Lord."
8. "I accept the Biblical teaching of spiritual gifts, and believe that the gift of prophecy is one of the identifying marks of the remnant church."
11. 'I know and understand the fundamental Bible principles as taught by the Seventh Day Adventist Church. It is my purpose, by the grace of God, to order my life in harmony with these principles.'
13. "I accept that the Seventh Day Adventist Church is the remnant church of Bible prophecy."

### 4) SDA Statements that Ellen White was God's Inspired Prophet

Before 1980, all SDAs viewed Ellen White as an inspired prophet. In 1980, Walter Rea proved and published that 80-90% of her "inspired writings and visions" were plagiarised or copied from James White who copied them from J N Andrews. Now, modern SDA leaders are watering down their church's stand on White's inspiration, saying: "White's writings are not a replacement of the Bible".

**Note that Adventists, Mormons and Jehovah's Witnesses share these qualities:**

- a) All were born in the 1800s; b) All claimed to have direct inspiration from God at their founding;
- c) All claimed to have the gift or spirit of prophecy.

Consider these SDA claims that White was God's prophet:

- a) Clause 17 of SDA Creed: "This gift (of prophecy) is an identifying mark of the remnant church and was manifested in the ministry of Ellen G White.  
As the Lord's messenger, her writings are a continuing and authoritative source of truth which provide for the church comfort, guidance, instruction and correction."
- b) Back cover of The Great Controversy, 1975 edition claims that:  
"Ellen G White (1827-1915) . . . is considered to have been inspired by God.  
Many of her prophecies about world events and the modern day condition of man have already been dramatically fulfilled."
- c) In 1876 she wrote: "In ancient times God spoke to men by the mouth of prophets & apostles. In these days He speaks to them by the Testimonies of His Spirit" (ie White's writings). (*EGW, Testimonies for the Church*, Vol. 4, p. 147-8, Testimony 27:1876).
- d) In 1882 she wrote: "If you lessen the confidence of God's people in the testimonies He has sent them, you are rebelling against God as certainly as were Korah, Dathan and Abiram."  
(*EGW, Testimonies for the Church*, Vol. 5, p. 66, Testimony 31, 1882).

- e) In 1882 she wrote: "When I was in Colorado . . . I wrote many pages to be read at your camp meeting. God was speaking through clay. I am presenting to you what the Lord has presented to me. They are what God has opened before me in vision – the precious rays of light shining from the throne." (EGW, *Selected Messages*, Book 1, p 27).

Consider these official SDA statements of inspiration for Ellen G White:

- f) SDA *Sabbath School Quarterly, Teachers Edition*, p 112, Feb 11, 1978:  
"The Bible and the writings of Ellen White are inerrant."
- g) Official SDA position, in *The Advent Review and Herald*, 4 Oct 1928:  
"Her writings should be received the same as were the messages of the prophets of old. As Samuel was a prophet of Israel for his day; as Jeremiah was a prophet of Israel for the days of captivity; as John the Baptist came as a special messenger of the Lord to prepare the way for Christ's Coming, so we believe that Mrs White was a prophet to the Church of Christ today."
- h) Louis Venden quoted on the cassette tape, The Wilson Committee, Rea on Ellen G White:  
"I believe that The Desire of Ages (White's book), for example, is just as high in quality of degree of inspiration as the Gospel according to Luke."
- i) Kenneth Wood, Editor of Review, as quoted in RH 4 Sept 1980, p15:  
"Ellen G White was inspired in the same sense as were the Bible prophets."
- j) Ron Graybill, Assoc Sec, EGW Estate, in a talk at Southern Missionary College on 27 Sep 80: "The quality of inspiration of Ellen White is equal to that of Bible writers."
- k) Philip Follett, tape, "What Happened at Glacier View", PUC, 23 Aug 1980:  
"The writings of Ellen White are inspired in the same sense as the Bible is inspired."
- l) Moving Out, Unit 4, p.115: "Ellen received a second vision in which God called her formally to work for Him as a prophet".

## 5) Failed Prophecies of Ellen White

The Bible test of a false prophet is given in Deuteronomy 18:20-22 as follows:

"But the prophet which shall presume to speak a word in my name, which I have not commanded him to speak . . . even that prophet shall die." (v.20).

Question: If thou say in thine heart, How shall we know the word which the Lord has not spoken?

Answer: "When a prophet speaketh in the name of the Lord, if the thing follow not, nor come to pass, that is the thing which the Lord hath not spoken, but the prophet hath spoken it presumptuously: thou shalt not be afraid of him." (v.22).

Some of Ellen White's many false and failed prophecies showing her to be a false prophet are:

- a) White falsely predicted that some living in 1856 would live to see Christ return:  
"I was shown the company present at the Conference. Said the angel: "Some food for worms, some subjects of the 7 last plagues, some will be alive and remain upon the earth to be translated at the coming of Jesus." Vol. 1, p.131,132, *Testimonies for the Church*. This statement was made in 1856 and everyone present in that meeting is now dead. None lived to see Christ return. This is clearly a false prophecy. White made no conditions for the fulfilment of this prophecy.
- b) White falsely prophesied that England would declare war on the USA about the time of the Civil War: "This nation will yet be humbled into the dust. England is studying whether . . . to make war on her. When England does declare war, . . . there will be general war." *Testimonies for the Church*, Vol. 1, p.259. This was a false prophecy, England did not declare war on the USA during the Civil War, and the USA was not humbled into the dust.
- c) White falsely prophesied in 1850 that Old Jerusalem would never be built up. In 1850, Bible scholars were teaching about Jews returning to Palestine and the restoration of Jerusalem. White said, "I also saw that Old Jerusalem would never be built up". *Early Writings*, p.75 Since Israel's rebirth in 1948 & the Six Day War of 1967, "Old Jerusalem" has been built up.
- d) White falsely prophesied that the time for salvation for sinners had passed in July 1844: "The "midnight cry" was finished at the seventh month 1844 (p.43)."*Early Writings*, p42-45.
- e) White prophesied the world would end in 1843, 1844, 1845, 1851. "the believers explained their mistake and gave reasons why they expected their Lord in 1844." *Early Writings*. p.237.

## **6) 12 UNBIBLICAL STATEMENTS OF ELLEN WHITE:**

- 1) White falsely taught that the **Tower of Babel was built before the Flood**:

“The Lord first established the system of sacrificial offerings with Adam after his fall, which he taught to his descendants. This system was corrupted **before** the **Flood** by those who separated themselves from the faithful followers of God, and engaged in the building of the **Tower of Babel.**” *Spiritual Gifts*, Vol. 3, p.301, 1864 edition.

This mistake was later taken out of the 1870 edition of *Spirit of Prophecy*, Vol. 1, p 266.

- 2) White falsely taught that **we should never say we are saved:**

“Those who accept the Saviour, however sincere their conversion, should never be taught to say or to feel that they are saved.” *Christ’s Object Lessons*, p 155. Yet the Bible says, “He that has the Son has life . . . that ye may **know** that ye have eternal life.” (I John 5:12,13).

- 3) White falsely taught that the **seal of God is the Sabbath:**

“The sign, or seal of God is revealed in the observance of the seventh-day Sabbath.”

*Testimonies for the Church*, Vol. 8, **p 117**; and TGC p 640.

But the Bible states that it is the indwelling Holy Spirit:

“after ye believed, ye were **sealed** with that Holy Spirit of promise.” (Ephesians 1:13).

“Grieve not the Holy Spirit of God, whereby ye are **sealed**.” (Ephesians 4:30).

“God, who hath sealed us, and given us the earnest of the Spirit in our hearts.” (II Cor. 1:21,22).

- 4) White taught that **there was only one Herod**, who tried Christ and executed James:

“Herod’s heart had grown still harder; and when he heard that Christ had risen, he was not much troubled. He took the life of James.” (*Early Writings*, **p 185,186**).

However, Bible scholars and historians have proven that Herod Antipas tried Jesus and that Herod Agrippa I executed James the Apostle.

- 5) White falsely taught that **Satan will bear our sins**: “the scapegoat typified Satan, the author of sin, upon whom the **sins** of the truly penitent **will finally be placed**.” TGC, p 422.

“As the priest, in removing the sins from the sanctuary, confessed them upon the head of the scape goat, so Christ will place all these sins upon Satan, the originator and instigator of sin.” TGC, 485

“Their sins are transferred to the originator of sin.” *Testimonies for the Church*, Vol 5, **p 475**.

The Bible says, “the Lord hath laid on him (Christ) the iniquity of us all.” (Isaiah 53:6).

“Who **his own self** bare our sins in his own body on the tree.” (I Peter 2:24).

- 6) White falsely taught that **that Christ’s Atonement was not finished at the cross:**

“instead of coming to the earth at the termination of the 2300 days in 1844, Christ then entered the most holy place of the heavenly sanctuary to **perform the closing work of the atonement** preparatory to His coming.” TGC, p 422.

But the Bible says: “but now **once** in the end of the world hath he appeared to **put away sin** by the sacrifice of himself.” (Hebrews 9:26). “we have **now** received the **atonement**.” (Romans 5:11).

“after he had offered **one** sacrifice for sins **forever**, sat down on the right hand of God.” (Heb. 10:12). Christ said on the cross, “It is finished.” (John 19:30).

- 7) White falsely taught that **we can be sinless:**

“Those only who through faith in Christ, obey all of God’s commandments, **will reach a condition of sinlessness** in which Adam lived before his transgression.” *SDA Bible Commentary*, Vol.6,1118

“In order to let Jesus into our hearts, **we must stop sinning**.” *Signs of the Times*, 3 March 1898.

I John 1:8,10 “If we say that **we have no sin, we deceive ourselves**, and the truth is not in us.”

- 8) White falsely taught that a **Christian’s sins** are pardoned, but **not yet forgiven** or **blotted out**.

She taught that one’s eternal destiny will be ultimately determined by weighing a believer’s good works and bad works in the Investigative Judgment. (TGC, p 483):

“All who have truly repented of sin, and by faith claimed the blood of Christ as their atoning sacrifice, have had **pardon** entered against their names in the books of heaven as they have become partakers of the righteousness of Christ, & **their characters** are found to be **in harmony with the law of God**, **their sins will be blotted out**, & they themselves will be **accounted worthy** of eternal life.”

“The work of the investigative judgment and the **blotting out** of sin is **to be** accomplished **before** the second advent of our Lord.” TGC, p 485.

"In 1844 began the work of investigation and **blotting out of sins.**" *Christ in His Sanctuary*, p122. However, the Bible says: "I, even I, am he that **blotteth out** thy transgressions for mine own sake, and will not remember thy sins." (Isaiah 43:25).

"I have **blotted out**, as a thick cloud, thy transgressions, and as a cloud, thy sins." (Isaiah 44:22).

"If we confess our sins, He is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness." (I John 1:9).

Note: The Investigative Judgment heresy:

- a) Has never been taught by anyone else in history;
- b) Has no Bible support;
- c) Is the excuse for SDA's existence as a separate church.

Noted SDA historian and theologian, Leroy E Froom, states that this teaching is the SDA church's only reason for existence:

"Indeed, if there is <sup>1</sup>no actual Sanctuary in heaven, and <sup>2</sup>no ministering Great High Priest serving therein; and <sup>3</sup>if there is no judgment hour message to herald from God to mankind at this time, then **we have no justifiable place in the religious world**, no distinctive denominational mission and message, and **no excuse for functioning** as a separate church entity today." *Movement of Destiny*, p 542 (emphasis added). "Any deviation from (the sanctuary truth) strikes at the heart of Adventism, and challenges its very integrity." p 542.

9) White falsely claimed that in a vision **she heard the day and hour of Christ's return:**

"Soon we heard the voice of God like many waters, which gave us the **day** and **hour** of Jesus' Coming." *Early Writings*, **p 15**. Yet the Bible says, "But of that day and hour knoweth no man, no not the angels of heaven, but my Father only." (Matthew 24:36).

10) White falsely claims that **God had to consult others about man's fall:**

She thus suggests that God did not expect it and didn't know what to do about it.

"The news of man's fall spread through Heaven – every harp was hushed. . . . A council was held to decide what must be done with the guilty pair." *Spiritual Gifts*, Vol. 3, p 44.

11) White falsely claims that **Adam kept the Sabbath:**

"The Sabbath was observed before the fall. Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God's command, and ate of the forbidden fruit, they were expelled from Eden; but they observed the Sabbath after their fall." *Spiritual Gifts*, Vol. 3, p 52.

12) White falsely claims that **angels have a gold card:**

"There is perfect order and harmony in the Holy City. All the angels that are commissioned to visit the earth hold a golden card, which they present to angels at the gates of the city as they pass in and out." *Early Writings*, **p 39**.

## 7) **CONTRADICTIONS OF ELLEN WHITE**

a) Deity "did" and "did not" sink and die: "Men need to understand that Deity suffered and sank under the agonies of Calvary." *Manuscript* 153, 1898 (BC, Vol. 7, p 907).

"The Deity did not sink under the agonizing torture of Calvary." *Manuscript* 140, 1903,BC, Vol5,1129  
b) There is consciousness after death, and there is no consciousness after death:

"I saw that some were quickly destroyed, while others suffered longer. They were punished according to the deeds done in the body. Some were many days consuming, and just as long as there was a portion of them unconsumed, all the sense of suffering remained." *Early Writings*, p 294.

"Upon the fundamental error of natural immortality, rests the doctrine of consciousness in death – a doctrine, like eternal torment, opposed to the teaching of the Scriptures, to the dictates of reason, and to our feelings of humanity." TGC, p 545.

## 8) **Challenge to SDAs: Show us one New Testament verse that:**

- a) Quotes the fourth Commandment, OR b) Tells Christians to keep the Sabbath holy.

## **9) SDAS CLAIM SUNDAY KEEPING IS FOLLOWING AN IMAGE OF THE BEAST.**

The SDA church's official doctrine is that the Mark of the Beast is received by those who worship on Sunday. Some SDAs don't know the official teaching of their own church.

"False teachings like the immortal soul, Sunday worship, eternal hell fire, etc are all from the Beast. If we choose to worship in a church that follows these teachings, we are simply following an image of the Beast. Because of their wilful decision to follow the Beast, its false teachings and practices, the beast's name is in their forehead and they are lost, having received the Mark of the Beast."

From *Prophecy Seminar* Lesson 18, "*The Mark of the Beast and the Seal of God*" from SDA Pastor Leo Schreven's book, *Now That's Clear*.

Leo Schreven is a certified official evangelist for the SDA church. *Now That's Clear* is an official textbook of *It is Written* Prophecy Seminars sponsored by the SDA church.

"The mark of the Beast is the opposite of this – the observance of the first day of the week."  
*Testimonies for the Church*, White, Vol.8, p.117.

## **10) MOST SDAS BREAK THE SABBATH THEY CLAIM TO KEEP.**

God commanded that the Sabbath be kept as follows. Do Sabbatarians (and SDAs) keep all these laws?

	<b>1. Sabbath Law Regulations</b>	<b>2. Meaning Today For Sabbatarians</b>
1	No work to be done (Exodus 31:15).	No shift work or Saturday work. No Police, Fire, Ambulance, Hospital workers.
2	Kindle no fire (Exodus 35:3).	No gas heating in winter. No gas cooking. No starting a motor car (internal combustion).
3	Stay in one place (Exodus 16:29). "abide ye every man in his place, let no man go out of his place on the seventh day."	Park the car and stay at home or in the hotel.
4	Gather no sticks for fuel. (Numbers 15:32).	No putting fuel in the car on Saturday.
5	Buy no goods (Nehemiah 10:31). "We would not buy it of them on the Sabbath."	No eating out on Saturday. No buying a Saturday newspaper. No buying petrol on Saturday.
6	Carry no burdens (Jeremiah 17:21:22) "bear no burdens on the Sabbath day."	No gardening or carrying on Saturday.
7	Strangers within their gates forced to keep these regulations. (Exodus 20:10).	Guests within your house forced to keep these regulations.
8	Death to violators. (Ex 31:15; Num. 15:32-36).	Stone to death other SDAs who break Sabbath.

Question: Did God ever relax ANY of these Sabbath day restrictions? NO!

## **11) SATURDAY (SABBATH) OR SUNDAY? ON WHICH DAY DID EARLY CHRISTIANS WORSHIP?**

1. **74AD** *The Letter of Barnabas* (15:6-8): "We keep the eighth day (Sunday) with joyfulness, the day also on which Jesus rose from the dead."
2. **90AD** *The Didache* 14: "Every Lord's Day...gather yourselves together and break bread."
3. **107AD** *Ignatius*: "Those . . . possessing a new hope, no longer observing the Sabbath, but living in the observance of the Lord's Day."  
(*Ignatius, Epistle to the Magnesians*, Chap 9, *Ante-Nicene Fathers*, Vol. 1, p 62-63).
4. **150AD** *Justin*: "the Gentiles, who have believed on Him, . . even although they neither keep the Sabbath, nor are circumcised, nor observe the feasts. Assuredly they shall receive the holy inheritance of God." (*Dialogue with Trypho*, *Ante-Nicene Fathers*, Vol. 1, p 267).
  - 150AD *Justin*: "Sunday is the day on which we hold our common assembly". (*First Apology of Justin*, Chap 68).
  - 150AD *Justin*: "If there was no need of circumcision before Abraham, or of the observance of Sabbaths, of feasts and sacrifices before Moses; no more need is there of them now...after Jesus Christ." (*Dialogue with Trypho*, *Ante-Nicene Fathers*, Vol.1,206)
5. **180AD** *Acts of Peter*: "He (Christ) abolished their Sabbath, fasts and festivals & circumcision." 1.I-2

6. **190AD Clement of Alexandria:** commenting on the 10 Commandments and their Christian meaning: “The seventh day is proclaimed a day of rest, preparing by abstention from evil for the Primal day (first day) our true rest.” (Vol. 7, xvi, 138.1.)
7. **200AD Bardaisan (born 154AD):**  
“On one day, the first of the week, we assemble ourselves together.” (*On Fate*) 5.
8. **200AD Tertullian:** “We solemnize the day after Saturday in contradistinction to those who call this day their Sabbath. As the abolition of carnal circumcision & of the old law has been consummated, so also the observance of the Sabbath is shown to have been temporary.” (*Ante-Nicene Fathers*, Vol. 3, p 155). “To us Sabbaths are foreign.” (*On Idolatry*, 14:6).
9. **220AD Origen:** “On Sunday none of the actions of the world should be done. Keep yourself free for spiritual things, go to church, listen to the readings and divine homilies, meditate on heavenly things.” (*Homil. 23 in Numeros* 4, p 12:749).
10. **225AD The Didascalia:** “The Apostles further appointed: On the first day of the week let there be service, and the reading of the Holy Scriptures, and the oblation, because on the first day of the week our Lord rose from the dead.” (*Didascalia* 2).
11. **250AD Cyprian:** “The eighth day, that is the first day after the Sabbath, and the Lord’s Day.” (*Epistle 58, Section 4*).
12. **300AD Victorinus:** “Lest we should appear to observe any Sabbath with the Jews . . . which Sabbath he (Christ) in his body abolished.” (*The Creation of the World*).
13. **300AD Eusebius:** “They did not regard circumcision, nor observe the Sabbath; neither do we because such things as these do not belong to Christians.” *Ecclesiastical History*, Book 1, Ch4 “They (early Old Test saints) did not care about circumcision of the body, neither do we (Christians). They did not care about observing Sabbaths, nor do we.” *Church History* 1:4:8
14. **345AD Athanasius:** “The Sabbath was the end of the first creation, and the Lord’s Day was the beginning of the second. He (God) prescribed that they (Jews) should formerly observe the Sabbath as a memorial of the end of the first things, so we honour the Lord’s day as being the memorial of the new creation.” (*On Sabbath and Circumcision* 3).
15. **350AD Cyril of Jerusalem:** “Stand aloof from all observance of Sabbaths.” (*Catechetical Lectures* 4:37).
16. **Encyclopaedia Britannica:** “Sunday, first day of the week; in Christianity, the Lord’s Day, the weekly memorial of Jesus Christ’s resurrection from the dead. The practice of Christians gathering together for worship on Sunday dates back to apostolic times, but details of the actual development of the custom are not clear. Before the end of the first Century AD, the author of Revelation gave the first day its name of the “Lord’s Day” (Revelation 1:10). Saint Justin Martyr (c.100 - c.165), philosopher and defender of the Christian faith, in his writings described the Christians gathered together for worship on the Lord’s Day. The gospels or the Old Testament was read, the presiding minister preached a sermon, and the group prayed together and celebrated the Lord’s Supper. The emperor Constantine (d. 337), a convert to Christianity, introduced the first civil legislation concerning Sunday in 321, when he decreed that all work should cease on Sunday, except that farmers could work if necessary. This law, aimed at providing time for worship, was followed later in the same century and in subsequent centuries by further restrictions on Sunday activities.” (15<sup>th</sup> edition, vol.11, p392)
17. **History of the Christian Church:** “Celebration of the Lord’s Day in memory of the resurrection of Christ dates undoubtedly from the apostolic age. Nothing short of apostolic precedent can account for the universal religious observance in the churches of the second century. There is no dissenting voice. This custom was confirmed by the earliest post-apostolic writers, such as Barnabus, Ignatius and Justin Martyr.” (*Philip Schaff*, vol., p201,2 “The first day was already in the apostolic age designated as “the Lord’s Day.” It appears therefore, from the NT itself, that Sunday was observed as a day of worship, and in special commemoration of the Resurrection, whereby the work of redemption was finished. The universal and uncontradicted Sunday observance in the second century can only be explained by the fact that it has its roots in apostolic practice.” (*Philip Schaff*, vol.1, p478-9).

## **12) FOUR REAL REASONS WHY SDAs KEEP THE SABBATH**

**1. SDAs ignore NT verses on Sunday worship.** (Acts 20:7; I Corinthians 16:1,2; John 20:19,26; Romans 14:5,6; and Colossians 2:14. They also ignore Exodus 31:13).

**2. SDAs must vow Ellen White as a prophet at their baptism.** Having done this, Ellen White and the SDA church become their basis for decision making.

**Key:** The Word of God becomes a **secondary authority** only as interpreted by White's "prophecies" and the SDA church. Check SDA Baptismal Vows Number 8,11,13.

**3. SDAs must vow to follow the official "27 Fundamental Beliefs" of the SDA Church,** clause 17 of which says: "The Gift of Prophecy: One of the gifts of the Holy Spirit, is prophecy.

This gift is an identifying mark of the remnant church and was manifested in the ministry of Ellen White. As the Lord's messenger, her writings are a continuing and authoritative source of truth, which provide for the church comfort, guidance, instruction and correction."

**4. SDAs believe (without proof) that Ellen White went to heaven to learn that, contrary to the Bible, the Sabbath law was not nailed to the cross.**

a) Ellen White wrote under "inspiration" the following:

"The Lord gave me a view of the heavenly sanctuary. . . . Jesus raised the cover of the ark, and I beheld the tables of stone on which the 10 Commandments were written.

I was amazed as I saw the 4<sup>th</sup> Commandment with a soft halo of light encircling it.

Said the angel: "It is the only one of the ten which defines the living God"."

(*Life Sketches of Ellen G White*, p 95,96).

b) Also, in *Early Writings of Ellen G White*, p 33 she records under "inspiration":

"But the fourth, the Sabbath commandment, shone above them all, for the Sabbath was set apart to be kept in honour of God's holy name. The Holy Sabbath looked glorious - halo of glory was all around it. I saw that the Sabbath commandment was not nailed to the cross. If it was, the other nine commandments were, and we are at liberty to break them all as well as to break the fourth. I saw that God had not changed the Sabbath, for he never changes. But the pope had changed it from the seventh day to the first day of the week; for he was to change times and laws."

Conclusion: No matter what the Bible says about the Sabbath being nailed to the cross, SDAs won't believe what the Bible says if it contradicts their "inspired prophet" Ellen G White.

SDAs prefer to follow White's vision and the SDA church than the Bible.

## **13) THE DANGER OF SABBATH KEEPING**

"Why do you compel the Gentiles to live as do the Jews?" (Galatians 2:14).

SDAs teach that Saturday should be observed as a holy day unto the Lord.

Let us study what the Bible has to say about this.

The word "Sabbath" means "rest." Under Moses' Law, Israel was required to keep the "seventh day" as the "Sabbath of the Lord" (Deuteronomy 5:13,14). By law, the people were required to rest from their normal labour on this day and consecrate the time to the will of God (Numbers 15:32-36). Death by stoning was the penalty if anybody profaned it.

As important as it was to the Jews, seventh day observance has no present claim on Christians.

Instead, the spirit of the law will be fulfilled in our daily lives as we:

- continually rest from our own works; that we might,
- consecrate our time to God.

Sabbath day observance was part of the Mosaic Covenant which was "done away with" in Christ.

Notice the following about Sabbath keeping:

**1. A Change of the Law.** God made two main covenants:

- The Mosaic Covenant with the nation Israel;
- The Abrahamic Covenant with Abraham (Galatians 3:8,9) but confirmed by Christ as the New Covenant (Romans 15:8).

Because the New Covenant replaced the Mosaic Covenant, "there is made of necessity a change also of the law." (Hebrews 7:12). This change involved both the priesthood and seventh day observance. SDAs admit that the Mosaic Covenant has been taken away.

"He hath made the first (covenant) old." (Hebrews 8:13). (correct).

SDAs claim that the Mosaic Covenant excludes the 10 Commandments (false), and that the 4<sup>th</sup> Commandment is therefore still binding today (false).

SDAs claim that Sabbath keeping is essential to salvation (false).

**Note:** Paul links the first Mosaic Covenant (Hebrews 9:1) with the 10 Commandments describing them as the tables of the covenant. (Hebrews 9:4).

"Then verily the first covenant had also ordinances of divine service, and a worldly sanctuary. For there was a tabernacle made . . . which had the tables of the covenant;" (Hebrews 9:1-4).

The 10 Commandments were the basis of the Mosaic Covenant, which Paul said was "ready to vanish away." (Hebrews 8:13). This occurred with the Temple's destruction in 70AD.

**Note:** Paul's teaching that the old Mosaic Covenant included the 10 Commandments, is proven by the Law itself: The Lord said unto Moses:

a) "I have made a covenant with thee and with Israel (v.27). And he wrote upon the tables the words of the covenant, the ten Commandments." (Exodus 34:28).

b) "He wrote upon the tables the words of the covenant, the 10 Commandments." Deuteronomy 4:13.

**Key:** The identification of the "Ten Commandments" with the Mosaic Covenant, which was "done away" (2 Corinthians 3:7,11) in Christ, is fatal to SDA Sabbath keeping.

**SDA Objection No.1:** They deny this truth by dividing the Mosaic Law into two parts:

a) The Ceremonial – which they claim was the Law of Moses and was abolished;

b) The Moral – which they claim was the Law of God and still binding.

**Answer:** The Bible refutes this by using the terms "law of Moses" and "law of God" interchangeably for both the ceremonial and moral parts of the law. For example:

a) **Ceremonial:** "He appointed also the King's portion of his substance for the burnt offerings, for the morning and evening burnt offerings, and the burnt offerings for the sabbaths, and for the new moons, and for the set feasts, as it is written in the Law of the Lord." (II Chronicles 31:3).

Here ceremonial offerings, Sabbaths and feasts are part of the Law of the Lord.

b) **Moral:** "Be very courageous to keep and to do all that is written in the book of the Law of Moses . . . that ye not make mention of the name of their gods, nor cause to swear by them, neither serve them, nor bow yourselves unto them." (Joshua 23:6,7).

Here, serving false gods, which is morally wrong, is part of the Law of Moses.

**SDA Objection No.2:** SDAs teach that the Law of Moses was written in a book (now abolished), and the Ten Commandments written on stone are still binding.

**Answer:** Paul refutes this in II Corinthians 3:7-11 by describing the 10 Commandments as being:

a) the ministration of death; b) written and engraven in stones, and c) glorious, d) done away.

"But if the ministration of death, written and engraven in stones, was glorious, ....that which is done away (Mosaic Covenant including the 10 Commandments) was glorious, much more that which remaineth (New Covenant in Christ) is glorious." II Corinthians 3:11.

Here Paul identifies the 10 Commandments (engraven in stones) with the Mosaic Covenant that was "done away in Christ."

**SDA Objection No.3:** Why should the Ten Commandments be described as "the ministration of death" if they teach eternal truths? (such as Commandments 1-3 and 5-10).

**Answer:** It is because they were set before Israel with the words: "Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things which are written in the book of the law to do them." (Galatians 3:10; Deuter. 27:26). In the Mosaic Covenant, there was no hope of eternal life for anybody who broke any of its laws.

The "Law of Christ" (I Corinthians 9:21), also called the "perfect law of liberty" (James 2:8-12) (in contrast to the death-dealing Mosaic Covenant of the 10 Commandments) can release us from sin and death, which the Mosaic Covenant never could. The "Law of Christ" reaffirms 9 out of the 10 Commandments and gives new meaning to the fourth.

**SDA Objection No.4:** Does this mean that all the 10 Commandments are out-of-date, and we can steal, kill and commit adultery as much as we want?

**Answer:** No. Nine of the Commandments teach eternal truths that Christ and the Apostles endorsed, but the 4<sup>th</sup> Commandment was never imposed on the churches. These 9 were expanded and transferred into the Law of Christ. Where does the NT tell Christians in the Church Age to observe the Sabbath? Never!

## **2. When did the Sabbath Law Commence?**

**SDA Objection No.5:** SDAs claim that the Sabbath Law was given before the Law of Moses, and was known and obeyed from Adam, to Noah, to Abraham and to Moses.

We agree that animal sacrifice was given by God before the Law of Moses.

We agree that circumcision was given by God to Abraham. (Genesis 17:9-14).

But SDAs admit that animal sacrifice and circumcision are not binding on us today.

**Answer:** The Bible student will not find a Sabbath Law given to man before Moses.

- a) True, we read in Genesis 2:3 “God blessed the seventh day, and sanctified it; because that in it he had rested from all his work which God created and made”.

These words do not constitute a command for man to observe this day. Remember that Genesis was written by Moses for the Jewish people, AFTER giving them the Law.

Moses included this explanatory note to explain the significance of the Law he had given to Israel. Speaking of the Sabbath, God declared:

“It is a sign between Me and the children of Israel forever, for in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, and on the seventh day he rested, and was refreshed.” (Exodus 31:17).

- b) The evidence shows that it was impossible for the Sabbath law to be practiced before Moses.

God instructed Moses to change the Jewish calendar, making the departure from Egypt “the beginning of months: it shall be the first month of the year to you.” (Exodus 12:2).

From this new date, commenced the Sabbath day observance.

On this point Moses himself needed instruction, which he passed on to the people.

“This is that which the Lord has said, Tomorrow is the rest of the holy Sabbath unto the Lord (23).

Eat that today; for today is a Sabbath unto the Lord: today ye shall not find it in the field.’ Ex16:25

- c) **Question to ask SDAs:** If the Sabbath law was so well known, why the need of such instruction to Moses and the Israelites? **Answer:** Because:

- i) This was a new law, just then set before Israel for the first time.

Moses said to the people: “See, for that the LORD hath given you the Sabbath, therefore, he giveth you on the sixth day the bread of two days; abide ye every man in his place, let no man go out of his place on the seventh day. So the people rested on the seventh day.” (Exodus 16:29,30).

- ii) The Bible plainly declares that God made known “the holy Sabbath . . . by the hand of Moses thy servant” at Mount Sinai: “Thou camest down also upon Mount Sinai . . . and MADEST KNOWN unto them thy holy sabbath . . . by the hand of Moses thy servant.” (Nehemiah 9:13,14).

This passage fixes beyond all doubt the time when the Sabbath was given, or “made known” to man. It was not in Eden, but to Moses on Mount Sinai.

- iii) In Numbers 15:32-36 further instruction was given to Moses and Aaron concerning the Sabbath, because “it was not declared what should be done” to the Sabbath breaker who gathered sticks on the Sabbath day. (v.34).

## **3. The Real Meaning of the Sabbath**

The Mosaic Law demanded that on every seventh day, Jews should rest from their labour and devote the day to meditating on the things of God. A true Israelite, however, did not limit his meditation only to the Sabbath day. It was “his delight to meditate in the law of the Lord..day and night” continually (Psalm 1:2). He observed not merely the letter of this law, but the spirit of it. He daily tried to rest from the things of the flesh, and devoted his time to God.

The Sabbath rest was a type, to remind the people of the correct spiritual attitude that should characterize their actions every day. For true Christians, keeping this Sabbath type is not necessary, because in Christ this Sabbath type is done away (2 Corinthians 3:7,11).

Christ gave a spiritual significance to aspects of the Mosaic Law:

- a) Instead of animal sacrifices, he presented Himself as the "Lamb of God" to take away the sin of the world. (John 1:29).
- b) Instead of literal circumcision, He set forth the principle of repudiating the flesh, a circumcision "that is of the heart, in the spirit, and not in the letter." (Romans 2:28,29).
- c) Instead of Sabbath keeping. He taught a daily rest from the works of sin, and a daily faith rest and belief in God's promises. (Hebrews 4:1-11). Christ taught the spiritual significance of the Sabbath when He said, "Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest." Greek: anapauso). (Matthew 11:28).

Greek: "Anapauso" means "Sabbath rest" in the Septuagint.

Christ continuously condemned the Jewish leaders for formalistic Sabbath keeping.

He deliberately allowed His disciples to do what "was not lawful to do upon the Sabbath day" (Matthew 12:1,2), because He was "Lord even of the Sabbath day." (Matthew 12:8) and therefore had power to change its observance.

#### **4. Some were Exempt from the Sabbath Law**

Jesus showed that some Israelites were exempt from keeping the Sabbath as a day of rest:

- a) For Priests, instead of the Sabbath being a day of rest, their work was doubled (Numbers 28:9,10). Jesus asked the Jews, "Have ye not read in the law, how that on the Sabbath days the priests in the temple profane the Sabbath, and are blameless." (Matthew 12:5).

The priests did not observe the Sabbath. It was no rest to them. Their whole life was devoted to the Lord's service. Christ's words apply to true Christians today, who also are priests devoted to the Lord's work. Peter said, "Ye are a... royal priesthood" (I Peter 2:9) to the Christians of his day. As New Testament priests, we are exempt from the Sabbath rest, because our whole lives should be dedicated to God's work as NT priests. Those who insist on a rigid Mosaic Law Sabbath keeping, imply that they exclude themselves from Christ's own priestly class of believers today.

- b) Circumcision. On another occasion, the Lord refuted the Jews' formal Sabbath keeping, by showing that there were other laws (such as circumcision) that took precedence over the Sabbath. The Law required that on the eighth day, a Jewish boy should be circumcised. Sometimes the eighth day of a boy's life fell on the Sabbath day. Here then were two laws: one demanding circumcision work, and the other law of the Sabbath, demanding no work.

**Question:** Which law was to be broken? Which law was more important?

**Answer:** The circumcision law was more important than the Sabbath law, because unless a boy was circumcised, he could not keep the law as a covenant member.

Jesus said, "Ye on the Sabbath day, circumcise a man that the law should not be broken." (John 7:22,23). Since circumcision is a greater law than the Sabbath, this forces SDAs to give priority to a ceremonial law (circumcision) which they say is obsolete, over the Sabbath law which they say is moral.

**Question:** Why did the circumcision law take precedence over the Sabbath law?

**Answer:** Circumcision was the sign of the Abrahamic Covenant (Genesis 17:10-14) that was confirmed by Christ (Romans 15:8), whereas the Sabbath was the sign of the Mosaic Covenant.

As the Abrahamic Covenant, confirmed by Christ, superseded the Mosaic Covenant (Hebrews 8:8), so the Law showed circumcision taking precedence over the Sabbath. One was broken (Sabbath keeping) so that the other might prevail (circumcision). This was the case with the two covenants: the Mosaic Covenant was taken away, so that the Abrahamic / New Covenant might prevail.

SDAs must realize that if the Sabbath law is still binding, so also is circumcision. But strangely enough SDAs reject circumcision.

## **5. How the Sabbath Should be Observed**

a) Spiritual circumcision is still as binding on a Christian as spiritual Sabbath keeping.

Paul explained the spiritual meaning of circumcision:

“In whom (Christ) also ye are circumcised with the circumcision made without hands, in putting off the body of the sins of the flesh by the circumcision of Christ: buried with him in baptism, wherein ye also are risen with him through faith.....” (Colossians 2:11,12).

Here circumcision is spiritual, not the Jewish cutting rite, but in the cutting off the sins of the flesh, and showing Christ’s righteousness in our new life, of which baptism is the first act of obedience.

b) **Question:** If circumcision has a New Testament spiritual fulfilment, what about the **Sabbath**?

**Answer:** Paul showed that the Sabbath was a shadow of something to be revealed in Christ.

“Let no man judge you in meat, or in drink, or in respect of an holyday, or of the new moon, or of the **Sabbath days**, which are a shadow of things to come, but the body is of Christ.” (Colossians 2:16,17).

**Question:** What did the Sabbath shadow reveal or point to?

**Answer:** “There remaineth therefore a rest (Sabbath meaning in Greek: “**Sabbatismos**”, not

“sabbaton” meaning “sabbath day”) to the people of God. For he that hath entered into his rest, he also hath ceased from his own works, as God did from His. Let us labour therefore to enter into THAT REST, lest any man fall after the same example of unbelief.” (Hebrews 4:8-11).

A true follower of Jesus Christ observes the spiritual Sabbath when he daily ceases from his own works and desires. We are exhorted to “labour to enter into that rest, lest any man fall after the same example of unbelief.” **This is how we should observe the spiritual Sabbath today.** If we live each day as Christ would have us to, believing His promises, each day will be holy to the Lord.

We will enjoy a daily pilgrimage which will be revealed in a denial of the flesh and of service to God.

## **6. The Danger of Sabbath Keeping**

Insisting that we must observe the Sabbath day as Jews did, turns our minds away from the spiritual lessons it was meant to teach us. The first heresy introduced into Christian churches was an attempt to super-impose the Jewish law onto Christianity. These heretics taught that:

- a) “Except ye be circumcised after the manner of Moses, ye cannot be saved.” (Acts 15:1,5).
- b) “It was needful to command them (Gentiles) to keep the law of Moses.” (Acts 15:5).

This heresy was strongly rejected by the Apostles. They instructed Gentile believers:

“We have heard that certain....have troubled you with words, subverting your souls, saying, Ye must be circumcised, and keep the law: to whom we gave no such commandment.” (Acts 15:24).

The Apostles advised the Gentile believers in Acts 15:29 to:

- a) abstain from meats offered to idols;
- b) abstain from blood;
- c) abstain from things strangled;
- d) abstain from fornication.

**Q:** Why did the Apostles say nothing about commanding Gentile believers to observe the Sabbath? 29

**Answer:** Because the law was “fulfilled” by Christ & the **Sabbath**, being a part of the Mosaic Law, was done away with. “Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believes.” Rm10:4 “If ye be led of the Spirit, ye are not under the law.” (Galatians 5:18).

**Note:** Paul taught that observance of one day above another was a matter for individual preference:

“One man esteemeth one day above another: another esteemeth every day alike. Let every man be fully persuaded in his own mind.” (Romans 14:5).

The Jewish Christians wished to continue observing the Sabbath.

There was no harm in this, so long as:

- a) They did not try to impose Sabbath restrictions on their fellow Gentile believers; or
- b) They did not assume that their seventh day observance permitted them to avoid regular meetings established by the Apostles. (Acts 2:42).

It seems that some Jewish Christians were doing this, and elevating the Sabbath above the first day meeting established by Christ. This may have prompted Paul to rebuke the Hebrews to “Forsake not the assembling of yourselves together as the manner of some is.” (Hebrews 10:25).

It was the idea of adding the Mosaic Law with its Sabbath keeping to the Gospel of faith in Christ, that started the Galatian apostasy rebuked by Paul:

“Ye observe days, and months, and times, and years. I am afraid of you, lest I have bestowed upon you labour in vain.” (Galatians 4:10,11).

The “days” referred to the Jewish Sabbath, which some Jewish Christians were trying to introduce. Paul told the Christians at Rome that they were free to set aside a day to God, so long as they didn’t go beyond that by:

- Demanding that all Christians should keep the Sabbath or Mosaic Laws, or
- Teaching that Sabbath keeping and Mosaic Law keeping were essential to salvation.

Paul’s sharp rebuke applies to both first century sabbatarians, and to modern SDAs.

## 7. The Apostles Met Together on the First Day

First century Christians met on the first day of the week (Sunday), not the 7th day (Saturday):

- “Upon the first day of the week, when the disciples came together to break bread.” Acts 20:7.
- “Concerning the collection for the saints . . . upon the first day of the week let every one lay by him in store . . . that there be no gatherings when I come.” (I Corinthians 16:2).

This first day worship is fatal to SDA’s Sabbath worship claim.

First day worship was to commemorate the day that Jesus rose from the grave. (John 20:1).

**Question:** What did the Apostles do on the seventh day?

**Answer:** They attended the synagogue to proclaim the risen Christ as Saviour to the Jews:

- “They came to Antioch in Pisidia, and went into the synagogue on the Sabbath day.” Acts 13:14.
- “They came to Thessalonica, where was a synagogue of the Jews: And Paul, as his manner was, went in unto them, and three Sabbath days reasoned with them.” (Acts 17:1,2).
- “Paul came to Corinth. . And he reasoned in the synagogue every Sabbath....” (Acts 18:1,4).
- “Paul . . . came to Ephesus . . and he went into the synagogue, and spake boldly for the space of three months . . .” (Acts 19:1,8).

**Key Question:** Since the seventh day was given over to disputing with the Jews in the synagogue, on what day did the Apostles meet with believers for the Lord’s Supper?

**Answer:** On the first day of the week.

**Note:** SDAs have completely reversed the Apostles’ custom:

- The Apostles used the seventh day rest by Jews to proclaim Christ to them.  
On the first day they gathered with believers to remember the Lord and enjoy the Lord’s Supper.
- SDAs meet on the seventh day to strengthen each other in their beliefs.  
They use the first day to proclaim their message to the world.

**SDA Objection:**

SDAs claim that Sunday worship came from Roman Catholicism when Constantine, the Roman Emperor, in 328AD passed a law commanding that the first day of the week should be kept as a holy day for all Christians.

**Answer:** In teaching this, they are either ignorant of history, or prejudice has blinded them to the facts:

- Why was there no protest in 328AD to this supposed change by Constantine?  
Because Christians had been keeping Sunday ever since the Apostles.
- The early church writers (over 15) clearly show that since the Apostles, Christians always and only met on Sunday. For example:
  - Ignatius, a disciple of John (100AD): “Those have come to newness of confidence, no longer keeping Sabbaths, but living according to the Lord’s day.”
  - Justin Martyr (140AD): “Sunday is the day on which we all hold our common assembly.”

Hence, Sunday assembling dates back to Apostolic times, and was not instituted by Constantine, but he merely confirmed an existing practice.

## **8. Does God Change His Laws?**

**SDA Objection:** SDAs claim that God does not change His laws, and that having laid down the Sabbath law, it is still binding today.

**Answer:** God has changed, removed or given new meaning to many of His laws, such as:

- The law of circumcision has been changed;
- He commanded animal sacrifices shortly after creation;
- He commanded yearly worship at the Temple of Jerusalem. (Exodus 34:21-23).

As these laws have been changed or given a new meaning, so has the Sabbath law.

### **Conclusion:**

- "The law was our schoolmaster to bring us to Christ, that we might be justified by faith. But after that faith is come, we are no longer under a schoolmaster." (Galatians 3:24-25).
- Now that Christ has come, "What purpose is the law?"  
**Answer:** "Wherefore then serveth the law? It was added because of transgressions, TILL the seed (Christ) should come . . ." (Galatians 3:19).
- Christ having come, has delivered us from the curse of the law (Galatians 3:13), and has brought us under his own glorious law ("not being without law to God, but under the law to Christ.") (I Corinthians 9:21).
- This "law of Christ" demands of us:
  - "This is his commandment, That we should believe on the name of his Son Jesus Christ, and
  - love one another, as he gave us commandment." (I John 3:23).

## **14. BACKGROUND OF HEBREWS 4:**

### Israel's Exodus and Unbelief in the Wilderness

Hebrews 4 explains the danger of doubting and disbelieving God's Word, because of a hard heart that is insensitive to God's Word and work.

Four spiritual lessons are seen in Israel's journey to Canaan:

- Israel's bondage in Egypt illustrates a sinner's bondage to Satan and to this world.
- Israel's deliverance from Egypt by the blood of lambs and by God's power illustrates a sinner being saved from sin by the blood of the "Lamb of God."
- Israel's refusal to enter Canaan because they doubted God's promises (Numbers 13,14) illustrates some Christians missing God's best because they refuse to walk by faith in God's promises.
- Israel's entry to Canaan by crossing the Jordan, illustrates a believer dying to self and the world (Romans 6), and living by God's promises and claiming spiritual victories and inheritance in Christ (Ephesians 1:3,11,8-23).

Now we can understand what the wilderness wanderings represent.

**Key:** They illustrate the experiences of believers who will not claim their spiritual inheritance in Christ, who doubt God's Word, and live in restless unbelief. They don't enjoy God's best blessings. They are "out of Egypt", but not yet "in Canaan".

The word "rest" is mentioned in Hebrews 3:11,18; 4:1,3-5,8-11.

Two OT rests stated here are: first, the rest of salvation; then secondly the rest of submission.

**SDA Objection:** SDAs say that "rest" (Greek: sabbatismos) in Hebrew 4:9 means "keeping of a Sabbath" and that this proves we must keep the Saturday Sabbath.

"There remaineth therefore a rest to the people of God." (Hebrews 4:9).

**Answer:** The word "rest" (Greek sabbatismos) in Hebrews 4:9 meaning "keeping of a Sabbath" is different from the Greek word for "Sabbath" being "sabbaton."

This word "sabbatismos" occurs nowhere else in the New Testament.

"Sabbatismos" differs from the word "Sabbath" or Greek word "sabbaton" as follows:

	<b>"Sabbaton"</b> (Sabbath)	<b>"Sabbatismos"</b> (rest)
1	The time – sabbath day	The keeping or observance of it, the festival
2		It means a resting, heaven, a place of eternal rest with God

**Key:** "Sabbatismos" cannot mean the seventh day sabbath, because the writer would have used the usual word for "sabbath" which is "sabbaton." 760

## **THREE RESTS OF HEBREWS 4**

The wilderness wanderings represent the experiences of believers who will not claim their spiritual inheritance in Christ, who doubt God's Word, and who live in restless unbelief.

Hebrews mentions **three rests**: two in the Old Testament; one in the New Testament:

**1. God's Sabbath Rest, when He ceased from His creation activities** (Genesis 2:2; Hebrews 4:4).

"God did rest the seventh day from all His works." (Hebrews 4:4). (**Salvation** rest).

This Sabbath rest is a picture of our rest in Christ through **salvation** as we cease trusting our works to save us: "For we which have believed do enter into rest." (*katapausin*) (Hebrews 4:3).

"Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest." (*anapauseo*) (Matthew 11:28).

When we come to Christ by faith, we find **salvation** rest. (Matthew 11:28).

This is "**peace with God**." (Romans 5:1).

**2. Israel's Rest in Canaan** (Deuteronomy 12:9, Joshua 21:43-45; Hebrews 3:11). "I was grieved with that generation ..so I swore in my wrath, they shall not enter into my rest." (Hebrews 3:10,11).

This Canaan rest is a picture of our present rest as we claim our inheritance in Christ through faith in God's Word as emphasised in Hebrews 4:11-13. It is living the faith-rest life by believing and resting in the promises in God's Word to handle all situations of life. It is the rest of **submission**.

"Let us labour therefore to enter into that rest (*katapausin*) lest any man fall after the same example of unbelief. For the Word of God is . . ." (Hebrews 4:11-13).

The Canaan rest for Israel is a picture of the spiritual rest we find in Christ when we surrender to Him.

When we yield to Christ, learn of Him and obey Him by faith, we enjoy **submission** rest.

(Matthew 11:29-30).

"Take my yoke upon you, and learn of me; for I am meek and lowly in heart: and ye shall find rest (*anapausein*) unto your souls." (Matthew 11:29,30).

This is the "**peace of God**" in Philippians 4:6-8 "which passeth all understanding, shall keep your hearts and minds through Christ Jesus."

Note: It is by believing in Christ for salvation that we enter into rest. (Hebrews 4:3).

It is by submitting to God in obedience and faith, and by surrendering to His will that God's rest enters into us.

**3. The Future Rest:** (*sabbatismos*<sup>4520</sup>) that all believers will enjoy with God. (**Eternal** rest).

"There remaineth, therefore, a rest to the people of God." (Hebrews 4:9).

The Greek word for "rest" here is "*sabbatismos*", meaning "a keeping of a Sabbath."

This is the only place it occurs in the New Testament.

It is definitely not referring to the weekly Sabbath because this word is "*sabbaton*" in Greek.

When believers enter heaven, it will be a sharing of God's great eternal Sabbath rest, when all our labours and battles are ended:

"Blessed are the dead which die in the Lord from henceforth . . . that they may rest (*anapausontai*) from their labours; and their works do follow them." (Revelation 14:13).

Hence the "*sabbatismos*" rest (Hebrews 4:9) is a "Sabbath keeping" used here to indicate the continual Sabbath-rest believers enjoy with the Father and the Son in the New Covenant, in contrast to the weekly Sabbath under the Mosaic Law Covenant.

It is a divine rest that believers enter in their relationship with God on earth and in eternity future.

**Key:** This is the rest believers will enjoy with God forever when our earthly work is finished.

Therefore, the weekly Sabbath (*sabbaton*) is a symbol of that **eternal rest** (*sabbatismos*) we will enjoy at the completion of God's work and our work.

(Source: *The Complete NT Word Study Dictionary*, S.Zodhiates, p.1268-70, "*sabbatismos*" 4520).

## **15. DEBATE BETWEEN A CHRISTIAN AND AN SDA THAT:**

"The New Testament teaches that the first day of the week (Sunday) as a day of worship is enforced upon God's people in the church age."

**Christian 1:** Jesus nailed the Old Mosaic Law to the cross (Colossians 2:14). I do not believe that God changed the Sabbath from the seventh day to the first day. Sunday was never a Sabbath. It is simply the day of worship appointed by God for Christians in the Church Age.

Allow me to clarify what the issue is NOT:

- 1) It is not whether Jesus observed the Sabbath. I agree that He did, because He lived under the Old Mosaic Law.
- 2) It is not whether Paul preached on the Sabbath. Showing that someone preached on a particular day does not prove that this is the day that God wants His people to assemble for worship.
- 3) It is not whether Old Testament Jews observed the Sabbath. I agree that they did.
- 4) It is not whether we are under "law" today. I agree that Christians are under God's law.

**Question: But which law are they under?**

Answer: I contend that Christians are under Christ's law, not the law of Moses in any way whatsoever.

My first argument in defence of Sunday worship is found in I Corinthians 16:1,2.

Note here that the Corinthians were commanded to give on the "first day of the week".

The Greek indicates that Paul is saying that they should give on "the first day of every week".

**Question 1:** Why would Paul instruct the Corinthians to give offerings on the first day of every week, unless the first day was to be devoted to God?

**Question 2:** If SDAs could find a Bible verse which says that Christians should take up a collection on the Sabbath day, would they use it as an argument to prove Sabbath day worship? Yes, surely. Would you use this? But Paul tells us to give on Sundays.

**Question 3:**

- a) Is giving to the church an act of worship? Yes.
- b) Could giving be done on Saturdays? If yes, then:
- c) Why did Paul give specific orders for giving to be done on the "first day of the week"?

(Answer: Because that was the only day the church met, and this proves that Sunday worship was commanded by Paul.)

"Now concerning the collection for the saints, as I have given order to the churches of Galatia, even so do ye. Upon the first day of the week let every one of you lay by him in store, as God hath prospered him, that there be no gatherings when I come." (I Corinthians 16:1,2).

Notice this Sunday offering command of Paul's was an "ORDER."

Paul had also given this same order to all the churches of Galatia (16:1).

Paul said that which he wrote were the "Commandments of God." (I Corinthians 14:37).

There is only one day on which the NT commands Christians to give offerings, and that is Sunday, "the first day of the week."

**Question 4:**

- a) SDAs, do you lay by in store on the first day of every week?
- b) Upon which day of the week do SDAs give to their church?

Answer: According to the *SDA Manual*, it is done on the seventh day of the week (p.108, 1951 edition).

c) By what authority does the SDA church do this? Is there some passage I have overlooked which commands offerings to be made on the 7th day, Saturday? The SDA church gives offerings on the last day of the week. Paul said to give on the first day of the week.

The SDA church has missed the day of worship by six days.

d) The SDA Manual says that: "The offering is a vital part of the worship hour." (p 102).

**Note: If the offering is a part of worship, and if the offering was on Sunday, then worship also took place on Sunday.**

e) **Question:** Which will you deny: the inspired pen of Paul, or the *SDA Manual*?

**SDA Objection 1:** Paul is not discussing a public offering when the church assembled, but he is commanding a laying by in store at home, may be in cookie jars.

**Answer:** Paul said he wanted them to give, so that there would be **no collections** when he came. The SDA objection is false, because, if they were storing up their offerings at home, then, when Paul came, the offerings would need to be collected from people's homes.

This would disobey Paul's command. Only if people gave weekly into a central treasury, would it be possible to obey Paul's command of "no gatherings when I come." (I Corinthians 16:2).

### **Summary of I Corinthians 16:1-2:**

- 1) Paul gave 'ORDERS' that a collection should be made on the first day of every week (Sunday).
- 2) Offerings are a part of worship.
- 3) Hence worship must take place on the first day of the week, Sunday not Saturday.

**Christian 2:** Mr SDA, you may say that Paul commanded this giving at home so that there would be an efficient collection when he arrived.

**Question:** Did you read what Paul said? Paul ordered them to lay by in store so that there would be NO COLLECTIONS when he came. You are saying that Paul ordered this so that there WOULD be a collection when he came.

If I Corinthians 16:1-3 is instructing them to lay by in store AT HOME, then there would be a collection when Paul came, because the offerings would need to be collected from people's homes.

Since Paul wants NO COLLECTIONS when he came, it is obviously talking about an offering into one central treasury on each Sunday. This necessitated that they come together to give their offerings.

**Conclusion:** This proves that 1<sup>st</sup> Century Christians met on the first day of the week to give their offerings into one central treasury. Therefore, if giving is worship (as the *SDA Manual* teaches) and giving took place on Sundays, then meeting to worship took place on Sundays.

(If giving = worship, and giving is on Sundays, then worship was on Sundays).

**SDA Objection 2:** In "lay by him in store", the word "storing up" (Greek: *thesaurizōn*) refers to people laying money aside "in each individual house until Paul came for it." **Answer:**

a) Malachi 3:10 proves that "storing up" was by weekly offerings into a central treasury.

"Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse, that there may be meat in mine house . . ." "Storehouse" is here defined as 'to store, lay up' (verb) or 'treasure, treasury, storehouse' (noun form) (*Theological Wordbook of OT*, 1:68). This is an exact parallel to Paul's usage in I Corinthians 16:2.

The Jews of Malachi's time were to store up in one central "treasury" (ie: God's house or temple).

This was NOT a storing up at home, but in the temple treasury.

b) II Corinthians 8,9 and I Corinthians 16:1-2 discuss the same collection.

The *SDA Church Manual* uses II Corinthians 8,9 to prove regular contributions to the church (p 34, 181) which is a "vital part of worship." (p 108).

If II Corinthians 8,9 and I Corinthians 16:1-2 refer to the same offerings, and if 2 Corinthians 8,9 is an act of worship, then the I Corinthians 16:1,2 offering also refers to worship.

This day of worship is ordered to be on Sunday, the first day of the week.

**SDA Objection 3:** Some SDAs claim that "by him" in "every one of you lay by him" means giving "at home by himself." Let us see what the passage really says:

- 1) "Upon the first day of the week" = Sunday. (Greek: *μιαν* = one (3391)).
- 2) "Let every one of you" = giving was the common and universal duty of all believers, be they rich or poor.
- 3) "lay by him" = "by himself" means that each person should decide to give a certain portion of money, when he is at home alone by himself, when he can calmly look at how God has prospered him. Let him decide how much to give, away from the influence of emotional appeals, or group pressure, or for public display, but prayerfully between him & God at home.
- 4) "in store" = each give a designated amount into the common storehouse treasury each Sunday.
- 5) "as God hath prospered him" = according to his wealth.
- 6) "that there be no gatherings when I come" = give this money each Sunday, so it won't need to be collected off them when Paul comes. This proves that they didn't store it up at home, then give when Paul came.

The only way “the first day of the week” could apply to EVERY person in EVERY church would be because Paul knew that Sunday was the day when EVERY person in EVERY church assembled together to worship God. “As I have given order to the churches of Galatia, even so do ye.” I Cor 16:1. **SDA Objection 4:** If Paul promoted Sunday keeping, why was there no controversy or protest between Paul and his Jerusalem brethren over Paul’s abandonment of the Sabbath?

**Answer:** There was some controversy over the abandonment of the Sabbath by the Jews, as seen in “let no man therefore judge you in..Sabbath days, which are a shadow of things to come.” (Colossians 2:16,17). Paul is saying, “Don’t let people judge you for not keeping Sabbath days, because the Sabbath is a shadow. You have been freed from observing the Mosaic law, now that you are under the law of Christ.

#### **Questions to ask SDAs:**

**Question 1:** If Christians must keep the Sabbath, why do we have no example in the NT where any church ever assembled on the Sabbath for worship? If there is such a case, please show me.

You know that the Bible teaches by: a) direct command; b) example; c) implication.

You won’t allow God to teach us by the example of the churches at **Troas, Galatia, Jerusalem** and **Corinth** that God endorses Sunday worship (Acts 20:7; I Corinthians 16:1,2; John 20:19,26).

You try to put God in a box when you demand a direct statement for Sunday keeping, yet you ignore the example of four churches that met for Sunday worship.

**Question 2:** If you found a NT passage which read like this: “Upon the seventh day of the week, let every one of you lay by him in store”, would you use this as proof of Sabbath day worship? SDAs would love to find such a passage. Sunday is the only day on which the NT orders the giving of money.

**Question 3:** Do you give money to the SDA church on Sunday, the first day of the week? No.

**Question 4:** On which day of the week do SDAs give to their church? Saturday.

**Question 5:** By what authority does the SDA church give on the 7<sup>th</sup> day of the week (Saturday)?

Paul gave these “orders” to the Galatian churches as well as to the Corinthian church.

I Corinthians was written to all Christians (1:2).

**Question 6:** How can this offering be a collection at people’s homes, when Paul clearly said that he wanted them to give each Sunday, so there would be no collections when he came?

If offerings were stored at people’s homes, wouldn’t they need to be collected when Paul came?

Wouldn’t this break his command of “no gatherings when I come”?

**Question 7:** Is giving to the church an act of worship? Yes.

What day did this take place? Sunday.

Then doesn’t this mean that Christians should meet for worship on Sunday as Paul commanded?

**Question 8:** Why did Paul command them to give on Sundays?

Because that was the day when the first Century churches met for worship.

#### **Christian 3: SDA Objection 5:**

Colossians 2:14 states that the Mosaic law was nailed to the cross.

“Blotting out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us, which was contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross.” (Colossians 2:14).

SDAs dispute that “ordinances” means “**Mosaic commandments**.”

Instead, they claim it refers to the “written record of our sins”, because they claim that neither the word “law” nor its concept are found in Colossians.

**Answer:** The immediate and remote context show that Paul is discussing the Mosaic law in Col. 2:14.

- a) The immediate context mentions elements of the Mosaic law such as circumcision and uncircumcision (Colossians 2:11-13). It mentions “festivals”, “new moons”, “Sabbaths” Col.2:16.
- “Let no man judge you in meat or in drink.” Jewish teachers tried to bind Mosaic laws on them.
  - “or in respect of an holyday.” Holyday is a Jewish feast or festival. No one had a right to impose Jewish feast observance on Christians, or to condemn them if they did not keep them. They had been delivered from that obligation by Christ’s death.

• “or of the **new moon**”: on the appearance of the new moon, Israel was required to offer to God 2 bullocks, 1 ram, 7 sheep and 1 meat offering (Numbers 10:10; 28:11-14), as well as the daily sacrifices. The new moon in the beginning of the month Tisri (October) was the beginning of the Jewish Civil year, and was commanded to be observed as a festival. (Leviticus 23:24,25).

• “or of **Sabbath days**”. The word “Sabbath” in the OT, is applied not only to the seventh day, but to all the days of holy rest & festivals observed by Jews. This sounds like Law of Moses language.

- b) He says “festivals”, “new moons”, “**Sabbaths**” (2:16) which are a “**shadow** of things to come” (2:17). Note: “**Shadow**” is used two other times in the book of Hebrews, and in each case it refers to the Law of Moses.

- i) Hebrews 8:5 “every high priest is ordained to offer gifts and sacrifices . . . who serve unto the example and **shadow** of heavenly things, as Moses was admonished of God.”

- ii) **Hebrews 10:1** “For the **law** having a **shadow** of good things to come, and not the very image of the things, can never with those sacrifices make the comers thereunto perfect.” Therefore the immediate context of Colossians 2:14 shows that Paul is discussing the Law of Moses being nailed to the cross.

- c) The remote context shows that Colossians 2:14 speaks of the **Law of Moses** being nailed to the cross. Ephesians 2:15 states that what was “abolished in his flesh” was the “law of commandments”, which clearly refers to the **Law of Moses** (Romans 7:8-13). “Having abolished in his flesh the enmity, even the **law of commandments** contained in **ordinances**.” (Ephesians 2:15). Here in Ephesians 2:15 the “Law of Moses commandments” is referred to as “ordinances”, which is the same word “ordinances” used in Colossians 2:14. “Ordinances” means “decree, edict, law”. The “enmity” means that Jesus Christ by His blood sacrifice has removed the enmity between Jews and Gentiles, as well as between the sinner and God, thus removing all obstacles to reconciliation between God and man.

In Colossians 2:14, Paul discusses both the **law** and the **penalty of the law** being nailed to the cross. The theme of this section is that Christians “are “complete” in him. (Colossians 2:10).

Jesus Christ is all that we need to:

- 1) be **saved** from sin and be justified in God’s sight;
- 2) have **wisdom** to guide us;
- 3) give us **grace** to sustain us in trials and to fulfil our duties in life.

People need not go back to the Law of Moses, because Christ has nailed it to the cross. Therefore, why do we allow people to tell us we should observe Jewish festivals, new moons or Sabbaths?

We are no longer under Moses’ laws, but under the law of Christ.

Jesus said in Matthew 5:17,18 “Think not that I am come to destroy the law or the prophets: I am not come to destroy, but to fulfil . . . Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law till all be fulfilled”.

- This means that the Law of Moses would last **up until** its fulfilment.  
Christ fulfilled the law of Moses, therefore it has passed away.
- Christianity was not a continuation of Judaism. Jeremiah says, “Behold the days come, saith the Lord, that I will make a **new covenant** with the house of Israel, and with the house of Judah: **not according to the covenant** that I **made** with their fathers in the day that I took them by the hand to bring them out of the land of Egypt.” (Jeremiah 31:31,32).

**Question:** Which covenant did God make with Israel when He led them out of Egypt?

**Answer:** I Kings 8:9 “There was nothing in the ark save the **two tables of stone**, which Moses put there at Horeb, when the Lord **made** a **covenant** with the children of Israel, when they came out of the land of Egypt”. The **10 Commandments** were **part of the Mosaic covenant**.

**Key:** Jeremiah says that the new covenant would be “**NOT according**” to the **Mosaic Covenant**.

Hebrews 8:7-13 clearly shows that Jeremiah 31:31-34 has been fulfilled in the first century. Hebrews 8:13 says that the Old Mosaic Covenant, which includes the 10 Commandments, were made obsolete.

“A new covenant, he hath made the **first old**. Now that which decayeth and waxeth old is **ready to vanish away**.” Just as **British laws**’ control over Australia and USA **ceased** at Independence, so

**Moses’ laws** control over mankind **ceased** when Christ fulfilled them on the cross.

## **16. SABBATARIAN ARGUMENTS REFUTED**

<b>1) True Proposition</b>	<b>SDA Argument</b>
10 Commandments <u>are in</u> the old covenant.	10 Commandments are <u>not in</u> the old covenant
The 10 Commandments & the entire old covenant <u>were all abolished</u> when Christ died on the cross.	SDAs say, “The old covenant that was abolished was <u>not</u> the 10 Commandments, and the 10 Commandments are still binding.”

### **I. The following verses teach the above true proposition:**

- a) Hebrews 9:1,4 “Then verily the first covenant had . . . the tables of the covenant”.
- b) Deuteronomy 4:13 “And he declared unto you his covenant, which he commanded you to perform, even ten commandments; and he wrote them upon two tables of stone.”
- c) Deuteronomy 9:9 “When I was gone up into the mount to receive the tables of stone, even the tables of the covenant which the Lord made with you . . .”
- d) I Kings 8:9,21 “There was nothing in the ark save the two tables of stone, which Moses put there at Horeb, when the Lord made a covenant with the children of Israel . . .” (v 9).  
“I have set there a place for the ark, wherein is the covenant of the Lord, which he made with our fathers.” (v 21).
- e) II Chronicles 6:11 “in it I have put the ark, wherein is the covenant of the Lord, that he made with the children of Israel.”
- f) Exodus 34:28 “He wrote upon the tables the words of the covenant, the ten commandments.  
Since the 10 Commandments are in the ark, and the covenant is in the ark, this equates the 10 Commandments with the old covenant.

### **II. The Old Covenant at Sinai included these parts:**

- 1) Ark of the covenant: “the tribe of Levi, to bear the ark of the covenant of the Lord.” (Deut. 10:8).
- 2) Tables of the covenant: “to receive the tables of stone, even the tables of the covenant.” Deut.9:9
- 3) Book of the covenant: “keep the passover...as it is written in the book of this covenant.” (II Kings 23:21; Exodus 24:7).
- 4) Curses of the covenant: “according to all the curses of the covenant . . .” (Deuteronomy 29:21).
- 5) Blood of the covenant: “Behold the blood of the covenant, which the Lord hath made with you concerning all these words.” (Exodus 24:8).

These were all abolished at the cross, including the tablets of stone, the Ten Commandments.

### **III. The Old Covenant that was abolished is called:**

- 1) **The First Covenant** (Hebrews 8:7).
- 2) **The Old Testament** (II Cor. 3:14) “the old testament; which vail is done away in Christ.”
- 3) **The Law** (Galatians 3:17) “the covenant, that was confirmed before of God in Christ, the law, which was 430 years after, cannot disannul that it should make the promise of none effect.” This means, the Mosaic law cannot disannul the Abrahamic Covenant.
- 4) **The Middle wall of partition.** ‘has broken down the middle wall of partition between us’ Eph2:14
- 5) **The enmity.** “Having abolished in his flesh the enmity, even the law of commandments.’ Eph 2:15
- 6) **The law of commandments** (Ephesians 2:15).
- 7) **The handwriting of ordinances** (Colossians 2:14) “Blotting out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross.”
- 8) **The shadow of things to come** (Colossians 2:17).
- 9) **The yoke of bondage** (Galatians 5:1) “be not entangled again with the yoke of bondage.”
- 10) **The ministration of death** (II Corinthians 3:7).
- 11) **The ministration of condemnation** (II Corinthians 3:9).
- 12) **Mount Sinai** (Galatians 4:25) “which gendereth to bondage.”
- 13) **The Ten Commandments** (Exodus 34:28) “the words of the covenant, the ten commandments.”
- 14) **The Law of Moses.**

- IV. The New Covenant that replaced the Old Covenant is called:
- 1) **The New Testament** (Mark 14:24) "This is my blood of the new testament.."
  - 2) **The Better Covenant** (Hebrews 8:6) "he is the mediator of a better covenant."
  - 3) **The New Covenant** (Hebrews 8:8) "I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel."
  - 4) **The Second Covenant** (Hebrews 8:7) "if that first covenant had been faultless, then should no place have been sought for the second."
  - 5) **The Everlasting Covenant** (Hebrews 13:20) "the blood of the everlasting covenant."
  - 6) **The Law of Faith** (Romans 3:27) "By what law? Of works? Nay: but by the law of faith."
  - 7) **The Faith** (Galatians 3:23) "But before faith came, we were kept under the law, shut up unto the faith which should afterwards be revealed."
  - 8) **A Covenant of Peace** (Ezekiel 34:25) "I will make with them a covenant of peace . . ."

<b>2) True Proposition</b>	<b>SDA Argument</b>
Colossians 2:14-16 shows that the weekly Sabbath day <b>is</b> taken away and nailed to the cross.	The Sabbath day in Colossians 2:16 is <b>not</b> the weekly Sabbath day, but the monthly or yearly Sabbaths.

**Answer:** The Sabbath day in Colossians 2:16 **is** the weekly Sabbath that was nailed to the cross because I. The "handwriting of ordinances" in Colossians 2:14 refers to the 10 Commandments, including the Sabbath day because "contrary to us" here means the same as "ministration of death" in 2Cor 3:7

<b>Colossians 2:14</b>	<b>II Corinthians 3:7</b>
"Blotting out the <u>handwriting of ordinances</u> (10 Commandments), that was against us, which was <u>contrary to us</u> , and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross."	"But if the <u>ministration of death</u> , written and <u>graven in stones</u> (10 Commandments) was glorious."

SDAs have overlooked the fact that the 10 Commandments were called a "ministration of death."

**Question:** What is the difference between "contrary to us" and "ministration of death?"

**Answer:** They mean essentially the same thing: "contrary" in Greek means "an adversary opposed against us." (5227 in Strong's Concordance).

## **II. The Year, Month, Day progression in Colossians 2:16 proves it is a seventh day Sabbath because of similar expressions used elsewhere which also mean seventh day Sabbath, as seen below:**

<b>Weekly Sabbath Day in Colossians 2:16 is nailed to the cross</b>				
	<b>Yearly</b>	<b>Monthly</b>	<b>Weekly</b>	
Colossians 2:16	Holy day	New moon	Sabbath days	"Let no man judge you . . . in respect of an <u>holiday</u> (yearly) or of the <u>new moon</u> or of the <u>Sabbath days.</u> "
Galatians 4:10	Years	Months	Days	"Ye observe days, months & times & years"
I Chronicles 23:31	Set feasts	New moons	Sabbaths	"to offer all burnt sacrifices..in the <u>Sabbaths</u> , in the <u>new moons</u> , and on the <u>set feasts.</u> "
II Chronicles 31:3	Set feasts	New moons	Sabbaths	"burnt offerings for the <u>Sabbaths</u> , the <u>new moons</u> , and the <u>set feasts . . .</u> "
II Chronicles 2:4	Solemn feasts	New moons	Sabbaths	"for the burnt offerings morning & evening, on the <u>Sabbaths</u> , and on the <u>new moons</u> , and on the <u>solemn feasts</u> of the Lord our God."
II Chronicles 8:13	Solemn feasts	New moons	Sabbaths	"offering according to the commandment of Moses, on the <u>Sabbaths</u> , and on the <u>new moons</u> , and on the <u>solemn feasts</u> , three times in the year, even in the feast of unleavened bread,...weeks.. tabernacles."
Nehemiah 10:33	Set feasts	New moons	Sabbaths	"for the continual burnt offering, of the <u>Sabbaths</u> , of the <u>new moons</u> , for the <u>set feasts</u>
Ezekiel 45:17	Feasts	New moons	Sabbaths	"it shall be the prince's part to give burnt offerings, & meat offerings, & drink offerings, in the <u>feasts</u> , & in the <u>new moons</u> , & in the <u>Sabbaths</u> "
Hosea 2:11	Feast days	New moons	Sabbaths	'I will cause all her mirth to cease, her <u>feast days</u> , her <u>new moons</u> , her <u>Sabbaths</u> .'

**III.** The Greek plural “sabbaton” in Colossians 2:16 refers to the Sabbath, in the same way that the same Greek word “sabbaton” refers to the weekly Sabbath in these other references:

Text	“Sabbaton” plural in Greek
Colossians 2:16	“Let no man judge you in . . . Sabbath days” (sabbaton).
Matthew 28:1	“In the end of the Sabbath (sabbaton), . . .”
Luke 4:16	“he went into the synagogue on the Sabbath day (sabbaton) . . .”
Acts 16:13	“And on the Sabbath (sabbaton) we went out of the city.”
Exodus 20:8 (Septuagint)	“Remember the Sabbath day (sabbaton) . . .”

**IV.** The lack of the Greek definite article before “Sabbath” in Colossians 2:16 refers to the Sabbath, just as the lack of the Greek definite article in these verses refers to the weekly Sabbath:

Text	Seventh Day Sabbath Lacks Greek Definite Article
Matthew 28:1	“In the end of the Sabbath”
John 5:9	“On the same day was the Sabbath”
John 5:10	“The Jews said, It is the Sabbath day”
John 5:16	“he had done these things on the Sabbath day”

3) True Proposition	SDA Argument
The Sabbath law is <u>not</u> a moral law.	The Sabbath law <u>is</u> a moral law because it is in
The other 9 commandments are moral laws.	the 10 Commandments.

Answer: The Sabbath law is not a moral law because:

I. If the Sabbath law is moral, then why were the priests allowed to profane it?  
“Have ye not read in the law, how that on the Sabbath days the priests in the temple profane the Sabbath, and are blameless?” (Matthew 12:5; Numbers 28:9,10).

“on the seventh day, they compassed the city after the same manner seven times.” Joshua 6:15.

This journey around Jericho seven times, was more than a Sabbath day’s journey.

This was commanded by God.

- II. If the Sabbath is moral, then why did God grow weary of them keeping it?
- God never said he was weary of them “NOT stealing” or “NOT committing adultery.”
  - But God could not bear their keeping the Sabbath:  
“the new moons and Sabbaths, the calling of the assemblies, I cannot (endure) away with; it is iniquity, even the solemn meeting. Your new moons and your appointed feasts my soul hateth, they are a trouble unto me; I am weary to bear them.” (Isaiah 1:13,14).  
This is never said of any moral command anywhere in the Bible!  
Think about it. Consider this simple logic:
- a) God NEVER grows weary of men keeping moral laws;
  - b) God DID grow weary of men keeping the 4<sup>th</sup> Commandment (Sabbath law);
  - c) Therefore the Sabbath is not a moral law!

III. If the Sabbath law was a moral law intended for all mankind, then why did God NEVER charge the Gentiles with breaking it? God charges the Gentiles many times for breaking all the 9 moral commandments on the tablets of stone (eg: idolatry, baby murder), but NEVER ONCE says anything about them breaking the Sabbath. This proves that the Sabbath is not inherently moral, but just another ceremonial law given ONLY to the Jews.

#### Sabbatarian Arguments

The Sabbath law is moral because:

1. Violation was punishable by death. (Exodus 31:15; 35:2).

Answer: All the following ceremonial or non-moral infractions brought death.

Hence the Sabbath law is ceremonial as well because:

- 1) Aaron’s sons (Nadab and Abihu) were killed for violating a ceremonial law when offering incense to Jehovah. (Leviticus 10:1-5). 768

- 2) For disobeying ceremonial commands of any priest “the man that will do presumptuously, and will not hearken to the priest, or unto the judge, even that man shall die.” Deuteronomy 17:12.
- 3) For touching Mount Horeb “whosoever touches the mount shall be surely put to death.” Exod 19:12
- 4) For unauthorized entry by Aaron into the holy place of the tabernacle.  
“Speak unto Aaron thy brother, that he come not at all times into the holy place within the veil before the mercy seat, which is upon the ark, that he die not . . .” (Leviticus 16:2).
- 5) For looking into the Ark. “And he smote the men of Bethshemesh, because they had looked into the ark of the Lord . . .” (I Samuel 6:19).
- 6) For not keeping the Sabbath day. “Ye shall keep the Sabbath; for it is holy unto you: every one that defileth it shall surely be put to death.” (Exodus 31:14).

2. The Sabbath law is moral because it was spoken by God personally.

Answer: This is false because God spoke personally on many other issues which are no longer binding on Christians, such as:

- 1) God spoke personally to many such as Adam, Cain, Noah, Abraham, Jacob and Moses regarding burnt offerings, yet these are not binding on Christians today.
- 2) God personally spoke many altar, sacrifice and offering laws to Moses at the same time that He gave the 10 Commandments. (Exodus 20:21-26).
- 3) God spoke personally to Abram about the law of circumcision, yet this is not binding on Christians today. The Bible nowhere teaches that things spoken or written personally by God are binding on all people for all time.

3. The Sabbath is inherently moral and sacred of itself.

Answer: This is false because the Sabbath was sanctified only because God rested on that day, not because it was inherently moral or sacred. The day itself did not make it holy. Resting on it did not make it holy. But God blessing and hallowing it did make it holy. The Sabbath day's holiness did not come from its own nature. It was no more inherently holy than any other Jewish holy day that God blessed and set apart in the Law of Moses. Since other Jewish holy days that God blessed and set apart, are not binding on Christians, neither is the Sabbath.

4) True Proposition	SDA Argument
10 Commandments and the Sabbath law <u>did not exist</u> before Moses.	10 Commandments <u>existed</u> from the Garden of Eden.
I. Even if the Sabbath was given to Adam, this does not mean Christians must keep it, because God also gave <u>sacrificial offering laws to Adam</u> (after expulsion from Eden). This SDA argument proves nothing.	
II. The 10 Commandments or Sabbath law <u>did not exist before Moses</u> , because of these reasons:	
1) God <u>revealed</u> or “ <u>made known</u> ” the <u>Sabbath law</u> and 10 Commandments to Israel at Mount Sinai. He did not remind them: “Thou <u>made known</u> unto them thy holy <u>Sabbath</u> , and commanded them precepts, statutes and laws, by the hand of Moses thy servant.” (Nehemiah 9:13,14). This verse is bad news for SDAs	
2) <u>Israelite leaders before Moses did not keep the Sabbath</u> . “The Lord our God <u>made</u> a covenant with us in Horeb. (1491BC). The Lord made <u>not</u> this covenant with <u>our fathers</u> , but with us, even us, who are all of us here <u>alive this day</u> .” (Deuteronomy 5:2,3). (1451BC).	
Adam, Abraham, Isaac, Jacob and Joseph knew nothing about Sabbath keeping.	
3) The Sabbath law <u>came 430 years after the Abrahamic Covenant</u> : “the law, which was 430 years <u>after</u> (Abraham).” (Galatians 3:17). This shows that Abraham never knew about the Sabbath law.	
4) <u>No-one before the Exodus (Exodus 16) ever knew about the Sabbath law</u> . “I caused them to go forth out of the land of Egypt . . . I <u>gave them</u> my Sabbaths, to be a sign between me and them...” (Ezekiel 20:10,12).	769

5) The word “Sabbath” is not found in the book of Genesis.

6) The word “Sabbath” is first mentioned in Exodus 16:22-23.

Exodus 16:23-30 indicate that Israel was not used to keeping the Sabbath day before this time. It was a new experience for them:

“And it came to pass, that on the sixth day they gathered twice as much **bread**...and all the rulers of the congregation came and told Moses. (v 22). And he said unto them, this is that which the Lord hath said, Tomorrow is the rest of the holy Sabbath unto the Lord: bake that which ye will bake today, and seethe that which ye will seethe; that which remaineth over lay up for you to be kept until the morning.” (Exodus 16:22,23).

**Question:** If God’s people had kept the Sabbath since Adam, why did Moses here need to tell the rulers that tomorrow was the Sabbath and how they should keep it? **Answer:** Because the Israelites here were equally unfamiliar with BOTH manna and with the Sabbath.

7) **Question:** SDAs argue that since “Sabbaths” in Ezekiel 20:10-12 (“I gave them my Sabbaths”) is plural it cannot refer to the weekly Sabbath.

**Answer:** This SDA view is **WRONG** because:

a) The weekly Sabbath is plural in Exodus 31:13,17,

“Verily my Sabbaths ye shall keep . . . for in six days the Lord made heaven and earth,...”

b) Both singular and plural are used for the weekly Sabbath in:

- **Leviticus 19:3** “...keep my Sabbaths.”
- **Leviticus 23:38** “beside the Sabbaths of the Lord.”
- **Isaiah 56:2,4** “that keepeth the Sabbaths from polluting it . . . unto the eunuchs that keep my Sabbaths . . .”
- **Matthew 12:5** “on the Sabbath days the priests in the temple profane the Sabbath, and are blameless?”
- **Matthew 12:10** “Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath days? ”
- **Acts 17:2** “Paul . . . three Sabbath days reasoned with them.”

### III. There is no record or hint that anyone before Exodus Chapter 16 kept the Sabbath.

**Question:** If God instructed the Patriarchs concerning:

Offerings (Genesis 4:3-4); Altars (Genesis 8:20), Priests (Genesis 8:20), Tithes (Genesis 14:20),

Circumcision (Genesis 17:10), Marriage (Genesis 2:24; 34:9),

why would He omit mentioning the “important” Sabbath command?

### IV. The Sabbath was not a part of God’s eternal law in heaven before creation, because the time that God sanctified it was AFTER the creation week.

Note: God rested on the 7<sup>th</sup> day, then AFTER His 7<sup>th</sup> day rest, God sanctified it, not before in heaven.

“God rested on the seventh day, God blessed the seventh day, and sanctified it.” (Genesis 2:2,3).

a) Genesis was written during the time of Moses, not before. Neither Adam, nor Abraham had the book of Genesis. The Israelites in the wilderness were the first people God told about the Sabbath day. Genesis 2:2 tells us the reason, not the time that God sanctified the Sabbath.

b) An example like this is that Christ was chosen as the sacrificial lamb before the foundation of the world (I Peter 1:20; 2 Tim 1:4), but specific details were not revealed until 4000 years later when Christ was born. The Father set Jesus apart as the sacrifice long before He actually gave Him to die on Calvary

### V. The Sabbath would be inappropriate for Adam while in the Garden of Eden, because:

1) There was no weariness, sickness, or death in Eden before the Fall.

Hard labour that required rest only existed after Adam sinned, not before (Genesis 3:19).

2) The only two commandments that God gave Adam before the Fall were to:

a) Dress and keep the Garden (Gen 2:15). b) Not eat of the fruit of the tree of knowledge (Gen 2:16,17)

3) “servants and strangers within thy gates” (Exodus 20:10) would make no sense to Adam in Eden regarding the Sabbath, because he had no servants or strangers. So Sabbath was not given to Adam.

## **VI. The Sabbath was not sanctified on Day 6, but is an example of “Prolepsis”.**

**Definition:** “the representation of something in the future as if it already existed or had occurred.” (*Webster’s Dictionary*); “assumption that something is done or true before it is so.” (*Oxford Dictionary*) When Moses wrote Genesis to Israel, He stated the reason for Jews keeping the Sabbath is in Genesis 2:2,3. This reason was only revealed to the Exodus generation of Israel in 1491BC. Exodus 20:8,11: “Remember the Sabbath day, to keep it holy. For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, the sea, and all that in them is, and rested the seventh day: wherefore the Lord blessed the seventh day and hallowed it.”

Examples of prolepsis are as follows:

- 1) “Adam called his wife’s name Eve; because she was the mother of all living.’ (Genesis 3:20). (This is said before Cain’s birth).
- 2) “Adah bare Jabal. He was the father of such as dwell in tents, and of such as have cattle.” (Genesis 4:20). (This was before he had tents or cattle).
- 3) “His brother’s name was Jubal: he was the father of all such as handle the harp and organ.” (Genesis 4:21). (Those handling harp and organ had not been born at that time).
- 4) “Judas Iscariot, who also betrayed him.” (Matthew 10:4). (The betrayal did not occur until three years later.)
- 5) “It was that Mary which anointed the Lord with ointment.” (John 11:1,2). (Mary’s anointing did not take place until later in John 12:3).
- 6) “Therefore shall a man leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave unto his wife.” (Genesis 2:24). (There were no fathers or mothers at that time.)

<b>5) True Proposition</b>	<b>SDA Argument</b>
Matthew 5:17,18 is fulfilled by Christ <u>fulfilling the OT prophecies</u> and <u>offerings</u> about the Messiah.	Christ came to fulfil the law, <u>not to destroy it</u> . (Matthew 5:17-18).

Matthew 5:17-18 “Think not that I am come to destroy the law, or the prophets: I am not come to destroy, but to fulfil. For verily I say unto you, Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled.”

**Actual Sabbatarian Argument** “Because heaven and earth are still here, so God’s laws (meaning the 10 Commandments) are still binding.”

An SDA preacher actually wrote the following about a talk he had with a Christian minister: “I remember talking to a preacher about this. He was getting more and more angry as we discussed this issue. For some reason this topic conjures up some strange emotions! Must be because some people know they’re not teaching all the truth! I had given over 40 verses establishing God’s law and the preacher clung to his two or three verses trying to say the law was abolished. Then I said, “Okay preacher, I’ll tell you what, stomp your foot on the ground.” As he did I asked “Is the earth still beneath you?” “Yes of course it is,” he replied. “Now look out the window, is the sun shining?” “Yes”, he said. “At night, do the moon and stars still come out?” “Of course they do,” he said. “Then read Matthew 5:17-19. Jesus said till heaven and earth pass away not even a jot or tittle could pass from the law. You just told me heaven and earth were still here so God’s law is still binding!” (*Revelation Seminar book*).

### **Answers:**

1. Jesus did not say that the “10 Commandments” would endure forever, but that the “Law and the Prophets” would endure forever, as a record that Christ fulfilled their Messianic prophecies.

**Question:** What does this verse mean?

We must also define the terms “law”, “prophets”, and “fulfil.”

- **The Law:** To the Jews, this was the first division of the OT, known as the 5 books of Moses.
- **The Prophets:** This was the second and largest part of the Hebrew Scriptures.
- **To fulfil:** To fill up or accomplish what was predicted in the Old Testament.

**Answer:** As Christ was starting His public ministry, He needed to state what He came to do.

By setting up as a teacher in opposition to the Scribes and Pharisees, some might charge Him with intending to destroy their law and abolishing Israel’s customs.

Jesus was saying that He did not come to do away with or destroy the authority of the Old Testament.

- a) The Law of Moses contained many sacrifices, rites and types that spoke of the Messiah's life, person and work. These were fulfilled during Christ's life, ministry, death, burial, resurrection.
- b) The Prophets contained many prophecies of His life and death, which were fulfilled and accomplished during His time on earth. Hence Christ fulfilled the Law by obeying it perfectly, and by fulfilling the Prophets' prophecies of the Messiah.

2. "JOT and TITTLE" indicate much more than the 10 Commandments.

The smallest jot and tittle of the law and prophets refer to the entire OT law, including all the ceremonial laws. According to SDA logic, this verse proves that we must still keep the ceremonial jots and tittles.

**Question:** Would SDAs want us to keep all the ceremonial laws?

SDA reply: No, because they've all passed away.

**You:** So have the 10 Commandments been replaced by the law of Christ in the New Covenant.

3. Christ said, "I came to fulfil"; He did not say "I came to perpetuate."

**Questions for SDAs:**

- Did Jesus come to fulfil the Law of Moses? (They will say "Yes").
- Was the Law of Moses abolished when Jesus fulfilled it? (They will say "Yes").
- Did Jesus fulfil the law and the prophets? (Yes).
- Then doesn't this mean that the Mosaic laws have passed away because they have been fulfilled in Jesus Christ?

Note: Christ clearly did change the "Law and the Prophets."

"For the priesthood being changed, there is made of necessity a change also of the law."

(Hebrews 7:12). (See Galatians 3:23-24).

4. **SDA Objection:** It is easier for heaven and earth to pass, than one tittle of the law to fail. Luk16:17

**Answer:** None of the law of Moses did fail. Christ fulfilled it 100%.

5. **Questions for SDAs:**

- Why did Jesus come? (To fulfil the law and the prophets).
  - Was Jesus successful in His mission to fulfil the law? (Yes).
  - What happens when Jesus fulfils the law & the prophets? (Only then will the law be destroyed).
6. SDAs argue that "fulfil" (4137 in Strong's) does not mean "end" in Matthew 5:17,18, because "fulfil" does not mean "end" in Matthew 3:15 "thus it becometh us to fulfil all righteousness". SDAs say "See! Righteousness did not end when Jesus was baptized."

**Answer:** The verses are not parallel to each other. Compare them:

**"One jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled."** (Matthew 5:18).

Jesus did not say in Matthew 3:15 that: "**all righteousness** shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled." But He did say that the law would pass when it was fulfilled by using the phrase "**TILL** all be fulfilled." The word "TILL" means that the law would pass when it was fulfilled, which occurred by Christ's death, burial, resurrection and ascension.

Note: The word "fulfil" in Matthew 5:18 is used in the same sense in Matthew 24:34.

"This generation shall not pass, **till** all these things be fulfilled."

<b>6) True Proposition</b>	<b>SDA Argument</b>
The 10 Commandments are <u>only</u> for Israel.	The 10 Commandments are for all mankind forever

I. If the Sabbath law was a moral law intended for all mankind, then:

**Question:** Why did God NEVER charge the Gentiles with breaking it?

God often charges the Gentiles with breaking all of the 9 moral commandments (eg: Romans 1:29 covet, murder, false witness, haters of God, disobedient to parents), but never once charges them with breaking the Sabbath. Why? This proves the Sabbath law is just another ceremonial law given only to the Jews.

II. How could people living in the Arctic Circle keep the Sabbath from sunset to sunset, when these regions have six months of the year daylight and the next six months of darkness?

(See *World Book Encyclopedia under 'Day.'*)

- III.** The very words of the 10 Commandments show that they were meant **ONLY for the Jews:**
- God didn't bring my ancestors out of Egyptian bondage. "I am the Lord thy God, which have brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage." Exodus 20:2.
  - Since the Sabbath is a sign between God and Israel, non-Jews are not required to keep it.
  - God has not given me the promised land of Canaan. "Honour thy father and thy mother: that thy days may be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee." Exodus 20:12.

7) True Proposition	SDA Argument
We are <u>now under a different law</u> , the law of Christ.	If the 10 Commandments were abolished, we could murder, steal and commit adultery.

SDA Argument: "If a preacher tells you the law is done away, go to his church, break the 8<sup>th</sup> commandment and steal his offering. You'll quickly find out that the law is not done away."

#### Answers:

- This favourite SDA argument is deceptive and false by implying that if we don't listen to Moses, then there are no other laws to guide us.

Illustration: A country may change its laws over time. Also, as you travel from one country to another, you find yourself living under different laws. For example:

Examples	Obsolete Law	Present Law
Australia	Colonial days living under British laws.	After Independence and Federation (1901) living under Australia's own laws.
USA	Confederation of 1781-87	Constitution of 1787 to today.
Canada	Constitution of 1867-1981	Constitution of 1981 to today.
Bible	Law of Moses/10 Commandments from Mount Sinai to the Cross.	Law of Christ/New Covenant from Cross to 2 <sup>nd</sup> Coming.

Just because the Mosaic Law is obsolete and abolished, does not mean that we are without law.

We now live under a new and better law, the Law of Christ contained in the New Covenant. (Gal. 6:2).

- Also, all the moral laws in the 10 Commandments and the Old Covenant are brought over and expanded in the New Covenant Law of Christ.

	The Old Covenant. 10 Commandments. <b>(Done away, nailed to the cross)</b>	The New Covenant. <b>The Law of Christ.</b>
1	No other gods beside me.	Brought forward into New Covenant (I Thess. 1:9). "Ye turned to God from idols to <u>serve the living &amp; true God</u> "
2	No graven images.	Brought forward into New Covenant (Galatians 5:20). "works of flesh . . . idolatry."
3	Don't take God's name in vain.	Brought forward into New Covenant (I Timothy 1:20). "That they may learn not to blaspheme."
4	Six days shall you work, but the 7 <sup>th</sup> day is the Sabbath.	<b>Still nailed to the cross (Colossians 2:14-17). Never brought forward. No NT command to keep Sabbath.</b>
5	Honour your father and mother.	Brought forward into New Covenant (Ephesians 6:1-3). "Honour thy father and mother."
6	Don't kill.	Brought forward into New Covenant. (Galatians 5:21). "Works of flesh . . . murders."
7	Don't commit adultery.	Brought forward into New Covenant. (Galatians 5:19). "works of flesh . . . adultery."
8	Don't steal.	Brought forward into New Covenant. (Ephesians 4:28). "Let him that stole steal no more, let him work to <u>give</u> ."
9	Don't bear false witness.	Brought forward into New Covenant. (Ephesian 4:25). "Putting away lying, speak every man the <u>truth</u> ."
10	Don't covet.	Brought forward into New Covenant. (Ephesians 5:5). "Nor covetous man who is an idolator."

8) True Proposition	SDA Argument
The <u>Royal law</u> is stated in James 2:8 “Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself.” (Leviticus 19:18).	The <u>Royal law</u> of James 2:8-12 is the <b>10 Commandments law.</b>

<sup>8</sup>If ye fulfil the royal law according to the Scripture, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself, ye do well:

<sup>9</sup>But if ye have respect to persons, ye commit sin, and are convinced of the law as transgressors.

<sup>10</sup>For whosoever shall keep the whole law, and yet offend in one point, he is guilty of all.

<sup>11</sup>For he that said “Do not commit adultery”, said also “Do not kill”.

Now if thou commit no adultery, yet if thou kill, thou art become a transgressor of the law.

<sup>12</sup>So speak ye, and do, as they that shall be judged by the law of liberty.” (James 2:8-12).

### Answer:

The Royal law is royal because it is considered the King of Laws, and because it is important among other laws, as a King is prominent among other men. This law should govern human affairs, as a king rules his subjects. We must regard all people as our neighbours and treat them fairly as we ourselves want to be treated. The commandments against adultery and killing were violations of our neighbour's worth, which supported James' rebuke of those showing favouritism due to rank, birth or wealth.

v.10: Guilty of the “whole law” means far more than just the 10 Commandments; it means all the law of God, all that God requires, including all NT laws not contained in the 10 Commandments (eg: not suing other Christians, homosexuality, etc). James is saying in v.10 “he is guilty of all”, that one act of disobedience, makes it impossible to be saved by the law. His acts of obedience in other areas will not offset or screen him from the penalty of violating one law.

The “law of liberty” is not the **10 Commandments** because the 10 Commandments are called:

a) a “yoke of bondage” or slavery. (Galatians 5:1).

b) “yoke . . . which neither our fathers nor we were able to bear.” (Acts 15:10).

Only SDAs could call the 10 Commandments a “Law of Liberty”, where other NT verses describe them as a schoolmaster, a prison that shuts people up (Galatians 2:23,24), a yoke of slavery (Galatians 5:1) and an unbearable yoke. (Acts 15:10).

The law of liberty comes from the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus, which makes us free from the law of sin and death (Romans 8:2-4). This liberty comes as we “walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit” by yielding to the Holy Spirit daily. James states that he who habitually feels that he will be judged by a law where he can be and should be free from the bondage of sin, has one of the strongest inducements to lead a holy life. (v.12).

9) True Proposition	SDA Argument
a) Jesus did <u>NOT</u> say, ‘Keep the 10 Commandments.’ b) Jesus’ commandments are <u>NOT</u> Moses’ 10 Commandments.	Jesus said, “ <u>Keep my Commandments</u> .” (SDAs read this as the 10 Commandments of Moses, especially keep the Saturday Sabbath).

Some verses that SDAs use to teach that we must keep the 10 Commandments are:

**1. John 14:15** “If ye love me, keep my commandments.”

**2. John 14:21** “He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me.”

**3. I John 2:3** “And hereby do we know that we know him, if we keep his commandments.”

**4. I John 5:2** “By this we know that we love the children of God, when we love God & keep his commandments.”

**5. II John 6** “And this is love, that we walk after his commandments.”

**6. Rev 12:17** “The dragon..went to make war with the remnant of her seed, which keep the commandments of God

**7. Revelation 14:12** “here are they that keep the commandments of God . . .”

### Answer:

1. Jesus did NOT say “Keep the 10 Commandments.”

a) He said, “Keep MY commandments”, which far exceed the 10 Commandments.

b) John said, “Keep his commandments”, which are explained in I John 3:23,24.

“This is his commandment, That we should believe on the name of his Son Jesus Christ, and love one another as he gave us commandment.”

c) He said, “Keep the commandments,” which includes the NT commandments, not Moses’ commandments.

## 2. **Jesus' Commandments** are **NOT Moses' 10 Commandments**.

**Question:** What are Jesus' commandments?

- "If ye keep my commandments, ye shall abide in my love . . . This is my commandment. That ye love one another, as I have loved you." (John 15:10-12).
- Jesus' commandments are Paul's writings: "If any man think himself to be a prophet or spiritual, let him acknowledge that the things that I write unto you are the commandments of the Lord." (I Corinthians 14:37).
- Jesus' teachings in the Gospels: "Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you." (Matthew 28:20).
- The Apostles' commandments: "That ye may be mindful of . . . the commandments of us the apostles of the Lord and Saviour." (2 Peter 3:2).

10) True Proposition	SDA Argument
The <u>Sabbath law is never quoted in the NT</u> . Colossians 2:14-16 says it is to be abolished after the cross.	The <u>NT</u> quotes <u>several of the 10 Commandments</u> proving that <u>all 10 are binding today</u> , including the Sabbath.

**Key Answer:**

**The 10 Commandments are discussed in Hebrews 9:1-4 and in II Corinthians 3:2-11.**

They are said to be part of the first covenant, which was abolished & replaced by the new covenant.

- II Corinthians 3:3,7,11 "Ye are the epistle of Christ . . . written . . . not in tables of stone, but in fleshly tables of the heart." (v.3). "But if the ministration of death, written and engraven in stones, was glorious . . . which glory was to be done away." (v.7). "For if that which is done away is glorious, much more that which remaineth is glorious."
- Hebrews 9:1-4 "Then verily the first covenant had . . . the tables of the covenant." Hebrews 10:9 "He taketh away the first (Mosaic Covenant including the 10 Commandments), that he may establish the second (New Covenant with the Law of Christ)."
- Hebrews 8:13 "In that he saith, A new covenant, he hath made the first old. Now that which decayeth and waxeth old, is ready to vanish away." (by the destruction of the Temple in 70AD).

11) True Proposition	SDA Argument
The 10 Commandments <u>do not contain</u> the whole duty of man.	The 10 Commandments are God's perfect law. It contains <u>all we need to know about moral living</u> . Man needs <u>nothing else</u> to live perfectly.

**Answer:**

The 10 Commandments are not perfect and complete, because God has added many other laws not covered by them. The 10 Commandments do not mention the following:

- It does not condemn: (a) drunkenness; (b) pornography; (c) pride; (d) pre-marital sex; (e) homosexuality; (f) obscene language and (g) Christians suing Christians.
- It does not command:
  - forgiveness; (b) repentance; (c) baptism; (d) Lord's Supper; (e) helping the poor; f) thoughts.
- It does not tell us how to enter heaven.
- It does not tell us how to be forgiven of our sins.
- It does not discuss the four important commands of the Apostles in Acts 15:28-29:  
"For it seemed good to the Holy Ghost and to us, to lay upon you no greater burden than these necessary things; that ye abstain from meats offered to idols, and from blood, and from things strangled, and from fornication . . ."

**Question:** Will you believe Jesus Christ or SDAs on Matthew 22:36-40?

Jesus: "On these two commandments (love God and love your neighbour) hang all the law (10 commandments included) and the prophets." (Matthew 22:36-40).

12) True Proposition	SDA Argument
God's nature does not change, but His <u>Laws</u> and <u>human requirements in different time periods</u> have <u>changed</u> a lot.	God does not change, therefore <u>neither does His Law</u> .
This SDA argument was one of Ellen White's original arguments. White said, "I saw that God had not changed the Sabbath, for he never changes." ( <i>Early Writings of EGW</i> , p.33).	
<b>Answer:</b> Since God gave the <u>law of animal sacrifices</u> and then <u>abolished it</u> , does this prove that God changes? No. God's laws given to man have <u>changed a lot</u> .	
There are three basic periods of earth's history:	
(1) Adam to Moses; (2) Moses to Christ; (3) Christ to the 2 <sup>nd</sup> Coming.	
God's nature does not change just because His laws have changed in different times of history.	
13) True Proposition	SDA Argument
This proves nothing because <u>many other things that God said were holy, have been abolished</u> .	The Sabbath must be kept today because God blessed it, hallowed it and made it <u>holy</u> .
<b>Answer:</b>	
<p>1. <u>Other holy days</u> in the Old Covenant have been <u>done away</u>, so has the Sabbath. Some are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) <u>Passover</u>: "Seven days shall ye eat unleavened bread; in the first day there shall be an <u>holy convocation</u>." (Exodus 12:13-16).</li> <li>b) <u>Feast of Trumpets</u>: "In the seventh month, in the first day of the month, shall ye have a Sabbath, a memorial of blowing of trumpets, an <u>holy convocation</u>. Ye shall do no servile work therein." (Lev 23:24,25; Neh 8:1,2,9,11). This says the 1<sup>st</sup> day of the 7<sup>th</sup> month is holy.</li> <li>c) <u>Feast of Tabernacles</u>: "The fifteenth day of this seventh month shall be a feast of Tabernacles for seven days unto the Lord.<sup>34</sup> On the first day shall be an <u>holy convocation</u>...On the eighth day shall be an <u>holy convocation unto you</u>." (Leviticus 23:34,36). The 15<sup>th</sup> and 22<sup>nd</sup> were holydays of 7<sup>th</sup> month.</li> <li>d) <u>Unleavened Bread Feast</u>: "Seven days shall ye eat unleavened bread<sup>15</sup> ...And in the first day there shall be an <u>holy convocation</u>, and in the seventh day there shall be an <u>holy convocation to you</u><sup>16</sup> ..." (Exodus 12:15,16,18). The 14<sup>th</sup> and 21<sup>st</sup> days of the 1<sup>st</sup> month were holy.</li> <li>e) <u>Day of Atonement</u>: "Also on the <u>tenth day</u> of this <u>seventh month</u> there shall be a day of atonement: it shall be an <u>holy convocation unto you</u><sup>27</sup> ... It shall be unto you a Sabbath of rest ..." (Leviticus 23:27,32).</li> <li>f) <u>Weekly Sabbath day</u>: "Wherefore the Lord blessed the Sabbath day &amp; <u>hallowed</u> it." Exo 20:11</li> </ul> <p>2. Some things were <u>more holy</u> than the <u>weekly Sabbath</u>. Each of these have been <u>abolished</u>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i) The <u>most holy place</u> in the tabernacle: "the veil shall divide unto you between the holy place and the <u>most holy</u>." (Exodus 26:33).</li> <li>ii) The <u>most holy altar</u>: "it shall be an altar <u>most holy</u>." (Exodus 29:37).</li> <li>iii) The <u>most holy atonement</u>: "an atonement...it is <u>most holy</u> unto the Lord." (Exodus 30:10).</li> <li>iv) The <u>tabernacle furniture</u>: "the table, the candlestick,...the altar of incense, . the altar of burnt offerings,,the laver..thus shalt thou sanctify them, that they may be <u>most holy</u>." Exod 30:26-39</li> <li>v) The <u>tabernacle perfume</u>: "Take unto thee sweet spices, stacte, onycha, galbanum; with pure frankincense..thou shalt make it a perfume..it shall be unto you <u>most holy</u>." Exodus 30:34,36</li> <li>vi) The <u>remnant of the meat offering</u>...it is a thing <u>most holy</u> of the offerings of the Lord. Lev2:3</li> <li>vii) The <u>most holy house</u> (Solomon's temple): "he made the <u>most holy house</u>." II Chronicles 3:8.</li> </ul> <p>3. If the Sabbath day must be kept because God blessed it, hallowed it, and made it holy, <u>then we must keep these things also</u> because the same is said of them:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i) <u>Hallowed tabernacle</u> and <u>holy vessels</u>: (Exodus 40:9).</li> <li>ii) <u>Holy water</u> mixed with floor dust to be drunk by a woman accused of adultery. Number 5:17.</li> <li>iii) Solomon's <u>hallowed temple</u>: "I have hallowed this house." (I Kings 9:3). "thy holy temple." (Psalm 65:4).</li> <li>iv) <u>Aaronic high priestly order</u>: "shall be hallowed" by sprinkling blood on the garments of Aaron and his sons (Exodus 29:21).</li> <li>v) <u>Holy Levites</u>: "The Levites that taught all Israel, which were <u>holy unto the Lord</u>." 2Chron35:3</li> </ul>	

- vi) Holy Ark of the Covenant: “put the holy ark in the house. . .” (II Chronicles 35:3).
- vii) Israel’s firstborn hallowed: “I hallowed unto me all the firstborn in Israel both man and beast.” (Numbers 3:13).
- viii) Aaron’s holy garments: “thou shalt make holy garments for Aaron.” (Exodus 28:2).
- ix) High priest’s holy crown: “put the holy crown upon the mitre.” (Exodus 29:6).
- x) Holy flesh of the ram: “the ram of consecration.. they are holy.” (Exodus 29:31-33)
- xi) Holy anointment to make holy oil: “make it an oil of holy anointment . . . it shall be a holy anointing oil.” (Exodus 30:25).
- xii) Holy fruit: “in the fourth year all the fruit thereof shall be holy.” (Leviticus 19:24).

The **first time something is mentioned**, it is introduced with the **indefinite article “a” or “an”**, but **never introduced** with the **definite article “the”**. This shows that the Sabbath was first introduced in Exodus 16:23, and that nobody before this time kept it.

<b>First Time Instituted</b>		<b>After it was Instituted</b>
1	Today is <u>a</u> Sabbath. (Exodus 16:25).	The Lord hath given you <u>the</u> Sabbath. (Exodus 16:29).
2	Noah builded <u>an</u> altar. (Genesis 8:20).	Offered burnt offerings on <u>the</u> altar. (Genesis 8:20).
3	This day (passover) shall be unto you for <u>a</u> memorial. (Exodus 12:14).	Kill <u>the</u> passover (Exodus 12:21). “It is the sacrifice of <u>the</u> Lord’s passover.” (Exodus 12:27).
4	<u>Feast of Unleavened bread</u> : “ye shall keep it <u>a</u> feast by an ordinance forever. Seven days shall ye eat unleavened bread.” (Exodus 12:14,15).	“Ye shall observe <u>the</u> feast of unleavened bread.” (Exodus 12:17).
5	<u>Day of Atonement</u> : “On the tenth day of this seventh month there shall be <u>a day of atonement</u> ”. Leviticus 23:27	‘in <u>the</u> day of atonement shall ye make the trumpet sound.’ (Leviticus 25:9).
6	<u>Feast of Pentecost</u> : “ye shall number 50 days; and ye shall offer <u>a</u> new meat offering unto the Lord.’ Lev23:16	“When <u>the</u> day of Pentecost was fully come.” (Acts 2:1).
7	<u>New Covenant</u> : “Behold the days come, saith the Lord, when I will make <u>a</u> new covenant with the house of Israel and Judah . . .” (Hebrews 8:8).	“For this cause he is the mediator of <u>the</u> new testament...” (Hebrews 9:15).

Note: The **definite article “the”** is never used the first time something is introduced, because “**the**” is only used **after** people know about it. The **indefinite article “a”** is used both before and after something has been instituted.

#### 4. The same arguments used for continuance of the Sabbath can be made for the ceased Passover Feast

	<b>Sabbath and Passover</b>	<b>Passover Reference</b>	<b>True of Sabbath</b>
i)	Both spoken by the Lord.	Exodus 12:1,3.	Yes
ii)	Both “it is the Lords . . .”	Exodus 12:11. “It is the Lord’s Passover”	Yes. (Ex 20:10) “Seventh day is the Sabbath of the Lord thy God.”
iii)	Both “a memorial.”	Exodus 12:14	Yes
iv)	Both to be kept forever.	Exodus 12:14	Yes
v)	Death penalty or cut off for violating both.	Exodus 12:12-15	Yes
vi)	Both a “Holy day.”	Exodus 12:16	Yes
vii)	Both “rest days.”	Exodus 12:16	Yes (Exodus 20:10).
viii)	Both connected with deliverance from Egypt.	Exodus 12:17	Yes. (Exodus 20:2).
ix)	Strangers must keep both.	Exodus 12:19	Yes (Exodus 20:10).

14) True Proposition	SDA Argument
The <u>Lord's Day is Sunday.</u> (Revelation 1:10).	SDAs claim the “ <u>Lord's Day</u> ” is the Sabbath, because Jesus said He was Lord of the Sabbath.

**Answer:** The Lord's Day is Sunday because:

- i) Jesus rose on Sunday (John 20:1).
- ii) The Holy Spirit came on Pentecost (Acts 2:1) which always falls on a Sunday.
- iii) Christians practiced the Lord's Supper on Sunday (Acts 20:7).
- iv) Early Christians from 30-300AD referred to Sunday as the Lord's Day.  
“I was in the Spirit on the Lord's Day . . .” (Revelation 1:10). “The Lords Day” means a day pertaining to the Lord because we commemorate important events concerning Him. If the Jewish Sabbath were intended, then the word “Sabbath” would have been used. Chrysostom said, “It was called the Lord's Day because the Lord rose from the dead on that day.” Theodoret speaking of the Ebionites says, “They keep the Sabbath according to the Jewish law, and sanctify the Lord's Day in like manner as we do.”
- v) Since Revelation was written by John, the observance of Sunday as a day of worship for Christians had Apostolic sanction. John, in accordance with a prevailing custom, had set apart this day in honour of the Lord Jesus.

15) True Proposition	SDA Argument
SDAs completely miss the context of <u>when this happens, to whom</u> this happens and the <u>place</u> . This refers to <u>Jews</u> living <u>in Jerusalem</u> in the middle of the <u>future 7 year Tribulation</u> when the Antichrist begins to persecute them.	Jesus foresaw the Sabbath being kept by <u>Christians</u> in the 20 <sup>th</sup> Century. “But pray ye that your flight be not in the winter, neither on the Sabbath day.” (Matthew 24:20)

The reason Jesus gave to Jews to pray that Jerusalem would not be destroyed beginning on a Sabbath day, is because the city gates would be closed on the Sabbath day (Nehemiah 13:15-22) and this would hinder them obeying Jesus' instruction to leave the city.

16) True Proposition	SDA Argument
The laws of keeping it <u>must not oppose</u> man's real welfare.	“The <u>Sabbath was made for man</u> , and not man for the Sabbath.” (Mark 2:27). Therefore all mankind must keep it.

**Answer:**

The idea of this passage is not that all mankind must keep the Sabbath. Instead it means that because the Sabbath was created as a day of rest and worship for man's good, then the laws of keeping it must not be interpreted or applied to oppose man's real welfare, as the Pharisees did by attempting to stop Jesus' disciples satisfying their hunger. Man was made first, and then the Sabbath was appointed for his welfare. The Sabbath was not first made, and then the man.

	True Proposition	SDA Argument
1	In the beginning the Word <u>made all things</u> .	In the beginning the Word <u>made all things</u> . John 1:1-3; Colossians 1:16.
2	God did <u>ALL</u> His work in six days. (Genesis 2:1-3; Exodus 20:11).	The Sabbath Day was <u>made for man</u> . (Mark 2:27).
3	The Sabbath day was not made till <u>AFTER</u> God rested on the seventh day. Therefore the Sabbath day is <u>not</u> part of “all things” of the original creation.	Therefore the Sabbath day was <u>made in the beginning</u> . Therefore Adam had to keep it.
4	The Sabbath did <u>NOT</u> exist in the Garden of Eden until <u>AFTER</u> God rested on the 7 <sup>th</sup> day.	

Note: The issue is not when God rested, but when He first commanded man to keep the Sabbath.

17) True Proposition	SDA Argument
If the Sabbath is eternal, then so too are <b>all the other Jewish holidays</b>	The Sabbath is eternal and <u>endures forever</u> , therefore we must keep it today.

1. If the Sabbath is eternal, enduring forever, then so too are all the other Jewish holy days.

**Question:** Do we keep the following commandments today?

**Answer:** No. They are only given to Israel.

i) **Sabbath Day:** “Therefore the children of Israel shall keep the Sabbath, to observe the Sabbath throughout their generations, for a perpetual covenant.

It is a sign between me and the children of Israel forever . . .” (Exodus 31:16,17).

ii) **Feast of Unleavened Bread:** “So shall you observe the Feast of Unleavened Bread. Therefore you shall observe this day throughout your generations as an everlasting ordinance.” Exodus 12:17.

iii) **Day of Atonement:** “You shall do no work on that same day, for it is the Day of Atonement. Any person who does any work on that same day, that person will I destroy from among his people . . . it shall be a statute forever throughout your generations . . .” (Leviticus 23:28-31).

iv) **Feast of Tabernacles:** “Speak unto the children of Israel saying, the 15<sup>th</sup> day of the 7<sup>th</sup> month shall be the feast of Tabernacles . . . (v.34).

It shall be a statute forever in your generations.” (v.41). (Leviticus 23:34,41).

v) **Feast of Passover:** “This day shall be unto you for a memorial . . . ye shall keep it a feast by an ordinance for ever.” (Exodus 12:14).

2. If the Sabbath is eternal and must be kept today, then so must the death penalty for working on the Sabbath. No SDAs enforce or think this valid today. Do SDAs kill Sabbath workers? No.

“Whosoever doeth any work in the Sabbath day, he shall surely be put to death.” (Exodus 31:15).

18) True Proposition	SDA Argument
The present heavens and earth will be completely destroyed and replaced by a <u>new heavens</u> and <u>earth</u> . Therefore the Sabbath will pass if it is a memorial to the first heavens and earth which will pass away.	SDAs claim that since the Sabbath was a memorial to a <u>six day creation</u> , then this proves that the <u>Sabbath will endure forever</u> .

i) “I saw a new heaven and a new earth: for the first heaven and the first earth were passed away; and there was no more sea.”(Revelation 21:21).

ii) “the heavens shall pass away with a great noise, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, the earth also and the works that are therein shall be burned up.” (II Peter 3:10).

**Note:** SDAs love to quote Matthew 5:17-18 to teach that the Sabbath is binding as long as heaven and earth remain. “Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled.” From this, SDAs must admit that Sabbath keeping is not forever, because according to their claim, the law and Sabbath keeping will be abolished when the heaven and earth pass away at the end of the 1000 year rule of Christ on earth.

19) True Proposition	SDA Argument
If the <u>Feast of Tabernacles</u> will be kept in the Millennium, then should we keep this feast now? (Zechariah 14:16-19).(No). Then why <u>don't</u> SDAs keep the Feast of Tabernacles now? Because it is not relevant to the Church Age. Neither is Sabbath keeping.	SDAs use <u>Isaiah 66:23</u> to prove that if the Sabbath will be kept in the Millennium, then we should keep it now.

“It shall come to pass, that from one new moon to another and from one Sabbath to another, shall all flesh come to worship before me, saith the Lord.” (Isaiah 66:23).

**Question:** Should we keep new moon feasts now? No! Should we keep the Feast of Tabernacles now? No! Then neither should we keep the Sabbath now either.

20) True Proposition	SDA Argument
<u>How can the Sabbath commandment be more important than what Jesus called the first and great commandment?</u> “Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind. This is the first and great commandment. On these two commandments hang <u>ALL the LAW</u> (including Sabbath) and the prophets.” (Matthew 22:37,38,40).	The Sabbath is God’s <u>special law above all laws.</u>

- 1) SDAs get this idea from Ellen White, their false prophet who said, contrary to Scripture and Jesus Christ that: “I beheld the Tables of stone on which the 10 Commandments were written. I was amazed as I saw the fourth commandment in the very centre of the 10 precepts with a soft halo of light encircling it. Said the angel, “It is the only one of the 10 which defines the living God who created the heavens and the earth & all things that are therein.”” (*Life Sketches of Ellen G White*, 95,96)
- 2) **Question 1:** Do SDAs really believe that God would make any law more important than the very first commandment to “have no other Gods before me” and “to love God”?  
**Question 2:** Do SDAs really believe that God would make the 4<sup>th</sup> Commandment glow brighter than the first Commandment?  
**Question 3:** Do you think God would contradict Paul rebuking Sabbath keepers in Galatians 4:10,11 “Ye observe days, and months, and times, and years. I am afraid of you, lest I have bestowed upon you labour in vain.” (Galatians 4:10,11).  
Paul calls people like Ellen White a false prophet in Colossians 2:18: “Let no man beguile you of your reward in a voluntary humility and worshipping of angels, intruding into those things which he (or she) hath NOT seen, vainly puffed up by his fleshly mind.”  
Paul said that White never really saw a vision from God, but that she was lying through pride.  
**Question 4:** Where is the Sabbath elevated above other feast days in Leviticus 23:1-7?
  - a) Weekly Sabbath: “Seventh day is . . . a holy convocation.”
  - b) Passover: “holy convocation . . . is the Lord’s Passover.”
  - c) Feast of Unleavened Bread: “the feast of unleavened bread is . . . a holy convocation.”

21) True Proposition	SDA Argument
The Sabbath is a sign between <u>God &amp; ISRAEL</u> only.	The Sabbath is a sign between <u>God &amp; Christians</u> .
1) Sabbath is a sign between God and Israel ONLY because God said:	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) “Speak unto the children of Israel, saying: Verily my Sabbaths ye shall keep: for it is a <u>sign</u> between <u>me</u> and <u>you</u> throughout your generations.” (Exodus 31:13).</li> <li>b) Sabbath...”it is a sign between <u>me</u> and the <u>children of Israel</u> for ever.” (Exodus 31:16).</li> <li>c) “I gave them my Sabbaths, to be a sign between <u>me</u> and <u>them</u>, . . .” (Ezekiel 20:12).</li> </ol>	
2) <u>Questions:</u> a) Why did God <u>never command any Gentiles</u> to keep the Sabbath in the OT or NT?	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Why do SDAs <u>NOT keep the sign of CIRCUMCISION</u>? (Genesis 17:11). (SDA answer: “because it was a sign only to Abraham and the Jews, and not to Christians.”)</li> <li>b) Why do SDAs <u>NOT keep the sign of PASSOVER BLOOD</u>? (Exodus 12:13). (SDA answer: “because it was a sign only for Jews in Egypt and not for Christians.”)</li> <li>c) Why should Christians <u>NOT keep</u> the sign of the <u>SABBATH</u>? (Our answer to SDAs: “because it was a sign <u>ONLY</u> for Jews and not for NT Christians in the Church Age.)</li> </ol>	
Hence, each of circumcision, Passover Blood and Sabbath are signs <u>only</u> between God and the Jews.	
3) <b>Keeping the Saturday Sabbath was the sign of the Mosaic Covenant between God and Jews only.</b> (Exodus 31:13,14,16,17).	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) “Speak thou also unto the <u>children of Israel</u>, saying, Verily my Sabbaths ye shall keep; for it is a sign between <u>me</u> and <u>you</u> throughout your generations.” (Exodus 31:13).</li> <li>b) “Wherefore the <u>children of Israel</u> shall keep the Sabbath, to observe the Sabbath throughout their generations, for a perpetual covenant.” (Exodus 31:16).</li> <li>c) “Moreover also I gave them my <u>Sabbaths</u>, to be a <u>sign</u> between <u>me</u> and <u>them</u>.” (Ezekiel 20:12)</li> </ol>	

d) "It is a sign between ME and the children of Israel forever: for in six days the LORD made heaven and earth, and on the seventh day he rested, and was refreshed." (Exodus 31:17).

Also God reiterates this command in Ezekiel 20:12,20.

Notice that God says on five occasions that Sabbath keeping is a sign between God and Israel, and that the Sabbath is to be kept throughout their generations, forever."

"Who are Israelites; to whom pertaineth . . . the giving of the law." (Romans 9:4).

22) True Proposition	SDA Argument
See p. 761. <b>The Hebrews 4:9 rest is heaven.</b>	Hebrews 4:9 proves we must keep the weekly Jewish Sabbath: "There remaineth therefore a <u>rest</u> to the people of God."

23) True Proposition	SDA Argument
If that is true, then SDAs had better <u>start keeping other Jewish days</u> and rituals mentioned after the cross.	The Sabbath is <u>not nailed to the cross</u> because the Holy Spirit still refers to the Sabbath day <u>after</u> the death of Christ when the New Covenant had replaced the Old Covenant.

Examples of Jewish days kept after the cross are:

- 1) The Day of Pentecost (Acts 2:1).
- 2) The Days of Unleavened Bread (Acts 12:3; 20:6).
- 3) The Days of Purification (Acts 21:26).
- 4) Animal Sacrifices (Acts 21:26).
- 5) Circumcision (Acts 16:3).

24) True Proposition	SDA Argument
Paul says Sabbath <u>is a shadow</u> : "the Sabbath days; which are a shadow of things to come." (Colossians 2:16,17)	SDAs say the Sabbath was <u>not a shadow</u> because: "The Sabbath was given <u>before</u> the fall of Adam, and cannot be a shadow because all types and shadows were given <u>after</u> the fall."

There were types before the Fall. See two examples when Adam married Eve:

- 1) Eve was a type of the church;
- 2) Their marriage was a type of the marriage of the Lamb between Christ and the church.

25) True Proposition	SDA Argument
This expression "that they might know that I am the Lord that sanctify them," is <u>NOT found in the NT</u> , nor is there any NT commandment for Christian believers after Pentecost to keep the Sabbath.	The Sabbath is the way <u>we know God sanctifies us</u> . See Exodus 31:13; Ezekiel 20:12,20: "I gave them my Sabbaths to be a sign between me and them, that they might know that I am the Lord <u>that sanctify them</u> ." (Ezekiel 20:12).

26) True Proposition	SDA Argument
<u>Jesus kept</u> the Passover, <u>every other Jewish Feast</u> day, animal sacrifices, and all the ceremonial laws of Moses. Why don't SDAs keep these as well?	<u>Christ our Example</u> kept the Sabbath.

- 1) SDAs break Jesus' example of keeping the Passover and every other Jewish Feast day. "I will keep the Passover at thy house with my disciples." (Matthew 26:18).
- 2) SDAs break Jesus' command to keep all the Ceremonial Laws of Moses: "The scribes&Pharisees sit in Moses' seat; All therefore whatsoever they bid you observe, that observe and do;" Matt.23:2,3
- 3) SDAs break Jesus' command to offer animal sacrifices: "Go, and shew thyself to the priest, and offer for thy cleansing, according as Moses commanded." (Luke 5:14).

Question to SDAs: Why don't you follow Jesus' commands to:

- i) Keep the Passover, ii) Keep all Moses Ceremonial Laws, iii) Offer animal sacrifices?

Answer: Because Jesus lived under the Old Covenant and Jewish law. "God sent forth His Son, made of a woman, made under the law." (Galatians 4:4).

Conclusion: This is the reason Christians don't need to keep the Sabbath day, because "after that faith is come, we are no longer under a schoolmaster (the law)."  
(Galatians 3:24,25). 781

27) True Proposition	SDA Argument
They kept this Sabbath day, because <u>they didn't yet understand that ALL of the Law of Moses would be abolished.</u>	<u>The disciples kept the Sabbath, one day after Christ's death:</u> “They returned, and . . . rested the Sabbath day according to the commandment.” (Luke 23:56). Sunday keepers say that the Sabbath was abolished when it was nailed to the cross. Here we see the disciples keeping the Sabbath “according to the commandment” after Christ died on the cross.

1) We agree that the disciples kept the Sabbath Law according to the 4<sup>th</sup> Commandment (out of habit), but **this proves nothing**, because:

- a) They didn't understand that all the Mosaic Law was abolished from when Christ died.
- b) They didn't understand Christ's death. (Matthew 16:21,22).
- c) They didn't understand Christ's crucifixion. (Luke 18:31-34).
- d) They didn't understand that Christ would rise from the dead. (John 20:9).
- e) They didn't understand Christ's Second Coming. (John 13:36-37).
- f) They didn't understand that Christ was going to heaven. (John 14:2-5).

2) This is the only time after the cross, that the disciples ever kept the Sabbath day.

**Question:** Why is there no other clear place in the New Testament where Christians are said to “keep the Sabbath according to the commandment”?

**Note:** This was the very last Sabbath day that NT Christians ever kept, because the next Sunday, Jesus rose from the dead. Christians now had a basis for meeting on Sunday, namely to celebrate Christ's resurrection from the dead.

3) The disciples met together on three Sundays after the resurrection:

- a) The Sunday of Jesus' resurrection (John 20:19),
- b) Eight days later, on the Sunday AFTER Jesus' resurrection (John 20:26),
- c) On Pentecost Sunday, they all met in one place before the Holy Spirit came. (Acts 2:1).

28) True Proposition	SDA Argument
<p>a) Paul preached to unsaved Jews in their synagogues on the Sabbath day, that they needed to be saved.</p> <p>b) <b>Question:</b> Do SDA pastors “<u>keep Sunday</u>” if they preach in a Sunday keeping church on Sunday? (No). Then neither did Paul keep the Sabbath in these verses.</p> <p>c) <b>Question:</b> Does a SDA pastor “<u>keep Monday</u>” if he preaches to Muslims in their mosque on Monday, that they are lost without Christ? (No).</p> <p>d) <u>No NT passage</u> ever speaks of Christians worshipping on the Sabbath day.</p> <p>e) Just because Peter preached on the day of <u>Pentecost</u>, does this mean that all Christians must keep the day of Pentecost? (No).</p> <p><b>Conclusion:</b> Pentecost and Sabbath days just provided an opportunity to preach to an interested audience.</p>	<u>Paul's preaching on the Sabbath</u> , after the cross, proves we must keep the Sabbath today. (Acts 13:14; 16:12; 17:2; 18:4,11) “And he reasoned in the synagogue <u>every Sabbath</u> .” (Acts 18:4).

29) True Proposition	SDA Argument
Ridiculous! If so, then Saturday keeping is <u>worshipping the Roman god Saturn – “SATURN'S day.”</u>	Sunday keeping is <u>worshipping the sun – “SUN day”</u>

30) True Proposition	SDA Argument
Just because a Jew kept the Mosaic Law, does not prove that we must keep it, because:	Ananias, a Christian, kept the 10 Commandments: “Ananias, a devout man according to the Law, having a good report of all the Jews which dwelt there.” (Acts 22:12). So should we keep Sabbath Law today.

- 1) The law included circumcision (Acts 21:20-24).

- 2) The Apostles never commanded Christians to keep the law: “have troubled you with words, subverting your souls, saying ye must be circumcised, and keep the law: to whom we gave no such commandment.” (Acts 15:24).

<b>31) True Proposition</b>	<b>SDA Argument</b>
<p>1) <u>History</u> and the <u>Bible</u> are <b>100% against SDAs.</b></p> <p>2) There is enormous historical evidence that before Constantine, Christians <u>always</u> met on Sunday, and <u>never</u> met on the Saturday Sabbath.</p> <p>3) There is <u>no historical evidence</u> that early Christians:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Kept the Sabbath;</li> <li>• Protested a change from Saturday to Sunday worship;</li> <li>• Practised the Lord's Supper on the Sabbath.</li> </ul>	<p>History shows that the very earliest Christians kept the Sabbath.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Up to 135AD there was no discussion of the Sabbath question.</li> <li>• History shows that Christians began keeping the Sabbath, and gradually started meeting on Sundays about the time of Constantine (320AD).</li> </ul>

Challenge: We challenge any SDA to give one quote that any Christians kept the Jewish Sabbath before 320AD. Ten early Christian writers all state clearly that the universal practice of Christians was to meet for worship on Sundays, not on Sabbath days.

	<b>HISTORICAL RECORDS</b>	<b>SDA LIES</b>
1	33-140AD: <u>Universal Sunday meetings</u> “no longer observing the Sabbath, but living in the observance of the Lord’s Day.” (Ignatius, <i>Epistle to the Magnesians</i> , <i>Ante-Nicene Fathers</i> , Vol 1, p 62-63).	<u>Universal Sabbath keeping.</u> No one worshipped on Sunday “for 100 years after Christ, there is no discussion of the Sabbath question.” ( <i>Revelation Seminar</i> , Schreven, 1994, <i>Now That's Clear</i> ).
	See <a href="#">page 752-753</a> , for <u>15 early church writers</u> from 74-350AD who say the opposite to SDAs.	“Christians kept the Sabbath Commandment up to 135AD.”
	False	“As late as 430AD, historians testify that <u>almost all</u> Christian churches in the world were still keeping the Sabbath.”
2	140-300AD: <u>Universal Sunday meetings</u> .	<u>Gradual shift</u> towards Sunday, but still kept the Sabbath.
3	300-2000AD: <u>Universal Sunday meetings</u> .	<u>Universal Sunday meetings</u> .
4	<u>Conclusion:</u> Christians always kept Sunday. Sunday is not a Christian Sabbath or day of rest, or holy day to be kept. It is a day of Christian worship. When Christians today wrongly apply the 4 <sup>th</sup> Sabbath Commandment as the reason why they worship on Sunday, they are: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>mistaken; and</li> <li>opening themselves to manipulation by SDAs.</li> </ol>	Christians originally kept the Sabbath, but due to the devil’s influence, Christians went into universal apostasy for 1600 years, until Ellen White, the SDA “prophet” arrived. She thought, contrary to Colossians 2:14, that the Sabbath Law was not nailed to the cross. Only in the 19 <sup>th</sup> Century did God, through the SDA church, restore, by direct revelation, the truth that the day of Christian worship was Saturday.

<b>32) True Proposition</b>	<b>SDA Argument</b>
<p>There is no documented evidence that Mithraism had a formal Sunday worship service. How could Sunday worship be copied if Mithraism never had Sunday worship?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “Sun worship” and “worshipping on Sunday” are two very different ideas that SDAs like to mix together to confuse the whole subject.</li> <li>• “The association between the Christian Sunday and the pagan veneration of the sun is not explicit before the time of Eusebius (260-340AD).” (<i>From Sabbath to Sunday</i>, p 261, Samuele Bacchiocchi, SDA historian).</li> </ul>	<p>Christians copied Sunday keeping off the pagan religion of Mithraism.</p> <p>“Another influence in the early Christian Church was Mithraism, an ancient cult of the sun. This cult came to Rome in the 1<sup>st</sup> Century AD and became popular in the 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> centuries. The central feature of this cult was the worship of the sun on the first day of the week.” Historians have written concerning the influence of Mithraism on Christianity.” (<i>Now That's Clear</i>, Leo Schreven, 1994, p 101).</p>
	783

33) True Proposition	SDA Argument
Many early church writers before 340AD all say that <b>Christians met on Sundays</b> from the Apostles	The <b>Pope</b> changed the Sabbath from Saturday to Sunday.
1) If SDAs have any actual historical proof that the <b>Pope</b> changed the Sabbath to Sunday, let them supply it to us and to the world.	
2) Just because <b>Catholics claim they changed the Sabbath to Sunday</b> , doesn't prove they did. <b>Question:</b> Do SDAs believe everything that the Roman Catholic Church says? No.	
3) SDAs believe the Pope changed the Sabbath because their "inspired prophet" Ellen White said so: "The Pope had changed it from the seventh day to the first day of the week; for he was to change times and laws." ( <i>Early Writings of EGW</i> , p.33). On p 65 she said, "The pope has changed the day of rest from the seventh day to the first day." <b>Note:</b> SDAs in the 1990s are refuting what their founding "prophet" White was "told by God in a vision", by claiming that Christians in Rome changed the Sabbath around 135AD not the Pope. <b>Conclusion:</b> This proves once and for all that Ellen White was a false prophet.	
a) <u>Samuele Bacchiocchi</u> , the Seventh-day Adventist's top scholar wrote in an e-mail message to the <i>Free Catholic Mailing List CATHOLIC@AMERICAN.EDU</i> on 8 Feb 1997 and said:	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• I differ from Ellen White, for example, on the origin of Sunday. She teaches that in the first centuries all Christians observed the Sabbath and it was largely through the efforts of Constantine that Sunday keeping was adopted by many Christians in the fourth century. My research shows otherwise. If you read my essay <i>How Did Sunday keeping begin?</i> which summarises my dissertation, <b>you will notice that I place the origin of Sunday keeping by the time of the Emperor Hadrian, in AD135.</b></li> <li>• This proves once and for all time that <b>Ellen G White was a false prophet!</b></li> </ul>	
b) Note how SDAs have <u>corrected</u> White's vision: "Sunday keeping had its origin in Rome during the reign of the Emperor Hadrian (117-138AD). Hadrian persecuted the Jews in Rome incessantly. In an attempt to separate themselves from the Jews and avoid being persecuted with them, those early Roman Christians began keeping Sunday in addition to the Sabbath." (Now That's Clear, Schreven, p 97, 1994, <i>Revelation Seminar</i> ).	
34) True Proposition	SDA Argument
<b>Constantine just made a civil decree</b> that because Christians were <u>already meeting on Sunday</u> (since 33AD), that Christians <u>should not work on Sunday</u> .	SDAs claim that <b>Constantine</b> changed the Sabbath to Sunday.
<b>Question:</b> Have SDAs carefully read Constantine's Decree? <b>"On the venerable day of the sun, let the magistrates and people residing in cities rest, and let all workshops be closed."</b> (Constantine, 7 March 321, <i>Codex Justinianus</i> lib3, tit.12,3; translated in Philip Schaff, <i>History of the Christian Church</i> , Vol 3, p 380, note 1).	
1) SDAs contradict themselves. Who changed the Sabbath? Was it the <b>Pope</b> , <b>Constantine</b> in 321, or <b>some Christians in Rome in 135AD</b> ? 2) Constantine is just decreeing that, because Christians were already meeting on Sunday ever since the apostles, that Christians <u>should not work</u> on Sunday. (Hebrews 10:24,25). 3) It is not a sin to work on any day of the week. It is a sin to forsake the assembling of the church.	
35) True Proposition	SDA Argument
i) Any Greek dictionary will tell you that "MIA TON SABBATON" means: <b>mia</b> = first; <b>ton</b> = of the; <b>sabbaton</b> (plural) = weeks. ii) If "MIA TON SABBATON" in Acts 20:7 & I Cor. 16:1,2 mean the 7th day (Sabbath day), then it creates a contradiction with Mark 16:1,2.	The "first day of the week" in Acts 20:7 and I Corinthians 16:1,2 are a mistranslation. The Greek says 'MIA TON SABBATON' or 'sabbath day'. So Christians were told to take a collection (I Corinthians 16:1,2) and partake of the Lords Supper (Acts 20:7) on the Sabbath day, not Sunday.
	784

“And when the **Sabbath** (Greek: Sabbatou = singular, the normal expression for the Sabbath day) was past, Mary Magdalene, and Mary the Mother of James, and Salome, had brought sweet spices, that they might come and anoint him. (v.1).

And very early in the morning of the **first day of the week** (Greek: Mia ton Sabbaton) they came unto the sepulchre at the rising of the sun.” (v. 2).

**Key:** “Mia ton sabbaton” (v.2) must be different from “Sabbatou” (v 1) meaning “the Sabbath”.

You can’t have one Sabbath being over (v.1) being followed by another Sabbath the next day.

**iii)** “MIA TON SABBATON” is the common Bible expression for Sunday.

**iv)** When SDAs deny that these texts should read “first day of the week”, it shows that

--they know these passages teach first day observance if it is translated “first day, and

--they know that Sabbath keeping is refuted if Acts 20:7 proves to be Sunday observance rather than Saturday observance.

36) True Proposition	SDA Argument
<p>Luke, the writer of Acts, uses <b>Roman time</b>, being from <u>midnight to midnight, not Jewish time</u> (<u>sunset to sunset</u>). This can be stated dogmatically because “daylight” (v.11) was the next day (v.7).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i) Roman day was from 6 am to 6 pm.</li> <li>ii) Roman night was from 6 pm to 6 am.</li> </ul>	<p>SDAs teach that the evening meeting in Acts 20:7 was on a Sabbath day because the Sabbath day lasts from <u>sunset Friday to Sunset Saturday</u> (Jewish time).</p>

**Luke** uses **Roman time**, not Jewish time in these 10 cases:

1. Acts 2:15 “These are not drunken, as ye suppose, seeing it is but the **3rd hour (9 am) of the day**”
2. Acts 3:1 Peter and John went up together into the temple at the hour of prayer, being the **9th hour (3pm)**
3. Acts 10:3 “He saw in a vision evidently about the **9th hour of the day (3 pm)** . . .”
4. Acts 10:9 “Peter went up upon the housetop to pray about the **6th hour (12 noon)** & he became very hungry”
5. Acts 23:23 “Make ready 200 soldiers to go to Caesarea, and 70 horsemen, and 200 spearmen, at the **3rd hour of the night (9 pm).**”
6. Luke 23:44 It was about the **6th hour (12 noon)**, there was a darkness over all the earth until the **9th hour (3pm)**
7. Acts 12:18 “As soon as it was day, there was no small stir among the soldiers, what was become of Peter.”
8. Acts 16:35 “And when it was day, the magistrates sent the serjeants, saying, Let those men go.”
9. Acts 20:11 “and talked a long while, even till break of day, so he departed.”
10. Acts 23:12 “And when it was day, certain of the Jews banded together . . .”

**Conclusion:** Hence Acts 20:7 “And upon the **first day** of the week, when the disciples **came together** to break bread, Paul preached unto them . . . and continued his speech until midnight”, means that the Thessalonian church met on the **first day** of the week.

Luke’s method of counting days was **NOT Jewish**, which measures from sundown to sundown, but **Roman**, which counted from midnight to midnight. This can be stated dogmatically because “break of day” (v.11) was the next day (v.7).

**SDA Objection:** This was not a true church meeting for worship.

**Answer:** It was a true church worship meeting because the Greek word “came together” (v.7) (sunegmenon-4863) means “to gather together, a formal meeting of the disciples”, and is used in this context in Acts 4:31; 11:26; 14:27; 15:6,30; I Cor. 5:4; Hebrews 10:25.

“Break bread” (Greek: “tou klasai arton”) in the Syriac version is to “break the Eucharist”. It was in all likelihood the Agape feast followed by the Lord’s Supper (I Cor.10:16; 11:20,21).

(Source: *Word Pictures in the NT*, AT Robertson, Vol.3, p.339).

## QUESTIONS TO ASK SDAs

### Question 1:

- a) Do you believe that Ellen White was a true prophet of God? (**p.748**). [(Deuteron. 18:20-22) (**p.749**)  
 b) Do you believe that the Bible's test of a false prophet is if their "prophecies" do not come to pass?  
 c) Doesn't White's 5 false prophecies below make her a false prophet? (**p.749**).  
 - Some living in 1856 would see Christ return.  
 - England would declare war on the USA about the time of the Civil War.  
 - Old Jerusalem would never be built up.  
 - The time for salvation of sinners passed in July 1844.  
 - World would end in 1851.

### Question 2:

- a) Should a true prophet of God speak in agreement with the Bible? (**p.750**).  
 b) Don't these unbiblical statements of White prove her to be a false prophet? (**p.750**).  
 -Was the Tower of Babel built before the Flood? (1) (No).  
 -Where does the Bible say that the Seal of God is the Sabbath? (3).  
 -Did the same Herod put Jesus on trial and kill James? (4).  
 -Will Satan bear our sins, or did Jesus bear our sins? (5). (Isaiah 53:6).  
 -Did Christ finish our atoning work on the cross or is He still performing our atoning work in heaven?

### Question 3:

Show me the Investigative Judgment in the Bible? (**p.750**).

- Have believers' sins been blotted out by Christ or not? (8).  
 -Did White know the day and hour of Christ's coming? (9). (**p.751**).  
 -Did God hold a council to decide what should be done with Adam and Eve after the fall? (10).  
 -Where does the Bible teach that Adam and Eve kept the Sabbath? (11).  
 -Where does the Bible state that angels have a gold card? (12).

### Question 4:

- a) Did Deity sink under the agonies of Calvary? (**p.751**). b) Is there consciousness after death or not?

### Question 5:

- a) Show me one NT Scripture that quotes the 4<sup>th</sup> Commandment? (**p.751**).  
 b) Show me one NT Scripture that tells Christians to keep the Sabbath day holy?  
 c) Show me one NT Scripture teaching that Sunday keeping is following an image of the Beast as Leo Schreven and White say? (**p.752**).

### Question 6:

- a) Do you have gas heating? Do you cook on the Sabbath? (Exodus 35:3). (**p.752**).  
 b) Do you stay in one place on the Sabbath or do you travel?  
 c) Do you buy any goods on the Sabbath?  
 d) Do you stone to death other SDA's who break the Sabbath?  
 e) Did God ever relax any of the 8 Sabbath day restrictions on **p.752**?

### Question 7:

On which day did early Christians worship according to the following 14 authorities (**p.752**):

Barnabus (74 AD), Ignatius (107 AD), Didache (90 AD), Justin (150 AD), Clement (190 AD), Bardaisan (154 AD), Tertullian (200 AD), Origen (220 AD), Cyprian (250 AD), The Didascalia (225 AD), Victorinus (300 AD), Eusebius (300 AD), Athanasius (345 AD) and Cyril (350 AD)?

### Question 8:

How do you know that White had a true vision from God of the heavenly sanctuary? (**p.754**).  
 Was it foolish to believe this when you couldn't prove it? (I Thessalonians 5:21).

### Question 9:

Did you vow Ellen White to be a prophet at your baptism? (Clause 17). (**p.754**). Had you read all her writings at that time? (No). Then how did you know she was a true prophet? Was it because you believed what some SDA told you? Could he have been lying or misinformed?

### Question 10:

Did a Pope change the Sabbath (White),or was it changed in Hadrian's time (135AD)(Bacchichiochi)? 754,784

### **Question 11:**

- a) Has the **Mosaic Covenant** been taken away? (Yes). (**p.754-755**).
- b) Does the Mosaic Covenant **include** the 10 Commandments? (SDAs say “no”, we say “YES”).
- c) How do you explain the following Scriptures which clearly state that the Mosaic Covenant **DOES** contain the 10 Commandments?

**Hebrews 9:1,4** “the first covenant had..... the **tables of the covenant**”; **Ephesians 2:15**

Exodus 34:28 “he wrote upon the tables the words of the covenant, the **ten commandments**. ”

Deuteronomy 4:13 “He declared unto you his **covenant**, even **ten commandments**..upon tables of stone.

II Corinthians 3:7-11 “if the **ministration of death**, written and **engraven in stones**, was **glorious**... that which was **done away** (Mosaic Covenant, including the 10 Commandments) was **glorious**...”

### **Question 12:**

If the Sabbath was **so well known to Moses** and the Israelites, why did God need to give Moses so many **instructions** about how to keep it? (**p.756**).

### **Question 13:**

- a) When was the Sabbath given or “**made known**” to Israel according to Nehemiah 9:13,14? (**p.756**). In Eden or on Mt. Sinai? “Thou camest down also upon **Mt Sinai** and **madest known** unto them **thy holy Sabbath**... by the hand of **Moses**.”
- b) What does “**made known**” mean?
- c) What is the significance of the phrase “**it was not declared** what should be done” to the Sabbath breaker in Numbers 15:32-36? (**p.756**).

### **Question 14:**

- a) Were OT **priests exempt** from keeping the Sabbath because of their extra workload? (yes). (**p.757**).
- b) Since NT believers are a royal priesthood, aren’t we also exempt from keeping the Sabbath?

### **Question 15:**

- a) When a boy required **circumcision** on the Sabbath day, which of these laws were broken, Sabbath law or circumcision law? (Answer: Sabbath law was broken). (**p.757**).
- b) Which of these laws were more important? (Circumcision).
- c) Since the more important circumcision law is now obsolete, what does this tell us about the Sabbath law? (Answer: It also is obsolete).

### **Kev Question 16:**

Since the Sabbath day was given over to disputing with Jews in the **Synagogue**, on what day did the Apostles meet with believers for fellowship and preaching? (Sunday). (**p.759**).

### **Question 17:**

- a) If **Constantine** changed Saturday worship to Sunday worship in 328 AD, why was there no protest to this change? (**p.759**).
- b) What does the record of **15 early church writers** before 320 AD who state that Sunday worship was the universal practice, tell you? (**p.759, 752**).

### **Question 18:**

- a) Does God **change His laws**? (SDA say “no”; Bible says “yes”). (**p.760**).
- b) What about circumcision, animal sacrifice and yearly worship at Jerusalem?  
Have they been changed? (Yes). Then so has the Sabbath law been changed.

### **Question 19:**

- a) To what 2 things is the law compared to in Galatians 3:23-25? (a **prison**, and a **schoolmaster**) **p.760**
- b) What does the phrase mean “We are **no longer** under a schoolmaster?” (Galatians 3:25).

### **Question 20:**

- a) When was the law added **TILL**? (Galatians 3:19 “till the seed should come”). (**p.760**).
- b) Has this happened? (yes). Hence the Mosaic law and Sabbath keeping are obsolete, true?

### **Question 21:**

- a) If SDA’s could find a verse saying that Christians should take up a **collection** on the Sabbath day, would they use it to prove Sabbath day worship? (yes). (**p.762**). Q2.
- b) Then what does **I Corinthians 16:1,2** tell you on what day the worship of giving took place? Sunday

### **Question 22:**

- a) Is giving to the church an act of worship? (Yes). (**p.762**). **Q3.**
- b) Could giving to the church be done on Saturdays? (yes).
- c) Then why did Paul give orders for giving to be done on Sunday, the first day of the week? (Because Sunday was the only day on which the early church met).

### **Question 23:**

- a) Do you SDA's "lay by in store" on the first day of every week? (No). (**p.762**). **Q4.**
  - b) On which day of the week do SDA's give to their church? (Saturdays).
  - c) By what authority do SDA's give on Saturday? Is there some passage I have overlooked which commands offerings to be made on the 7<sup>th</sup> day Saturday?
- SDA church members give money on the last day of the week. Paul said to give on the first day of the week. The SDA church has missed the day of worship by 6 days. If offering is a part of worship, and if the offering was on Sunday, then worship also took place on Sunday.
- d) Which will you deny? Paul or the SDA manual?

### **Question 24:**

If Paul wanted them to store up their offerings at home, then when Paul came, the offerings would need to be collected from people's homes. (**p.763**).

This would disobey Paul's command of "no gatherings when I come." I Corinthians 16:1,2.

### **Question 25:**

Fill this in: If Giving is worship, and giving took place on Sundays, then worship took place on \_\_\_\_?

### **Question 26:**

According to Malachi 3:10 where did the Jews of Malachi's time store up their weekly offerings, at home, or in the storehouse of the temple treasury? (**p.763**).

### **Question 27:**

If Paul promoted Sunday keeping, would you expect a protest by some Jewish believers? (Yes). (**p764**) Where is this protest recorded? (Colossians 2:16,17) "let no man judge you in Sabbath days..."

### **Question 28:**

If Christians must keep the Sabbath, why is there NO New Testament example of any church meeting for Sabbath worship? If there is a case please show me now? (**p.764**). **Q1.**

### **Question 29:**

- a) Is it valid for God to teach us by example? (Yes). (**p.764**).
- b) Then why won't you let God teach us Sunday keeping by the example of the churches at Jerusalem, Troas, Galatia and Corinth? John 20:19,26; Acts 20:7; I Corinthians 16:1,2?

### **Question 30:**

- a) If you found a NT passage which said "Upon the seventh day of the week, let every one of you lay by Him in store," would you use it as a proof of Saturday Sabbath worship? (Yes). (**p.764**). **Q2.**
- b) Then why don't you accept that this verse clearly teaches Sunday worship?
- c) Do you give money to the SDA church on Sundays, the first day of the week? (No).
- d) By what authority does the SDA church give on Saturday, the 7<sup>th</sup> day of the week?
- e) If believers stored their offerings at home on the first day of the week (Sunday), how many collections would there be when Paul came? (One (1) collection from each house).
- f) Why do you disobey Paul's order to give on Sunday, the first day of the week?

### **Question 31:**

How do we know that the blotted out "ordinances" in Colossians 2:14 mean that the "10 Commandments" were nailed to the Cross? (**p.764**).

- i) Ephesians 2:15 says so: "Having abolished in his flesh the enmity, even the law of commandments contained in ordinances".
- ii) "Shadow" in Hebrews 8:4,5 (law...shadow) and 10:1 (law having a shadow) mean "Law of Moses".
- iii) Colossians 2:16-17 mentions Sabbath days in the same context.

### **Question 32:**

When Christ fulfilled the Law of Moses (Matthew 5:17,18), what happened to it? (It passed away).(**p.765**)

### **Question 33:**

- a) Does 1 Kings 8:9 say that the 10 Commandments are part of the Mosaic Covenant? (Yes). (**p.765**).  
 b) What does Jeremiah 31:31,32 teach about the 10 Commandments if the New Covenant is “NOT according to the Mosaic Covenant” as Jeremiah 31:31,32 states? (**p.765**).

### **Question 34:**

If the 10 Commandments are part of the Mosaic Covenant, then what does Hebrews 8:13 say about the 10 Commandments? (Both are old and ready to vanish away). (**p.765**).

### **Question 35:**

What 10 verses teach that the 10 Commandments are part of the Old Mosaic Covenant which has been done away? (**p.766**).

- 1) Galatians 3:23-25 “The law was our schoolmaster to bring us to Christ,... But after that faith is come, we are NO LONGER under a schoolmaster.”
- 2) 2 Corinthians 3:7-11 “If the ministration of death, written and engraven in stones, was glorious, which glory was to be done away: (7).....For if that which is done away was glorious, much more that which remaineth is glorious.” (11).
- 3) Hebrews 8:13 “A new covenant, he hath made the first old...ready to vanish away.”
- 4) **Hebrews 9:1-4** “The first covenant had...the tables of the covenant.”
- 5) “Against us” in Colossians 2:14-17 is the same as “enmity” in **Ephesians 2:15** “Having abolished in his flesh the enmity, even the law of commandments.<sup>”</sup>
- 6) Nehemiah 9:13,14 “Thou camest down also upon Mt Sinai....  
And madest known unto them thy holy Sabbath by the hand of Moses...”
- 7) Exodus 34:28 “He wrote upon the tables, the words of the covenant even the ten Commandments.<sup>”</sup>
- 8) Deuteronomy 4:13 “And he declared unto you his covenant, which he commanded you to perform, even ten commandments; and he wrote them upon two tables of stone.<sup>”</sup>
- 9) Deuteronomy 9:9 “When I was gone up into the mount to receive the tables of stone, even the tables of the covenant which the Lord made with you...”
- 10) I Kings 8:9 “There was nothing in the ark save the two tables of stone ... when the Lord made a covenant with the children of Israel.”

### **SDA ARGUMENTS SUMMARISED and REFUTED.**

- 1) SDA:** 10 Commandments are not in the Old Mosaic Covenant. (**p.766**).

Bible: 10 verses teach that 10 Commandments & Mosaic Covenant were all abolished when Christ died

- 2) SDA:** Sabbath day in Col. 2:16 is not the weekly Sabbath, but monthly or yearly Sabbaths. (**p.767**).

Bible: Sabbath days in Col. 2:16 is the weekly Sabbath that was nailed to the Cross because:

- i) The “handwriting of ordinances” in Colossians 2:14 is the 10 Commandments since “contrary to us” here means the same as “ministration of death” written and “graven in stones” in 2 Cor. 3:7.
- ii) The year, month, day sequence in Col. 2:16 proves it to be a weekly Sabbath because the same year, month, day sequence occurs in Galatians 4:10; I Chronicles 23:31; II Chronicles 2:4; 8:13, 31:3; Nehemiah 10:33; Ezekiel 45:17, Hosea 2:11.
- iii) The Greek plural word “Sabbaton” for Sabbath days is the weekly Sabbath because the same Greek word occurs in Matthew 28:1; Luke 4:16; Acts 16:13; Exodus 20:8 (Septuagint).

- 3) SDA:** The Sabbath law is a moral law because it is in the 10 Commandments. (**p.768**).

Bible: The Sabbath law is not a moral law because:

- i) The priests were allowed to profane it (Matthew 12:5; Numbers 28:9,10).
- ii) God grew weary of the Jews keeping it (Isaiah 1:13,14).
- iii) God never charged the Gentiles with breaking it, as He did the other commandments.

- 4) SDA:** 10 Commandments and Sabbath existed from the Garden of Eden. (**p.769**).

Bible: 10 Commandments and Sabbath law did not exist before Moses because:

- i) God revealed or “made known” the Sabbath law and 10 Commandments to Israel at Mt Sinai, not in Eden. He did not remind them. See Nehemiah 9:13,14,  
“Thou made known unto them thy holy Sabbath” by the hand of Moses thy servant.”

ii) **Israelite leaders before Moses** did not keep the Sabbath.

"The Lord made not this covenant with our fathers, but with us..." (Deuteronomy 5:2,3).

iii) Abraham never knew of the Sabbath law because it came **430 years after Abraham**:

"the law, which was 430 years after (Abraham)." Galatians 3:17.

iv) No one before the Exodus (Exodus 16) ever knew about the Sabbath law. Exodus 20:10,12,

"I caused them to go forth out of the land of Egypt. I gave them my Sabbaths."

v) The Sabbath is first mentioned in Exodus 16:22,23 as a new experience for Israel.

vi) The Sabbath was inappropriate for Adam in Eden because there was no weariness, sickness, death or strangers in Eden before the Fall.

vii) The Sabbath was not sanctified on Day 6 but is an example of Prolepsis, (represents something in the future as if it already existed).

Six examples of Prolepsis are: Genesis 2:24; 3:20; 4:20; 4:21; Matthew 10:4; John 11:1,2.

5) **SDA:** Christ came to fulfil the law, not to destroy it (Matthew 5:17-18). (**p.771**).

Bible: i) Christ fulfilled Matt. 5:17-18 by fulfilling OT prophecies and offerings about the Messiah.

ii) "Jot and tittle" refer to the entire OT law, including all the ceremonial laws.

According to SDA logic, this verse proves that we must keep all the ceremonial laws, right? Wrong. They have passed away. So have the 10 Commandments been replaced by the law of Christ.

iii) Christ said "I came to fulfil"; He did not say "I come to perpetuate."

None of Moses' laws failed. Christ fulfilled them 100%.

6) **SDA:** The 10 Commandments are for all mankind for all time. (**p.772**).

Bible: The 10 Commandments are only for Israel. Exodus 31:13.

Question: If the Sabbath law was a moral law for all mankind, then why did God never charge the Gentiles with breaking it?

7) **SDA:** If the 10 Commandments were abolished, we could murder, steal, commit adultery. (**p.773**)

Bible: i) We are now under a different law, the law of Christ, forbidding these. This implies that if we don't listen to Moses, there are no other laws to guide us. A country may change its law over time.

ii) All the 9 moral laws of the 10 Commandments are brought over and expanded into the New Covenant law of Christ.

8) **SDA:** The Royal law of James 2:8-12 is the 10 Commandments law. (**p.774**).

Bible: The Royal law is stated in James 2:8 as "Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself."

9) **SDA:** Jesus said "Keep my commandments." John 14:15. SDA read this as 10 commandments.**p774**

Bible: Jesus did NOT say "Keep the 10 Commandments," but "Keep my commandments" which far exceed the 10 Commandments. Eg: I John 3:23,24; John 13:34,35.

10) **SDA:** The NT quotes several of the 10 Commandments proving that all 10 are binding today, including the Sabbath. (**p.775**).

Bible: i) The Sabbath law is never quoted in the NT. Col.2:14-16 says it was abolished at the Cross.

ii) The 10 Commandments are stated as being part of the Mosaic Covenant which was abolished and replaced by the new covenant in II Corinthians 3:7-11; Hebrews 8:13; Hebrews 9:1-4.

11) **SDA:** The 10 Commandments contain all we need to know about perfect moral living.

Man needs nothing else to live perfectly. (**p.775**).

Bible: The 10 Commandments are not complete, because God has added many other laws not covered by them: eg. drunkenness, pride, fornication, homosexuality, Christians suing Christians, evil thoughts. They do not tell us how to be forgiven or how to enter heaven.

12) **SDA:** God does not change, therefore neither does His law. (**p.776**).

Bible: God's nature does not change, but His laws and human requirements in different time periods have changed a lot. eg. God gave laws on animal sacrifices, then later abolished them. Does this prove that God's nature changes? No.

13) **SDA:** The Sabbath must be kept today because God blessed it and made it holy. (**p.776**).

Bible: This proves nothing because many other things that God said were holy, have been abolished. eg: 7 feasts and 19 other holy things.

14) **SDA:** The "Lord's Day" is the Sabbath because Jesus said He was Lord of the Sabbath. (**p.778**).

Bible: The "Lord's Day" is Sunday because:

- i) **Jesus rose** on Sunday.
  - ii) The **Holy Spirit came on Pentecost** (Acts 2:1) which always falls on a Sunday.
  - iii) Christians practiced the Lord's Supper on Sunday (Acts 20:7).
  - iv) Early Christians (eg. Chrysostom, Theodore) from 33-300AD called Sunday the Lord's Day.
  - v) John called Sunday "the Lord's Day" in the Book of Revelation (1:10).
- If the Lord's Day was Saturday, John would have called it the Sabbath.

**15) SDA:** John foresaw **20<sup>th</sup> Century Christians** keeping the Sabbath day. (Matthew 24:20). (**p.778**).

Bible: This refers to Jews living in Jerusalem in the middle of the future 7 year Tribulation when the Antichrist begins to persecute them. SDA's miss the context of:

- i) when this happens, ii) to whom this happens, and iii) the place this happens.

**16) SDA:** "The Sabbath was **made for man**, not man for the Sabbath." (Mark 2:27). (**p.778**).

Therefore all mankind must keep it.

Bible: The laws of keeping the Sabbath must not be applied to oppose man's real welfare.

**17) SDA:** The Sabbath is **eternal** and endures forever, therefore we must keep it today. (**p.779**).

Bible: If the Sabbath is eternal, then so too are **all the other Jewish holidays**.

Do we keep the Jewish Feasts of Unleavened Bread, Atonement, Tabernacles and Passover, all of which are stated as lasting forever? No.

**18) SDA:** Since the Sabbath was a **memorial to a 6-day creation**, then this proves that the Sabbath will endure forever. (**p.779**).

Bible: Since the first heavens and earth will pass away at the end of the Millennium, then so will the Sabbath if it is a memorial to the first heavens and earth.

**19) SDA:** Since the Sabbath will be **kept in the Millennium (Isaiah 66:23)** we must keep it now. (**p.779**)

Bible: i) Since the **Feast of Tabernacles** will be kept in the Millennium, should we keep it now? No. Why don't SDA's keep the Feast of Tabernacles now? (Zechariah 14:16-19).

Because it is not relevant to the Church Age. Neither is Sabbath keeping.

ii) Should we keep **new moon feasts** now? No. Then neither should we keep the Sabbath now.

**20) SDA:** The Sabbath is God's **special law above all laws**. (**p.780**).

Bible: How can the Sabbath commandment be more important than that which Jesus calls the first and great commandment of loving God and loving your neighbour? (Matthew 22:37-40).

**21) SDA:** The Sabbath is a sign between **God and Christians**. (**p.780**).

Bible: The Sabbath is a sign between **God and Israel only**, because:

i) Exodus 31:13; 31:16; and Ezekiel 20:12 say so.

ii) Why did God never command any Gentiles in the OT or NT to keep the Sabbath?

iii) Why do SDA's not keep the **sign of circumcision**? (Genesis 17:11).

Why do SDA's not keep the **sign of Passover blood**? (Exodus 12:13).

Question: Why should Christians not keep the sign of the **Sabbath**? (Exodus 31:13,16).

Answer: Because it was a sign **ONLY** for Jews and not for NT Christians in the Church Age.

iv) Keeping the Saturday Sabbath was the sign of the Mosaic Covenant between God and Jews only. Exodus 31:13,14,16,17; Romans 9:4.

**22) SDA: Hebrew 4:9** proves we must keep the weekly Jewish Sabbath. (**p.781**).

"There remaineth therefore a **rest** to the people of God."

Bible: Hebrews 4:9 rest (Greek: "Sabbatismos"(4520), not "Sabbaton"(4521)) is "our **fellowship rest** with the Father and Son in **eternity**." S. Zodhiates, NT Word Study Dict. p.1268. **Rev.14:13**.

**23) SDA:** The Sabbath is **not nailed to the Cross** because the Holy Spirit still refers to the Sabbath day after Christ's death, when the New Covenant had replaced the Old Covenant. (**p.781**).

Bible: Other Jewish days kept after the cross, yet are not binding on Christians are Pentecost (Acts 2:1); Unleavened Bread (Acts 12:3; 20:6); Purification (Acts 21:26); Animal sacrifices (Acts 21:26); and Circumcision (Acts 16:3).

**24) SDA:** The Sabbath was **not a shadow**, because the Sabbath was given before the Fall. (**p.781**).

Bible: The **Sabbath is a shadow**: "Sabbath days; which **are a shadow** of things to come." Col 2:16,17

**25) SDA:** The Sabbath is the way we know **God sanctifies us**. (**p.781**).

"I gave them my Sabbaths to be a sign between **me** and **them**, that they might know that I am the Lord **that sanctify them**." Ezekiel 20:12,20; Exodus 31:13.

Bible: This expression “that they might know that I am the Lord that sanctify them” is NOT found in the NT, nor is there any NT commandments for Christians after Pentecost to keep the Sabbath.

- 26) **SDA: Christ our example** kept the Sabbath. (**p.781**).

Bible: Jesus kept the Passover, every Jewish Feast day, animal sacrifices and all the Ceremonial Laws of Moses. Why don’t the SDA’s keep these as well?

Because “after faith is come, we are no longer under a schoolmaster (the law).” Galatians 4:24,25.

- 27) **SDA: The disciples kept the Sabbath one day after Christ’s death**, proving that the Sabbath was not abolished when it was nailed to the Cross. (**p.782**).

Bible: The disciples kept this Sabbath day, because they did not yet understand that ALL of the Mosaic Covenant and Mosaic Laws would be abolished by the New Covenant and the law of Christ. This SDA argument proves nothing, They didn’t yet understand Christ’s crucifixion, death, resurrection, ascension or second coming. This is the only time after the cross that the disciples ever kept the Sabbath day.

Question: “Why is there no other place in the New Covenant where Christians “kept the Sabbath according to the Commandment”?

- 28) **SDA: Paul preaching on the Sabbath** after the Cross, proves we must keep the Sabbath today.

“He reasoned in the synagogue every Sabbath day.” Acts 13:14; 16:12; 17:2; 18:4,11. (**p.782**).

Bible: Do SDA pastors “keep Sunday” if they preach in a Sunday keeping church on Sunday? No. Then neither did Paul keep the Sabbath in these verses. Pentecost (Acts 2) and Sabbath days just provided an opportunity to preach to an interested audience.

- 29) **SDA: Sunday keeping is worshipping the sun** -“SUN” day. (**p.782**).

Ans: Ridiculous! If so, then Saturday keeping is worshipping the Roman god Saturn, “Saturn’s” day.

- 30) **SDA: Ananias**, a devout Christian, kept the 10 Commandments: “Ananias, a devout man according to the Law...” Acts 22:12. So should we keep the Sabbath law today. (**p.782**).

Bible: Just because a Jew kept the Mosaic Law does not prove that we must keep it because:

i) The Mosaic Law included circumcision (Acts 21:20-24) which Christians don’t keep.

ii) The Apostles never commanded Christians to keep the Mosaic Law:

“certain ...have troubled you with words, subverting your souls, saying ye must be circumcised, and keep the law: to whom we gave no such commandment.” (Acts 15:24).

- 31) **SDA: History shows that the very earliest Christians kept the Sabbath**. (**p.783**) as follows:

i) Up to 135 AD there was no discussion of the Sabbath question.

ii) After 135 AD Christians started meeting on Sundays, or after Constantine (320 AD).

Bible i) History and the Bible are 100% against SDA’s.

ii) There is enormous historical evidence (over 15 early writers) that from the Apostles to Constantine, Christians always met on Sunday, and never on the Sabbath.

iii) There is no historical evidence that early Christians:

-Kept the Sabbath.

-Protested a change from Saturday to Sunday worship. (Jews protested it)

-Practised the Lord’s supper on the Sabbath.

- 32) **SDA: Christians copied Sunday keeping off the pagan religion of Mithraism**. (**p.783**).

Answer: There is no documented evidence that Mithraism had a formal Sunday worship service. “Sun worship” and worshipping on Sunday” are completely different ideas that SDA’s combine in order to confuse the subject.

- 33) **SDA: The Pope** changed the Sabbath from Saturday to Sunday. (**p.784**).

Answer: i) Which Pope? When did he change it? What proof is there?

ii) Many church writers before 340 AD all say that Christians from the Apostles met on Sunday.

iii) SDA theologian, Bacchiocchi said “I differ from Ellen White on the origin of Sunday keeping... I place the origin of Sunday keeping by the time of the Emperor Hadrian, 135AD.”

- 34) **SDA: Constantine** changed the Sabbath to Sunday. (**p.784**).

Answer: i) Constantine just made a civil decree that because Christians were already meeting on Sunday (since 33 AD), that Christians should not work on Sunday.

ii) SDA’s contradict themselves. Who changed the Sabbath? Was it the Pope, Constantine in 321 AD, or some Christians in Rome in 135 AD?

## **114. ERRORS OF MORMONISM**

“But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed.” Galatians 1:8.

**Challenge:** There are 6 million Mormons in 1995. They hope to double by 2000 AD. There are 16 million in 2017. 30% attendance. We should win them to Christ. Inform enquirers into Mormonism of its heresies.

**Background:** Joseph Smith, the founder of Mormonism, was born on Dec. 23, 1805 in Vermont, USA. In 1820 (aged 14 years) he allegedly received a vision:

“...I asked the personages (demons?) who stood above me in the light, which of all the sects was right- and which I should join. I was answered that I must join none of them, for they were all wrong; and the personage (demon?) who addressed me said that all their creeds were an abomination in his sight...”. Pearl of Great Price 2:18,19.

He claims a second vision on Sept. 21, 1823 where “a personage (demon?) appeared at my bedside” to inform him of the location of a box containing golden plates buried at Manchester, New York. In 1827, Smith claimed to receive the golden plates upon which the Book of Mormon is alleged to have been written. He claimed to have finished translating the plates on March 26, 1830.

On April 6, 1830, at Fayette, New York, the Mormon church was organised, with 6 members. They then moved to Kirtland (Cleveland), Ohio, publishing the book “Doctrines and Covenants”. Smith was imprisoned in Far West, Missouri, for fighting. After escaping, he and his people fled to Nauvoo, Illinois, where he organised a small army. When a local paper, the “Nauvoo Expositor”, published anti-Mormon material, Smith ordered the press destroyed and the paper burned. This act of destruction led to Smith’s arrest and imprisonment. He was sent to a jail in Carthage, Illinois, with his brother Hyrum. On June 27, 1844, a mob of 200 people stormed the jail, shooting and killing Joseph and Hyrum Smith. The Mormons consider him a martyr.

Brigham Young then took over the leadership. He led the group westward to found Salt Lake City, Utah, on July 24, 1847, which became their headquarters. When Young died in 1877, they had 150,000 members.

### **I. 6 BASIC ERRORS IN MORMONISM:**

**Error 1:** Walter Martin writes: “With one special revelation, the Mormon church expects its intended converts to accept the unsupported testimony of **an undiscerning 14 year old boy**, saying that **nobody ever preached the gospel of Christ from 96 AD to 1820**.”

He did not even know the gospel definition in I Cor. 15:1-4, that “Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures, was buried, and rose again the third day”. This is the gospel. How much discernment and in-depth Bible knowledge did Joseph Smith have at age 14 to allow him to recognise truth from error? No Bible prophet began their ministry at 14.

**Error 2:** Brigham Young ordered the **massacre of 150 non-Mormon immigrants**. This became known as the Mountain Meadows massacre. Young ordered Bishop John D. Lee in 1877 to murder a wagon train of helpless immigrants. 20 years later, Lee was tried, convicted and executed for their murder by the U.S. government. In his book “The Confessions of John D. Lee”, Lee confessed his murders, but charged that he was acting on the orders of Brigham Young. This was supported by other lieutenants in the massacre.

**Error 3: The bad personal life of Joseph Smith:**

- i) Smith and his father **regularly dug for treasure**, using “peep stones” and “divining rods”.
- ii) Many Mormon people testified to the outright **immorality and polygamy** of Joseph Smith. These are in the Berrian collection in the New York Public Library.
- iii) “Joseph Smith was known for his habits of **exaggeration** and **untruthfulness**”.  
(P. Tucker, in “The Origin, Rise and Progress of Mormonism” (1867), quoting duly sworn statements of Smith’s neighbours).

- iv) E.D. Howe quoted statements of 62 residents of Palmyra, New York, who knew the Smith family personally. They testify as follows:

"We, the undersigned, have been acquainted with the Smith family... and have no hesitation in saying that we consider them destitute of that moral character which ought to entitle them to the confidence of any community. Both Joseph Snr and Joseph Jnr were considered entirely destitute of moral character, and addicted to vicious habits." "Mormonism Unveiled", Zanesville, Ohio, 1834, p.261.

**Note:** There have been no statements from any reliable and informed source who knew Joseph Smith and his family intimately, to support his character.

### The Story of the Book of Mormon.

The Book of Mormon claims to be the history of two ancient civilizations on the American continent. The first group left the Tower of Babel about 2250 BC, crossing to Europe and sailing to Central America. They were totally destroyed because of "corruption".

The second group allegedly left Jerusalem around 600 BC, before the Babylonian destruction and captivity. They sailed to Peru. These supposedly were righteous Jews, led by Nephi. The Mormon record claimed that Christ appeared to the Nephites, to preach the gospel to them, to institute baptism, the communion service, the priesthood and other mystical ceremonies. They supposedly later on split into two warring camps, the Nephites and the Lamanites (American Indians). The Lamanites allegedly wiped out the Nephites completely in a battle in Palmyra, New York, in 428 AD. The Lamanites supposedly were cursed with dark skin for their evil deeds.

Joseph Smith in 1827, claimed to dig up golden plates written in "reformed Egyptian hieroglyphics", and by using Urim and Thummim spectacles, translated them into English in 1830 as the Book of Mormon. No Egyptologist has ever unearthed a "reformed Egyptian" language. It has Roman letters inverted or placed sideways, mixed with Greek and Hebrew letters.

**Error 4:** How could a language written by people leaving Europe in 600 BC use **Roman letters, which were not used widely until 67 BC**, when Rome became a world empire?

The Mormons wrongly claim that the "other sheep" of John 10:16 refer to the appearance of Christ to the Nephites. It, however, refers to the Gentiles, who would be saved, joining the saved Jews in the Church, the body of Christ, the one fold, with one Shepherd (Christ).

**Error 5:** Joseph Smith, in an effort to prove the Book of Mormon, claimed in the "Pearl of Great Price" Section 2, verses 62, 63, 64, that **Professor Charles Anthon verified the "reformed Egyptian language."** Smith allegedly quotes Professor Anthon as follows:

"Professor Anthon stated that the translation was correct, more so than any he had before seen translated from the Egyptian. I then showed him those which were not yet translated, and he said that they were Egyptian, Chaldaic, Assyriac and Arabic and he said that they were true characters".

This later proved to be a **total lie**, as Professor Anthon wrote in a letter to E.D. Howe, that he never said any such thing. Mormons have never been able to refute this letter or any of Howe's research. An excerpt from Professor Anthon's letter of rebuttal is as follows:

New York, N.Y., Feb. 17, 1834

Mr E.D. Howe

Painseville, Ohio

Dear Sir,

... The whole story about my having pronounced the Mormonite inscription to be "reformed Egyptian hieroglyphics" is **perfectly false...**

Yours respectfully,

Charles Anthon, LL.D. Columbia University.

All reputable linguists who have examined the Mormon evidence have rejected it as mythical.

## **Error 6: Mormon misunderstanding** of the **Sticks of Joseph and Judah** in Ezekiel 37:15-23.

Mormons claim that the “stick of Judah” refers to the Bible, and the “stick of Ephraim” refers to the Book of Mormon. They claim that the joining of the 2 sticks refers to the union of the Bible and the Book of Mormon as an addition to the Word of God.

**Answer:** The subject under discussion is **not books, but people and nations.** It refers to the then divided nation of Israel (587 BC) of the northern and southern kingdoms becoming reunited as one nation in the land, just before and after Christ’s second coming.

“These bones are the whole house of Israel”. Ezekiel 37:11.

The 2 sticks becoming one stick in Ezekiel’s hand represent Judah (2 1/2 tribes) and Israel (9 1/2 tribes) being united in the end days.

“I will take the children of Israel from among the heathen, ... and bring them into their own land: I will make them one nation in the land upon the mountains of Israel,.....**they shall be no more 2 nations.**” Ezekiel 37:21,22.

**The Mormon view totally ignores the context, hoping no one will read the passage too carefully.**

## **II. MISTAKES IN THE BOOK OF MORMON**

### **1. Nephi wrote in the wrong language.**

A pious Jew would never record Scripture in the Egyptian language. He would always only use Hebrew. Nephi, son of Lehi, a devout Jew who had lived in Jerusalem all his life, claimed to record events “in the language of his father (Lehi), which consists of the learning of the Jews and the language of the Egyptians.” I Nephi 1:2.

An apostate Jew might use Egyptian, but a devout Jew, even if he knew Egyptian, would never use it to write a “holy” book. He would only use Hebrew.

Note: A devout Jew would NEVER write God’s sacred name “JHVH” in Egyptian. This would be an unthinkable abomination and sacrilege. Joseph Smith never knew this. “The Lord commanded...” I Nephi 2:2.

### **2. The Book of Mormon , describing the safe escape of Nephi from Jerusalem, is contradicted by Jeremiah, who said that the ONLY safety lay in surrendering to King Nebuchadnezzar. There was no other safe way of escape.**

“If thou wilt assuredly go forth unto the king of Babylon’s princes, then thy soul shall live...

But if thou wilt not go forth to the King of Babylon’s princes, then shall this city be given into the hand of the Chaldeans, and they shall burn it with fire, and thou shalt not escape out of their hand.” Jeremiah 38:18,19.

The only safety for the people of Jerusalem was to give themselves up to the invading Babylonians. The Book of Mormon is ignorant of Jeremiah 38,39, when it gives the false message in I Nephi 2:2 “The Lord commanded my father, even in a dream, that he should take his family and depart into the wilderness.”

Q: Does God contradict himself? No.

Q: Is Nephi a greater prophet than Jeremiah? No.

### **3. There are no rivers emptying into the Red Sea.**

“... When he had travelled three days in the wilderness, he pitched his tent in a valley by the side of a river of water.... He called the name of the river Laman, and it emptied into the Red Sea; and the valley was in the border near the mouth thereof.” I Nephi 2:4-9.

a) It would have been impossible for an old man (Lehi), women and children to travel the 175 mile journey from Jerusalem to the Red Sea in 3 days.

Q: Could you walk 58 miles per day for 3 days? Travelling 3 miles per hour, you would need to travel for 20 hours each day non-stop for 3 days. This would have been quite impossible.

b) There are no rivers running into the Red Sea along their route, the eastern shore of the Gulf of Aqaba, at this or any other point. This part of the world was well known and well travelled in 600 BC. Had there been a river as Nephi describes, the area would have been one of the best known in the world of its day. It would have supported a large population, as always happened where fresh water was available. The mouth of such a river would have been a well known port city in 600 BC.

- c) These 6 people then cross 1400 miles of the Arabian peninsula, 400 miles being rugged mountains and 1000 miles of desert.
- d) They find a bountiful, fruitful land on the Persian Gulf. Alexander's troops in 330 BC avoided this as desert area.
- e) They then build a ship sufficiently seaworthy to carry them two-thirds around the world in rough seas to the west coast of America, now known as Peru.

#### **4. American Indians are Mongoloids from East Asia, not Semites from Jerusalem as the Book of Mormon claims.**

For 200 years before 1820, many philosophers thought that the American Indians were the lost tribes of Israel. The dark skin of the Indians is not caused by their bad morals, as the Book of Mormon claims, but by genetics.

American Indians are Mongoloid, not Jewish, because:

- a) Mongoloids lack face and body hair, (growing at most 3 inches of beard in a lifetime), but Jews have much face and body hair.
- b) Mongoloid hair is coarse, black and straight, but Jewish Semite hair is moderately fine, wavy & brown.
- c) Mongoloids have reddish skin pigmentation, but Jewish Semites have an olive-gray pigmentation.
- d) Mongoloids have prominent cheek bones, not like Semites.
- e) Mongoloids appear slant-eyed, but Semites have deep seated eyes.
- f) Mongoloid babies have a Mongolian spot on their backs. This is a slate-blue round pigment spot that disappears after a few months or years. It is not present on the backs of Jewish or Semite babies. Hence American Indians could not descend from Jews. Mormons must defend their prophet even if they have to close their eyes to do so.

#### **5. The Book of Mormon predicts that the Lamanites (American Indians) would soon change to white skin colour.**

"Many generations shall not pass away among them, save they shall be a white and delightsome people." 2 Nephi 30:6.

Dark skinned Mormon Indians have never become lightened due to their holding Mormon doctrines. Indian murals show Indians of 4 skin colours, all living peaceably.

Q: If the light skinned Nephites were wiped out in 421 AD as the Book of Mormon claims, why are both light and dark skinned Indians portrayed in later wall paintings at Bonampak and Chichen-Itza?

#### **6. There is not the slightest resemblance between the Mayan characters, and those supposed to be copied by Smith, as "Reformed Egyptian".**

#### **7. The Book of Mormon is wrong on Indian warfare.**

It is mostly a book of wars, oppression, slavery, treachery and bloodshed. The writer has an obsession with warfare and killing, with killings starting from Chapter 4. Weapons used from 544 BC to 52 BC (p107-359) are listed as bows and arrows, steel swords, axes, brass and copper breastplates, shields, horses and chariots, and cimeters.

Q: What is wrong with this picture? Almost everything.

The author knew almost nothing about early American life, lack of warfare, and politics. Early Americans from 600 BC to 421 AD had very little interest in war, and had no occasion for war because:

- a) They spent most of their time farming.
- b) They had no great cities of great population as are mentioned in the Book of Mormon.
- c) Mongoloids have a different philosophy of life and war than Europeans and Semites.
- d) Early Americans knew nothing of iron and steel for swords, until the Spaniards came.
- e) Breastplates of brass and copper were unknown then.
- f) Cimeters were curved swords used by Persians, Arabs and Turks, only appearing in 1400 AD).
- g) Arm shields and axes of metal were not yet invented in America.

- h) The earliest metals in America were gold beads dated 600 AD. Copper, bronze and silver came much later, when smelting was invented.
- i) Horses and chariots were not used in America before the Spanish conquest.
- j) The wheel was never used in America before the Europeans came. Roads were pedestrian roads approaching the temples, and were not built in the Book of Mormon period
- k) The sinewed bow and arrow of the American Indians came 600 years later, after 421 AD. They instead used an atlatl, or throwing stick.
- l) Wars of conquest were unknown because the gaining of new territory for occupation was unnecessary, as there was plenty of room for all Indians.

### **8. No coinage system was ever developed in ancient America.**

If the alleged “Nephites” were descended from Jews raised in Jerusalem, their coinage and money values would have survived to the New World. Hence Joseph Smith created a system of coinage for people of the Book of Mormon in America. It seems strange that Smith did not continue using Jewish shekels and talents, but that he devised coins such as senines, seons, shums and limnals of gold.

Unfortunately for Smith, while his guess was logical, it was completely wrong. No system of coinage was ever developed by ancient Americans.

The Mayans who traded had:

- a) No money transactions in their records.
- b) Their coins would have been discovered in their graves and homes.
- c) No coins were found in sacred wells, where so many valuable ornaments and jewels were thrown as offerings to their gods.
- d) All the known Mayan media of exchange have been identified, both of their own land, and also along the ancient trade routes of Mexico, Central America and the Caribbean Sea, but never have they found metallic money.
- e) Columbus was told by a Mayan chieftain in 1502 that all transactions were by barter.
- f) Interregional markets were found at Xicalenco, a market town between Aztec and Mayan populations, where Aztec, Mayan, Toltec, Mixtec and Totocan peoples met. Surely if there had been a coined money system it would have been found here.
- g) Cacao beans came closest to a standardised medium of exchange for uneven barter.
- h) Taxation had no metal coinage, but was a work service.

**Question: Why did they have no coinage?**

**Answer: Because they had no metal until gold was discovered after 600 AD.** Gold was used only for ornamentation. Silver was discovered around 900 AD.

There never was an iron age in America before Columbus. In spite of this, Joseph Smith had his ancient Nephites and Lamanites using iron and steel swords. Iron was the scarcest and most valuable metal. Gold was the most plentiful and cheapest metal.

### **9. Silk and fine linen have never been successfully grown in America.**

Joseph Smith has Alma, a judge of the Nephites in 100 BC, stating that his people possessed “an abundance of silk and fine twined linen, and all manner of good homely cloth.” Alma 1:29.

Smith was wrong here because:

- a) Silk was unknown in the Americas until the Europeans came, and that it has never been successfully introduced since then.
- b) Cortez tried to grow silk in Mexico in 1522, but the industry died out 75 years later. Encyclopaedia Britannica, 1959 ed. XX, 664.
- c) James I of England in 1609 tried to introduce silk culture in the American colonies, but failed.
- e) In Alma 17:25-33, Ammon protects King Lamoni’s flocks from attackers. This is wrong because there were no domestic sheep in America before the Spanish came (Morley, The Ancient Maya, p.408). Central America and southern Mexico never have been suitable for raising sheep. Sheep could not thrive in jungle country. Indians wore fabric of rabbit hair, birds’ feathers & Kapok tree. Joseph Smith’s failure to mention these, and his mention of materials totally unknown in any early American period, proves that the Book of Mormon was written by a completely uninformed scribe who knew nothing of life in Ancient America.

## **10. Impossibility of churches, temples and synagogues in America from 539 BC to 34 AD.**

- a) The Book of Mormon mentions “synagogues” at least 12 times. Alma 16:13 speaks of synagogues “built after the manner of the Jews”. They date synagogues from 559 BC to 34 AD. Nephi and his successors in America could have known nothing of synagogues. Why?  
Because synagogues were founded after the Temple’s destruction in 586 BC, when Temple worship was an impossibility because Jews were in Babylonian exile. Nephi would never have seen a synagogue in Israel.
- b) II Nephi 5:16 tells us that Nephi built a temple “after the manner of the temple of Solomon”, not more than 20 years after the migrant party landed in America between 588-570 BC. What is wrong with this?
- i) **They didn't have enough workers.** In I Kings 5:13-18, Solomon needed 183,300 workers (made up of 70,000 labourers + 80,000 stone quarriers, 3300 supervisors + 30,000 loggers) over 7 1/2 years, to build his temple. Yet Nephi had only about 12 adults, because half the company had apostasized. Five couples could not produce more than 50 children in 20 years. It would have been impossible for Nephi, with 5 men's help, to construct a building requiring many specialised skills.
  - ii) There could be no practical use for it, because the population was so small (about 20). Solomon's temple served a nation of several million worshippers.
  - iii) **II Nephi 5:15 says that materials “were in great abundance”.**

This contradicts v.16 which says that the materials were “not to be found upon the land”.

“And I, Nephi, did build a temple; ... after the manner of the temple of Solomon, save it were not built of so many precious things; for they were not to be found upon the land...” v.16.

Here Joseph Smith tripped badly, because he has Nephi saying in the previous verse:

“And I did teach my people to build buildings, and to work in all manner of wood, and of iron, and of copper, and of brass, and of steel, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious ores which were in great abundance.” II Nephi 5:15.

Note: At this same time Smith has Nephi making swords of steel, long before the invention of steel anywhere in the world, to arm his soldiers against about 40 of his apostate brother's people.

## **11. Mormons falsely equate Jesus Christ with Quetzalcoatl “The Feathered Serpent.”**

The problems with this are:

- a) Jesus Christ is never pictured as a serpent. This is Satan's symbol (Genesis 3:1).
- b) He appeared at least 1000 years after Christ's birth (1032 AD). This is too late to equate him with the historic Jesus. There is no evidence that Jesus ever came to the American continent after His resurrection. If He did, it would have been widely recorded.

## **12. Darkness covered the whole earth at Christ's crucifixion for 3 hours (Matthew 27:45 and Mark 15:33), but the Book of Mormon mistakes it to be 3 days (Helaman 14:20,27).**

Many earthquakes with great destruction and loss of life supposedly accompanied Christ's death, to show God's displeasure. Mormons claim that this took place in Yucatan in Mexico. This is an area of flat jungle on limestone, which has been free from earthquakes. Ruins here date from 150 AD or later, not before. What is wrong with this passage?

- a) Jesus rebuked James and John for wanting to call down fire from heaven to destroy the scoffing Samaritans.
- b) The inhabitants of America were no greater sinners than the chief priests who demanded Christ's death. Christ did not curse them, but prayed for their forgiveness.
- c) Calvary was an act of mercy, not of destruction. No one died in the Jerusalem earthquake, nor when the temple veil was torn. So why should many people die in America who were not responsible for Christ's death? 3 Nephi 8:1-24.
- d) Christ came to save men's lives, not destroy them. Smith never understood God's mercy and grace to man at Calvary.

**13. The Book of Mormon forgets that glass windows were not invented in 2200 BC at the Tower of Babel.** (The first glass vessels were invented around 1500BC in Egypt. The first window glass was invented around 50AD. *World Book Encyclopedia*).

Jared and others supposedly migrate from Mesopotamia to America when the Tower of Babel was built. For light in their boats, God was supposed to have given them luminous stones.

“For, behold, ye cannot have windows, for they will be dashed in pieces.” Ether 2:23

Smith did not know that the Phoenicians had not yet invented glass.

Amazingly, 50-80 people sailed for 344 days, without any loss of life, or running short of food.

**14. Smith thought that Elijah (O.T.) and Elias (N.T. spelling) were different people.**

They are the same person. Elijah is the Old Testament name, and Elias is the New Testament name. This is found in “Doctrines and Covenants” Section 109 and 110:11-13, which is devoted to a prayer offered at the dedication of the temple in Kirtland, Ohio, March 27, 1836, where Smith states:

“The Lord appeared, ... Moses appeared before us... Elias appeared... After this vision was closed, another great and glorious vision burst upon us; for Elijah the prophet, who was taken to heaven without tasting death, stood before us.”

**Elijah and Elias are the same person.** What a blunder! Elijah and Elisha are distinguished correctly in Luke 4:25,26: “Many widows were in Israel in the days of Elias (Elijah)... Many lepers were in Israel in the time of Eliseus (Elisha) the prophet; and none of them was cleansed saving Naaman the Syrian.”

Once this revelation was presented as the word of God, there was no easy way to correct this mistake.

**15. Jesus Christ was born at Bethlehem, not at Jerusalem** (Luke 2:4 and Micah 5:2).

“The Son of God cometh upon the face of the earth. And behold, he shall be born of Mary, at Jerusalem.” Alma 7:9,10.

Everyone knows that Jesus was born at Bethlehem, except Joseph Smith and Mormons who wish to defend the indefensible. Luke and Micah got it right, but Smith got it wrong. It is 9Km South of Jerusalem.

**16. How can Helaman 12:26, supposedly written in 6 BC, quote John 5:29 which was not yet written until 85 AD? You cannot quote something that is not yet written.**

“fulfilling the words which say: They that have done good shall receive everlasting life; and they that have done evil, shall have everlasting damnation.” Helaman 12:26 in 6 BC.

It is obvious that this is a great mistake, proving the Book of Mormon to be a fake, made up by someone who did not know his facts, and who was given to lying. John 5:29 quotes: “And shall come forth: they that have done good, unto the resurrection of life; and they that have done evil, unto the resurrection of damnation.”

**Q:** Does this verse teach salvation by good works?

**Answer:** No, because John’s theology forbids this (3:17-21; 6:28,29). It states that those who are truly born again will live a life of good works after salvation. They obey Christ (14:15), they abide in Christ (15:5-7), and they walk in the light (John 8:12). Damnation is because of rejecting Christ (John 3:36).

**17. How can parts of the Book of Mormon allegedly written in 570 BC quote Bible passages (word for word) that were not yet written (in 397BC or 1611AD)?**

**Book of Mormon**

i) I Nephi 22:15 (**570 BC**)

“For the day soon cometh that all the proud and they who do wickedly shall be as stubble, and the day cometh that they must be burned.”

ii) II Nephi 26:9 (**545 BC**)

“But the Son of righteousness shall appear unto them; and he shall heal them...”

Answer: The Book of Mormon was not written in 570 BC, but was copied from the King James Bible around 1820 AD. The writer misquoted “Son” for “Sun”, a dictation mistake.

**18. How can the Book of Mormon, allegedly written around 570 BC, quote word for word from the New Testament of the King James Bible, not written until 1611 AD? (2200 years later).**

**Book of Mormon**

i) I Nephi 4:13 (**592 BC**)

“That one man should perish than that a nation should dwindle and perish...”

ii) I Nephi 10:8 (**570 BC**)

“Whose shoe's latchet  
I am not worthy to unloose.”

iii) I Nephi 10:9

“He should baptize in  
Bethabara, beyond Jordan.”

iv) I Nephi 11:22

v) I Nephi 11:27

vi) I Nephi 14:11

**KJV**

Malachi 4:1 (**397 BC**)

“For behold, the day cometh that shall burn as an oven; and all the proud, yea, and all that do wickedly, shall be as stubble; and the day that cometh shall burn them up...”

Malachi 4:2 (**397 BC**)

“But unto you that fear my name shall the Sun of righteousness arise with healing in his wings...”

**KJV**

i) John 11:50 (**33 AD, 1611 AD**)

“That one man should die for the people, and that the whole nation perish not.”

ii) John 1:27 (**85 AD and 1611 AD**)

“Whose shoe's latchet  
I am not worthy to unloose.”

iii) John 1:28

“In Bethabara beyond Jordan, where John was baptizing.”

iv) Romans 5:5

v) Luke 3:22

vi) Revelation 17:1,15

Jerald and Sandra Tanner list 400 clear examples in their book “The Case against Mormonism” (Vol. 2, Salt Lake City, 1967, p.87-102) to prove beyond doubt that the author of the Book of Mormon was well acquainted with the King James New Testament of 1611.

vii) At least 17 full chapters of the Book of Isaiah are quoted word for word from the King James Version of 1611, allegedly in 570 BC, 2200 years before the KJV was published. This is a clear case of plagiarism, with no other purpose than adding volume to the book of Mormon without too much effort.

**Book of Mormon:** I Nephi 20 21 II Nephi 7 8 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24  
Isaiah: 48 49 50 51;52;1,2 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14

## **19. The Book of Abraham Fraud**

This is found in the Mormon scripture known as “The Pearl of Great Price”. Joseph Smith in 1835 purchased an ancient Egyptian papyrus found in mummy wrapping acquired by Michael H. Chandler. Smith, believing that he had the gift of interpreting ancient Egyptian, **claimed that the rolls contained the writings of Abraham himself, signed personally by Abraham.**

In 1842, Smith published his translation under the title “The Book of Abraham” in “Times and Seasons”. He claimed that a picture in it was Abraham sitting on Pharaoh’s throne.

These papyri were lost for many years, but they turned up and were presented to the Mormon Church by the Metropolitan Art Museum of New York on November 27, 1967.

When translated, they found that not a single word of Joseph Smith’s translation was correct. The text had nothing to do with Abraham, but **described magical spells to open the mouth of the dead** to prepare him for his **audience with Osiris** to be judged. Hence Joseph Smith’s translation of Egyptian is proved false.

## **20. The Book of Mormon has undergone about 3000 changes from the 1830 edition to the modern edition.**

### 1830 Edition

i) “King Benjamin had a gift from God, whereby he could interpret such engravings.” p.200.

ii) “Behold the virgin which thou seest, is the Mother of God.” p.25.

iii) “..that the Lamb of God is the eternal Father...” p.32.

### Modern Edition

i) “King Mosiah had a gift from God, whereby he could interpret such engravings.” p.176, verse 28.

ii) “Behold the virgin whom thou seest is the mother of the Son of God.” I Nephi 11:18.

iii) “..that the Lamb of God is the Son of the Eternal Father...” I Nephi 13:40.

## **21. Of the 38 cities in the Book of Mormon, leading archaeologists have not found any remains of any of these alleged cities.**

The **Smithsonian Institute** in Washington states:

“There is no correspondence whatever between **archaeological sites** and cultures as revealed by scientific investigations, and **as recorded in the Book of Mormon...** Thus far no iron, steel, brass, gold and silver coins, metal, swords, breastplates, arm shields, armour, horses and chariots, or silk have ever been found in pre-colonial archaeological sites.” Kingdom of the Cults, W. Martin, p.162.

## **22. The testimony of the 3 witnesses which appears at the front of the Book of Mormon (Oliver Cowdery, David Whitmer, and Martin Harris) declares that:**

“an angel of God came down from heaven, and he brought and laid before our eyes, that we beheld and saw the plates, and the engraving thereon...”

Martin Harris denied to Professor Anthon that he had actually seen the plates, but that he only saw them “with the **eye of faith.**”

Note: All three of these witnesses **later apostasized** from the Mormon faith, and were described by Mormon contemporaries as thieves and counterfeitors.

## **23. Polygamy is forbidden by God in Jacob 2:27, yet it was practised by Smith and Brigham Young, and permitted by “Doctrines and Covenants”, section 132, v.32,34.**

“... hearken to the word of the Lord: For there shall not any man among you have save it be one wife; and concubines he shall have none.” Jacob 2:27.

### Conclusion:

Thurlow Weed, who was the editor of the “Rochester Telegram” newspaper, wrote that Smith approached him in 1825, two years before the supposed possession of the golden plates, with a view to publishing the Book of Mormon. At this time he claimed to have the first chapter written.

**Question:** Why do Mormons continue to circulate the discredited Book of Mormon?

Answer: Joseph Smith, to the Mormons, is the prophet of God, and the Book of Mormon is his symbol. Discredit the Book, and you discredit Joseph Smith. Mormons' authoritative scripture consists of:

- a) The King James Bible "insofar as it is correctly translated".
- b) Doctrine and Covenants.
- c) The Pearl of Great Price.
- d) The Book of Mormon.

Mormons must be willing to face the facts, admit that they have been deceived, and leave the Mormon church. Truth and one's eternal salvation are more important than remaining loyal to a lying prophet and to a false church. Mormons, pluck up the courage to honestly seek the truth in the Bible with your mind and not with your feelings. Swallow your pride and come to Jesus Christ alone for salvation, not trusting your baptism or good works or the Mormon religion.

Reject Mormon revelations of:

- a) The acceptance of new scripture. The Bible is able to make "the man of God perfect (complete), throughly furnished unto all good works." II Timothy 3:16,17. See II Peter 1:3,4.
- b) Individual, personal, supernatural revelations: "Woe unto the foolish prophets, that follow their own spirit, and have seen nothing." Ezekiel 13:3.  
"that prophesy lies in my name....they are the prophets of the deceit of their own heart" Jeremiah 23:25,26.  
"they prophesy unto you a false vision and divination, and a thing of naught, and the deceit of their heart." Jeremiah 14:14.

**Q:** Mormons, when you prophesy, can you prove that you are speaking from God, or does it come from your heart, or from the devil?

**Q:** If you can make up prophecies, so can everybody. Where does this lead you to? Confusion.

### **III. FALSE PROPHECIES OF JOSEPH SMITH.**

A cultist looks to his leader to decide truth for him. **Joseph Smith is the Mormon's only basis of religious authority.** They believe that he is a prophet of God.

The only issue which Mormons are **not well-prepared to discuss**, is the issue of Joseph Smith's claim to be a true prophet of God. This issue is not in their manual.

A Mormon missionary is trained to give a testimony in which he states:

"I testify by the Spirit of God that I know that Joseph Smith was a prophet of God, and that the Book of Mormon is the Word of God."

**Q1: How do you know that he was a prophet of God?**

Mormon: Because God spoke to him.

**Q2: How do you know that God spoke to him?**

Mormon: Because he was a prophet of God.

**Q3:** This is circular reasoning, which is not valid. How do you know that he was a prophet to whom God spoke?

Mormon: I got on my knees and prayed for God to show me if Joseph Smith was His prophet, and if the Book of Mormon was inspired. Now I have a burning feeling in my heart that these things are true."

**Q4: You don't determine truth by a burning feeling in your heart, but by the Word of God.**

The Bible says, "He that trusteth in his own heart is a fool." Proverbs 28:26.

"The heart is deceitful above all things, and desperately wicked: who can know it?" Jeremiah 17:9.

Mormon: What do you feel about the Book of Mormon?

Note: They try to direct you to your feelings in order to keep you from thinking about the issues.

**Q5: We can test Joseph Smith's claim to be a prophet of God by testing if his prophecies all came true.** Deuteronomy 18:20-22 states that if someone claims to be a prophet of God, but his predictions fail to happen, then this person is a false prophet.

Repeat this logic to the Mormon until he understands it.

**Q6: When the prophecies of Joseph Smith are examined, it can be proven that he was a false prophet.**

Note: Mormons are not trained to deal with Smith's prophecies. Mormon leaders discourage members from studying his false prophecies. Keep to this subject.

Smith's false prophecies are not mistakes. We all make mistakes, but most of us never claim to be a "prophet of God" who speaks "inspired revelations." Be prepared for the Mormons' "pat answers."

- a) Mormon: Smith never made any prophecies.

You: Doctrines and Covenants, and Pearl of Great Price record many of his prophecies.

- b) Mormon: Smith was only giving his personal opinion. He wasn't speaking as a prophet.

You: Each prophecy in Doctrines and Covenants is a numbered and dated revelation from God. Smith's predictions begin with "Thus says the Lord", and full inspiration is claimed for each one.

- c) Mormon: If Smith was a false prophet, so was Moses. Didn't he predict he would lead Israel into the Promised Land? Yet he died beforehand.

You: Moses never prophesied that he would enter the land.

We aim to convert Mormons to Christ, and to prevent people from becoming Mormons. Therefore, just one false prophecy would reveal Smith to be a false prophet, because God's prophets never give false prophecies. Smith was either a prophet of God, or one of the biggest frauds this world has ever seen.

**Consider these 11 false prophecies of Joseph Smith, showing him to be a false prophet:**

**False Prophecy 1: New York, Albany and Boston have not been destroyed for rejecting the Mormon message.**

Doctrines and Covenants 84, p.141,142.

114: "Nevertheless, let the bishop go unto the city of New York, also to the city of Albany, and also to the city of Boston, and warn the people of those cities with the sound of the gospel, with a loud voice, of the desolation and utter abolishment which await them if they do reject these things."

115. "For if they do reject these things the hour of their judgment is near, and their house shall be left unto them desolate."

This false prophecy was given in 1832 that these cities desolation and utter abolishment was near. 187 years have passed and these cities remain unharmed. This makes Joseph Smith a false prophet. Reject him.

**False Prophecy 2: The earth did not reel to and fro like a drunken man "not many days" after Dec. 27, 1832.**

Doctrines and Covenants 88, p.150:

87: "For not many days hence and the earth shall tremble and reel to and fro as a drunken man: and the sun shall hide his face, and shall refuse to give light; and the moon shall be bathed in blood; and the stars shall become exceeding angry; and shall cast themselves down as a fig that falleth from off a fig tree."

From 1832 to 2019 are 68,300 days. Many days have elapsed since 1832 and these events prophesied by Smith have not yet happened. The phrase "not many days hence" makes Smith a false prophet.

**False Prophecy 3: Bloodshed in South Carolina did not lead to Christ's Second Coming (v.12). Christ did not come in 1890, when Smith would have been age 85. (v.15,17)**

Doctrines and Covenants 130, p.238.

12. "I prophesy, in the name of the Lord God, that the commencement of the difficulties which will cause much bloodshed previous to the coming of the Son of Man, will be in South Carolina." 15. "Joseph, my son, if thou livest until thou art 85 years old, thou shalt see the face of the Son of Man..."

**False prophecy 4: The wicked of this generation were not swept away violently. Nor did the lost tribes of Israel return from the north country down to America.**

History of the Church, 1833, p.315.

“And now I am prepared to say by the authority of Jesus Christ that not many years shall pass away before the United States shall present such a scene of bloodshed as has not a parallel in the history of our nation; pestilence, hail, famine, and earthquake will sweep the wicked of this generation from off the face of the land, to open and prepare the way for the return of the lost tribes of Israel from the north country. The people of the Lord, those who have complied with the... ...and flee to Zion, before the overflowing scourge overtake you, for there are those now living upon the earth whose eyes shall not be closed in death until they see all these things, which I have spoken, fulfilled. Remember these things: call upon the Lord while He is near, and seek Him while He may be found, is the exhortation of your unworthy servant.

[Signed] JOSEPH SMITH, JUN.”

Q: Did those living in 1833 see with their own eyes the destruction of the wicked, and the return of the lost tribes of Israel from the North Country? No.

**False Prophecy 5: Smith prophesied in 1835 that Christ's return would be in 56 years. Did Christ return in 1891?**

“On the 14th of Feb. 1835, Joseph Smith said that God had revealed to him that the coming of Christ would be within 56 years, which being added to 1835 shows that before 1891 and the 14th of Feb., the Saviour of the world would make his appearance again upon the earth and the winding up scene take place. In connection with this event, was related by my brother Dimick Huntington, the fact that when Joseph and Hyrum Smith submitted in their feelings to consent to give themselves up to the state mob at Nauvoo, Illinois, after they had passed the Mississippi River. Joseph said “If they shed my blood it shall shorten this work 10 years”. That taken from 1891 would reduce the time to 1881, which if the true time within which the Saviour should come must be crowded into 6 years.”

This excerpt is taken from the Journal of O.B. Huntington (Vol. 2, p.129).

What does this false prophecy make Joseph Smith? A false prophet!

Note: When SDA William Miller prophesied that on 3rd April, 1843, Christ would come in glory, and the end of the world would come, what did Joseph Smith accuse Miller of being, when it did not happen?

Joseph Smith says of Miller in History of the Church, 3 April 1843:

“Monday, April 3- Miller’s day of judgment has arrived, but it is too pleasant for false prophets.”

Smith said “I prophesy in the name of the Lord God, and let it be written- the Son of Man will not come in the clouds of heaven till I am 85 years old.”

History of the Church, April 1843, p.336.

**False Prophecy 6: Smith prophesied that the lost ten tribes have lived for 2500 years in the Arctic regions.** Journal of Discourses, p.68:

“I do not know how much before the ten tribes will come from the north; but after Zion is built in Jackson County, and after the Temple is built upon that spot of ground where the corner stone was laid in 1831; after the glory of God in the form of a cloud by day shall rest upon that Temple, and by night the shining of a flaming fire will fill the whole heavens round about; after every dwelling place upon Mount Zion shall be clothed

upon as with a pillar of fire by night, and a cloud by day, about that period of time, the ten tribes will be heard of, away in the north, a great company, as Jeremiah says, coming down from the northern regions, coming to sing in the height of the latter day Zion. Their souls will be as a watered garden, and they will not sorrow any more at all, as they have been doing during the twenty-five hundred long years they have dwelt in the Arctic regions."

Is there any scientific or archaeological evidence to indicate that the lost ten tribes of Israel have been living in the Arctic for the last 2500 years? No. What does this make Joseph Smith?

### **False Prophecy 7: England and all nations did not become involved against the United States during the Civil War.**

Smith declared in Doctrines and Covenants, section 87, Mormon p.144, v.1-3:

"At the rebellion of South Carolina... the Southern states will call on other nations, even the nation of Great Britain,... and then war shall be poured out upon all nations... slaves shall rise up against their masters... and that the remnants (Indians)... shall vex the Gentiles with a sore vexation."

Notice **five false prophecies** given here by Joseph Smith:

- i) England did not become involved in the Civil War or any war against the United States.
- ii) "All nations" were not involved in the Civil War or any war against the United States.
- iii) The slaves did not rise up against their masters.
- iv) The remnants (Indians) were themselves vexed by the Gentiles, being defeated in war and confined to reservations.
- v) Joseph Smith did not possess the house he built at Nauvoo "for ever and ever." Doctrines and Covenants Section 124,v22,23,59. It was destroyed after Smith's death & Mormons moved to Utah.

### **False Prophecy 8: The Moon is not inhabited by 6 foot high men dressing like Quakers.**

The Young Woman's Journal, p.263, 4. O.B.Huntington quotes Smith:

"... to prove Joseph Smith to be a prophet. As far back as 1837, I know that he said the moon was inhabited by men and women the same as this earth... and that they live generally to near the age of 1000 years.

He described the men as averaging near six feet in height, and dressing quite uniformly in something near the Quaker style ... I was told that I should preach the gospel to the inhabitants of the moon."

### **Q: Mormon, do you really believe that people like Quakers live on the moon?**

"Every star that we see is a world and is inhabited as this world is peopled. The Sun, Moon and stars are inhabited." Hyrum Smith, April 27, 1843.

From "George Leub's Nauvoo Journal", BYU Studies, Vol. 18, No. 2, Winter 1978.

### **Brigham Young claimed that the Sun was inhabited:**

"So it is with regard to the inhabitants of the Sun. Do you think it is inhabited? I rather think it is. Do you think there is any life there? No question of it, it was not made in vain." Journal of Discourses, Vol. XIII, p.271.

### **False Prophecy 9: Joseph Smith said that a Mormon temple and city would be built in Independence (Zion), Missouri, in his own generation in 1832.**

This lot is marked by a plaque. If there is no temple on this temple lot, and the 1832 generation has passed away, what does this make Joseph Smith to be? A false prophet.

v3: "... which city shall be built, beginning at the temple lot, which is appointed by the finger of the Lord, in the western boundaries of the State of Missouri, and dedicated by the Lord of Joseph Smith, Jr. v.4: "which temple shall be reared in this generation." Doctrines and Covenants , Section 84, p.135, v.3,4.

**Q: Is there a Mormon city and temple in Independence, Missouri? No.**

Has the 1832 generation passed away? Yes.

Does this make Joseph Smith a false prophet? Yes.

**False Prophecy 10: Smith prophesied in 1838 that David Patten would go on a missionary tour with himself and 12 others in 1839.**

The only problem with this prophecy is that Patten was shot and killed in October 1838, thus falsifying Smith's prophecy. What does this make Smith? A false prophet.

Doctrines and Covenants, Section 114, p.208.

## SECTION 114

"Revelation given to Joseph Smith the Prophet, at Far West, Missouri, April 17, 1838. Directions to David W. Patten- Positions occupied by the unfaithful to be given to others. 1. Verily thus saith the Lord: It is wisdom in my servant David W. Patten, that he settle up all his business as soon as he possibly can, and make a disposition of his merchandise, that he may perform a mission unto me next spring, in company with others, even twelve including myself, to testify of my name and bear glad tidings unto all the world."

Patten's death is recorded as follows:

"In the pursuit, one of the mob fled from behind a tree, wheeled, and shot Captain Patten, who instantly fell, mortally wounded, having received a large ball in his bowels."

History of the Church, Oct. 1838, p.171.

Mormons claim that Patten fulfilled Smith's prophecy by being a missionary to the spirit world. This is wrong because **Patten was to go with Smith** and other human companions. **Patten's companions did not go with him to the spirit world that Spring in 1839.**

**False Prophecy 11: II Nephi 10:7 says that Jews will first believe in Christ, then get restored to the land of Israel.**

"When the day cometh that they shall believe in me, that I am Christ, THEN have I covenanted with their fathers that they shall be restored in the flesh, upon the earth, unto the lands of their inheritance."

This is a false prophecy, because today the Jews are back in their land, but they still do not believe in Jesus Christ.

### Conclusion:

Just one false prophecy is enough to identify Joseph Smith as a false prophet. We have seen 11 out of over 60 false prophecies that he made proving that he was not a prophet of God.

Since Smith is a fraud, fake and liar, then the whole Mormon religion is proven to be false.

**Q: What should the Mormon do?**

Answer: Renounce all Mormon doctrines, baptisms, priesthoods, and relationships. Reject the Book of Mormon, Pearl of Great Price, and Doctrines and Covenants as false. Turn to the Bible alone as the final authority. Once all reliance on Joseph Smith is abandoned, receive and rely totally on Jesus Christ alone for salvation. Deuteronomy 13:1-5 states that false prophets must be put to death. God allows Mormon false doctrines to test people to prove if they love God with all their heart and soul.

See also Deuteronomy 18:20-22, "That prophet shall die".

#### **IV. FALSE MORMON DEFINITIONS OF BIBLE TERMS.**

When Mormons use a Christian term, they reject the Biblical definition of that term, and they substitute a false, non-Christian definition in its place.

Consider these false Mormon redefinitions:

1. **Christianity** = a false, damnable, apostate religion.
2. **God** = one of many self-progressing bodily deities. He was formerly a man, a finite creature.

##### **Bible refutation:**

- i) "Before me there was no God formed, neither shall there be after me." Isaiah 43:10.  
"I am the first, and I am the last, and beside me there is no God. Is there a God beside me?  
Yea, there is no God; I know not any." Isaiah 44:6,8.  
"I am the Lord, and there is none else, there is no God beside me." v.5.  
"There is none beside me. I am the Lord, and there is none else." v.6.  
"There is no God else beside me;" v.21. Isaiah 45:5,6,21.
- ii) Mormons teach that each god is evolving:  
"For I am the Lord, I change not." Malachi 3:6.

3. **Jesus Christ** = a self-progressing deity (Jehovah of Old Testament) and the first spirit child of Elohim and his wife, Mary.

##### **Mormon Jesus.**

- i) A created being,  
**the brother of Lucifer.**
- ii) Earned his own salvation  
by good works.
- iii) One of many gods.  
(Exodus 20:3- no other gods).
- iv) Conceived by physical sex with  
Mary (Matthew 1:23 a virgin  
shall be with child).
- v) A **married** polygamist.

##### **Biblical Jesus Christ.**

- i) Uncreated God  
(John 1:1,3; Micah 5:2, I Timothy 3:16).
- ii) Requires no salvation.  
(II Corinthians 5:21- "who knew no sin").
- iii) Second person of the one Godhead.
- iv) Conceived by the Holy Spirit  
overshadowing Mary.

4. **Holy Ghost** = A man with a spiritual body of matter.

"He shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you for ever.. and shall be in you."  
John 14:16,17.

5. **Trinity** = Tritheistic. Father, Son and Holy Spirit are 3 separate deities.

"Baptising them in the NAME (not names) of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit."  
Matthew 28:19.

6. **The Gospel** = Mormon theology.

"I declare unto you the gospel... Christ died for our sins... he was buried, and he rose again the third day." I Corinthians 15:1-4.

7. **Born again** = Water baptism into Mormonism.

"But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God." John 1:12.  
See "Answers" Chapter 96, p.455 entitled "Baptismal Regeneration."

We are born again by receiving Jesus Christ as our Saviour, without any good works.

8. **Atonement** = God's provision for an individual to earn their true salvation "by obedience to the laws and ordinances of the Gospel." (Articles of Faith, 3).

"Not of works, lest any man should boast." Ephesians 2:9.

See "Answers" Chapter 91 entitled "Good Works don't save us."

9. **True salvation, eternal life, redemption** = Exaltation to Godhead in the highest part of the celestial kingdom is based on individual good works and personal merit. Exaltation involves ruling and sexual procreation of spirit children.

Reply: Satan's third lie to Eve was "ye shall be as gods." Genesis 3:5.

Becoming a god appealed to Eve's pride and also to Mormons' pride.

We will never become a god, but will always be human, yes glorified humans in heaven.

10. **The Fall** = A spiritual step upward permitting physical bodies of children to be procreated.  
This is false, because it was already God's plan for man to reproduce "after their own kind."
11. **Heaven** = 3 kingdoms of glory. This is false because the 3 heavens are the atmosphere, space and God's throne. II Corinthians 12:2.
12. **Hell** = generally like purgatory; possibly eternal for a very few such as apostate Mormons.  
False, because Christ "purged our sins." Hebrews 1:3.
13. **The Scriptures** = The Book of Mormon, Doctrines and Covenants, the Pearl of Great Price; the King James Bible as far as it is translated correctly. (Articles of Faith, 8).  
False, because of mistakes in Book of Mormon, Doctrines and Covenants, the Pearl of Great Price.  
**Question:** How did Mormons reach these false definitions?  
**Answer:** Because they did not rely on the Bible to define its terms. They relied on revelations from the spirit world of demons.

## V. **QUESTIONS FOR MORMONS:**

- Q1:** How can Joseph Smith be a true prophet of God when **he fails the test of a true prophet** in Deuteronomy 13:1-5, 18:20-22, by making 11 clear false prophecies?
- Q2:** What does your **conscience** and **common sense** tell you when you understand the **23 mistakes** in the Book of Mormon discussed earlier?
- Q3:** Does it worry you that a supposed perfect Book of Mormon should require **many major changes** and 3000 minor changes from the original 1830 edition?
- Q4:** How do you explain the **27,000 words in phrases plagiarised from the King James Bible** into the Book of Mormon when the KJV was not written in 570 BC?
- Q5:** Why has **no archaeological evidence** ever been found to support the Book of Mormon's alleged cities, persons, silk, coins, metals, wars, weapons, kings or palaces in North or South America?  
"The Smithsonian Institute has never used the Book of Mormon in any way as a scientific guide."  
This is a quote from a standard Smithsonian letter sent out to Mormon enquirers.
- The **Bureau of American Ethnology** writes: "There is no evidence whatever of any migration from Israel to America, and likewise no evidence that pre-Columbian Indians had any knowledge of Christianity and the Bible."
- Prominent Mormon Archaeologist**, Thomas Stewart Ferguson, quit the Mormon church, and repudiated Joseph Smith because of the weight of archaeological evidence against Mormonism.
- Q6:** How do you explain **plagiarisms** in the Book of Mormon **taken from Ethan Smith's "View of the Hebrews (1823)**, a book that was available to Joseph Smith?
- Q7:** Why does the Book of Mormon **conflict with hundreds of truths in the Bible?**
- Q8:** How can **early Mormon prophets** deny and **contradict** modern Mormon prophets, and vice versa?
- Q9:** Does it worry you that the Book of Mormon was **translated by occult means?**  
Emma Smith, one of Joseph's many wives, confesses:  
"I frequently wrote day after day... he sitting with his **face buried in his hat**, with a stone in it, and dictating hour after hour."
- Q10:** Why, after 25 years, has the Mormon church never responded or answered to Jerald and Sandra Tanner's research? Write to them at: Utah Lighthouse ministry, Box 1884, Salt Lake City, Utah, 84110.
- Q11** Why is it that even the **highest Mormons** do not know for certain where they are going when they die?
- Q12: If you died tonight, do you know 100% for sure if you would go to live with Jesus Christ forever in heaven?**  
Would you like to be sure? Then read "Answers" Chapter 17 on "How to lead a person to Christ", and receive Jesus Christ as your only Saviour, renouncing all your Mormon beliefs today.
- GET OUT OF THE MORMON CHURCH TODAY!**

## I. MORMON BLASPHEMIES and HERESIES ABOUT GOD

We should reject the Mormon religion for their blasphemous heresies such as:

1. “God the Father is simply a man who achieved godhead.” (*History of the Church*, Vol 6, p 305).  
Bible: God the Father has always been God ‘from everlasting to everlasting, thou art God’ Ps 90:2
2. “God the Father has Eternal wives through whom spirit children have been & continue to be born.” (*Mormon Doctrine*, 1966, p 516; *The Seer*, Orson Pratt, p 37, 158).  
Bible: God has no wife and stands alone as God: ‘I am God, and there is none like me.’ Isaiah 46:9
3. “Christ, before his earthly ministry, was the first spirit child born to the Heavenly Father and Mother.” (*Mormon Doctrine*, p 278, 589).  
Bible: Christ is the Eternal God, not the product of sexual conception:  
“Whose goings forth have been from of old, from everlasting.” (Micah 5:2).
4. “God the Father in His glorified physical body had sexual intercourse with the virgin Mary that resulted in the conception of the physical Christ.” (*Mormon Doctrine*, p 547; *Journal of Discourses*, Vol 1, p 51; Vol 4, p 218).  
Bible: The physical Jesus Christ was conceived supernaturally, non-sexually, by the Holy Spirit in the body of the virgin Mary. (Luke 1:26-38).
5. “Satan (Lucifer) was originally the spirit brother of Christ.” (*The Gospel through the Ages*, p 15).  
Bible: Satan was originally a created angel who led a rebellion against God in heaven.  
Christ is the Creator: ‘All things were made by him.’ (John 1:3). Satan is a created angel: “in the day that thou was created,..thou art the anointed cherub.” Ezekiel 28:11-19 especially v13,14
6. “Jesus became a god, equal to the Father, after his death, ascension and exaltation.” (*The Gospel through the Ages*, 1958, p.21).  
Bible: Jesus Christ presented Himself to men as the Eternal God during His earthly ministry:  
“he said that God was His Father, making Himself equal with God.” (John 5:18);  
“I and my Father are one.” (John 10:30).
7. “God Himself is ever progressing upward in knowledge, wisdom and power.” (*Journal of Discourses*, Vol 1, p 93; Vol 6, p. 20).  
Bible: God already possesses eternal wisdom, knowledge and power, and so never changes:  
“Holy, Holy, Holy, Lord God Almighty” (Rev. 4:8). “his understanding is infinite.” Psalm 147:5.
8. “God the Father has a flesh and bones body.” (*Doctrine and Covenants*, 13.22).  
Bible: God the Father is a Spirit (John 4:24). ‘God is not a man, that he should lie.’(Numbers 23:19)
9. “The Father, Son, Holy Spirit are 3 distinct gods.” (*Teachings of the Prophet Joseph Smith*, p 37, 372)  
Bible: There is only one God, but 3 distinct persons in the Godhead:  
“Baptising them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.” (Matthew 28:19)  
“The Lord our God is one Lord.” (Deut. 6:4).

## II. MORMON HERESIES ABOUT SALVATION

1. “Mormon ‘salvation’ comes through a combination of faith, baptism in the church and works.” (*Mormon Doctrine*, p.669-70; *Ensign*, Nov. 1982, p.61).  
Bible: Bible salvation comes by grace through personal faith in Jesus Christ as Saviour,  
“not of yourselves it is the gift of God, not of works lest any man should boast.” Ephesians 2:8,9.
2. “The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints (Mormons) restored the true gospel to the earth through Joseph Smith, and the true gospel is found only in it today.” (*Mormon Doctrine*, p 334; *Teachings of the Prophet Joseph Smith*, p 119).  
Bible: **a**) Christ promised that true churches would never disappear from the earth:  
“I will build my church; and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.” (Matthew 16:18);  
“Lo I am with you alway, even unto the end of the world.” (Matthew 28:20).  
**b**) Paul warned us to reject any gospel other than faith in Christ alone for salvation. Paul warns that “works” based gospels are false and are cursed by God: “There be some that trouble you, and would pervert the gospel of Christ (v.7). But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed.” (Galatians 1:7,8).

3. "The Gospel includes "all the laws, principles, rites, ordinances, acts, powers, authorities and keys necessary to exalt men in the highest heaven hereafter."'" (*Mormon Doctrine*, p 331).  
Bible: "I declare unto you the gospel. . . that Christ died for our sins according to the Scriptures; and that he was buried, and that he rose again the third day." (I Corinthians 15:1-4); "Knowing that a man in not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ." (Galatians 2:16). The Gospel does not include laws (Romans 3:19-24), ordinances (Colossians 2:14,17) or works (Titus 3:5-7 "Not by works which we have done . . .").
4. "Eternal life can only be achieved through obedience to the Mormon church, and having one's marriage sealed in a temple ceremony by the Mormon priesthood." (*Mormon Doctrine*, p 411; *Journal of Discourses*, Vol 11, p 221).  
Bible: "He that has the Son has life, and he that has not the Son of God has not life." I John 5:12

### **III. MORMON HERESIES ABOUT MANKIND**

1. "Man has the potential of becoming God, just as Christ did; man is king of kings and Lord of Lords in embryo." (*Times and Seasons*, August 1, 1844; *Journal of Discourses*, Vol 10, p 223; *History of the Church*, Vol 6, p 306; *Doctrine and Covenants*, 132.20).  
Bible: a) God alone is and will be God:  
 "before me there was no God formed, neither shall there be after me." (Isaiah 43:10).  
 "I am God, and there is none else; I am God, and there is none like me." (Isaiah 46:9)  
 b) Satan's first lie to mankind was that "ye shall be as gods." (Genesis 3:5).  
 It worked against Eve, so Satan uses it through Mormonism today.
2. "Adam's fall in the Garden of Eden was a fall "upward" that was not sinful, but rather necessary for the propagation of the human race." (*Journal of Discourses*, Vol 13, p 145; Vol 10, p 312; *Pearl of Great Price*, Moses 5:10-12; *Doctrines of Salvation*, Vol 1, p 114-115).  
Bible: a) Adam's sin in Eden caused spiritual and physical death for all persons (Genesis 3:16-19)  
 "by one man sin entered into the world & death by sin;& so death passed upon all men" Rom 5:12  
 b) Propagation of the human race was certain without needing the fall:  
 "God said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply..." (Genesis 1:28).
3. "Each person's essence, his intelligence, has always existed and so was never created. Man is as eternal as God Himself." (*Journal of Discourses*, X, p 5; VI, p 6; *Doctrine and Covenants*, 93.29; *The Plan of Salvation* (booklet) p 3).  
Bible: All men are a creation of God and had no existence before conception. God asked Job, "Where wast thou when I laid the foundations of the earth?" (Job 38:4).  
 "All my members were written, . . . when as yet there was none of them." (Psalm 139:16).
4. "Each person's spiritual body that clothed his intelligence in the pre-existent state was formed by the sexual union of the Father and one of His spirit wives." (*The Seer*, Orson Pratt, p 37).  
Bible: Man did not pre-exist, and the Father had no wives.

- Questions:**
- 1) Did God the Father have sex with Mary to produce Jesus Christ? (I.4) Bible support?
  - 2) Do you think God the Father was once a man who later achieved godhead? (I.1)
  - 3) Do you think God the Father has Eternal wives which procreate spirit children? (I.2) Bible proof?
  - 4) Do you think God is ever progressing upward in knowledge, wisdom and power? (I.7).Bible proof?
  - 5) Do you think Jesus became a god after his ascension? (I.6)? Bible proof?
  - 6) Do you think Satan was originally the spirit brother of Christ? (I.5). Bible Proof?
  - 7) Do you think salvation comes by faith, Mormon baptism & works (II.1) or by faith in Christ alone?
  - 8) What is the true gospel according to I Cor. 15:1-4 (II.3)? Did Mormons restore it or add to it?
  - 9) What does God say about those preaching another gospel in Galatians 1:6-9? Is God's curse on LDS?
  - 10) How do we get eternal life according to Mormonism? (II.4). How do we get it according to I John 5:12?
  - 11) Does man have the potential to become God? (III.1). What was Satan's first lie to Eve/mankind? (Genesis 3:5).
- Conclusion:** Reject and leave the Mormon church today. These blasphemies are from the mind of Satan.

## 115. 120 Bible passages referring to Jehovah that, in the New Testament are quoted and applied to Christ.

This proves that Jesus Christ is Jehovah God the Son of the New Testament.

Ask: In view of many Old Testament verses referring to Jehovah, which are applied to Jesus Christ in the New Testament, what does this tell you about who Jesus Christ is?

	Scripture Testimony to "JHVH"	Scripture Testimony to Christ
1. Honour each equally	John 5:23 "That all men should honour the Son, <u>even as</u> they honour the Father. He that honoureth not the Son honoureth not the Father which hath sent him."	
2. I AM	Exodus 3:13-15 " <b>What is his name?</b> ...Thus shalt thou say unto the children of Israel, <b>I AM</b> hath sent me unto you ..... <b>this is my name forever.</b> "	John 8:24,58 Jesus said, "if ye believe not that <b>I AM he</b> , ye shall die in your sins" (v.24). Jesus said, "Before Abraham was, <b>I AM.</b> " (v.58).
3. Mighty God	Habakkuk 1:12-13 "O LORD (Jehovah),.... <b>O Mighty God...</b> " Isaiah 10:20,21 & Jeremiah 32:18 "...the <b>Mighty God, Jehovah....</b> " Psalm 50:1 "...The mighty God,"	Isaiah 9:6 "Unto us a <b>child</b> is born, unto us a <b>Son</b> is given,...His name shall be called <b>The Mighty God.</b> "
4. Throne	Psalm 45:6,7 " <b>Thy throne O God</b> is for ever and ever: the sceptre of thy kingdom is a right sceptre"	Hebrews 1:8 "But unto the <b>Son</b> he saith, <b>Thy throne, O God,</b> is for ever and ever: a sceptre of righteousness is the sceptre of thy kingdom."
5. Accepted Worship	Exodus 34:14 "Thou shalt <b>worship no other god.</b> " I Chronicles 16:29 " <b>Worship the LORD (Jehovah)</b> in the beauty of holiness."	Hebrews 1:6 "When he bringeth the firstbegotten into the world, he saith: <u>let all the angels of God worship him</u> (Jesus)." Matthew 28:9 "They came and held him by the feet, & <b>worshipped</b> him."
6. Creator of Heaven and Earth	Psalm 102:24-27 "I said, O my God,.....of old hast thou laid the foundation of the earth: and the <b>heavens are the works of thy hands.</b> "	Hebrews 1:10-12 "And (to the Son), thou Lord (JHVH) in the beginning hast laid the foundation of the earth; and the <b>heavens are the works of thy hands.</b> "
7. Creator of mankind	Malachi 2:10 "Hath not <b>one God created us?</b> " Proverbs 16:4 "Jehovah hath made <b>all things FOR</b> himself." Isa 44:24 "I am Jehovah that maketh <b>all things;</b> that stretcheth forth the heavens <b>alone</b> , that spreads abroad the earth <b>by myself</b> "	Colossians 1:16 "By him (Christ) were <b>all things created</b> that are in heaven, and that are in earth . . . <b>all things</b> were <b>created by him, and for him.</b> "  John 1:3 " <b>All things</b> were made <b>by him.</b> "
8. Shepherd	Psalm 80:1 "Give ear, O <b>Shepherd</b> of Israel . . . thou that dwellest between the cherubims." Genesis 49:24 "The mighty God of Jacob; (from thence is the <b>shepherd</b> , the stone of Israel)."	John 10:11 "I (Jesus) am the good <b>shepherd.</b> " Hebrews 13:20 "Jesus, that great <b>shepherd</b> of the sheep." I Peter 5:4 "When the chief <b>shepherd</b> shall appear."

	Scripture Testimony to 'JHVB'	Scripture Testimony to Christ
9. Everlasting	<p>Psalm 90:2 "From <b>everlasting</b> to <b>everlasting</b>, thou art God."</p> <p>Habakkuk 1:12 "Art thou not from <b>everlasting</b><sup>6924</sup>, O LORD (JHVB) my God, mine Holy One."</p>	<p>Micah 5:2 "Whose (Jesus Christ) goings forth have been from of old<sup>6924</sup>, from <b>everlasting</b><sup>5769</sup>."</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The same Hebrew words for eternal (olam<sup>5769</sup> and qedmah<sup>6924</sup>) are applied equally to Jesus Christ and to God the Father.</p>
10. First and last	<p>Both Father and Son are <b>called Jehovah, the first and the last.</b></p> <p>Isaiah 44:6 "Thus saith the <b>LORD (Jehovah)</b> the King of Israel, and <b>his redeemer the LORD (Jehovah)</b> of hosts; I am the <b>first</b>, and I am the <b>last</b>; and beside me there is no God.'</p>	<p>Revelation 1:17,18 "I am the <b>first</b> and the <b>last</b>: I am he that liveth and was dead."</p>
11. Alpha and Omega	<p>Revelation 1:8 and 21:5-7 "I am <b>Alpha and Omega</b>, the beginning and the ending, saith the Lord,.....the Almighty."</p> <p>Isaiah 41:4 "I the <b>LORD (Jehovah)</b> the first and with the last." See Isaiah 48:12.</p>	<p>Revelation 22:13-16 "I am <b>Alpha and Omega</b>, the beginning and the end, the first and the last (v.13).... I Jesus (v.16)." <i>Watchtower, 1 October 1978, p.15</i> says this is Jesus.</p>
12. Reward is with Him	<p>Isaiah 40:10 "The Lord God will come with strong hand, ....behold, <b>his reward is with him</b>....."</p> <p>Isaiah 62:11 "The LORD hath proclaimed.....behold <b>his reward is with him.</b>"</p>	<p>Revelation 22:12 "Behold I come quickly, and <b>my reward is with me</b>, to give every man according as his work shall be."</p>
13.Uncchang able	Malachi 3:6 "I am the LORD (Jehovah), I <b>change not.</b> "	Hebrews 13:8 'Jesus Christ the <b>same</b> , yesterday and today and forever."
14.Unsearch -able riches	Romans 11:33 "O the depth of the <b>riches</b> both of the wisdom and knowledge of <b>God!</b> His ways are <b>past finding out</b> <sup>421</sup> ."	Ephesians 3:8 "The <b>unsearchable<sup>421</sup> riches</b> of Christ."
15. Holy One	Isaiah 43:15 "I am the LORD ( <b>Jehovah</b> ), your <b>Holy One</b> , ....your King."	Acts 3:14 "But ye denied the <b>Holy One</b> and the Just, and desired a murderer to be granted unto you."
16. Omnipresent and fill all things	<p>Psalm 139:7 "Where shall I flee from thy presence?"</p> <p>Jeremiah 23:24 "Do not I <b>fill heaven and earth?</b> saith the Lord."</p>	<p>Ephesians 4:10 "That he (Jesus Christ) might <b>fill all things.</b>"</p> <p>Matthew 18:20 "Where two or three are gathered together in my name, there am I in the midst of them."</p> <p>Matt 28:20 'Lo, I am with you alway.'</p> <p>At the same time Jesus is in heaven</p> <p>John 3:13 "The Son of man, which <b>is in heaven.</b>"</p>
17. Omniscient	<p>Psalm 147:5 "His understanding is <b>infinite.</b>"</p> <p>Proverbs 15:3 "The eyes of the LORD are <b>in every place</b>, beholding the evil and the good."</p>	<p>John 21:17 "thou <b>knowest all things.</b>"</p> <p>John 16:30 "Now are we sure that thou <b>knowest all things.</b>"</p> <p>Colossians 2:3 "In him are hid <b>all</b> the treasures of wisdom and knowledge."</p>

	Scripture Testimony to "JHVB"	Scripture Testimony to Christ
18. Omnipotent	Genesis 17:1 "I am the <b>Almighty</b> God." Matthew 19:26 "With God <b>all things</b> are possible." Jeremiah 32:17 "There is nothing too hard for thee."	Matthew 28:18 " <b>All power</b> is given unto me in heaven and in earth." Hebrews 1:3 "Upholding <b>all things</b> by the word of his power." Revelation 1:8 "I am Alpha and Omega . . . <b>the Almighty</b> ."
19. Eternal	Deuteronomy 33:27 "The <b>eternal God</b> is thy refuge."	Hebrews 7:3 "Having <b>neither beginning of days, nor end of life</b> ; but made like unto the Son of God. The Holy Spirit is eternal: Hebrews 9:14 "the <b>eternal Spirit</b> ."
20. Everlasting Kingdom	Psalm 145:13 "Thy kingdom is an <b>everlasting kingdom</b> ." Note: Jehovah's kingdom equals Christ's everlasting kingdom.	Daniel 7:14 "Son of man . . . his dominion is an <b>everlasting dominion</b> , and his <b>kingdom that which shall not be destroyed</b> ." II Peter 1:11 "The <b>everlasting kingdom</b> of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ".
21. Lord of all	Psalm 103:19 "Jehovah . . . his kingdom reigneth over <b>all</b> ."	Acts 10:36 "Jesus Christ (he is Lord of <b>all</b> )" Romans 9:5; 10:12.
22. Saviour	Isaiah 43:11 "I even I am Jehovah; and <b>beside me there is no saviour</b> ." - beside me there is no Saviour.	Philippians 3:20 "We look for the <b>Saviour</b> , the Lord Jesus Christ." II Peter 3:18 "Our Lord and <b>Saviour Jesus Christ</b> ." Luke 2:11 "For unto you is born this day in the city of David a <b>Saviour</b> which is Christ <b>the Lord</b> ." Matt 1:21 "Call his name Jesus, for he shall <b>save</b> his people from their <b>sins</b> ." I Timothy 1:15 "Christ Jesus came into the world to <b>save sinners</b> ." Hebrews 5:9 "He became the <b>author of eternal salvation</b> unto all them that obey him." Acts 4:12 ' <b>Neither is there salvation in any other</b> : for there is <b>none other name</b> under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.'
23. Truth	Deuteronomy 32:4 "A God of <b>truth</b> and without iniquity."	John 14:6 "I am the way, the <b>truth</b> and the life."
24. Sinless	Deuteronomy 32:4 "A God of truth and <b>without iniquity</b> ."	Hebrews 4:15 "Was in all points tempted like as we are, yet <b>without sin</b> ."
25. Beginning	Genesis 1:1 "In the <b>beginning</b> God created the heaven and the earth."	John 1:1 "In the <b>beginning</b> was the Word (Jesus Christ)."
26. Judge	Psalm 82:8 "Arise, O <b>God, judge</b> the earth: for thou shalt <b>inherit all nations</b> ."	John 5:22 "For the <b>Father judgeth no man</b> , but hath committed <b>all judgment</b> unto the <b>Son</b> ."
27. Hope	Psalm 39:7 "The Lord.....my <b>hope</b> is in thee."	I Timothy 1:1 "Jesus Christ which is our <b>hope</b> ." 813

	Scripture Testimony to "JHVN"	Scripture Testimony to Christ
28. Wings	Psalm 91:4 "He (the Almighty) shall cover thee with his <b>feathers</b> , and under his <b>wings</b> shalt thou trust."	Matthew 23:37 "O Jerusalem, Jerusalem . . . how often would I have gathered thy children together, even as a <b>hen</b> gathereth her chickens under her <b>wings</b> , and ye would not."
29. Redeemer	Psalm 130:7,8 "Let <b>Israel</b> hope in <b>Jehovah</b> .....He shall <b>redeem</b> <b>Israel</b> from all his iniquities."	Titus 2:14 "Who (Jesus Christ) gave himself for <b>us</b> , that he might <b>redeem</b> <b>us</b> from all iniquity."
30. Jesus' glory = Jehovah's glory	Isaiah 6:3 "Holy, Holy, Holy is the LORD (JHVN) of hosts; the whole earth is full of <b>his</b> (JHVN) <b>glory</b> ."	John 12:41 John wrote that Isaiah "saw <b>his (Jesus') glory</b> ."
31. Rock	Deuteronomy 32:3,4,18 "I will publish the name of <b>Jehovah</b> , ascribe ye greatness unto our God. <b>He is the Rock</b> ....." Psalm 18:31 "Who is a <b>Rock</b> save our God."	I Corinthians 10:4 "They drank of that spiritual Rock that followed them; and <b>that Rock was Christ</b> ."
32. Look to	Isaiah 45:22 " <b>Look unto me</b> and be ye saved, all the ends of the earth."	John 1:29 " <b>Behold the lamb</b> of God which taketh away the sin of the world." John 6:40 "Every one which <b>seeth</b> the Son...may have everlasting life."
33. Every knee shall bow and every tongue confess	Isaiah 45:23 "That unto me <b>every knee shall bow</b> , and <b>every tongue shall swear</b> ."	Philippians 2:10,11 "That at the name of Jesus <b>every knee should bow</b> .... and <b>every tongue shall confess</b> that Jesus Christ is Lord." Romans 14:10,11 "We shall all stand before the judgment seat of Christ. For it is written, As I live, saith the Lord, <b>every knee</b> shall bow to me, and <b>every tongue</b> shall confess to God."
34. Enemies shall perish	Psalm 92:9 "Thine <b>enemies</b> , O Lord..... <b>shall perish</b> ." Psalm 45:24 "All that are incensed against him shall be ashamed." Psalm 108:13 God "shall tread down our <b>enemies</b> ."	Philippians 3:18,19 "The <b>enemies</b> of the cross of Christ: whose end is <b>destruction</b> ."
35. Sends the Holy Spirit	Joel 2:28 " <b>I will pour out</b> my Spirit upon all flesh."	John 16:7 " <b>I will send</b> the Comforter unto you."
36. All men come	Psalm 65:2 "...unto thee shall <b>all flesh come</b> ." Isaiah 45:24 "Even to him shall <b>men come</b> ."	John 12:32 "I will <b>draw all men</b> unto me."
37. Forgiver of sin	Exodus 34:7 " <b>Forgiving</b> iniquity."	Mark 2:5 "Son, thy sins be forgiven thee." Coloss. 3:13 'As <b>Christ forgave</b> you'.

	Scripture Testimony to "JHvh"	Scripture Testimony to Christ
38. Blots out sins	Isaiah 43:25 "I, even I, am he that <b><u>blotteth out thy transgressions.</u></b> "	Hebrews 1:3 "When he had by himself <b>purged</b> our sins." I John 1:7 "The blood of Jesus Christ his Son <b>cleanseth us from all sin.</b> "
39. Stills storms	Psalm 107:29 "He maketh the <b>storm a calm</b> , so that the waves thereof are still."	Matthew 8:26 "He arose and rebuked the winds and sea; and there was a <b>great calm.</b> "
40. Father and Son own the Holy Spirit	Matthew 10:20 "The Spirit <b>of your Father</b> ". Isaiah 48:16 "The Lord God (Father) and <b>his Spirit</b> has sent me (Jesus Christ - Isaiah 42:1)."	Romans 8:9 " <b>The Spirit of Christ</b> ".
41. Seeks the Lost	Ezekiel 34:16 "I will <b>seek</b> that which was <b>lost.</b> "	Luke 19:10 "The Son of man is come to <b>seek</b> and to save that which was <b>lost.</b> "
42. The Lord's prayer.	Matthew 6:9-13 "Our Father which art <b>in heaven</b> ". <b>Hallowed</b> be thy name  thy <b>kingdom</b> come.  <b>Thy will be done</b> on earth  As it is <b>in heaven</b>   Give us this day our daily bread  <b>Forgive us</b> our debts, as <b>we forgive</b> our debtors.  <b>Lead us</b> not into temptation but <b>deliver us from evil.</b>   For thine is the <b>kingdom</b> , and the power and the <b>glory, forever.</b> Amen.	John 3:13 "The Son of man which is <b>in heaven.</b> " II Thessalonians 1:12 - "That the name of our Lord Jesus Christ may be <b>glorified.</b> " II Peter 1:11 - "The everlasting <b>kingdom</b> of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ." Colossians 3:24 - " <b>Ye serve</b> the Lord Christ." I Peter 3:22 - "Jesus Christ is gone <b>into heaven</b> ....angels and authorities and powers being made subject unto him." Isaiah 11:40 - "He shall <b>feed</b> his flock like a shepherd." Colossians 3:13 - " <b>Forgiving one another;</b> even as <b>Christ forgave</b> you, so also do ye." John 10:3,27 - "He <b>leadeth them</b> out. My sheep follow me." Galatians 1:4 - "Jesus Christ . . . that he might <b>deliver us from this present evil world.</b> " Revelation 1:6 - "To Him (Jesus Christ) be <b>glory</b> and <b>dominion</b> for <b>ever and ever.</b> "
43. Receive us to glory	Psalm 73:24 "Thou shalt guide me with thy counsel, and afterward <b>receive me to glory.</b> "	John 14:3 "I will <b>receive you unto myself.</b> "
44. Master	Malachi 1:6 "If I be a <b>Master</b> , where is my fear? saith the <b>LORD (Jehovah) of hosts.</b> "	Matthew 23:8,10 " <b>One is your Master, even Christ.</b> "
45. Serve	Deuteronomy 10:20 " <b>Him</b> shalt thou <b>serve.</b> "	Colossians 3:24 " <b>Ye serve the Lord Christ.</b> " 815

	Scripture Testimony to "JHVN"	Scripture Testimony to Christ
46. Leads	Psalm 23:2 'He <u>leadeth</u> me beside the still <u>waters</u> .'	Revelation 7:17 'The Lamb . . . shall <u>lead</u> them into living fountains of <u>waters</u> .'
47. Corrects us	Proverbs 3:12 'For whom Jehovah <u>loveth</u> he <u>correcteth</u> .'	Revelation 3:19 'As many as I <u>love</u> , I rebuke and <u>chasten</u> .'
48. Prepares a place	Hebrews 11:16 'He hath <u>prepared</u> for them a <u>city</u> .'	John 14:2 'I go to <u>prepare</u> a place for you.'
49. In all	I Corinthians 15:28 'That God may be <u>all in all</u> .'	Colossians 3:11 'Christ is <u>all</u> , and in <u>all</u> '
50. Known	Galatians 4:9 'Ye have <u>known</u> God.'	Philippians 3:10 'That I may <u>know</u> him (Christ), and the power of his resurrection.'
51. Cleave	Deuteronomy 10:20 'The Lord thy God . . . to him shalt thou <u>cleave</u> .'	John 15:4 Jesus said, ' <u>Abide</u> in me, and I in you.'
52. Light of this world	Psalm 27:1 'The Lord is my <u>light</u> .'	John 8:12 'Jesus said, I am the <u>light</u> of the world.'
53. Light of the New Jerusalem	Isaiah 60:19,20 'The <u>Lord</u> (JHVN) shall be thine <u>everlasting light</u> .'	Revelation 21:23 'The <u>Lamb</u> is the <u>light</u> thereof.'
54. Giver of Life	Psalm 36:9 'For with thee is the fountain of <u>life</u> .'	John 10:28 'I give unto them <u>eternal life</u> .' John 4:14.
55. My Lord and my God	Psalm 35:22,23 'Oh Jehovah . . . <u>my God and my Lord</u> .'	John 20:28 Thomas to Jesus: ' <u>My Lord and my God</u> .'
56. Lord our Righteousness	Isaiah 45:24 'In Jehovah have I <u>righteousness</u> .'	I Corinthians 1:30 'Christ is made unto us . . . <u>righteousness</u> .' Jeremiah 35:5,6 'I will raise unto David a righteous Branch.....and his name shall be called, <b>THE LORD OUR RIGHTEOUSNESS</b> ."
57. Voice like many waters	Ezekiel 43:2 'The glory of the God of Israel came.....his voice was like a <u>voice of many waters</u> .	Revelation 1:15 'His (Christ's) <u>voice</u> as the sound of <u>many waters</u> .' Note: Jehovah's voice sounds like Christ's voice.
58. My witnesses	Isaiah 43:10 'Ye are <u>my witnesses</u> .' Note: The nation of Israel were witnesses unto Jehovah. Christians are witnesses of Christ.	Acts 1:8 Jesus said: 'Ye shall be <u>witnesses unto me</u> .' The disciples became Christ's witnesses: Acts 2:32 'This Jesus hath God raised up, whereof we are <u>all witnesses</u> .' Acts 4:33 'With great power gave the apostles <u>witness</u> of the resurrection of the Lord Jesus.'
59. Peace of	Philippians 4:7 ' <u>Peace</u> of God, which passes all understanding.'	John 14:27 'My <u>peace</u> I give unto you.'
60. Gospel of	I Thessalonians 2:2 'The <u>Gospel</u> of God.'	Romans 1:16 'The <u>Gospel</u> of Christ.'
61. Saving grace of	Titus 2:11 'The <u>grace</u> of God that bringeth <u>salvation</u> .	Acts 15:11 'Through the <u>grace</u> of the Lord Jesus Christ, we shall be <u>saved</u> .'

	Scripture Testimony to "JHVH"	Scripture Testimony to Christ
62. Our peace	Judges 6:24 'Gideon built there an altar unto the Lord, and called it Jehovah <u>Shalom</u> (Jehovah our <u>Peace</u> )'	Ephesians 2:14 'He (Christ) is our <u>peace</u> .'
63. Look on whom they pierced	Zechariah 12:10 'They shall look upon <u>me</u> (Jehovah) whom they have pierced.'	John 19:37 'Another scripture saith, they shall look on <u>him</u> (Jesus) whom they pierced.'
64. Our Sanctifier	Exodus 31:13 'I am Jehovah that doth <u>sanctify</u> you.'	I Corinthians 6:11 'Ye are <u>sanctified</u> ...in the name of the Lord Jesus.'
65. Our Victory	Psalm 98:1 'His holy arm, hath gotten him the <u>victory</u> .'	I Corinthians 15:57 ' <u>Victory</u> through our Lord Jesus Christ.'
66. Our Healer	Exodus 15:26 'I am Jehovah that <u>healeth</u> thee.'	Matthew 9:35 'Jesus went about..... <u>healing</u> every sickness and every disease among the people.'
67. Churches of	I Corinthians 15:9 'I persecuted the <u>church of God</u> .'	Romans 16:16 'The <u>churches of Christ</u> salute you.'
68. Kingdom of	Matthew 6:33 'Seek ye first the <u>Kingdom</u> of God.'	Revelation 11:15 'The <u>kingdoms</u> of the world are become the <u>kingdoms</u> of our Lord, and of his Christ.'
69. Glorify the name of	Isaiah 24:15 ' <u>Glorify</u> ye . . . the <u>name</u> of the <u>Lord God</u> of Israel in the <u>isles</u> of the sea.'	II Thessalonians 1:12 'That the <u>name</u> of our <u>Lord Jesus Christ</u> may be <u>glorified</u> in you.' Matthew 12:21 'In his name shall the <u>Gentiles</u> trust.'
70. Day of	Isaiah 13:6 'The <u>day of the Lord</u> is at hand.'	Philippians 1:6 'Until the <u>day of Jesus Christ</u> .' II Thessalonians 2:2 'as that the <u>day of Christ</u> is at hand.'
71. Grace of	Colossians 1:6 'the <u>grace</u> of God in truth.' Romans 5:15 'The <u>grace</u> of God.'	Galatians 6:18 'the <u>grace of our Lord Jesus Christ</u> be with your spirit.' II Corinthians 8:9 'Ye know the <u>grace</u> of our <u>Lord Jesus Christ</u> .'
72. Glory of	Romans 5:2 'Rejoice in hope of the <u>glory of God</u> .	II Corinthians 8:23 'They are the <u>glory of Christ</u> .'
73. Love of	John 5:42 'Ye have not the <u>love of God</u> in you.'	II Corinthians 5:14 'The <u>love of Christ</u> constrains us.'
74. Word of	Psalm 119:11 ' <u>Thy Word</u> have I hid in my heart. I Thessalonians 2:13 'Ye received the <u>word of God</u> .'	Colossians 3:16 'Let the <u>word of Christ</u> dwell in you richly.'
75. Salvation of	Luke 3:6 'all flesh shall see the <u>salvation of God</u> .' Jonah 2:9 ' <u>Salvation</u> is of <u>Jehovah</u> .'	Acts 4:12 'Neither is there <u>salvation</u> in any other (than Jesus Christ - v.10) for there is <u>none other name</u> under heaven given among men whereby we must be saved.' I Thessalonians 5:9 ' <u>Salvation</u> by our Lord Jesus Christ.' II Timothy 2:10 ' <u>Salvation</u> which is in Christ Jesus.' Hebrews 2:10 'The captain of their <u>salvation</u> perfect through sufferings.'

	Scripture Testimony to "JHvh"	Scripture Testimony to Christ
76. Servant of	Titus 1:1 "Paul, a <b>servant of God.</b> "	Romans 1:1 "Paul, a <b>servant of Jesus Christ.</b> "
77. Keep commandments of	<b>God's commandments:</b> I John 5:3 "His commandments are not grievous."	<b>Jesus Christ's commandments:</b> John 14:15 "If ye love me, keep my commandments."
78. Prepare ye the way of	Isaiah 40:3 " <b>Prepare ye the way of</b> the LORD (Jehovah)"	Mark 1:1-3 "The Gospel of Jesus Christ.... <b>Prepare ye the way of</b> the Lord".
79. Searches all hearts	Psalm 139:1 "O Lord, thou hast <b>searched</b> me and known me."	Revelations 2:23 "I am he which <b>searches</b> the reins and hearts."
80. Same flock	<b>Flock of God:</b> I Peter 5:2 " <b>Feed the flock of</b> God."	<b>Christ's lambs, Christ's sheep:</b> John 21:15,16 " <b>Feed my lambs,... feed my sheep.</b> "
81. Ascends	Psalm 68:17,18 "The <b>LORD</b> is among them..... thou hast <b>ascended on high</b> , thou hast led captivity captive: thou hast received gifts for men."	Ephesians 4:7-10 " <b>Christ</b> . . . when he <b>ascended up on high</b> , he led captivity captive, and gave gifts unto men."
82. Bridegroom	Isaiah 62:5 "As the <b>bridegroom</b> rejoices over the bride, so shall thy God rejoice over thee."  Note: God and Jesus are like a bridegroom.	Mark 2:19,20 "The days will come, when the <b>bridegroom</b> shall be taken away from them."
83. Glory for ever and ever (a doxology)	Isaiah 42:8 "I am the LORD,... <b>My glory will I not give to another.</b> " Galatians 1:4,5 "God and our <b>Father:</b> to whom be <b>glory</b> for <b>ever and ever.</b> Amen." I Peter 5:10,11 "To him be <b>glory and dominion for ever and ever.</b> "	II Peter 3:18 "Our Lord and Saviour <b>Jesus Christ.</b> <b>To Him be glory</b> both now and for <b>ever.</b> " Hebrews 13:21 "Jesus Christ; to be <b>glory for ever and ever.</b> Amen." I Peter 4:11 "Jesus Christ, to whom be praise and <b>dominion for ever and ever.</b> Amen." Revelation 1:5, 6 "From Jesus Christ....to him be <b>glory and dominion for ever and ever.</b> Amen."
84. Source of fruit	Hosea 14:8 "From me is thy <b>fruit</b> found."	John 15:5 "He that abideth in me and I in him, the same bringeth forth <b>much fruit.</b> "
85. Source of Strength	Psalm 119:28 " <b>Strengthen</b> thou <b>me</b> according to thy word."	Philippians 4:13 "I can do all things through Christ which <b>strengthens me</b> "
86. Gives rest	Jeremiah 6:16 "Thus saith the LORD . . . <b>Ask</b> for the old paths, where is the good way, and <b>walk</b> therein, and <b>ye shall find rest for your souls.</b> "	Matthew 11:29 "Take my yoke upon you, and <b>learn of me</b> .....and <b>ye shall find rest for your souls.</b> "
87. Jehovah shall appear	Psalm 102:16 "When the LORD shall build up Zion, he shall <b>appear in his glory.</b> "	Titus 2:13 "The <b>glorious appearing</b> of our great God and Saviour Jesus Christ." Zechariah 12:10 "They shall <b>look upon</b> me whom they have pierced." 818

	Scripture Testimony to "JHVN"	Scripture Testimony to Christ
88. God comes	Isaiah 40:10 "The <u>Lord God</u> will come."	Revelations 22:7, 12, 20 "Behold, <u>I</u> (Jesus Christ) come quickly."
89. Trust in	Jeremiah 17:7 "Blessed is the man that <u>trusteth</u> in the Lord."	Ephesians 1:12 "Who first <u>trusted</u> in Christ."
90. King	Isaiah 6:5 ' <u>Mine eyes</u> have seen the <u>King</u> , the LORD (JHVN) of hosts.' Isaiah 33:22 "Jehovah is our <u>King</u> ."	Revelation 17:14 "the Lamb is <u>King of Kings</u> ." I Timothy 6:14,15 "Lord Jesus Christ who is the blessed & <u>only Potentate</u> , the <u>King of kings</u> and Lord of lords." Rev. 19:16 "A name written: <u>KING OF KINGS</u> and LORD OF LORDS"
91. Wound the heads	Psalm 68:21 "But <u>God</u> shall <u>wound the heads</u> of his enemies."	Psalm 110:6 "He (Jesus) shall <u>Judge</u> among the heathen, . . . he shall <u>wound the heads</u> over many countries (at Christ's second coming')."
92. Avenger	Romans 12:19 " <u>Vengeance</u> is mine; I will repay, saith the Lord."	II Thess 1:7,8 "Taking <u>vengeance</u> on them that know not God."
93. Armies against Jehovah and Jesus Christ	Isaiah 33:2 "The indignation of <u>Jehovah</u> is upon all nations, and his fury upon all <u>their armies</u> : he hath utterly destroyed them."	Revelation 19:19 "I saw the beast, and the kings of the earth, and <u>their armies</u> gathered together to make war against him (Jesus Christ) that sat on the horse."
94. Fight at Armageddon	Zechariah 14:3 "Then shall <u>Jehovah</u> go forth and <u>fight</u> against those nations."	Rev. 19:11,13,21 "In righteousness he doth judge and <u>make war</u> (v11). his name is called the <u>Word of God</u> (Jesus Christ) (v.13) the remnant were <u>slain</u> with the sword of him that sat upon the horse." (v 21).
95. Destroyer of Death	Isaiah 25:8 "He (Jehovah) will swallow up <u>death</u> in victory."	II Timothy 1:10 "Our Saviour, Jesus Christ, who hath <u>abolished death</u> ."
96. Faith in	I Thessalonians 1:8 "Your <u>faith</u> to <u>God</u> ."	Galatians 3:26 "Ye are all the children of God by <u>faith</u> in Christ Jesus."
97. Our life	Deut 30:20 "LORD, <u>he is thy life</u> ."	Coloss. 3:4 "Christ, <u>who is our life</u> ."
98. Pray to	Matt 6:9 " <u>Our Father</u> which art..."	Acts 7:59 Stephen said, " <u>Lord Jesus</u> , receive my spirit"
99. Raising Christ	Acts 2:32 "This Jesus hath <u>God raised up</u> "	John 2:19,21 "Jesus said, destroy this temple,& in 3 days <u>I will raise it up</u> . he spake of the temple of his body."
100. Owning	John 16:15 " <u>All things</u> that the Father hath <u>are mine</u> ."	
101. Enter the east gate of Jerusalem	Ezekiel 44:1,2 "The Lord, the God of Israel, hath <u>entered</u> in by it"	Luke 19:37-45 "And he went into the temple." (Jesus rode the colt down the Mt. of Olives through the East Gate, then He walked into the Temple).
102. Man on the throne	Ezekiel 1:26 "And upon the likeness of the throne was the likeness as the appearance of a <u>man</u> ." (This was Christ on the throne who later is called the God of Israel).Ez 10:20:"The living creature that I saw under the <u>God</u> of Israel	
103. Fellowship	I John 1:3 "That ye also may have <u>fellowship</u> with us: and truly our fellowship is with the <u>Father</u> , and with <u>his Son Jesus Christ</u> ." <u>Both fellowship equally with believers.</u>	

	Scripture Testimony to "JHVH"	Scripture Testimony to Christ
104.Baptism formula	Matthew 28:19 " <u>Baptizing</u> them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost" Both names are on the <u>same level</u> .	
105.Comfort believers	Isaiah 66:13 "So will I <u>comfort</u> you."	Philippians 2:1 "If there be therefore any <u>consolation</u> in Christ"
106.Worship in heaven	Revelation: 5:8-10; 5:11,12; 5:13,14 "The four beasts and the four and twenty elders <u>fell down before the Lamb.</u> "	
107.Send grace&peace	Romans 1:7 " <u>Grace</u> to you and <u>peace</u> from God our Father, and the Lord Jesus Christ." Both <u>jointly send grace</u> and <u>peace</u> to the churches.	
108. Love	John 14:21 "He that loveth me shall be <u>loved of my Father</u> , and <u>I will love him</u> and manifest myself to him." The <u>love of the Father</u> and <u>love of the Son</u> are an equal privilege given to us.	
109. Jehovah	Isaiah 44:6 "Thus saith the <u>Jehovah</u> the King of Israel, and his redeemer the <u>Jehovah</u> of hosts; I am the first, and I am the last; and beside me there is no God." Both jointly <u>declare</u> themselves to be <u>Jehovah</u> .	
110. Come to his temple	Malachi 3:1 "The Lord . . . shall suddenly <u>come to his temple.</u> "	Matthew 21:13 " <u>My house</u> shall be called the house of prayer."
111. King of Israel	Isaiah 44:6 "Jehovah the <u>King</u> of <u>Israel</u> ".	John 1:49 "Thou art the <u>King</u> of <u>Israel</u> ".
112. Blasphemed	GOD: .....Romans 2:24 "The name of <u>God</u> is blasphemed." HOLY SPIRIT:..Luke 12:10 "that blasphemeth against the <u>Holy Ghost</u> " CHRIST:.....Luke 22:65; "Blasphemously spake they against <u>him</u> " Also Acts 13:45; 18:5,6; 26:9,11	
113. Always with all believers	Matthew 28:20 "Lo, I am <u>with you always.</u> " II Corinthians 13:14 "The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the communion of the Holy Ghost, <u>be with you all.</u> "	
114. Lawgiver	GOD: .....Romans 7:22 "I delight in the law of <u>God</u> ". CHRIST: .....Galatians 6:2 "So fulfil the <u>law of Christ</u> ". HOLY SPIRIT:Romans 8:2 "The law of the <u>Spirit</u> of life in Christ Jesus." James 4:12 "There is <u>one lawgiver</u> , who is able to save and to destroy."	
115. Same face	Revelation 22:3,4 "The throne of <u>God</u> and of the Lamb shall be in it; And they shall see <u>HIS</u> face"	
116. Same name	Revelation 22:3,4 "The throne of <u>God</u> and of the Lamb shall be in it,..... and <u>HIS name</u> shall be in their foreheads."	
117.Same servants	Revelation 22:3 "The throne of <u>God</u> and of the Lamb shall be in it, and <u>HIS servants</u> shall serve him."	
118.Temple of New Jer.	Revelation 21:22 "The <u>Lord God Almighty</u> and the Lamb are the <u>temple</u> of it"	
119. Heavens	Psalm 102:24-27 "The heavens are the work of thy hands."	Hebrews 1:10-12 "The heavens are the work of thy hands."
120. Ancient of Days	Daniel 7:9,13,22 "Ancient of Days did sit, ...whose <u>hair</u> of his head like the <u>pure wool</u> ."	Rev.1:13-15 "the Son of man...His head and his <u>hairs</u> were white like <u>wool</u> , as white as snow:"

## **116. What You Will Not Be Told At The Door By the JEHOVAH'S WITNESSES**

The Jehovah's Witness (or Watchtower Bible and tract society) have made the following **predictions** which appear in their own literature:

1. That Jesus would return by **1874**. when Jesus failed to appear, the Witnesses claimed that it was an unseen, spiritual return. (Watchtower, Feb. 1881, p 188).
  2. That **Jesus would return in 1914** with the Battle of Armageddon ending in October of 1914 (Zion's Watchtower, Jan 15, 1892, p.21-23).
  3. That with the end of **1914**, what God calls Babylon, and what men call **Christendom will pass away**. (Thy Kingdom Come, 1895, p.153).
  4. When the prophecies of 1914 failed, the new date of **1918** was set for God's **wholesale destruction of the church members** by the millions. (Finished Mystery, 1917, p.485).
  5. With the failure of this prophecy, a new date of **1925** was set. Therefore we may confidently expect that 1925 will mark the return of **Abraham, Isaac and Jacob...**"
  - (Millions Now Living, 1920, p.89-90).
  6. With the expected arrival of Abraham, Isaac, Jacob "any day", a house was built for them in 1930 in San Diego, California and called "Beth Sarim" meaning "**House of the Princes**". By 1942 it was still "held in trust for the occupancy of those princes on their return". (The New World, 1942, p.104).
  7. In **1941** they claimed that the world was nearing the end and facing "the remaining **months before Armageddon**". (Watchtower, Sep 15, 1941, 288).
  8. The fall of **1975** was to mark the **beginning of Christ's 1000 year, literal visible reign on earth**. (Awake! Oct 8, 1968, p.14).
- In March 1968, "there are only about **ninety months left** before 6000 years of man's existence on earth is completed". (Kingdom Ministry, March 1968, p.4).

What is presented above is not slander, attempted persecution, or a misrepresentation of anyone's position. These are true and factual comments made in official Watchtower publications on the stated pages. Regardless of what you may or may not believe, the **FALSE nature** of these prophecies should be evident to all but those who choose to **deliberately ignore** the FACTS. God says:

"But the prophet which shall presume to speak a word in my name, which I have not commanded him to speak, or that shall speak in the name of other gods, even that prophet shall die. And if thou say in thine heart, how shall we know the word which the LORD hath not spoken? When a prophet speaketh in the name of the LORD, if the thing **follow not, nor come to pass**, that is the thing **which the LORD hath not spoken**, but the prophet hath spoken presumptuously, thou shall not be afraid of him." (Deuteronomy 18:20-22).

A TRUE PROPHET of God will be **100% accurate in his predictions**. Truth is not a light that gets brighter with time or an element that gets truer and truer. Truth is truth from the very beginning. **The Watchtower Society has yet to make ONE correct prediction**. Moral uprightness, sincerity and zeal do not necessarily indicate the presence of TRUTH.

# **117. JEHOVAH'S WITNESSES, the TRINITY and the WATCHTOWER**

## **Table of Contents**

	<u>Page No</u>
<b>1.</b> What attracts people to join the Watchtower .....	825
<b>2.</b> Three Basic Assumptions Which Form the JW World View .....	825
<b>3.</b> How to Handle a JW Witnessing Encounter .....	826
<b>4.</b> Watchtower Attributes of God.....	826
<b>5.</b> Watchtower Organisation .....	826
1) Isaiah 43:10 ..... Witnesses of Jehovah?.....	826
2) Matthew 24:45-47.... Is the Watchtower God's Faithful and Discreet Slave? ....	827
3) Acts 8:30,31 ..... Do we need the Watchtower to explain the Bible? .....	827
4) II Peter 1:20,21 ..... No private interpretation.....	828
5) I Corinthians 1:10 .... Watchtower (WT) enforced unity of thought .....	828
6) Impressions of the Watchtower .....	829
<b>6.</b> Eight Issues JWs Argue Against .....	833
<b>7.</b> Jehovah's Name or Jesus Christ's Name? (Heb.1:10; 1 Peter 3:15; Acts 2:21).....	834
<b>8.</b> Watchtower's Wrong Beliefs .....	838
<b>9.</b> Deity of Christ Verses that New World Translation Changes .....	840
1) Colossians 1:17 ..... 'other' .....	840
2) Philippians 2:9 ..... 'other' .....	841
3) Zechariah 12:10 ..... 'look on me' .....	842
4) Acts 20:28 ..... 'his own blood' .....	843
5) Hebrews 1:8; Psalm 45:6 ... 'Thy throne, O God' .....	844
6) Hebrews 1:6..... 'worship him' to 'do obeisance' .....	846
7) Titus 2:13..... 'Great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ' .....	847
8) II Peter 1:1 ..... 'God and our Saviour Jesus Christ' .....	850
9) John 1:1 .....	850
10) John 8:58 .....	856
<b>10.</b> Is Christ Inferior to the Father? .....	858
1) I Corinthians 11:3 .... 'The head of Christ is God' .....	858
2) Revelation 3:14 ....."beginning of the creation of God' .....	859
3) Proverbs 8:22,23..... 'I was set up from everlasting' .....	860
4) Colossians 1:15..... 'firstborn (prototokos) of every creature' .....	860
5) John 3:16 ....."He gave His only begotten Son' .....	862
6) I Corinthians 15:28 ....."then shall the Son be subject to Him" .....	863
7) I Corinthians 8:6..... 'one God, the Father and one Lord JC' .....	864
8) John 20:17 ....."My God and Your God" .....	864
9) John 14:28 ....."Father is greater than Jesus" .....	865
10) Mark 13:32 ....."of that day and hour . . ." .....	866
11) Isaiah 9:6 ....."is Jesus 'a mighty God' or 'Jehovah God'?" .....	867
12) John 17:3 ....."Know thee the only true God" .....	868
13) Psalm 110:1 ....."The Lord (JHWH) said to my Lord (Adonai)" .....	869
14) John 4:23 ....."true worshippers shall worship the Father" .....	871
15) Mark 10:17, 18 ....."there is none good but one, that is God" .....	872
16) Hebrews 9:27..... 'to die once <u>for all time</u> ' .....	872
<b>11.</b> The Trinity .....	873
1) Refuting the Watchtower's false quotes of early Church Writers .....	873
2) Is the Trinity a Pagan Concept? No .....	877
3) Refuting I Corinthians 14:33 'God is not the author of confusion' .....	878

4) Refuting WT's misunderstanding of John 17:3 .....	878
5) Refuting WT's misunderstanding of Deuteronomy. 6:4 and Mark 12:29: ‘The Lord ( <i>JHVH</i> ) our God ( <i>Elohim</i> ) is one Lord ( <i>JHVH</i> ).....	878
6) Notice how God reveals Himself in stages to man .....	879
<b>12. Bible Proofs of the Trinity .....</b>	<b>880</b>
1) Matthew 28:19 ‘The Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit’ .....	880
2) Genesis 18,19..... Three men each called Jehovah .....	881
3) II Corinthians 3:17..... ‘Jehovah is the Spirit’ .....	881
4) I John 5:7,8 in heaven, the Father, the Word and the Holy Ghost, & these three are ‘one’ ...	881
5) Each have 119 identical Divine attributes .....	896
6) II Corinthians 13:14.... Benediction.....	881
7) 30 Bible Proofs of the Trinity .....	882
<b>13. Proof that Jesus Christ is Jehovah God .....</b>	<b>884</b>
<b>I Explicit statements that Jesus Christ is Jehovah God:.....</b>	<b>884</b>
1) Isaiah 9:6 ..... ‘the Mighty God’ .....	884
2) Isaiah 44:6 ..... ‘Jehovah the King of Israel, and his redeemer Jehovah of hosts.....	884
3) Isaiah 48:12,16 .... ‘the Lord God and his Spirit hath sent me’ .....	885
4) Zechariah 2:8-11... ‘thus saith Jehovah of hosts...Jehovah hath sent me’ .....	885
5) Zechariah 3:2 ..... ‘Jehovah said to Satan, Jehovah rebuke thee’ .....	885
6) John 1:1 ..... ‘the word was God’ .....	850, 885
7) John 1:3 and Malachi 2:10.... ‘hath not one God created us?’ .....	886
8) John 3:13 .....	886
9) John 4:42 .....	886
10) John 5:18 .....	887
11) John 5:23 ..... ‘all men should honour the Son even as they honour the Father’ ....	887
12) John 6:46 .....	887
13) John 8:24 .....	887
14) John 8:58 .....	887
15) John 10:30 .....	888
16) John 10:33 .... ‘thou being a man makest thyself God’ .....	888
17) John 17:5 .....	889
18) John 20:28 .....	890
19) Acts 20:28..... ‘God .. with His own blood’ .....	843, 890
20) Romans 10:9... ‘declare that Jesus is Lord (Hebrew: <i>Ha Adon</i> =the True God)’ .....	890
21) I Corinthians 15:47 .....	891
22) I Timothy 3:16..... ‘God was manifest in the flesh’ .....	804, 892
23) Titus 2:13..... ‘great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ’ .....	847, 893
24) Hebrews 1:6..... ‘Let all the angels of God worship him’ .....	846, 893
25) Hebrews 1:8..... ‘To the Son he saith Thy throne O God’ .....	844, 893
26) Hebrews 1:10..... ‘Thou Lord in the beginning hast laid’ .....	893
27) II Peter 1:1 .....	849, 894
28) Revelation 1:8; 22:13..... ‘The Alpha and Omega’ .....	894
29) Psalm 103:19 and Matthew 11:25 .... Both are called ‘Lord’ .....	895
30) Both own the same throne, servants, face, name, priests, temple and light .....	895
31) Colossians 2:9 ... ‘In him dwells all the fullness of the Godhead bodily’ .....	895
32) Micah 5:2 ‘goings forth have been from of old ( <i>qedmah</i> ), from everlasting ( <i>olam</i> ). 895	895
33) I John 5:20..... ‘Jesus Christ. This is the true God.’ .....	895
34) Malachi 3:1.... ‘the Lord (Hebrew: <i>Ha Adon</i> ) shall suddenly come to His temple’ . 895	895
<b>II Both the Father and Son have the same 119 Attributes, Claims and Majesty .....</b>	<b>896</b>
<b>III Appearance of Jehovah the Son to 9 Old Testament Saints who Worshipped Him .....</b>	<b>899</b>
<b>IV New Testament Examples of Prayer to Christ:(John 5:40, Acts 7:59, I Cor. 1:2, Phil. 2:11) .</b>	<b>899</b>
<b>V Father and Son have the same Divine Offices .....</b>	<b>901</b>

<b>14.</b>	<b>Christ's Bodily Resurrection .....</b>	<b>902</b>
1)	Luke 24:37,39.... 'seen a spirit..I myself. handle me..a spirit has not <u>flesh</u> and <u>bones</u> ' .	902
2)	John 20:27 ..... 'thrust it into my <u>side</u> '	902
3)	Acts 2:30,31..... 'neither did his <u>flesh</u> see corruption.'	902
4)	John 2:19-21 ..... 'in 3 days I will raise it up...he spake of the temple of his <u>body</u> .'	902
5)	Luke 22:18 'I will not <u>drink</u> of the fruit of the vine until the Kingdom of God come' ..	903
6)	Luke 24:41,42.... Resurrected Christ <u>ate</u> a broiled fish and an honeycomb .....	903
7)	Romans 8:11..... As Christ's body was raised, so will ours .....	903
8)	John 20:22 ..... 'He <u>breathed</u> on them, and said...' .....	903
9)	Zechariah 14:4... 'His <u>feet</u> shall stand in that day upon the Mount of Olives'	903
10)	Zechariah 13:6... 'What are these wounds in thine <u>hands</u> ?' .....	903
11)	Revelation 1:17.. 'resurrected Christ <u>touched</u> John' .....	903
<b>15.</b>	<b>Is Salvation by Christ or by Watchtower Works? .....</b>	<b>904</b>
1)	John 3:3,5,7 'ye must be born again .....	904
2)	Present tense salvation. Matthew 24:13 .....	906
3)	Romans 10:13 'Paul equates calling on Jehovah with calling on Christfor salvation' .....	906
4)	I Timothy 2:5 'no mediator for the great crowd' .....	907
<b>16.</b>	<b>WT False Prophecies .....</b>	<b>908</b>
<u>Q1:</u>	Do you agree that Deuteronomy 18:21-22 teaches that a true prophet of God gives prophecies coming true 100% of the time, and false prophets give prophecies failing to happen?	
<u>Q2:</u>	Has the WT ever claimed to be God's Prophet?	
<u>Q3:</u>	Can we agree that the WT prophet has given prophecies about events & dates in the future?	
<u>Q4:</u>	Applying Moses' & Jesus' test for prophets to WT, did any WT prophecies fail to come true?	
<b>17.</b>	<b>16 Contradictions and False Doctrines of the Watchtower .....</b>	<b>915</b>
<b>18.</b>	<b>Four Tests for the Watchtower .....</b>	<b>919</b>
<b>18.</b>	<b>The 144,000 Anointed Class and 'Other Sheep' .....</b>	<b>919</b>
1)	Luke 12:32 ..... 'The Little Flock' as the 144,000 'Anointed Class' .....	920
2)	Revelation 7:4 ..... Are the 144,000 in the Anointed Class?.....	921
3)	John 10:16..... The 'Other Sheep' .....	922
4)	Revelation 7:9 ..... The 'Great Crowd' as the 'Other Sheep' .....	923
<b>19.</b>	<b>Watchtower and Bible Sufficiency .....</b>	<b>924</b>
<b>20.</b>	<b>Birthdays .....</b>	<b>924</b>
<b>21.</b>	<b>Is Jesus Michael the Archangel? .....</b>	<b>925</b>
<b>22.</b>	<b>Witnessing to a JW .....</b>	<b>926</b>
<b>23.</b>	<b>Blood Transfusions .....</b>	<b>927</b>
<b>24.</b>	<b>The Cross .....</b>	<b>928</b>
<b>25.</b>	<b>Holy Spirit: Is He a Person or an Active Force? .....</b>	<b>929</b>
<b>26.</b>	<b>Counselling those who leave the Watchtower .....</b>	<b>931</b>
<b>27.</b>	<b>War and Self-Defence .....</b>	<b>932</b>
<b>28.</b>	<b>Watchtower Brainwashing and Thought Control .....</b>	<b>932</b>
<b>29.</b>	<b>The Divine Name .....</b>	<b>934</b>
<b>30.</b>	<b>Sequence of Verses to Discuss and Questions to Ask .....</b>	<b>936</b>
<b>31.</b>	<b>The Trinity in Nature .....</b>	<b>940</b>
<b>32.</b>	<b>Questions to Ask to Refute JW Objections .....</b>	<b>941</b>
<b>33.</b>	<b>Places where KIT gives the Correct Reading, contradicting NWT Readings .....</b>	<b>943</b>
34.	Verses showing that believers go to <b>heaven</b> immediately after death .....	35,36
35.	Verses showing that unbelievers go to a literal, conscious <b>hell</b> after death .....	39
36.	<b>Soul Sleep error .....</b>	655
37.	<b>The Physical, bodily return of Christ to earth .....</b>	238
38.	<b>God has not cast away His people Israel .....</b>	482
39.	<b>Good works don't save us .....</b>	541
<b>40.</b>	<b>What JWs will NOT tell you at the door .....</b>	<b>948</b>

# **JEHOVAH'S WITNESSES and THE WATCHTOWER ORGANISATION**

## **Introduction:**

The Jehovah's Witnesses group was started in the 1870's by Charles Taze Russell, who drew ideas from Seventh Day Adventism and Christadelphianism. *The Watchtower* magazine was first published in 1879. Through door-to-door proselytising and authoritarian leadership, they have grown to about 3.9 million members by 1991.

From 1970 a million JW's resigned or were disfellowshipped.

The Watchtower Society's Headquarters are at 25 Columbia Heights, Brooklyn, New York. It is ruled by a group of 12 men headed by a president who rules for life with absolute power. These presidents have been: Charles Russell (1874-1916)

Joseph Rutherford (1916-1942)

Nathan Knorr (1942-1977)

Fred Franz (1977-1992 )

Milton Henschel (1992- )

Fred Franz's nephew, Raymond Franz, has left the organisation. He wrote the book '*Crisis of Conscience*' exposing the group as having:

- 1) Antibiblical teachings
- 2) Given many false prophecies
- 3) Changed its teachings and policies
- 4) Lied and covered up information
- 5) Destroyed many of its members' lives.

## **1. WHAT ATTRACTS PEOPLE TO JOIN THE WATCHTOWER?**

Answer:

- 1) Many people look for answers to life's problems and for divine guidance.
- 2) Many are frightened about the future.
- 3) Many are tired of the lack of moral values in society.
- 4) Many like the dedication and commitment of the JW people.
- 5) Many in mainline churches have never been taught the Bible by their pastors, and they desire to know it better, so they agree to a JW Bible study, which soon gets switched to a Watchtower book study.

## **2. THREE ASSUMPTIONS FORM THE JW WORLD VIEW**

- 1) Divine guidance comes only through the WT Society. This leads JW's to live under a dictatorial, authoritarian organisation that **suppresses independent thinking** in the name of God. Disagreement with the WT is seen as satanic and disagreeing with God.
- 2) JW's alone have the truth about God. JW's alone claim to be the people of God. They hence feel exclusive, unique and superior.
- 3) JW's are told that every other church in Christendom is false and controlled by Satan. JW's view Christians as a hated enemy.

JW's allow **human reason to judge the Word of God**. Any Bible teachings, such as the Trinity, hell or the personality of the Holy Spirit, which to them seem "unreasonable", they think that it cannot be true. Just because man can't understand something, doesn't mean that thing is false. For example, scientists had long believed that light was either "waves" or "particles", yet now it has been proven to be **both** "waves" and "particles". No scientist can explain this fact fully, but it is proven and must be accepted. So it is that the Bible teaches that Jesus Christ is **both 100% God and 100% man**. We may not understand it or think it reasonable, but we must believe the Scriptures that teach this without changing them.

### **3. HOW TO HANDLE A JW WITNESSING ENCOUNTER**

- 1) Encourage him or her to thoroughly examine their beliefs. “People should examine all the evidence by examining both sides of a matter.” (*Awake*, 22 October 1973, p.6). Say, “May we examine the Scriptures and test both religious beliefs by the Bible?”
- 2) Speak kindly and respectfully as Paul did to the Athenians.
- 3) Deal thoroughly with one or two issues each meeting. Make another appointment for later. Instead of jumping from verse to verse, slow them down to discuss each passage thoroughly. Ask: What does Jesus being the Son of God mean? How Jesus is God.
- 4) Ask questions to help him discover problems in Watchtower theology for himself, in an unemotional, non-threatening way.
- 5) Undermine WT authority by showing their false prophecies, and how they changed their position on key doctrines.

### **4. WATCHTOWER ATTRIBUTES OF GOD**

- 1) The WT god is not omnipresent. “The Watchtower god is not omnipresent, for he is spoken of as having a location. His throne in heaven.” (*Aid to Bible Understanding*, p 665)
- 2) The WT god is not omniscient. JWs feel that for God to possess any attribute which they cannot understand is “illogical”, so they deny Him to be omniscient. They say that God does not know all things past, present, future (*Watchtower*, 15 July 84, p 4,5)
- 3) WT rejects the **Trinity** because it is incomprehensible. If the JW discards his limited view of God's nature, the Bible can be taken at face value.

### **5. THE WATCHTOWER ORGANISATION**

JWs believe that God set up the Watchtower Society as His visible representative on earth. JWs are constantly reminded that people are utterly unable to know the true meaning of Scripture without the Society and its vast literature.

JWs are expected to obey the WT as the voice of God. (*Watchtower*, 15 June 57, p 370). The WT says, “We must recognize not only Jehovah God as our Father, but his organisation as our Mother.” (*Watchtower*, 1 May 57, p 274).

JWs are not to think for themselves to interpret the Bible. They are to submit their minds to the Watchtower (WT). If a JW disobeys WT instructions, they assume that he is “apostate”, and the punishment is “disfellowshipping”, whereby his WT friends are forbidden to talk to him. This fear of disfellowshipping is one of the WT’s most effective means of keeping members obedient to its teachings.

Some of the verses that the Watchtower twists to ensnare people into its organisation are:

#### **1. Isaiah 43:10 – “Witnesses” of Jehovah?**

“Ye are my witnesses, saith Jehovah, and my servant whom I have chosen.”

JWs take this verse to mean that they alone are the only group chosen by God on the earth.

**The Correct Bible teaching:** Isaiah 43:10 refers only to **Israel** as witnesses of Jehovah.

They were to declare Jehovah as the only true God to pagan nations in the Law Dispensation from 1500 BC to 33 AD.

“Ye” refers to Jews, not Christians today. To apply it to JWs today is twisting Scripture.

**Ask:** If JWs are the only true witness for God, and JWs only started in the 1870’s, does this mean that God was without a witness in the world for 1800 years? If so, then God didn’t care for people to have His truth for 1800 years. Notice that in the New Testament, believers are witnesses to Jesus Christ who is Jehovah. For example:

- a) "Ye shall be **witnesses** unto **me**." (Acts 1:8). The disciples became **Christ's** (not Jehovah's) witnesses. They were witnesses of Christ's bodily, physical, literal **resurrection**, which is a part of the Gospel (I Corinthians 15:1-4). Belief in Christ's bodily resurrection is a condition of salvation (Romans 10:9), which JW's deny.
- b) "This Jesus hath God **raised up**, whereof **we all are witnesses**." (Acts 2:32).
- c) "Whom God hath **raised** from the dead; whereof **we are witnesses**." (Acts 3:15).
- d) "And with great power gave the apostles **witness of the resurrection** of the Lord Jesus." (Acts 4:33).
- e) "But God **raised him** from the dead: And he was seen many days of them which came up with him from Galilee to Jerusalem, who are **his witnesses** unto the people." Acts 13:30,31

**Ask:** According to these verses, were the early Christians witnesses of Jehovah or witnesses of Jesus Christ?

## 2. Matthew 24:45-47 - Is the Watchtower "God's Faithful and Discreet Slave"?

**Question:** Who is this slave/servant?

**Answer:**

- i) The WT book "*The Harp of God*", 1921, p.239 states: "Without a doubt **Pastor Russell** filled the office.....and was therefore that wise and faithful servant."
- ii) WT (15 February, 1981, p.19) says it is the **WT organisation**: "We cannot find the Scriptural guidance we need outside the "faithful and discreet slave" **organisation**."  
**Ask:** How do you explain the WT Society's change of opinion from this slave being Pastor Russell to the WT organisation? They claim that the "evil slave" in v. 48-51 is apostate Christendom.
- iii) The **correct Bible teaching**: Jesus compares his disciples to servants who have been put in charge of their Master's household. Each servant could fulfil his task faithfully or unfaithfully. Faithful servants will be rewarded, and unfaithful servants will be punished at the Lord's return. This passage refers not to any organisation, but individuals who profess to follow Christ, particularly pastors (I Peter 5:2).

**Note:** If JW's read **Matthew 25:19-23** and think about it, they would see that Jesus mentions **MORE THAN ONE** faithful and discreet slave ("the Lord of those **servants** cometh" v.19). Any faithful Christian shepherd is represented by these faithful slaves.

**Ask:** Since the WT organisation only started in 1874, did God have no true representatives on earth for 1800 years? Did God not care for his people to understand the Bible for 1800 years? Matthew 28:20 teaches, "Lo, I am with you **always** even to the end of the age."

This teaches that there would **always be followers of Jesus** on earth up to the end of the age. This proves the Watchtower wrong in claiming to be the faithful and discreet slave.

## 3. Acts 8:30, 31 - Do we need the Watchtower to explain the Bible?

**Watchtower teaching:** "Understandest thou what thou readest? And he said, "How can I except some man guide me?" (Acts 8:30,31).

The *Watchtower Magazine*, 1 December 1981, p 27, elevates the WT organisation above the Bible. It makes gaining eternal life depend on following the WT Society.

"Unless we are in touch with the (WT)....we will not progress along the road to life, no matter how much Bible reading we do." (p.27).

JW's blindly follow the WT Society wherever it leads. They say that mankind needs the WT Organisation in order to understand Scripture, just as the Ethiopian needed Philip to explain Isaiah 53.

**Bible Truth:** God gives Bible teachers (Ephesian 4:11) and the Holy Spirit to illuminate, but

- 1) there is no Bible support for an infallible organisation whose infallible views must be accepted by everybody;
- 2) Philip preached directly from Scripture, not from any Watchtower literature;
- 3) The Ethiopian did not have to join and submit to an organisation;
- 4) He rejoiced in Christ when his teacher left, without any sense of loss.
- 5) He had no written New Testament to instruct him like we have today.
- 6) No Watchtower organisation literature followed him.

**Ask:**

- 1) Where in the Bible does it say that people must join and submit to the interpretations of the WT hierarchical organisation?
- 2) Did Philip use WT literature or did he use Scripture alone?
- 3) If Scripture alone was sufficient for Philip and the Ethiopian, isn't Scripture alone sufficient for us?

#### **4. II Peter 1:20, 21 - No "Private Interpretation".**

"No prophecy of the Scripture is of any private interpretation." (v.20).

"Private" means "one's own". "Interpretation" means "unloosing".

No Scripture is of "one's own unloosing" from the context. Peter is not forbidding private study and interpretation. Roman Catholics, JWs and Mormons teach that only the "spiritual leaders" may interpret Scripture, and they use this verse in their defence. Since all Scripture is inspired by the Holy Spirit, it must all "hang together" and no one Scripture should be divorced from the others. An individual cannot of "one's own" choosing "unloose" one verse from other verses on the same subject. You can use the Bible to prove almost anything if you unloose or divorce verses from their proper context, which is exactly the approach used by false teachers. No Scripture will contradict another. The only way heretical teachers can prove their heretical doctrines is by "unloosing" verses from their proper context.

Hence Peter's message in v.20 is that no Scripture is of "one's own unloosing" from the near and far context. That is, no verse will contradict any other verse.

**Ask:**

- 1) Were the Bereans right to test Paul's teachings by Scripture? (Yes) (Acts 17:11).
- 2) Are you willing to test WT teachings in the light of Scripture alone, not disagreeing with other Scriptures?
- 3) If you find WT teachings that go against what Scripture says, what will you do?

#### **5. I Corinthians 1:10 Is the Watchtower right because of its enforced unity of thought?**

"I beseech you.....that ye all speak the same thing, and that there be no divisions among you; but that ye be perfectly joined together in the same mind and in the same judgment." v.10.

The WT applies this verse in two ways:

- a) They impose the one set of doctrines on JWs, to give a forced agreement and unity, or JWs will be disfellowshipped.
- b) They use this verse to prove that JWs are the only true Christians because they are completely united in mind and judgment. They boast that they are of "one heart and soul" worldwide, which is not true of Christendom's denominations.

**The Correct Bible Teaching:** It is a myth to think that a group's absolute unity is proof that they are the only true Christians, and that those who do not have unity are unbelievers. Paul wrote I Corinthians 1:10 because the Corinthians were already disunited on 16 issues.

**Ask:** Does the divisiveness among the Corinthians mean that they were not Christians? (Paul believed they were Christians in I Corinthians 1:2 “Sanctified in Christ Jesus”). I Corinthians 1:10 does **not** teach that we are to attain unity by submitting to an organisation. Paul said that we must prove or test all things, and not unquestioningly accept what certain teachers say (I Thess. 5:21), as JWs accept WT theology for fear of being disfellowshipped. This is like Nazi Germany saying that everyone must believe and obey the “organisation” or be disfellowshipped from the world (ie. killed). **People are held in the WT organisation** by the bondage of fear of being disfellowshipped from God’s kingdom.

**Ask:** Where in I Corinthians 1:10 does it refer to an **organisation** or say that unity comes by submitting to an organisation? Paul in Romans 14:2-5 allowed difference of opinion, as long as unity was maintained. “One man esteemeth one day above another: another esteemeth every day alike. Let every man be fully persuaded in his own mind.”

**Ask:** Doesn’t Romans 14:5 teach that it is all right for Christians to differ on some religious issues? Hence, Paul was not saying in I Corinthians 1:10 to do away with all diversity, but to remove their unbrotherly, divisive attitude.

The Watchtower commands JWs to:

- i) Not accept or read religious literature of people they meet. (*Watchtower*, 1 May 1984, p31)
- ii) Not listen to criticisms of the WT organisation (*Watchtower*, 15 May 1984, p17).
- iii) Not speak words “expressing criticism of the way the appointed elders are handling matters.” (*Watchtower*, 15 January 1984, p 16).
- iv) “avoid independent thinking” and to “fight against independent thinking”. (*Watchtower*, 15 January 1983, p22, 27).

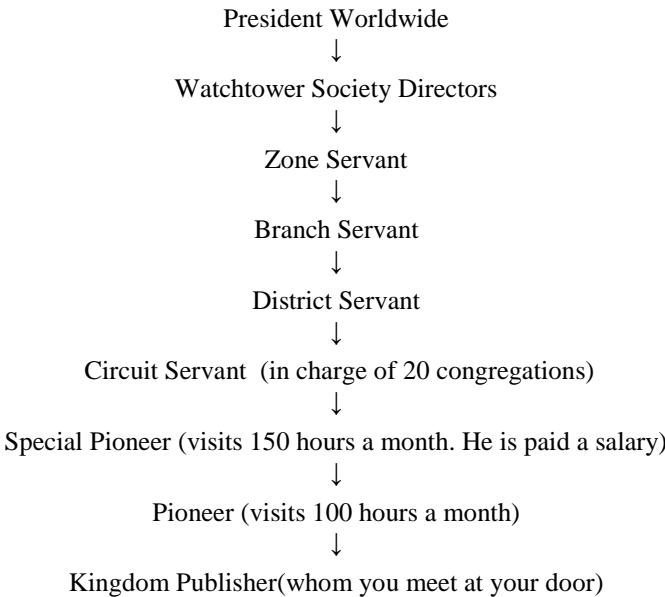
The Bible teaches that we are not to be united by lockstep conformity but by **love**: “put on **charity** which is the **bond**....” (Colossians 3:14)

Note: The WT clearly violates a Bible command in Romans 14:5, 6 on the matter of holy days, or holidays (eg. Christmas, Easter, etc). **“He that regardeth the day, regardeth it unto the Lord”**. This verse allows individual Christians the right to observe special days which other Christians may choose not to observe. Yet the JW who observes Christmas, Easter, Mothers Day, etc. is immediately tried and disfellowshipped, being cut off from his friends and family.

## **6. Impressions of the Watchtower Organisation by Ted Dencher.**

1. JWs ask people for a Bible study once a week at whatever time is suitable.
2. Baptized JWs are considered to be ordained ministers.
3. JWs frown on any effort or ambition to make something of yourself. You must sell yourself completely to the organisation.
4. How do people become JWs?
  - a) Their big attraction is a universal Armageddon, coming any day now, when all except JWs will be destroyed (annihilated).
  - b) People with little Bible knowledge, believe everything the WT says. Why? You accept the “faithful and wise servant” of Matthew 24:45, 46 as the “servant of Isaiah” 43:10. You are told this “servant” is the Watchtower Society.
- Once you accept this, then you will accept anything they tell you, because of the authority you are led to believe they have over you.
5. JWs teach that all governments are of the devil. This is wrong from Romans 13:1,4 “The powers that be are ordained of God...He is the minister of God to thee for good”.
6. JWs deride all other religions for thinking that they are going to heaven. (II Cor 5:1-8).

7. JWs refer to all organised religion as the Babylon whore.
8. JWs allow no individual study outside what the WT permits him to have.  
He could make no conclusions that the Watchtower has not already arrived at.  
All private thought is discouraged, and the member soon becomes an automaton.
9. JWs accept the WT organisation as their saviour, because they are taught that the WT organisation will be spared through Armageddon, and you MUST be a part of it to escape destruction.
10. JWs love to misapply Isaiah 1:18 “Come now, and let us reason together, saith the Lord.” This lets them apply human reason to all their conclusions. (See Isaiah 55:7-9)
11. Few people seem able to counteract “JW logic”. This makes it seem all the more true.
12. They say that clergy titles are unbiblical, so they call themselves “servants” (John 15:15).
13. People become JWs because they are impressed with their organisation.
14. Most JWs think nothing of the Lord Jesus Christ. To JWs Christ is only a subordinate to God, and a member of the “theocratic organisation.”
15. The WT Society uses JWs to carry out its worldwide literature campaign.
16. The WT organisation is structured as follows:



Each Kingdom Hall has seven overseers and 2 to 20 area study conductors. With all these eyes on you, it is difficult to maintain individuality, so you just give up.

17. **Anything** coming from the WT Society is taken as truth, regardless of what it is.
- Everything** from any other source is falsehood, regardless of what it is.
- “WT truth” changes from time to time.
18. C T Russell was a **Non-Christian sceptic** when he began the WT. He searched the Scriptures from a sceptic’s viewpoint. Russell perjured himself in court and proved himself a fraud, claiming he knew Greek when he could not read the Greek alphabet. His formal education ended at age 14. The JW claims to be a scholarly student of the Bible. At best he is a devout student of Watchtower publications.
19. Ted Dencher (ex-JW) said: “I knew I was a sinner. I knew that all these works had not

removed a single sin. I was the same sinner as I had always been. I placed all hopes on the organisation. Very rarely were we challenged at the door by people who said that Christ has removed our sins by His shed blood, or we would die in our sins. Our works are unable to remove our sins. You cannot escape the convictions of your own heart.”

**20.** If a JW leaves and goes to another faith, his JW friends and relatives turn against him in anger, and spread all sorts of stories about him.

**21.** Most JWs either stay up to 10 years and leave, or stay for life.

**22.** The WT is very much opposed to the historic Christian faith with its stress on the individual and his relationship to God. In its place they substitute the WT organisation.

**23.** They oppose churches paying their preachers. They hence ignore I Cor 9:4, 7, 13, 14.

**24.** When the WT Society changes a doctrine they trick their people by saying that they are constantly trying to improve themselves. Thinking for yourself is outlawed. JWs must always overrule their own thoughts and convictions and give way to the Society's.

**25. Key:** Before you can convince a JW that he is wrong, you must first convince him that the Watchtower Society is wrong. He makes every effort to stay in the organisation because he has been led to believe that all those outside it will be doomed to annihilation at Armageddon..

**26.** They oppose saluting the flag, thinking that the saluter declares that his salvation comes from the nation saluted. This is false because, “**Salute** all them that have the rule over you, and all the saints.” (Hebrews 13:24). “Then Toi sent Joram his son unto King David, to **salute** him, and to bless him”. (II Samuel 8:10).

**27.** JWs believe that there is no salvation outside their organisation (just like the Roman Catholic Church does). They have always criticised the Roman Catholic Church, yet they have copied its organisation pattern.

**28.** They do not believe that salvation can be obtained in this present life. You must spend all your life working for it. Nor do they believe that salvation can be obtained by Christ's death, burial and resurrection. They believe that knowledge and works (not salvation) lead to life. They believe Christ gave an opportunity for life to worthy ones. To them salvation is not for unworthy sinners (Abram was saved, Genesis.15:6; Rahab was saved, Joshua 2:11. p.546).

**29. Ambition** is destroyed. JWs have become deadened to the world they live in. They do not care what happens. He thus becomes a most useless person. He is not allowed to do anything useful for anyone except JWs. He must not vote, nor aid in civil defence, nor sign a petition against liquor or gambling, nor give money to any cause outside the WT. A spouse will often walk off from a mate if the mate does not become a JW.

**30. Christmas and Easter** are not recognised or celebrated. Why? Because Christ means nothing to them, hence they see no reason for recognising His birth or His death. (The angels, shepherds and wise men celebrated Christ's birth in Luke 2:8-20).

Jesus Christ is precious to those who believe (I Peter 2:7). JWs would not know the difference if Christ had never come. They could get along just as well without Him. They are still slaves to working for their salvation.

**31. Only the 144,000 “spiritual Israelites” go to heaven.** The rest are the earthly class.

**32. No hell for the wicked.** JWs believe the wicked will be annihilated (Ezekiel.32:21,30,31).

**33.** JWs are not trained to answer the Christ-centred testimony of one who has been born again. They are trained to argue about denominations, but are NOT trained to argue successfully against the Gospel of Christ.

**34.** JWs purpose is to get people out of churches where they are individuals, and into the WT organisation where they will be automatons. To a JW, to be yourself is “worldliness” and “false religion”.

**35.** The organisation:

- a) replaces the need for Christ's blood to gain favour with God, in favour of itself.
- b) stands in the place of Jesus Christ as Mediator between God and man.
- c) has become the saviour instead of Christ, who to them is just a fellow creature.
- d) makes the WT authority greater than the Bible, as seen in how they change verses to suit their doctrines.
- e) has pontifical authority. Disputers are cast out as heretics.

**36.** What is the effect of this on a JW's mind?

- a) He no longer thinks of himself as a God-fearing individual but WT fearing.
- b) All piety and reverence have been removed from belief.
- c) All faith in the individual Christ has gone. It now becomes a matter of conducting business.
- d) It no longer involves worship. It has degenerated to a system of works and rewards.
- e) WT runs like a business. Statistics are kept on everything. They mock everything but the organisation.
- f) They do works to prove themselves faithful and to earn everlasting life. They believe it was the life of Christ, not His death, that really mattered. They think it was Christ's obedient life, not His blood that saves.

**37.** A person changes thoroughly to become a JW in 6-12 months. How?

- a) **Initial house-to-house visiting.** The purpose is to get literature into the person's hands so they can read it in their homes and to arouse interest.
- b) **Return visits.** The purpose is to improve interest and to start a home Bible study.
- c) **Home "Bible" Studies** for 1 hour. They then attend the theocratic ministry school (speech class) to give short talks before an audience.
- d) **Training new ministers door-to-door.** 'The secret of success is to start training these new ones from the very earliest. Take them with you as soon as possible. It is the backbone of our ministry'.
- e) **Baptism** by immersion, not in the name of Father, Son and Holy Spirit, but in nobody's name at all. This makes him a minister and an official JW. It means, "You give up your old life and begin a new life, dedicated (sins and all) to serve Jehovah."

Average conversion takes place in 6-12 months because of persistent follow-up.

**38.** You must know your Bible and know it well. Challenge them on the Deity of Christ and stick to it as the most important doctrine. Be firm, polite and loving. Hatred will beget hatred.

**39.** The WT Organisation places much emphasis on class distinctions, eg "the 144,000 anointed heavenly class", the "great crowd earthly class", and the "Queen of Sheba class" of men of good will. This is a fantasy of the governing body of JWs.

## **6. EIGHT ISSUES JW'S ARGUE AGAINST**

JWs say that clergy should call themselves “**servants**” instead of using flattering titles.

JWs forget John 15:15 “Henceforth I call you **not servants**; for the servant knoweth not what his lord doeth: but I have called you **friends**.”

The close relationship between Christ and the Christian does not exist for the JW, so he sees himself as a slave of the WT organisation. A Christian should give a logical, clear testimony of what Christ has done for him. The main issues JW's argue against are as follows:

**1. Arguing against the Trinity.** This involves the deity of Christ, and the Holy Spirit's deity and personality.

**2. Arguing against Hell.** They think hell to be unbiblical, unreasonable, unloving and unjust.

**3. Arguing against the soul.** They believe the soul is a living physical body. They quote Ezekiel 18:4 “The soul that sinneth, it shall die”. This refers to physical death of a person, not spiritual death, as seen from Ezekiel 18:27 “When the wicked man turns away from his wickedness...he shall **save his soul alive**.” Body, soul, spirit (I Thess 5:23).

**4. Arguing against Christ's ransom.** To JWs, Christ is only a man who gave them a chance to work out their own salvation. They believe Christ **only** atoned for Adam's disobedience, though not for Adam himself. JWs do **not** believe that Christ atoned for our personal sins, but only for our disobedience in Adam.

**5. Arguing against Christ's visible return.** JWs believe that Christ returned invisibly in 1914, thus marking the end of the times of the Gentiles. Then how is it that Jerusalem is still trodden down of the Gentiles? (Luke 21:24), “Every eye shall see Him” (Rev1:7).

**6. Arguing against judgment after death.** JWs believe that the coming judgment will be the millennium. They are not aware of the four judgments of:

- a) Christ judged on the cross for our sins; (I Peter 2:24; 3:18).
- b) The judgment seat of Christ in heaven for believers' rewards; (II Cor.5:10).
- c) The sheep and goat nations judgment early in the millennium;(Matthew 25:31-46).
- d) The Great White Throne judgment of unbelievers raised after the 1000 years. (Rev.20:11-15).

They think that “those who meet with God's favourable judgment **will be** granted everlasting life.” (*Let God be True*, p 292). They believe that they will be judged favourably because of works they performed in this life.

**7. Arguing against regeneration and the Holy Spirit.** They degrade the Holy Spirit to an “active force” and they put the Watchtower organisation in his place.

“His theocratic organisation.....to help us understand that Word.” (*Let God be True*, p 306).

Their salvation is never sure, so they keep selling books to earn salvation by good works.

**8. Arguing against all piety.** JWs do not worship God. There is no reverence or awe of God in their hearts. It is forbidden to worship Jesus Christ because to them He is created. In their hymn book “*Songs to Jehovah's Praise*”, they extol the works of the organisation and of individual JWs. No adoring words to God or Christ, just praise to the organisation. JWs will never kneel to pray, nor have any prayer meetings. They will never hold public debates because they realise that no JW can stand up against anyone who knows the Bible really well.

## **7. JEHOVAH'S NAME or JESUS CHRIST'S NAME.**

The Watchtower teaches that God's true Name is Jehovah. They teach that:

"Sometime during the second or third Century CE, the scribes removed the tetragrammaton (JHWH) from both the Septuagint and the Christian Greek Scriptures and replaced it with κυριος (Lord) or θεος (God)".

*Reference Edition of NWT, 1984, p 1564.*

The Watchtower's Kingdom Interlinear Translation (KIT) proves that Jesus is Jehovah God. On page 10,11 of the 1985 KIT, under the heading "Restoring the Divine Name, Jehovah" we read: "the evidence (*what evidence?*) is that the original text of the Christian Greek Scriptures has been tampered with (*no proof*) . . . Sometime during the second or third centuries CE, the Tetragrammaton (JHVH) was eliminated from the Greek texts by copyists (*no proof*). Instead of JHVH they substituted the words *Kurios* ("Lord") and *Theos* ("God")".

**Note:** This is a lie. There is no historical or manuscript evidence or evidence of protest to support this claim. Somebody would have protested such a change. No one did. It never happened.

The New World Translation (NWT) is the JW perversion of the Bible made to support their false doctrines. It inserts the name "**Jehovah**" in the New Testament in the place of God (θεος =theos) or Lord (κυριος =kurios) on 237 occasions, where they believe it refers to God the Father. They often refer to Hebrew translations of the NT to see where this has been done. These are footnoted as J<sup>1</sup> to J<sup>27</sup>. Their dishonesty and deceit is shown by their failure to translate these words as "Jehovah" when it refers to Christ. (Philippians 2:11; Hebrews 1:10). JW's say that the proper use of God's "correct" name (Jehovah) is absolutely **essential to one's salvation**. They quote from their NWT:

"Everyone who calls on the name of Jehovah will be saved." Romans 10:13 (NWT).

"People will have to know that I am Jehovah." Ezekiel 39:6 (NWT).

JW's believe that because they are the only group who refer to God by His "true" name, Jehovah, they are the **only true followers of God**.

Their claim is false for these reasons:

- 1) **Jehovah is not a Biblical term.** It is a man-made term. The Old Testament has "JHVH" because the original Hebrew only had consonants. Jews feared taking God's name in vain, so when they publicly read JHVH, they would pronounce it "Adonai" (Lord). Later they inserted the vowels from Adonai (a-o-a) into the consonants JHVH to give JAHOVAH, which became Jehovah. Hence, the word Jehovah comes from a consonant-vowel combination from JHVH and Adonai.
- 2) **No-one knows for sure the original correct pronunciation of JHVH.** Hence we cannot insist on "Jehovah" as being correct.
- 3) **Jesus never addressed the Father as Jehovah** in the New Testament. If JW's are correct that God must be always called Jehovah, then Jesus was sinning by not calling God "Jehovah". When the NWT puts Jehovah in Jesus' mouth in the NT, it contradicts all the NT manuscripts which don't have it.

**Ask:** Since Jesus never in the NT addressed the Father as Jehovah, why should we?

- 4) **Jesus and the Apostle Paul tell us to address God as "Father":**
  - a) **Jesus taught us to pray** to God as "Our Father", not "Our Jehovah":  
"After this manner therefore pray ye: Our **Father**....." (Matthew 6:9).
  - b) **Jesus addressed God as Father** in His own prayers:  
"I thank thee, O **Father**, Lord of heaven and earth". (Matthew 11:25).  
"O my **Father**, if it be possible....." (Matthew 26:39,42).  
"He said, Abba, **Father**....." (Mark 14:36).

“I thank thee, O **Father**, Lord of heaven.....” (Luke 10:21).

“Saying, **Father**, if thou be willing.....” (Luke 22:42).

“Then said Jesus, **Father**, forgive them;.....” (Luke 23:34).

“**Father**, the hour is come.....” (John 17:1).

c) **Paul** said, “we cry, Abba, **Father**.” (Romans 8:15).

d) The **Holy Spirit** through Paul said, “God hath sent forth the Spirit of His Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, **Father**”. (Galatians 4:6).

Here the Holy Spirit of God tells us to call God “Abba, Father”, not “Jehovah”.

Ask: If **Jesus**, the **Holy Spirit** and **Paul** all address God as Father nine times (and never as Jehovah) then shouldn’t we call God “Father”?

## 5) No Ancient NT manuscripts contain the tetragram (JHVN) to translate as Jehovah.

The Church writers before 325 AD only mention Jehovah once in passing. JWs tell us that most Bible versions deceive people because they omit Jehovah as God’s Name, so the JWs dishonestly add the word “Jehovah” to the NT text, even though it is not in any NT Greek manuscript, ancient version, papyri or lectionary.

The WT’s claim that “Jehovah” as God’s name was removed from the NT by superstitious scribes, is a total lie with no supporting historical or manuscript evidence.

## 6) Whose Name did the early Christians identify themselves with? Was it Jehovah or was it Jesus Christ? Always Jesus Christ, never Jehovah.

Who knows more, the Apostles or modern JWs? Consider these examples:

a) The Apostles **never** used the name “Jehovah”.

b) The Apostles and first century Christians **were never called “Jehovah’s Witnesses”**.  
“The disciples were called **Christians** first in Antioch.” (Acts 11:26).

c) There is **no proof** that **Jesus** or his **disciples** ever pronounced the tetragram JHVN.

JWs claim that when Jesus read from Isaiah 61:1 “The Spirit of the Lord is upon me..” as quoted in Luke 4:18,19, that Jesus pronounced the word “JHVN”.

This is most unlikely. JWs assume that the religious leaders endorsing Christ’s “gracious words” in verse 22 was because He uttered the name JHVN?

Historical records in the **Mishnah**, from **Josephus**, and from other sources show the Jews were **loathe** to allow the name JHVN to be used. The Jews would not have tolerated it being used by anyone but the High Priest. Jesus would have read “Adonai”.

## 7) 120 Bible passages referring to Jehovah, are quoted and applied to Christ in the New Testament (see Chapter 115).

Ask: In view of 120 Bible verses applying “Jehovah” to Christ in the NT, what does this tell you about who Christ is?

## 8) The New Testament tells us to name the name of Jesus Christ, not the name of Jehovah. Consider these examples:

1. “Let **every one** that nameth the name of Christ depart from iniquity” (2 Timothy 2:19)

2. “I beseech you, brethren, by the name of our **Lord Jesus Christ** . . .” (I Cor 1:10).

3. “Ye are washed,...sanctified,... justified in the name of the **Lord Jesus** “ (I Cor 6:11).

4. “Whatsoever ye do in word or deed, do **all** in the name of the **Lord Jesus**” (Col 3:17)

5. “That the name of our **Lord Jesus Christ** may be **glorified** in you....” (2 Thess 1:12).

6. “Now **we command you**, brethren, in the name of our **Lord Jesus Christ**, that ye withdraw yourselves.....” (II Thess. 3:6).

7. “all that in every place **call** upon the name of Jesus Christ our Lord, both theirs and ours.” (I Corinthians 1:2).

8. “Thou holdest fast **my name**...” Jesus said to the Pergamos church. (Revelation 2:13). JW’s have not held fast Christ’s name, nor have they called upon Christ’s name, nor do they name the name of Christ, nor is Jesus Christ precious to them, because they do not have saving belief in Him. “Unto you . . . which believe He is precious.” (I Peter 2:7).

**Ask:** Where does the NT tell us to name the name of Jehovah?

9) **The New Testament always lifts up Jesus Christ’s name, not Jehovah’s name.** Why? Because Jesus Christ is Jehovah God on earth. Christ is 100% God and 100% man.

**Q1:** In whose name should we **meet together**? Matthew 28:19 states:

“Where two or three are gathered together in **my name**, there am I in the midst of them.”

**Q2: Demons** were cast out by the authority of whose name? Acts 16:18 states:

“Paul...said to the spirit, I command thee in the **name of Jesus Christ** to come out of her.”

**Q3:** In whose name should we **preach repentance** and **forgiveness of sins**?

“And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in **his name** among all nations. And **ye are witnesses** of these things.” (Luke 24:47,48)

**Q4:** In whose name are we to **believe** and receive forgiveness of sins?

“through **his name** whosoever **believes** in him shall receive remission of sins.” Acts 10:43

**Q5:** By whose name, and **no other**, do we obtain **salvation**? Acts 4:10,12 says:

“by the **name of Jesus Christ** ... Neither is there salvation in any other, for there is **none other name** under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.”

**Q6:** In whose name should we **pray**? John 16:23,24; 14:13,14; 15:16 says:

“Whatsoever ye shall ask the Father in **my name**, he will give it you.”

**Q7:** In whose name is the **Holy Spirit sent**? John 14:26 states:

“But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send **in my name.....**”

**Q8:** In whose name and authority did the disciples **heal the sick**?

“**His name** through faith **in his name** hath made this man strong” (Acts 3:16; 4:30)

**Q9:** Whose name did Paul say that we are to **call upon**?

“all that in every place **call upon the name of Jesus Christ** our Lord.” (I Cor 1:2)

**Q10:** Whose name is **above every name**?

“God also hath highly exalted him, and given him a **name** which is **above every name** .... that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is **Lord**.”(Phil 2:9-11)

Paul’s quote about Christ is from Isaiah 45:22-24 where every knee will bow to Jehovah.

What is true about Jehovah, is also true of Christ, the Lord of all mankind

**Q11:** According to Acts 1:8, of whom are we to be **witnesses**?

“Ye shall be **witnesses unto me (Jesus)**”

**Q12:** In whose name were believers **baptized**?

“they were baptized in the **name of the Lord Jesus**”. (Acts 8:16; 2:38)

**Q13:** In whose name were **believers designated**?

“the disciples were called **Christians** first in Antioch”. (Acts 11:26)

**Q14:** In whose name did the **apostles speak**?

“Commanded them not to **speak** at all nor **teach** in the **name of Jesus**” Acts 4:17,18

**Q15:** In whose name did early Christians **suffer**? Acts 15:26 says:

“Men that have **hazarded** their lives for the **name of our Lord Jesus Christ**.”

“rejoicing that they were counted worthy to suffer **shame** for his **name**”Acts 5:41;9:16.

**Q16:** Whose name was **Paul to carry**?

“Lord said: He is a chosen vessel unto me, to **bear my name** before the Gentiles, kings, and the children of Israel.” (Acts 9:15)

**Q17:** In whose name did Paul **deliver a man to Satan?**

“In the name of our Lord Jesus Christ...to deliver such an one to Satan.” I Cor 5:4,5

**Q18:** In whose name did the **apostles teach?** Acts 5:28; 8:12 says:

“Did we not straitly command you that ye should not teach in this name? ”

**10) Why does WT break their own rule** (where the OT speaks of Jehovah), **that they do not insert Jehovah in the NT, when the quote clearly refers to Christ?**

Answer: They do not want Christ to be God, due to their theological bias. Consider three examples:

1) Psalm 102:24,25 (NWT)	Hebrews 1:10 (NWT)
“O my <b>God</b> . . . long ago <u>you laid the foundations of the earth</u> ”	“with reference to the <b>Son</b> : . . . You at the beginning, O <b>Lord</b> laid the foundations of the earth itself . . . ” (v 10)

The Psalm unquestionably speaks of Jehovah God laying the foundations of the earth.

The writer of Hebrews applies it to Christ as Jehovah God laying the foundations of the earth. Yet, if JW's translate “Lord” in the NT as “Jehovah” elsewhere, why don't they translate “Lord” in Hebrews 1:10 as “Jehovah”?

Answer: Because Hebrews 1:10 refers to the Son, and this would make Christ to be Jehovah, which they refuse to accept. The NWT is biased against the Trinity.

2) Isaiah 8:13 (NWT)	I Peter 3:15 (NWT)
“ <b>Jehovah</b> of armies - he is the One whom you should <u>treat as holy</u> . . . ”	“But <u>sanctify</u> the Christ as <b>Lord</b> in your hearts . . . ”

Peter paraphrases Isaiah 8:13 and applies it directly to Christ, saying that we are to sanctify **Christ as Lord (Jehovah)** in our hearts. The NWT committee has shown **bias** in not following their own rules, by **refusing to insert “Jehovah”** into I Peter 3:15.

The WT *Kingdom Interlinear*, p 11 of the Foreword (1985 Edition) states their rule:

“How is a modern translator to know when to render the Greek words “κύριος” or “θεός” as “Jehovah”? By determining where the inspired Christian writers (NT) have quoted from the Hebrew scriptures (OT). Then he must refer back to the original (Hebrew OT) to locate whether “Jehovah” appears there.”

Even the *Kingdom Interlinear* footnote (p.1016) shows that 8 modern Hebrew Bibles have “Jehovah God” in I Peter 3:15 reading as “sanctify the Christ as Jehovah God in your hearts”

**12\*** Jehovah, J<sup>7,8,11-14,16-18,20,22,(23),24</sup>; Lord, κABVgSyp. **15\*** The Christ as Lord, κABC; the Lord God, Textus Receptus; Jehovah God, J<sup>7,8,11-14,16,17,24</sup>.

The NWT committee could not be consistent with their rule.

3) Joel 2:32 (NWT)	Acts 2:21, 38 (NWT)
“Everyone who calls on the <b>name</b> of <u>Jehovah</u> will get away safe;”	“Everyone who calls on the <b>name</b> of <u>Jehovah</u> (v.21) “Peter said, Repent and be baptized in the <b>name</b> of <u>Jesus Christ</u> .” (v.38)

Peter quotes from Joel 2:32 (spoken of Jehovah) and applies it to Jesus in Acts 2:21 and 38. Calling on the **name** of **Jehovah** for salvation equals repenting and being baptized in the **name** of **Jesus Christ** because of the forgiveness of sins.

**Conclusion:** Jesus shares the **nature** of His Father and His **Name**. The absence of JHVH in any NT manuscript demolishes the WT case of introducing the word “Jehovah” into the NT.

**Question:** If God was so concerned about preserving His covenant name, why did the **apostles** not preserve it in their writings?

**Question:** To imply that the name “Jehovah” is the main name of God that we are to use, contradicts the continued NT use of the name **“Jesus” on 900 occasions**, while the **tetragram** JHVH is used **nowhere** in the NT.

**Ask:** Why does the WT not translate “Jehovah” into Hebrews 1:10, I Peter 3:15 and Philippians 2:11, when the OT passages from which these are quoted refer to JHVH? We are to make the name of the Father known as Jesus emphasized (Matthew 6:9; John 17:26). How do we do it? By recognizing that Jesus Christ was chosen by the Father to embody all the glory and important reputation of that Name.

## 8. WATCHTOWER'S WRONG BELIEFS.

Wrong Belief of the Watchtower:	Refuted by Scripture:
Christ is God's Son and is inferior to Him	John 5:23 “honour the Son, as .the Father”.
Christ was the first of God's creation	Micah 5:2 ‘goings forth ...from everlasting’.
Christ died on a stake, not a cross	John 20:25 “the print of the nails”.
Christ's human life was paid as a ransom for obedient humans	Hebrews 2:9 “That He by the grace of God should taste death <b>for every man.</b> ”
Christ was raised from the dead as an immortal spirit person	Luke 24:39 “see ...a spirit has not flesh and bones, as ye see <b>me</b> have”.
Christ's presence (Second Coming) is in spirit	Zech.12:4 “ <u>His feet</u> shall stand in that day on the mount of Olives”.
Earth will never be destroyed or depopulated	Rev. 21:1 “I saw a <u>new earth</u> : the first heaven and the first earth were <u>passed away..</u> ”
Wicked will be eternally destroyed	Rev.14:11 “they have <u>no rest</u> day or night”
The human soul ceases to exist at death	Rev.6:9,10 “ <u>souls</u> of them that were slain ... <u>cried with a loud voice</u> , saying, How long.”
Hell is mankind's common grave	Ezekiel 32:21 “The strong...shall <u>speak</u> to him out of the <u>midst of hell</u> ”.
Only a little flock of 144,000 go to heaven and rule with Christ	Zechariah 14:5 “The Lord my God shall come and <u>all the saints</u> with thee”. (Rev19:1)
Taking blood into body through veins violates God's laws	Leviticus 3:17 “You must not <u>eat</u> any fat or <u>any blood</u> at all”.
The Holy Spirit is not God	II Cor. 3:17 “Now Jehovah is the Spirit”(NWT)

JWs come to your door for two main reasons:

1. They believe that you will be destroyed in the imminent Battle of Armageddon unless you come to Jehovah's organisation for salvation. (WT 15.Nov. 81, p.21)
2. They believe that they will not survive Armageddon unless they engage in this door-to-door preaching work under the direction of the Watchtower Organisation.

“They have a **zeal** of God, but **not according to knowledge**.....they being **ignorant of God's righteousness**, and going about to establish their own righteousness, **have not submitted themselves unto the righteousness of God.**” (Romans 10:2,3).

Most JWs are victims of victims, and blind followers of blind leaders. Most have been non-practising Roman Catholics or Protestants who never got saved.

JWs invited them to study the Bible, but soon switched them to a Watchtower book study. Instead of leading the seeker to God, they led him to the WT organisation.

Notice 15 Watchtower (WT) errors on the following issues:

1. Armageddon - all will be destroyed then, except JWs.
2. Birthdays - no birthday cards or celebrations are allowed.
3. Blood Transfusions - must be refused even if death is likely.
4. True Christianity - vanished after the 12 apostles died. It was restored when Russell started the Watchtower Organisation in the 1870's.
5. Christ Returned - invisibly in 1914, ruling as King on earth through the Watchtower Society. He found them doing the work of the "faithful and wise servant" (Matthew 24:45). He appointed them ruler over all his belongings. All other churches and professed Christians are tools of the devil. Their New World Translation changes references to the second "coming" to "presence". The generation of people who witnessed Christ's invisible return in 1914 will not pass away before Armageddon comes. (Matthew 24:34).
6. Cross - is despised by JWs as a pagan symbol. JWs think that Christ was nailed to a straight upright pole called a stake, without a crossbeam. This is refuted by Thomas in John 20:25 "Except I shall see in his hands the print of the **nails**." Two nails here proves a crossbar was used; one nail would mean a stake. Paul gloried in the Cross. Galat. 6:14
7. Deity - The Father alone is God, and should be addressed as "Jehovah". JWs think that Jesus Christ is not God, but Michael the Archangel in human form. (JWs think that the Holy Spirit is not God, nor a person, but an active force.) They add the word "Jehovah" 237 times to the NWT New Testament with no manuscript support.
8. Disfellowshipping - is the punishment for breaking WT rules. No JWs are allowed to speak to him.
9. Heaven - Only 144,000 people (the "little flock") go to heaven. This number was filled by 1935. Other JWs hope to live on the earth forever. "All the saints with thee." Zech.14:5.
10. Holidays - JWs forbid celebration of Christmas, Easter, Good Friday, New Year's Day, Mothers Day, Fathers Day. "He that regardeth the day, regardeth it to the Lord". Romans 14:5,6.
11. Holy Spirit -JWs say the Holy Spirit is neither God nor a person, but an impersonal active force that God uses to do His will. "knoweth what is the mind of the Spirit." Romans8:27
12. Jesus Christ - JWs say that Jesus Christ is the first-created angel, Michael. No Bible proof.
13. Watchtower Organisation - JWs believe it is the visible agency of the Kingdom of God on earth, ruling all aspects of a JW's life.
14. Resurrection - JWs believe that when Christ died He became non-existent, and that He was raised three days later as a spirit, that is to say, an angel. They deny Christ's bodily resurrection. JWs believe that at Christ's "invisible return in 1914", He then raised dead Christians to spirit life, and that the rest of the human dead will be raised **bodily** during the 1000 year reign of **God's** Kingdom. (No Bible support, just a JW invention). Heb13:8
15. Salvation - although giving lip service to salvation by faith in Christ, JWs believe that salvation only comes by full obedience to the WT Society, and by their zealous door-to-door works program. Those JWs who enter the 1000 year paradise must maintain their good works for 1000 years before they can be sealed for life. 'Not of works' Eph. 2:8,9.

## 9. “DEITY OF CHRIST” VERSES THAT THE NWT CHANGES.

Greek linguists, both Christian and non-Christian, universally reject the NWT as biased and inaccurate. Dr Julius Mantey, one of the world's leading Greek experts, publicly demanded that the Watchtower Society stop misquoting his Greek Grammar to support the NWT. He said: "I have never read any New Testament so badly translated as the Kingdom Interlinear Translation of the Greek Scriptures. It is a distortion of the NT." (Vantage Press, 1980, p.136).

Our purpose is to show how the New World Translation mistranslates key verses which for the last 1900 years have been understood as Deity of Christ proof texts.

### 1. Colossians 1:17

**Ask:** Why does the NWT insert “OTHER” four times, when it is not in any New Testament Greek manuscript?

**Answer:** Because they do not want it to appear that Christ is the Creator and that He existed before all things.

The NWT makes it appear that Jesus was created first, and then He was used by Jehovah to create all other things in the Universe. The JW Kingdom Interlinear Translation (KIT), p.880, shows that the Greek word “panta” means “all things” not “all other things”. Here, by adding “other” they change the meaning of the text from Christ being the Creator, to being a created being on a par with all other created things.

πάσης κτίσεως, 16 διότι ἐν αὐτῷ  
of all creation, because in him

ἐκτίσθη τὰ πάντα ἐν τοῖς οὐρανοῖς  
it was created the all (things) in the heavens  
καὶ ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς, τὰ ὄρατα καὶ  
and upon the earth, the (things) visible and  
τὰ ἀόρατα, εἴτε θρόνοι εἴτε  
the (things) invisible, whether thrones or

κυριότητες εἴτε ἀρχαὶ εἴτε ἔξουσίαι.  
lordships or governments or authorities;

τὰ πάντα δι' αὐτοῦ καὶ εἰς αὐτὸν  
the all (things) through him and into him

ἔκτισται. 17 καὶ αὐτὸς ἐστιν πρὸ<sup>is</sup>  
it has been created; and he is before

πάντων καὶ τὰ πάντα ἐν αὐτῷ  
all (things) and the all (things) in him

συνέστηκεν, 18 καὶ αὐτὸς ἐστιν ἡ  
it has stood together, and he is the

16 because by means  
of him all [other]  
things were created in  
the heavens and upon  
the earth, the things  
visible and the things  
invisible, no matter  
whether they are  
thrones or lordships  
or governments or  
authorities. All [other]  
things have been  
created through him  
and for him. 17 Also,  
he is before all [other]  
things and by means  
of him all [other]  
things were made to  
exist, 18 and he is

**JW Objection:** The WT says that Christ played a junior role in creation since I Cor. 8:6 says that God made the world **by** or **through** (Greek “δια” ie: “dia”) Christ.

**Answer:**

1) This is unacceptable because, while it is true that the Greek word “δια” is used of Christ's role as Creator (John 1:3, I Corinthians 8:6, Colossians 1:16, Hebrews 1:2), “dia” is also used of God as Creator in Romans 11:36 which states that the universe was created “through” (Greek “δια”) God:

“For of him, and **through** him, and to him, are all things.”

Hebrews 2:10 also states that the universe was created “through or by” (Greek “δια”) the Father: “by ( δι ) whom are all things.”

<b>“δια” (by/through) used of God/Father/Christ as CREATOR</b>		
<b>God</b>	Romans 11:36	For of him, and “δια” him, and to him, are all things.
<b>Father</b>	Hebrews 2:10	And “δια” whom are all things
<b>Christ</b>	John 1:2,3	The same was in the beginning with God. And all things were made “δια” him
	I Corinthians 8:6	One Lord Jesus Christ, “δια” whom are all things.
	Colossians 1:15,16	Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature: For “δια” him were all things created
	Hebrews 1:2	His Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, “δια” whom also he made the worlds.

**Ask:** Since the Greek word “δια”, is used of both the Father and the Son, how can it be taken to indicate a lesser role for Christ?

2) Isaiah 44:24 states that **ONLY God is the Creator**:

“I am the LORD that maketh all things; that stretcheth forth the heavens **ALONE**, that spreadeth abroad the earth **by MYSELF**”.

Because **Jehovah** is the maker of all things “alone”, “by myself”, and that **Christ** is the maker of all things (“All things were made by him”) (John 1:3), this proves that Christ is God Almighty.

3) All things were created FOR Christ (Colossians 1:16), means that Christ is the **end** for which all things exist. All things are to serve His will and contribute to His glory.

“All things were created **BY** him and **FOR** him”. Colossians 1:16.

4) Christ as **sole Creator** is seen in John 1:3:

“All things were made by him; and without him was not anything made that was made.”

“by whom also he made the worlds.” (Hebrews 1:2,10).

5) Christ is the **Preserver of the universe**.

He sustains it: “by him all things consist (hold together).” (Colossians 1:17).

6) Christ “is **before all things**.” (Colossians 1:17). Jesus Christ is the great FIRST cause.

7) Christ “**IS** before all things.” Were Christ merely pre-existent, we would say that Christ “**WAS** before all things”. The present tense “**IS**” indicates eternal, unending existence, just as does “I AM” in John 8:24,58.

## 2. **Philippians 2:9**

The NWT (1961 Edition) deceptively **adds the word “other”** in Philippians 2:9 without parentheses or brackets, where “other” appears in no New Testament manuscript. It has been deliberately added by the WT to change the meaning from Christ having the greatest name, to Christ having the second greatest name other than God. Realising their dishonesty, they bracket “other” in the KIT and NWT 1984 edition as seen below:

9 διὸ καὶ ὁ  
through which also the

θεὸς αὐτὸν ὑπερύψωσεν, καὶ 9 For  
God him put high up over, and this very reason also  
ἔχαρισατο αὐτῷ τὸ ὄνομα τὸ ὑπέρ  
he graciously gave to him the name the over  
πᾶν ὄνομα,  
every name,

**Ask:** Which do you believe regarding Philippians 2:9 - the WT organisation with no Greek manuscript support, or all the NT manuscripts?

3. **Zechariah 12:10** “..they shall look upon me (Jehovah) whom they have pierced...”  
Jehovah is speaking in Zechariah 12:1-10 of Christ’s return, Israel’s conversion, and Israel looking on **Me** (Jehovah) whom they (Israel) have pierced. Jehovah is saying that Israel have pierced Me (Jehovah), yet we all know that Israel have pierced Jesus Christ. Based on the rule of logic that if  $a = b$  and  $b = c$  then  $a = c$ , we must accept that:

**Jehovah = Me whom they pierced = Christ.**

JWs, not willing to face the obvious fact that **Jesus is Jehovah**, have deliberately altered the text, and changed the Bible, from ‘Me’ to ‘the One’, with no manuscript support. Hence, in the NWT it is not Jehovah who was pierced but the One (Jesus) who was pierced. They break the connection between Jehovah and Jesus.

NWT:

**Question:** What evidence is there for the reading ‘Me’?

i) The Hebrew Masoretic Text reads ‘Me’.

<sup>10</sup>And I will pour on the house of David, and on the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the Spirit of grace and of prayers. And they shall look on Me whom they have pierced; and they shall mourn for Him, as one mourns for an only son, and shall be bitter over Him, like the bitterness over the firstborn.

10      1004, 59, 21      8210      לְפָנֶיךָ עַל־בֵּית  
the on will I And      5027      84, 69      2580      7307      3389      3427      15921      17, 32  
of house out pour      4843      31, 73      5594      4553      1856      834  
on they And and grace the ,Jerusalem in-the and ,David  
Me look shall .prayers of Spirit of habitants on  
will and only an for one as for they and have they whom  
bitter be ,son mourns ,Him mourn shall ,pierced

ii) The Greek Septuagint translation of the Old Testament reads ‘Me’.

nations that come against Jerusalem. <sup>10</sup>And I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and compassion: and <sup>9</sup>they shall look upon me, because they have mocked me, and they shall make lamentation for him, as for a beloved friend, and they shall grieve intensely, as for a first-born son.

Ιερουσαλήμ. Καὶ ἔκχεω ἐπὶ τὸν οἶκον Δαυὶδ, καὶ ἐπὶ τὸν κατόικοντας Ιερουσαλήμ πνεῦμα χάριτος καὶ οἰκτηριοῦ· καὶ ἐπιβλέψονται πρὸς με, ἀνθ' ὧν κατωρχύσαντο· καὶ κόψονται ἐπ' αὐτὸν κοπετόν, ὡς ἐπ' ἀγαπητῷ, καὶ ὁδυνηθήσονται ὁδύνηροι.

iii) The early Church writer Cyprian (200-258 AD) quotes ‘Me’.

(*The Treaties of Cyprian*, Vol.5, p.524)

elect.”<sup>13</sup> Also in Zechariah : “ And they shall look upon me, whom they have pierced.”<sup>14</sup> Also

Cyprian quoted from his Bible in 200 AD. Also, ‘Me’ is quoted in the Old Latin version, the Syriac Peshitta, the Aramaic Targums, as well as other early church writers. John’s gospel interprets Zechariah 12:10 as a prophecy of Christ’s death on the cross (John 19:37). Jesus Christ is clearly described as ‘pierced’ in Revelation 1:7.

**Ask:** Since ‘Me’ identifies Jehovah as Jesus, whom will you believe:

the Hebrew Text, the Septuagint and the early church writers all saying ‘Me’, or the NWT saying ‘the One’ with no manuscript support?

**Ask:** Why does the NWT go against the manuscripts here?

**Ask:** According to the manuscripts, who is Jesus in Zechariah 12:10? (Me/Jehovah).

**4. Acts 20:28 Why does the NWT add ‘Son’?**

NWT	Acts 20:28	KJV
To shepherd the congregation of <b>God</b> , which he purchased with the blood of his <b>own</b> [Son]	Feed the church of <b>God</b> , which he has purchased with <b>his own blood</b> .	

The NWT, by adding [Son], makes it appear that the church was purchased NOT by God’s blood (which would make Jesus equal to God), but by the Son’s blood.

**Question 1:** Who does ‘his own blood’ in the KJV refer to?

**Answer:** It can only be God, because **God** is the antecedent that the pronoun ‘his’ refers to. This is a universally accepted rule of English grammar.

**Question 2:** Why does the NWT add the word ‘Son’ in this verse when ‘Son’ is not found in any Greek manuscripts in the world? (Due to WT’s bias against Christ’s deity).

**Answer:** ‘his own blood’ found in the KJV teaches that Christ’s blood is God’s blood. This is a doctrine that proves that Jesus is God. JWs refuse to accept that Jesus is God, so they change this verse to agree with their view of Christ being less than God, by adding the word ‘Son’. They thus **break the connection** between God equalling Christ.

**Question 3:** What evidence is there for the reading ‘with his own blood’ (KJV and all other translations)?

i) All Greek manuscripts, all ancient versions and all lectionaries have ‘his own blood’. Notice that the Greek word for “Son” (**ύιος**) is not anywhere in the Greek text:

28 προσέχετε ἔσαυτοῖς καὶ πάντι  
Be you paying attention to selves and to all  
τῷ ποιμνίῳ, ἐν ᾧ ὁ ὑμᾶς τὸ πνεῦμα τὸ  
the flock, in which you the spirit the  
ἄγιον ἔθετο ἐπισκόπους, ποιμαίνειν τὴν  
holy put overseers, to be shepherding the  
ἐκκλησίαν τοῦ θεοῦ, ἣν περιεποιήσατο  
ecclesia of the God, which he reserved for self  
διὰ τοῦ αἵματος τοῦ ἴδιου. 29 ἐγὼ  
through the blood of the own (one). I

28 Pay attention to  
yourselves and to  
all the flock, among  
which the holy spirit  
has appointed you  
overseers, to shepherd  
the congregation of  
God,\* which he pur-  
chased with the blood  
of his own [Son].\*

ii) The early church writer Tertullian quotes it correctly in 200-250 AD.

Volume 4, p.46

So far as I know, “we are not our own, but bought with a price;”<sup>3</sup> and what kind of price? The blood of God.<sup>4</sup> In hurting this flesh of

**Ask:** Why does the WT organisation add the word ‘Son’ into the verse, when not one Greek NT manuscript in the world contains ‘Son’?

**Ask:** Do you think it is acceptable to insert words into the Bible that are not found in any NT Greek manuscripts?

Jesus, who is called God, shed His own blood for the flock. Jesus was fully God and fully man. He was always one person. Christ the God-man shed His blood to pay for our sins.

In His **human** nature, Christ knew hunger (Luke 4:2), weariness (John 4:6) and sleepiness (Luke 8:23).

In His **divine** nature, Christ was omniscient (John 2:24), omnipresent (John 1:48) and omnipotent (John 11; Matthew 28:20).

## 5. Hebrews 1:8 and Psalm 45:6

KJV (Psalm 45:6)	KJV (Hebrews 1:8)
'Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever....'	'But unto the Son he saith, Thy throne, O God is for ever and ever.....'

'Thy throne, O God' is changed by the JWs to 'God is thy throne'.

The Watchtower alters these verses so that Jesus cannot be called 'God'. They change it to appear that Jesus' authority has its source in Jehovah God, by altering it to 'God is your throne forever'. The KJV shows Jesus is God and the NWT diminishes Jesus to be less than God. Hebrews 1:8 is quoted from Psalm 45:6.

NWT (Psalm 45:6)	NWT (Hebrews 1:8)
'God is your throne to time indefinite, even forever...'	But with reference to the Son: 'God is your throne forever and ever....'

The NWT is wrong because:

- i) NWT reverses the word order in the Greek NT in Hebrews 1:8.      8 But

/ 8 πρὸς δὲ τὸν οἰών  
toward but the Son  
'Ο θρόνος σου ὁ θεὸς εἰς τὸν αἰώνα  
The throne of you the God into the age  
τοῦ αἰώνος, καὶ ἡ ράβδος τῆς εὐθύτητος  
of the age, and the staff of the straightness  
ράβδος τῆς βασιλείας αὐτοῦ. 9 Ἡγάπησας  
staff of the kingdom of him. You loved

with reference to the Son: "God is your throne forever and ever, and [the] scepter of your kingdom is the scepter of uprightness. 9 You loved righteousness, and you hated lawlessness.

- ii) The Septuagint, which is the Greek translation of Psalm 45:6 reads, 'Thy throne, O God.....'

6 Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever: the sceptre of thy kingdom is a sceptre of righteousness. 7 Thou hast loved righteousness, and hated iniquity: therefore God, thy God, has anointed thee with the oil of gladness beyond thy fellows.

'Ο θρόνος σου ὁ Θεὸς εἰς αἰώνα αἰώνος, ράβδος εὐθύτητος ἡ 6  
ράβδος τῆς βασιλείας σου. 7 Ἡγάπησας δικαιοσύνην, καὶ ἐμ- 7

- iii) The Hebrew of Psalm 45:6 has the vocative of address 'O God'.

'O God' in the Hebrew means that God is being addressed.

6 Your  
throne, O God, is forever  
and ever; the scepter of  
Your kingdom is a scepter  
of uprightness. You love

7 7626 5703 57.67 43.0 3678  
scop-a and (is), God O Your  
throne  
and שְׁבֵט כָּסָךְ אֱלֹהִים עַלְמָם וְעַד שְׁבֵט

- iv) The Watchtower interpretation is foreign to the context.

The writer to the Hebrews quotes Psalm 45:6 and applies it to Christ, as God, being superior to the angels. If the purpose of Hebrews 1:8 in the NWT is just to show that Jesus derives His authority from Jehovah God, as the Watchtower says, then Jesus' superiority is not demonstrated in the least. After all, the angels, Moses, the Apostles and every believer derive their authority from Jehovah God.

However, the message of Hebrews 1:8 ('Thy throne, O God is for ever and ever') is that God's throne is Christ's throne - they are one and the same.

That is, all that is God's is also Christ's as John 16:15 says:

'All things that the Father hath are mine.'

This is true of God's throne. Christ owns God's throne as Revelation 22:1 says:

'The throne of God and of the Lamb.'

Christ sits on the throne of God exercising the **same authority** as the Father.

Ask: Can you see that the NWT interpretation is foreign to the context?

- v) The early church writers quote 'Thy throne, O God is forever' from their Bibles from 110-250 AD.

- a) Justin Martyr (110-165 AD) in his dialogue with Trypho. Volume 1, p.224 and p.229.

in other words : 'Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever. A sceptre of equity is the sceptre of Thy kingdom : Thou hast loved righteousness

And speaking in other words, which also have been already quoted, [he says] : 'Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever: a sceptre of rectitude is the sceptre of Thy kingdom.

- b) Tertullian (145-220 AD) defends the doctrine of the Holy Trinity against Praxeas. Vol 3, p.607.

listen to the psalm in which Two are described as God: "Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever; the sceptre of Thy kingdom is a sceptre of righteousness. Thou hast loved righteousness, and hated iniquity: therefore God, even Thy God, hath anointed Thee or made Thee His Christ."<sup>12</sup> Now, since He

Tertullian believed, quoted and taught the Trinity as seen in Volume 3, p.606.

Still, in these few quotations the distinction of *Persons in the Trinity* is clearly set forth. For there is the Spirit Himself who speaks, and the Father to whom He speaks, and the Son of whom He speaks.<sup>13</sup>

This is well before 325 AD that JWs say that the Trinity doctrine was introduced by Rome.

- c) Cyprian (200-258 AD). Volume 5, p.518.

Psalm: "Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever: the sceptre of righteousness is the sceptre of Thy kingdom. Thou hast loved righteousness,

- d) Melito (about 140-195 AD) Volume 8, p.761.

*The throne of the Lord* — angels, or saints, or simply sovereign dominion.<sup>9</sup> In the Psalm: "Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever."<sup>10</sup>

- vi) The NWT's 'God is your throne' is clearly a **wrong reading** because Hebrew parallelism favours 'Thy throne, O God' in Psalm 45:6.

Notice: verse 3 'Gird thy sword..... O most mighty'.

verse 6 'Thy throne..... O God....'.

verse 10 'Hearken..... O daughter...'.  
Ask: In view of Hebrew parallelism, can you see how the Watchtower translation of Hebrews 1:8 ('God is your throne') is wrong?

The writer of Hebrews 1:8 places Jesus on **par** with **God** regarding His **nature**, but subordinate to **God** regarding to **function**.

## 6. Hebrews 1:6

Why did the Watchtower change “worship him” in the 1961 edition of the NWT, to “do obeisance to him” in the 1971 NWT edition?

**6 But** when he again brings his First-born into the inhabited earth, he says: “And let all God’s angels

**6 But** when he again brings his First-born<sup>a</sup> into the inhabited earth, he says: “And let all God’s angels<sup>s</sup> do obeisance to him.”<sup>s</sup>

The word for “worship” in Greek is “προσκυνεω”<sup>4352</sup> (“proskuneo”). When one is much inferior, he fell upon his knees and touched his forehead to the ground before his superior, or prostrated himself, throwing kisses to his superior. This is what Greek writers mean by “προσκυνεω”. It means to kiss, like a dog licking his masters hand; to prostrate; to worship. Another Greek word indicating “reverence” or “half-heartedness, non genuine worship” is “σεβομαι”<sup>4576</sup> (“sebomai”) used in:

- i) Matthew 15:9 and Mark 7:7. “...in vain do they worship me”.
- ii) Acts 16:14. “...unconverted Lydia worshipped God”.
- iii) Acts 19:27. “Diana.....whom all Asia and the world worships”.

If Christ is to be reverenced as a created being, as the Watchtower claims, then “sebomai” would be used. But the NT uses “προσκυνεω” (proskuneo) as **worship to God** and “προσκυνεω” (proskuneo) as **worship to Christ**. This shows that Christ is 100% God.

**Ask:** Why does the NWT translate “προσκυνεω” as “worship” when it applies to God, angels, devils, the antichrist and images, but when “προσκυνεω” is used for worshipping Christ as God, they translate it as “do obeisance”?

Consider these occurrences of “προσκυνεω” meaning “worship” in the New World Translation. The KJV always translates “προσκυνεω” (proskuneo) correctly as “worship”.

New World Translation of the Word ‘προσκυνεω’			
FATHER	CHRIST	ANGELS	DEVILS
Worship	<u>Do obeisance</u>	Worship	Worship
Matthew 4:10	Matthew 2:2	Rev 19:10	Matthew 4:9
Luke 4:8	Matthew 2:8	Rev 22:8	Luke 4:7
John 4:20	Matthew 2:11		Acts 7:43
John 4:21	Matthew 8:2		Rev 9:20
John 4:22 (a)	Matthew 9:18		Rev 13:4 (a)
John 4:22 (b)	Matthew 14:33		Rev 13:4 (b)
John 4:23 (a)	Matthew 15:25		Rev 13:8
John 4:23 (b)	Matthew 18:26		Rev 13:12
John 4:24 (a)	Matthew 20:20		Rev 13:15
John 4:24 (b)	Matthew 28:9		Rev 14:9
I Cor 14:25	Matthew 28:17		Rev 14:11
Hebrews 11:21	Mark 5:6		Rev 16:2
Rev 4:10	Mark 15:19		Rev 19:20
Rev 5:14	Luke 24:52		Rev 20:4
Rev 7:11	John 9:38		
Rev 11:16	Hebrews 1:6		
Rev 14:7			
Rev 15:4			
Rev 19:4			

It is obvious that the Watchtower wants to avoid every reference to Christ being Jehovah God, so they refuse to translate “προσκυνεω“ as “worship” when it refers to Christ.

Notice these problems with the Watchtower “obeisance”:

- i) **Ask:** Why did the 1961 edition of NWT translate Hebrews 1:6 to say that we should **worship** Jesus, while the 1971 edition says that we should merely **do obeisance** to Him?
- ii) If the NWT is correct in saying that Jesus is a created being and is not to be worshipped, then the Father Himself is guilty of committing a horrible sin by commanding all the angels of God (in Hebrews 1:6) to commit a sacrilegious act in worshipping (προσκυνεω) a mere creature.
- iii) If the NWT is correct in saying that Jesus is Michael the Archangel, then why would God command the angels to worship a fellow created angel (in Hebrews 1:6)?  
God has clearly stated that worship is to be directed to God alone.  
“Thou shalt worship no other god.” Exodus 34:14  
“Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God.” Matthew 4:10
- iv) In the New Testament, angels are clearly shown to **reject worship**.  
“I fell at his feet to worship him. He said see thou do it not...worship God.” Rev.19:10; 22:8.

**Ask:** If angels refused worship when it was offered, why did Christ accept worship 16 times?  
By accepting worship, He claimed to be God.

**Note:** The “προσκυνεω“ worship that the angel refused and told John to **give to God**, is the same “προσκυνεω“ worship that the Father commands angels to **give to Jesus** in Hebrews 1:6. Hence, Christ was worshipped with the same kind of “προσκυνεω“ worship given to the Father.

**Ask:** What does it say about Jesus’ true identity if He receives the same “προσκυνεω“ worship as Jehovah the Father? (Answer: Jesus’ true identity is Jehovah the Son.)

**Ask:** Is it appropriate to give the Son the same worshipful honour that is given to the Father?  
Answer: Yes, says John 5:23 in the NWT, “..that all may honour the Son just as they honour the Father. He that does not honour the Son, does not honour the Father who sent him.”

**Ask:** Do you give the Son worshipful honour just as you give to the Father?

## 7. Titus 2:13 Why does WT break the Greek Granville-Sharp Rule here, by adding [the] which occurs in no NT manuscripts.

NWT	Titus 2:13	KJV
“While we wait for the happy hope and glorious manifestation of the <b>great God</b> and of [the] <b>Saviour</b> of us, Christ Jesus.”		“Looking for that blessed hope, and the glorious appearing of the <b>great God</b> and our <b>Saviour</b> Jesus Christ.”

The NWT has mistranslated this verse (by adding [the] **to make two persons**) in order to deny the deity of Christ, a doctrine they refuse to accept.

By adding “the” in brackets, they deny the fact that Paul unmistakably calls Jesus “**Our God and Saviour**”. They have made it read as if Paul were speaking of two separate persons here, God and Jesus, rather than one person, Jesus, who is named our “Great God and Saviour”.

- i) JWs violate what Greek grammarians call the **Granville-Sharp rule** which states that: “When two singular person nouns (such as “God” and “Saviour”) of the same case (“God” and “Saviour” are of the same case) are connected with “and” (the Greek word is “καὶ”) and the modifying article “the” (the Greek word “the” is “δέ”) appears only before the first noun, not before the second noun, then both nouns MUST refer to the same person (in Titus 2:13, Jesus Christ is both God and Saviour).”

In an exhaustive study, C Kuehne found this Granville-Sharp rule to have no exceptions in the entire New Testament.

**Key:** ‘The great God and Saviour’ is Jesus Christ. This is agreed to by Greek scholars, B Metzger, J Mantey, K Wuest, A T Robertson and others. They all agree that **only one person** (Jesus Christ) is described in Titus 2:13 as ‘the great God and our Saviour’. ‘God and Saviour’ refer to the same person, Jesus Christ.

The presence of **only one definite article** has the effect of binding together the two title ‘God’ and ‘Saviour’.

**Ask:** In view of what all top Greek scholars say about Titus 2:13, are you willing to consider the possibility that only one person is discussed in this verse, and not two?

**Ask:** If only one person (Jesus Christ) is discussed in Titus 2:13, then who is Jesus described as in this verse? ( Answer: our God and Saviour).

- ii) An illustration of this rule applying to the one person is: ‘My wife and friend Tania’.
- iii) **Why does the Watchtower get the Granville-Sharp rule wrong when it applies to Christ (two occasions), and right everywhere else where Christ’s Deity is not an issue?**  
Consider these eight examples:

1) Titus 2:13

KJV: of (**the great God and our Saviour**) Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

NWT: ‘**of the great God and of (the) Saviour Jesus Christ**’ = 2 persons (wrong!)

NWT is WRONG because there is no second article to justify ‘the’ (Ask: Where is the 2nd article?)

*τοῦ μεγάλου θεοῦ καὶ σωτῆρος ἡμῶν Ἰησοῦ χριστοῦ,*  
great God and Saviour of our Jesus Christ;

2) II Peter 1:1

KJV: of (**God and our Saviour**) Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

NWT: ‘**of our God and (the) Saviour Jesus Christ**’ = 2 persons (wrong!)

NWT is WRONG because there is no second article to justify ‘the’ (Ask: Where is the 2nd article?)

*τοῦ θεοῦ ἡμῶν καὶ σωτῆρος Ἰησοῦ χριστοῦ,*  
of our God and Saviour Jesus Christ:

3) II Peter 1:11

KJV ‘**of (our Lord and Saviour)** Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

NWT ‘**of (our Lord and Saviour)** Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

*βασιλείαν τοῦ κυρίου ἡμῶν καὶ σωτῆρος Ἰησοῦ χριστοῦ.*  
kingdom of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ.

4) II Peter 2:20

KJV: ‘knowledge of (**the Lord and Saviour**) Jesus Christ) = 1 person (right)

NWT: ‘knowledge of (**the Lord and Saviour**) Jesus Christ) = 1 person (right)

*ἐπιγνώσει τοῦ κυρίου καὶ σωτῆρος Ἰησοῦ χριστοῦ,*  
knowledge of the Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ,

5) II Peter 3:2

KJV: ‘apostles of (**the Lord and Saviour**) = 1 person (right)

NWT: ‘apostles of (**the Lord and Saviour**) = 1 person (right)

*τοῦ κυρίου καὶ σωτῆρος*  
of the Lord and Saviour;

## 6) II Peter 3:18

KJV: 'knowledge of (our Lord and Saviour) Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

NWT: 'knowledge of (our Lord and Saviour) Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

*γνώσει τοῦ κυρίου ἡμῶν καὶ σωτῆρος Ἰησοῦ χριστοῦ  
in [the] knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ.  
αὐτῷ ἡ δόξα καὶ νῦν καὶ εἰς ἡμέραν αἰώνος. ἀμήν.  
To him [be] glory both now and to [the] day of eternity. Amen.*

## 7) I Peter 1:3

KJV: 'Blessed be (the God and Father) of our Lord Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

NWT: 'Blessed be (the God and Father) of our Lord Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

*Εὐλογητὸς ὁ Θεὸς καὶ πατὴρ τοῦ κυρίου ἡμῶν Ἰησοῦ  
Blessed [be] the God and Father of our Lord Jesus*

## 8) Ephesians 1:3

KJV: 'Blessed be (the God and Father) of our Lord Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

NWT: 'Blessed by (the God and Father) of our Lord Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

*Εὐλογητὸς ὁ Θεὸς καὶ πατὴρ τοῦ κυρίου ἡμῶν Ἰησοῦ  
Blessed [be] the God and Father of our Lord Jesus*

iv) In Titus 2:13, the Greek word for 'appearing' is never used by Paul in the NT of the Father appearing, but is used exclusively of Jesus Christ's appearing. (See II Thess 2:8, I Timothy 6:14, II Timothy 1:10 and 4:1, 8). Indeed, an appearing of the 'invisible God', other than as the visible Christ, would be impossible.

v) A T Robertson, one of the world's chief Greek grammar authorities, states in *Word Pictures in the NT*, Vol VI, p 147,148 regarding II Peter 1:1:

The O.T. sense of *dikaiosunē* applied to God (Rom. 1:17) and here to Christ. Of our God and Saviour Jesus Christ (*tou theou hēmōn kai sōtēros Iēsou Christou*). So the one article (*tou*) with *theou* and *sōtēros* requires precisely as with *tou kuriou hēmōn kai sōtēros Iēsou Christou* (of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ), one person, not two, in 1:11 as in 2:20; 3:2, 18. So in I Pet. 1:3 we have *ho theos kai patēr* (the God and Father), one person, not two. The grammar is uniform and inevitable (Robertson, *Grammar*, p. 786), as even Schmiedel (Winer-Schmiedel, *Grammatik*, p. 158) admits: "Grammar demands that one person be meant." Moulton (*Prol.*, p. 84) cites papyri examples of like usage of *theos* for the Roman emperors. See the same idiom in Titus 2:13.

Ask: Who is right, all the Greek experts in the world, or Watchtower translators who did not know Greek well and **did not** use the Granville-Sharp rule consistently?

**8. II Peter 1:1 Why does the WT break the Greek Granville-Sharp rule here by adding [the], which occurs in no Greek manuscripts?**

NWT	KJV
“by the righteousness of our God and [ <b>the</b> ] Saviour Jesus Christ”	“through the righteousness of God and our Saviour Jesus Christ”.

The KJV means that Jesus Christ is “**God and our Saviour**” as the Granville-Sharp rule demands. The WT does not like this. The NWT **changes it to mean that two persons** are discussed: “our God” (one person), and secondly “[the] Saviour Jesus Christ” (another person) different from and less than God. They therefore dishonestly break the link that proves that Jesus Christ is God. The Greek has no second article to support the NWT’s inclusion of [**the**].

**Ask:** Can you continue in the WT organisation when it shows such gross dishonesty and bias?

**9. John 1:1 Is Jesus Christ “a god” or “God”? “καὶ θεὸς ἦν ὁ λόγος”**

JW New World Translation	KJV and all others
“In [the] beginning the Word was, and the Word was with <b>God</b> , and the Word was <b>a god</b> .”	“In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was <b>God</b> .”

**Watchtower Teaching:** The NWT translates the first “θεὸς” in John 1:1 as “God”, and the second “θεὸς” as “a god”. In the Greek, there is a definite article “the” (“ὁ”) before the first occurrence of God (ὁ θεὸς = the God). However, there is no definite article “the” before the second occurrence of “God”.

WT argues (falsely) that, when a noun **has** a definite article (like “ὁ θεὸς”), it points to an identity or personality, such as the person of Jehovah God. The WT claims (falsely) that the same phrase (“ὁ θεὸς”) is never used of Jesus Christ in the NT (*Watchtower*, 1 July 86, p31).

**(Note:** “ὁ θεὸς” **is used** of Christ in Matthew 1:23, John 20:28 and Hebrews 1:8).

The WT claims (falsely) that when a singular predicate **noun** **has no** definite article, and it occurs before a verb (as theos in John 1:1c), then it points to a **quality** about someone, so that here it says that Jesus (the Word) has a divine quality, but is not God Almighty (*KIT*, p.1139). They alone translate Jesus as “a god”.

To support this view they quote:

- Johannes Greber NT** (1937), a spiritist who claimed that spirits helped him translate the NT (*Watchtower*, 15 September 62, p.554; 15 October 73, p.640). The WT knew he was a spiritist in 1956 (*Watchtower*, 15 February 1956, p 110, 111), yet they still quoted him.
- Dr Julius Mantey, who refutes their translation saying: “They have forgotten entirely what the (word) order of the sentence indicates that the “λόγος” (“logos” or “Word” in English) has the same substance, nature or essence as the Father. To indicate that Jesus was “a god” would need a completely different construction in the Greek. They misquoted me in support of their translation. 99% of Greek scholars and Bible translators in the world disagree with JWs.”

**Bible Teaching:** The NWT is wrong in translating John 1:1 as “a god” for these reasons:

- JWs claim that, because the second “θεὸς” (theos) has no definite article, we should translate it as “**a god**”. (*Kingdom Interlinear Translation*, p 1139). Then why has the NWT JW version broken their rule four times in John 1:6, 12, 13, 18 by translating “θεὸς” with no article as “**God**”? They are inconsistent, as seen below:

- Verse 1: καὶ θεὸς ἦν ὁ λόγος  
and God was the Word.
- Verse 6: Ἐγένετο ἄνθρωπος ἀπεσταλμένος παρὰ θεοῦ,  
There was a man sent from God,
- Verse 12: τέκνα θεοῦ γενέσθαι,  
children of God to be,
- Verse 13: ἐκ θελήματος ἀνδρὸς ἀλλ' ἐκ θεοῦ ἐγεννήθησαν.  
of will of man but of God were born.
- Verse 18: 18 θεὸν οὐδεὶς ἑώρακεν πάποτε.  
God no one has seen at any time;

If the NWT was consistent, they should translate ‘θεος’ as ‘a god’ in these cases too:

- v. 6 ‘There was a man sent from a god.’  
v.12 ‘to them gave he power to become the children of a god.’  
v.13 ‘nor of the will of man, but of a god.’  
v.18 ‘no man hath seen a god at any time.’

This is clearly wrong and ridiculous. Why only in verse one do they refuse to translate ‘θεος’ as ‘God’? Because they don’t want Christ to be Jehovah God. The Watchtower’s mistranslation of John 1:1 is not supported by any Greek grammar textbook.

Many other verses have ‘θεος’ + no article, and yet are correctly translated as ‘God’, such as Matthew 5:9; 6:24; Luke 1:35, 78; 2:40; John 3:2, 21; 9:16, 33; I Corinthians 1:30; 15:10; Philippians 2:11,13; Titus 1:1; Romans 1:17, 18.

2. JW’s say that by translating ‘θεος’ as ‘a god’, then Christ is a lesser god, a divine person.  
Answer: If John had intended this adjectival sense (ie ‘the Word was divine’), **he had an adjective ‘θειος’ (theios=godlike<sup>2304</sup>) available** to use as found in II Peter 1:3, 4 (‘divine power’ and ‘divine nature’), if Christ was just a divine lesser god.

Instead, John uses ‘’ meaning ‘God’.

Spiros Zodhiates, in his book *Was Christ God?* ( p.102), states assertively:

‘It would, therefore, be **totally wrong** to translate the statement that John makes in John 1:1 as “the Word was divine”. The word which is used in the original Greek is ‘θεος’ (theos) “God”, not ‘θειος’ (theios) “divine”. Jesus Christ did not merely have divine attributes, but He was God in His essence and nature. He was not a man who attained divinity, but God who humbled Himself to take upon Himself human nature in addition to His deity.’

3. Contrary to the Watchtower claim, ‘θεος’ (God) with the definite article (‘ὁ’) is used of Jesus Christ in the New Testament:

- i) John 20:28.

Θωμᾶς καὶ εἶπεν αὐτῷ, ‘Ο.κύριός μου καὶ ὁ.θεός μου.  
Thomas and said to him, My Lord and my God.

- ii) Matthew 1:23.

Ἐμμανουὴλ, ὁ ἐστιν μεθερμηνευμένον, Μεθ’ ἡμῶν ὁ θεός.  
Emmanuel, which is, being interpreted, With us God.

- iii) Hebrews 1:8.

τὸν υἱόν, ‘Ο.θρόνος σου, ὁ θεός.  
the Son, Thy throne, O God,

Hence, the same word ‘ὁ θεός’ (ho theos) used of the Father is also used of Christ.

4. JW's say that Jesus is 'a god'. Jehovah disagrees with them in **Isaiah 44:8** by saying: 'Is there a God beside me? yea, there is no God; I know not any.' (KJV and NWT). Jehovah says that **there is no 'a God'** beside Him. This shows John 1:1 in the NWT to be wrong. Hence, **Jesus cannot be 'a God'**, so He must be 'the God'.
5. Ancient **UNCIAL** Greek manuscripts were all written in **capital letters**, so one could not distinguish between 'God' and 'god', except by the context, and whether the writer believed in one true God or in more than one god.
- Ask: Did the Apostle John believe in one true God or more than one true God? Since John believed in one true God, we conclude that Jesus is the one true God in John 1:1.
6. JW's say that Jesus is 'a god' with Jehovah, as seen from 'the Word was with God.' They say that if Christ is 'with' God, He cannot be God.
- Answer: 'with' (Greek 'προς') means that Christ was so intimately connected with God, that He is God. 'There are no gods together with me'. (Deut 32:39 NWT)  
 'There is no god with me.' (Deuteronomy 32:39 KJV)
- Hence, Jehovah says that there are **no gods with Jehovah**, so Christ must be Jehovah God.
7. Every **Greek scholar** in the world is against the NWT translation of John 1:1 'the word was a god'. Examples include:
- M.R.Vincent:** 'The λόγος (logos) of John is the real personal God'. (*Word Studies in Gk NT*, p383)
- K.Wuest:** 'The Word was as to His essence absolute deity'. (*Word Studies in Gk.NT* p 209)
- A.T.Robertson:** 'the Word was God, of Divine nature; not "a god"'. (*Expositors Gk Testmnt*, p684)
- Spiros Zodhiates:** 'In John 1:1, Jesus Christ in His pre-incarnate state is called the Word, presenting as the second person of the Godhead'. (*NT Word Study Dictionary*, p 935)
- W.E.Vine:** 'the λόγος (logos), the Word, the personal manifestation, not of a part of the divine nature, but of the whole deity'. (*Complete Expository Dictionary of NT Words*, p683)
8. **All other gods are false gods.**  
 Hence, Jesus Christ in John 1:1 must be either the only true God Jehovah or a false god. Which one?
9. **Church Writers writing before 325 AD** all agree that John 1:1 is 'the Word was God', and that it means that Jesus is fully God and man.  
 This verse was never disputed before the occultist Greber's NT was published in 1937. Notice 12 Church writers before 325 AD who all quote John 1:1 correctly as 'the Word was God'. Ask: Why do none of them quote it as 'a god'?
- These early Church writers **knew Greek** as their **mother tongue** and first language,
  - These men often were quoting from the **original autographs**.
- 1) **Irenaeus**, (120-202 AD) Vol 1, p 328 the Word was with God," for He was the beginning ; " and the Word was God," of course, for that which is begotten of God is God.
- Vol 1, p 428 ation from the Father, thus declaring, " In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God."<sup>8</sup>
- Vol 1, p 546 witness, when he speaks thus in the Gospel : " In the beginning was the Word, and the Wcrd was with God, and the Word was God. This was in

## 2) Theophilus of Antioch (115-181 AD)

Vol 2, p 103,

God was alone, and the Word in Him. Then he says, "The Word was God; all things came into existence through Him; and apart from Him not one thing came into existence." The Word, then, being God, and being naturally<sup>7</sup> produced from God, whenever the Father of the universe wills, He sends Him to any place;

## 3) Clement of Alexandria (153-217 AD)

Vol 2, p 173,

and "in the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God."<sup>2</sup> This Word, then, the Christ, the cause of both our being at first (for He was in God) and of our well-being, this very Word has now appeared as man, He alone being both, both God and man—the Author of all blessings to us; by whom we, being

## 4) Tertullian (145-220 AD), Vol 3

p 488

Son is the Word, and "the Word is God,"<sup>1</sup> and "I and my Father are one."<sup>2</sup> But after  
p 602

Is that Word of God, then, a void and empty thing, which is called the Son, who Himself is designated God? "The Word was with God, and the Word was God."<sup>2</sup>

p.607

"In the beginning was the Word"<sup>5</sup>—that is, the same beginning, of course, in which God made the heaven and the earth,<sup>6</sup>—"and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

p. 489

Now if He too is God, according to John, (who says,) "The Word was God,"<sup>8</sup> then you have two Beings—One that commands that the thing be made, and the Other that executes the order and creates. In what sense, however, you ought to understand Him to be another, I have already explained, on the ground of Personality, not of Substance—in the way of distinction, not of division.<sup>9</sup> But although I must everywhere hold one only substance in three coherent and inseparable (Persons),

## Origen de Principiis p 291

Gospel John indicates the same thing, saying, "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God: the same was in the beginning with God: all things were

p 603

## 5) Origen (185-254 AD), Vol.4

p 262

in his Gospel, saying, "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. The same was in the beginning with God. All things were made by Him, and

## p 553 Origen against Celsus

"In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God;"<sup>6</sup> while in our judgment also,

If, however, we attend to the passage, "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God,"<sup>8</sup> we are of opin-

p 642

For the Lord of those who are "ambassadors for Christ" is Christ Himself, whose ambassadors they are, and who is "the Word, who was in the beginning, was with God, and was God."<sup>2</sup>

## Vol. 5, p 518

Also in the Gospel according to John: "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and God was the Word."<sup>8</sup>

## 6) Cyprian (200-258 AD), Vol 5,

p 516

Moreover, in the Gospel according to John: "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and God was the Word. The same was in the beginning

And again in the same place: "I have said, Ye are gods; and ye are all the children of the Highest: but ye shall die like men."<sup>13</sup> But if they who have been righteous, and have obeyed the divine precepts, may be called gods, how much more is Christ, the Son of God, God!

7) Novatian (210-280 AD), Vol 5, p 624,

p 624

But this Word whereby all things were made (is God). "And God," says he, "was the Word."<sup>7</sup> Therefore God proceeded from God, in that the Word which proceeded is God, who proceeded forth from God.

8) Hippolytus (170-236 AD), Vol 5, p.2 8. 9)

For he speaks to this effect: "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. All things were made by

p 642

And let us therefore believe this, since it is most faithful that Jesus Christ the Son of God is our Lord and God; because "in the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and God was the Word."

10) Methodius (260-312 AD), Vol 6,p.381.

whether the saying: "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. The same was in the begin-

Thou who wast in the beginning, and wast with God, and wast God;<sup>2</sup> Thou who

art the brightness of the Father's glory;<sup>3</sup> Thou who art the perfect image of the perfect Father;<sup>4</sup>

11) Alexander (273-326 AD),Vol 6,p.292

For he set forth His proper personality, saying, "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. All things were made by Him; and without Him was not anything made that was made."<sup>5</sup>

12) Tatian's Diatessaron (150 AD),

Vol 10, p 43,

§1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and God is the Word. This was in the beginning with God. Everything was by his hand, and without him not even one existing thing was made. In him was life, and the life is the light of men.<sup>1, 2, 3, 4, 5</sup>

Note: Compare these quotes by Ante-Nicene Church fathers which contradict the Watchtowers invented quotes of Church fathers on p 7 of Should you believe in the Trinity.

10. The Watchtower's Kingdom Interlinear Translation (KIT, p.401) quote of John 1:1, if the left hand column has 'god was the Word', which contradicts the right hand column NWT translation which says 'the word was a god'. Hence the Word (Christ who became flesh, v.14) is called 'God' on the LHS of the page, and 'a god' on the RHS of the page.

1 Ἐν ἀρχῇ ἦν ὁ λόγος, καὶ ὁ λόγος ἦν πρὸς τὸν θεόν, καὶ θεός ἦν ὁ λόγος.

1 In [the] beginning the Word was, and the Word was with God, and the Word was a god.\* 2 This

11. Greek grammar rules out 'a god'.

JWs say that for Jesus to be Jehovah God here, there should be the definite article 'the' (Greek 'ό') before God (θεος λογος ο). Because 'θεος' does not have the definite article 'ό' before it, JWs conclude that 'the word' was indefinite, and means 'a god'.

Answer: A.T. Robertson Greek authority says (*A Grammar of Greek NT*, p.767):

'Nouns in the Predicate: The article is not essential to speech....The word with the article ("ό") is then the subject of the sentence, whatever the word order may be. So in John 1:1, "θεος ην ο λογος", the subject is perfectly clear ("the word" = "ο λογος"), and it can only be "the word was God".'

Key: Hence the article 'the' (ο) points out the subject (ο λογος) of the clause, and points out the predicate (θεος) without the article.

If John had written 'ο θεος ην ο λογος' as the JWs would want, then John would be teaching false doctrine of Sabellianism (that Christ is all of God, that God and Christ are interchangeable, that the Father was the one who became incarnate, suffered and died).

Note: If the article is used with both the subject (ie. λογος') and the predicate (ie. θεος), they would then be interchangeable as the subject nouns are in I John 3:4 (η αμαρτια εστιν η ανομia) then both 'sin is transgression' and 'transgression is sin' are true'.

But in I John 4:16, “ο θεος αγαπη εστιν” can only be “God is Love”, not “Love is God” (because the article points out the subject). If the Greek language allowed us to say “Love is God” just as readily as “God is Love” in this verse, then God would not be a person, but just an abstract quality. (see *Was Christ God?*, Spiros Zodhiates, p.98).

**Conclusion:** The absence of the definite article “ο” before “theos” in John 1:1 is deliberate in order to identify “the Word” as the subject of the sentence and to make it only to read as “the Word was God”. It has nothing to do with Christ being a lesser god as the JW’s claim. Hence, contrary to the NWT and The Emphatic Diaglott, the Greek grammatical construction leaves no doubt whatsoever that “the Word was God” is the only possible rendering of the text.

**Colwell’s Rule** of Greek grammar clearly states that a predicate nominative ( $\theta\epsilon\omega\varsigma$  = God) NEVER takes a definite article (“ο”) when it precedes the verb “was”, as in John 1:1. That is, when two nouns in the nominative case are linked by the verb “to be” (am, is, are, was, were, be, being or been), it may not be clear which is the **subject** and which is the **predicate**. Thus, “ο θεος ην ο λογος” could be either “the Word was God” or “God was the Word”. However, for the Greek syntax, the predicate ( $\theta\epsilon\omega\varsigma$ ) drops the definite article (“ο”) and is placed before the verb. Therefore, “θεος ην ο λογος” can only be “The Word was God”, as in the KJV. (see *The elements of New Testament Greek*, J.W. Wenham, p.35)

Notice that since this clause uses a linking verb, both the subject and the predicate are in the nominative case (ie. “ος” ending on the nouns - “λογος” and “θεος”), so case endings do not identify the subject. Instead, the definite article “the” points out the subject of the clause. Greek uses the definite article “the” to accomplish what the English language does by word order (subject first, verb next, then the object in a sentence). Hence, of the three ways that John could have written John 1:1, only **one** is correct.

i) ο θεος ην ο λογος      **FALSE** (Not used by John)

can mean either “God was the Word” **or** “the Word was God”. Both the subject and the predicate having the article would have taught Sabellianism, so John didn’t write it this way;

ii) ο θεος ην λογος      **FALSE** (Not used by John)

can mean only “God was the Word”. This would have clearly taught Sabellianism, so John didn’t write it this way either;

iii) θεος ην ο λογος      **CORRECT** (As used by John)

can mean only “The Word was God”.

**Conclusion.** Translations which render the Greek in this verse as “a god” or “divine” are motivated by theological, not grammatical considerations. The phrase “a god” is particularly objectionable because it makes Christ a lesser god, which is polytheism and contrary to Deuteronomy 32:39. If Christ is “a god”, then He must be either a “true God” or a “false god”. If a “true God”, then we have polytheism. If a “false god”, then He is unworthy of our belief. Of course, the correct translation found in the KJV and most other translations (“the word was God”), presents Christ as the one and only true God, Jehovah. Therefore, He is monotheistic and worthy of our belief. John’s high view of Christ as God begins with John 1:1 and ends his gospel with Thomas addressing Christ as “my Lord and my God” in John 20:28. These and other verses assert the full deity of Christ.

## 10. John 8:58

NWT	KJV
"Before Abraham came into existence, <b>I have been.</b> "	"Before Abraham was, <b>I am.</b> "

**Watchtower Teaching:** JWs agree that Jesus was pre-existent ("I have been"), but will not agree that Jesus was eternally pre-existent ("I am"). Jesus in John 8:58 claims to be the "I am" of Exodus 3:14, clearly saying He is Jehovah God. They also mistranslate Exodus 3:14:

NWT	KJV
At this God said to Moses: " <b>I SHALL PROVE TO BE WHAT I SHALL PROVE TO BE.</b> " And he added: "This is what you are to say to the sons of Israel, " <b>I SHALL PROVE TO BE</b> has sent me unto you!""	And God said unto Moses, <b>I AM THAT I AM:</b> and he said, Thus shalt thou say unto the children of Israel, " <b>I AM</b> hath sent me unto you."

The effect is that the NWT completely hides the connection between Christ in John 8:58 and Jehovah God in Exodus 3:14. The Watchtower aims to keep Jesus from being identified as God Almighty.

**Bible Teaching:** Does the evidence point to Jesus calling Himself "I AM" and hence claiming to be God, or to "I have been"?

1) Notice in John 8:58 that **Jesus calls Himself "ego eimi" in Greek.**

"Ego eimi" occurs 134 times in the Greek New Testament.

**Ask:** Why does the New World Translation correctly translates "ego eimi" 133 times as "I am", except in John 8:58 where a major doctrine of the deity of Christ is at stake, where they contradict all their other correct translations of "Ego eimi" and translate it as "I have been"?

**Question:** What does "I AM" mean?

**Answer:** Jehovah is the eternal self-existent Being, who has always existed. God is beyond the realm of time: "Holy, Holy, Holy, Lord God Almighty, which was, and is, and is to come." (Revelation 4:8b).

"I am" in Exodus 3:14 and "Jehovah" in 3:15 are both derivatives of the verb "to be".

2) **Church writers before 325 AD, always quote John 8:58 as 'I am':**

a) **Irenaeus (120-202 AD)** But the Word of God did not accept of the friendship of Abraham, as though He stood in need of it, for He was perfect from the beginning (" Before Abraham was," He says, "I am"<sup>4</sup>),  
Vol 1, p 478

b) **Origen (185-254 AD)** for we believe Himself when He says, " Before Abraham was, I am."<sup>8</sup> Again He says, " I am the truth ; "<sup>9</sup>

c) **Novatian (210-280 AD)** but by giving divinity by immortality, He proves Himself to be God by offering divinity, which if He were not God He could not give. If Christ was only man, how did He say, " Before Abraham was, I Am?"  
*Treatise Concerning the Trinity*, Vol 5, p 624.

d) **Thaumaturgus (205-265 AD)** the Lord Himself says, " Before Abraham was, I am ; "<sup>4</sup>

3) The JW Kingdom Interlinear Translation (1985) reveals that John 8:58 has ‘ego eimi’ (Greek: εγώ εἰμι), translating it correctly as ‘I am’. This contradicts the NWT reading.

λέγω	ὑμῖν,	πρὶν	Ἄβραález	γενέσθαι	Before Abraham came
I am saying	to you	Before	Abraham	to become	into existence, I have been.”*

ἐγώ εἰμι 59 ἤραν οὖν λίθους 59 Therefore they picked up stones

4) Jesus claiming the title “I have been” would not have caused the Jews to stone Him.

(John 8:59). Hebrew law gave five cases where stoning was legal:

- i) Having a familiar spirit. (Leviticus 20:27)
- ii) Blasphemy. (Leviticus 24:10-23)
- iii) False prophets who lead to idolatry. (Deuteronomy 13:5-10)
- iv) Stubborn son. (Deuteronomy 21:18-21)
- v) Adultery and rape. (Deuteronomy 22:21-24; Leviticus 20:10)

Here the Jews’ reason for stoning was that Jesus clearly claimed for Himself the title “I am”, saying that He was Jehovah God of Exodus 3:14. JWs claim that the Jews attempted to stone Christ because He called them children of the devil (John 8:44). If this is true, then why didn’t they attempt to stone him on other occasions when He called them sons of vipers? (Matthew 12:34 and 23:33). Insults were no reason for stoning. Therefore the Jews attempted to stone Jesus for blasphemy because He claimed to be God.

In John 10:31-33 the Jews attempted to stone Jesus for blasphemy for “making thyself **God**”.

Ask: Who knew the Law better, first century Jews or 20th Century JWs?

5) That “I am” means full Deity is clear from **John 13:19** where Jesus says that when His predictions come true, the disciples may believe that **ego eimi** (I AM), that He is Jehovah.

Since Jehovah is the only “I AM” (Exodus 3:14), then the Father and Christ are one in nature, power, eternity and fulness of deity.

6) The NWT translates “ego eimi” correctly as “I am” 49 times out of 50 occurrences in John’s Gospel, except in John 8:58. Why? Examples are:

“I am (εγώ εἰμι) the bread of life”. (John 6:35,48,51)

“I am (εγώ εἰμι) the light of the world”. (John 8:12)

“For if you do not believe that I am (ego eimi) he, you will die in your sins”. (John 8:24)

“When you have lifted up the Son of Man, then you will know that I am (ego eimi)” (John 8:28)

“I am (εγώ εἰμι) the door of the sheep”. (John 10:7)

“I am (εγώ εἰμι) the good shepherd”. (John 10:11,14)

“I am (εγώ εἰμι) the resurrection and the life”. (John 11:25)

“I am (εγώ εἰμι) the way and the truth and the life” (John 14:6)

“I am (εγώ εἰμι) the true vine” (John 15:1,5)

“I am (εγώ εἰμι) he . . .” (John 18:5,6,8)

Ask: Since all the “I am” εγώ εἰμι sayings refer to Christ, why does the NWT correctly translate “εγώ εἰμι” as “I am”, except in John 8:58 where they change it to “I have been”? Shouldn’t there be consistency in translation?

7) The Septuagint Greek translation of the OT translates Exodus 3:14 as ‘ego eimi’ in Greek and ‘I am the BEING’ in English. This supports the commonly accepted reading.

14 πρὸς αἴτούς; Καὶ ἐπεν ὁ Θεὸς πρὸς Μωυσῆν, λέγων, ἔγειρα shall I say to them? “And God spoke to εἰμι δὲ ὣν· καὶ ἐπεν, οὐτῶς ἐρεῖς τοῖς νιοῖς Ἰσραὴλ, δὲ ὣν Moses, saying, I am THE BEING, and he said, Thus shall ye say to the children of 15 ἀπέσταλκε με πρὸς ὑμᾶς. Καὶ ἐπεν ὁ Θεὸς πάλιν πρὸς Israel, THE BEING has sent me to you.

8) A T Robertson, one of the greatest Greek scholars ever, after translating “εγώ εἰμι” as “I am”, said about John 8:58, “Undoubtedly here Jesus claims eternal existence with the absolute phrase of God.’ (*Word Pictures in the NT*, Vol. V, p 158, 159).

## **10. IS CHRIST INFERIOR TO THE FATHER?**

“Christ is equal to the Father as touching His Godhood and inferior to the Father as touching His manhood”. (The Athanasian Creed)

When JWs claim that Jesus was a lesser deity than the Father, they point to verses such as:

- a) “The Father is greater than I”. (John 14:28).
- b) Jesus referred to the Father as “my God” (John 20:17).
- c) “The head of Christ is God” (I Corinthians 11:3).
- d) Jesus “will be made subject to him who put everything under him, so that God may be all in all”. (I Corinthians 15:28).
- e) Jesus is called God’s “only begotten Son” (John 3:16).
- f) Jesus is called “the firstborn of every creature” (Colossians 1:15).
- g) Jesus is called “the beginning of the creation of God” (Revelation 3:14).

To this we say generally that:

- i Each passage must be examined in its **context**. Check the Greek meanings of words.
- ii Many WT arguments are based on a bad misunderstanding of the **incarnation** of Christ who is **God taking on human form**.
- iii Many passages quoted by JWs view Christ from the point of view of **His manhood**.

Let us examine some such passages:

### **1. I Corinthians 11:3 - Is God superior to Christ?**

“But I would have you know, that the head of every man is Christ, and the head of the woman is the man; and the **head of Christ is God**”.

**Watchtower teaching:** JWs say that, because Jehovah is the head of Christ, then Christ cannot be God. They say that since I Corinthians 11:3 was written in 55 AD when Jesus was ascended and glorified, then this superior rank of Jehovah over Jesus applies to their present relationship in heaven. They claim that “Jesus is always presented as a lesser, separate, humble servant of God”. *Should you Believe in the Trinity? p.20*.

**The Bible teaching:** I Corinthians 11:3 has to do with patterns of authority, not to do with inferiority or superiority of one person over the other. Paul says that the man is the head of the woman, even though men and women are 100% equal in their essential being.

Biblically, **men and women and equal in nature**.

They are both 100% human, created in God’s image & one in Christ. I Peter 3:7 “Heirs together”.

**Key:** Hence, even though men and women are equal in nature, they function within a hierarchy. In the same way, Christ and the Father are 100% equal in their **divine being** and **nature**. “I and the Father are one” (John 10:30), even though Jesus functions under the Father’s headship authority. There is no contradiction to say that among the three persons in the Godhead, there is an **equality of divine being and nature** as well as **two members functioning under the Father’s authority**.

Christ is 100% God and fully equal to the Father in being and nature, yet Christ is subordinate or submissive to the Father, especially in becoming a man.

Therefore I Corinthians 11:3 does not teach that Jesus is less than God.

Within the Godhead, the Father acts as Head without diminishing the full deity of the Son.

**Ask:** Are women **inferior in nature** to men because men exercise headship over women?

**Ask:** If “no”, then why does the WT teach that the Father’s headship over Christ means that **Christ is inferior in nature** to the Father?

## 2. Revelation 3:14 - “The beginning of the creation of God”.

JWs think that this verse means that Jesus is God's first created being.

They relate this verse to John 1:14 where Jesus is the “only begotten of the Father”.

### Answer:

- 1) The word “Beginning” is “Arche” (746) in Greek which has a wide range of meanings, such as:
  - a) **“Head”** in the “Hebrew, Greek, English Interlinear Bible”.  
He is called “the Head” because He is before all things, all things were created by Him and for Him (John 1:1-3, Colossians 1:16-17, Hebrews 1:10).  
It refers to Christ as the One who created all things, not to Him as a created being.
  - b) **“The Active Cause** as in Colossians 1:18, Revelation 1:8, 21:6, 22:13, 3:14.  
Christ is called “the beginning” because He is the **active cause** of creation.
  - c) **Rule, power or authority.** “...power (arche) of the governor” (Luke 20:20).  
It refers to Christ as the “one who begins, the origin, source, creator, or first cause”.  
(Spiros Zodhiates, *NT Word Study*, p.260,261)
  - d) The **Originating source** through whom God works, not the first of the creatures as held by Arians and Unitarians. (A T Robertson, *Word Pictures in NT*. Vol 6,p 321).
- 2) The English word “**architect**” comes from “arche”.  
Jesus is the architect of all creation (John 1:3, Colossians 1:16, Hebrews 1:2).  
Christ is the source and primary fountainhead of all creation.
- 3) **“Arche”** is also **used of God** as “the beginning and the end”. (Rev. 1:8 (not KIT), 21:6, 22:13). The use of “arche” of God Almighty does not mean that God had a created beginning. God is the beginner and first cause of all creation. “Arche” in Revelation 3:14 is used of Christ in the same sense as the beginner and first cause of all creation.

<p>6 καὶ εἶπέν μοι And he said to me</p> <p>Γέγοναν. ἔγώ τὸν Αλφά καὶ τὸν They have occurred. I the Alpha and the</p> <p>*Ω, ἡ ἀρχὴ καὶ τὸ τέλος. ἔγώ<sup>I</sup> Omega, the beginning and the end.</p>	<p>καὶ τὸν Ω, ὁ πρῶτος καὶ ὁ ἔσχατος, and the Omega, the first (one) and the last (one),</p> <p>ἡ ἀρχὴ καὶ τὸ τέλος. — 14 Μακάριοι the beginning and the end. — Happy</p>
---	---

**Ask:** Since “Arche” used of God Almighty does not mean that He had a created beginning, why do you insist that when “Arche” is used of Christ that it means He had a created beginning?

- 4) It is almost always used of a **ruler** or **magistrate** or **principalities**. (Romans 8:38; Ephesians 3:10; Colossians 2:15; Luke 20:20; Jude 6.)  
The NWT translates the plural of “Arche” as “**government officials**” in Luke 12:11.
- 5) The English word “**archbishop**” is one who is in authority or rules over bishops.  
This means that Christ has authority or rule over all creation in Revelation 3:14.
- 6) Christ as the “**beginner**” of creation harmonises with other NT passages about Christ as Creator, such as: Colossians 1:16,17 “by him were all things created”; Hebrews 1:2 “by whom also he made the worlds”; John 1:3 ”all things were made by him”. The JWs must add “other” in Colossians 1:16,17 to harmonise those verses.
- 7) Only God is the Creator. “I am the LORD (JHVH) that makes all things; that stretches forth the heavens **alone**; that spreadeth abroad the earth **by myself**” (Isaiah 44:24).  
Since Christ is the Creator of all things, this proves that Christ is God Almighty, just as the Father is.

**Conclusion:** “Beginning” in Revelation 3:14 is “Arche” meaning that Christ is the active cause, originating source, architect, beginner; and “ruler” over creation.

### **3. Proverbs 8:22,23 “I was set up from everlasting, from the beginning, or ever the earth was”**

- a) Proverbs 8 is not talking about Christ being set up or created, as the Watchtower claims. Proverbs 8:1,2 tells us that it is **wisdom** or **understanding** which is **personified**: “Doth not wisdom cry? and understanding put forth **her** voice? **She** standeth.” 8:1,2. Wisdom and understanding are described as “**she**”, but Christ is “**He**”.
- b) If this is talking about Christ, then we must also assume that Christ is a **woman** who cries in the streets (1:20,21), and who lives with someone named Prudence (8:12) in a house with seven pillars (9:1). **Wisdom** is the theme of Proverbs chapters 1-9. See 8:1.

**Ask:** Do you believe that Christ is a woman who cries in the streets? (Proverbs 1:20,21).

**Ask:** Was there a time when God had no wisdom? No. Wisdom is as old and eternal as God.

**Ask:** Where is Jesus Christ mentioned by name in this passage?

**Conclusion:** Proverbs 8:22,23 is speaking metaphorically about God’s eternal wisdom and how it was “brought forth” to take part in the creation of the universe (v.24).

### **4. Colossians 1:15 - “the **firstborn** (Greek: prototokos 4416) **of every creature**”.**

JWs use this verse to teach that Jesus Christ was created at a point in time as an angel.

They ignore the evidence and insist that the word “firstborn” here means “first created”, “the eldest in Jehovah’s family of sons”.

#### **The Bible teaching:**

- 1) “**Firstborn**” (Greek: prototokos) **does NOT** mean “first-created” (Greek: protoktisis).

First-created (Protoktisis) is **never** used of Christ in NT. **Ask:** Where is it used of Jesus in NT?

**Ask:** Why didn’t Paul use the term “first-created” (protoktisis) in Colossians 1:15 if he meant that Christ was the first one created by Jehovah?

- 2) **Ask:** What does “**firstborn**” (Greek: prototokos 4416) mean?

**Answer:** “**Pre-eminent, Ruler, Sovereign, First in rank**”.

It is used in other passages which refer to Christ:

i) **Romans 8:29** “that he might be the **firstborn** among many brethren”. “Prototokos” presents Christ as the **pre-eminent** member of the group (S. Zodhiates NT, p 1249).

ii) **Colossians 1:15**. “The **firstborn** of every creature” Christ is the **one pre-eminent and supreme ruler over all creation** (S Zodhiates NT, p 1250). v.16 “By him were all things created” means that Christ Himself is not part of Creation (John 1:3).

iii) **Colossians 1:18** “He (Christ) is the head of the body, the church: who is the **beginning** (arche), the **firstborn** (prototokos=Ruler) from the dead; that in all things he might have the pre-eminence (proteuon)”.

“Arche” means “first cause” (Revelation 3:14, Colossians 1:18) and is parallel to “prototokos” in Colossians 1:15,18, both asserting Christ’s pre-eminence.

**Note:** “Proteuon” (pre-eminence) present tense is used only in Colossians 1:18 and indicates not an acquired right to be ruler and pre-eminent, but an **inherent right** by virtue of His nature. Christ, being the Creator, deserves to have pre-eminence.

iv) **Hebrews 1:6** “And again, when he bringeth the **firstbegotten** (prototokos=Ruler) into the world, he saith “And let all the angels of God worship Him”.

Alternately, translate this as “And when He again brings the firstborn into the world”, refers to Christ’s second coming when Christ as King will be worshipped by the angels. Christ is exalted even above all the angels.

v) **Revelation 1:5** “And from Jesus Christ, who is the faithful witness, and the **firstbegotten** (prototokos=Ruler) of the dead, and the **prince** (arche = chief) of the

the kings of the earth.” Here “prototokos” means that Christ is first of those to be resurrected, and prince (arche) means ruler of earth’s kings at His second coming.

**Note:** JWs compare Christ as the firstborn of all creation with the firstborn son of Pharaoh. This is nonsensical, because it is true that Pharaoh parented his son, but it is not true that “all creation” parented Jesus.

- 3) We must understand what the original speaker or writer intended by the words which he used. The ancient Hebrews used the term “firstborn son” when referring to the pre-eminent son, regardless of whether or not he was the first son born to the parents.

The son with the title “firstborn” had the right of primogeniture which meant that:

- i) He acquired a **special blessing** (Genesis 27);
- ii) He became **heir** of a double share of the father’s wealth (Deuteronomy 21:17);
- iii) He replaced his father as the family **head**. He had authority over his brothers;
- iv) He represented the father in civil and religious matters;
- v) He had some **holiness** because through him flowed the common blood of the tribe (Genesis 49:3; Deuteronomy 21:17).

**Key:** The term “firstborn” does not refer to the first one born, but to the pre-eminent one in the family. Notice these examples where the son with the title “firstborn” was not born first:

- (1) **David** was the last born son of Jesse, yet Psalm 89:27 says of him: “I will make him my firstborn, higher than the kings of the earth”. (v.20 onwards refers to David).
- (2) **Ephraim** was the second born son of Joseph: “The name of the second called he Ephraim.” (Genesis 41:50-52). Yet “Ephraim is my firstborn” (Jeremiah 31:9). This was because of his pre-eminent position. Manasseh was born first to Joseph, but Ephraim became the **firstborn** because of his pre-eminence.
- (3) **Jacob** (Israel) was the second son born to Isaac, after Esau, yet God says of Israel, “Israel is my son, even my firstborn.” (Exodus 4:22). Esau says of himself, “I am Esau thy firstborn”. (Genesis 27:19). Esau means that he was born first and should have the birthright. God means that Israel, though born second, took the pre-eminent position. Hence, in this sense Christ is firstborn because of His pre-eminence, not because He was created first as JWs think.
- (4) **Solomon** was born to David later, and the line of the kings came through Solomon, yet Amnon was born first (I Chronicles 3:2).
- (5) **Isaac** was born 13 years after Ishmael, yet Isaac took the pre-eminent position in the family. (Genesis 17:19).
- (6) **Judah** was the fourth son born to Jacob (Genesis 29:35), yet Judah received the dominion and line of Christ, even though Reuben being born first forfeited his right of primogeniture due to fornication (Genesis 49:3,4).

- 4) Firstborn can be rendered **metaphorically**, not meaning born first. Examples include:

- i) Job 18:13 “the firstborn of death shall devour his strength”. As the firstborn son held the chief place, so Job refers to the chieftest (most deadly) disease that death possessed;
- ii) Isaiah 14:30 “The firstborn of the poor shall feed”, means the poorest of the poor.

**Conclusion:** Firstborn does not mean born first or created first. Rather, it is a title of first rank, or pre-eminent position. Paul calls Christ the **firstborn** (prototokos = Ruler).

In the New Testament, Christ is never called the “first created” (protoktisis).

**Ask:** What does Psalm 89:27 mean by calling David **firstborn**, when he was the last born son?

**Ask:** Why didn’t Paul use ‘first created’ (protoktisis) of Christ in Colossians 1:15 if he intended to teach that Christ was the first one created by Jehovah?

## **5. John 3:16 - "He gave His only begotten Son".**

**Watchtower teaching:** JWs teach that the term “Son of God” refers to Jesus as a separate created being, just as Isaac was called Abraham’s “only begotten son” (Hebrews 11:17), and that Jesus as “Son of God” was not God Himself. JWs claim that Almighty God is the Father of Jesus in the same sense that Abraham is the father of Isaac. JWs claim that God is the senior, and Jesus is the junior - in time, position, power and knowledge.

**The Bible teaching:** Isaac was not Abraham’s “only son”. Abraham had begotten a number of other sons, such as Ishmael, Zimram, Jokshan, Medan, Midian, Ishbak and Shuah (Genesis 25:2). The term “only begotten Son” means that Isaac was Abraham’s **unique** son. Hence Jesus is “the only begotten Son” in the sense that no-one else is as unique as Jesus. Jesus is alone all that God is. “All things that the Father hath **are mine.**” (John 16:15). If Christ has all the attributes that the Father has, then Christ is God, because only God has eternality, omniscience, omnipresence and omnipotence.

**Question:** What did “Son of” mean among the ancients? The idea that the title “Son of God” indicates inferiority to the Father, is based on a faulty conception of what “Son of” meant among the ancients. Though it can mean “**offspring of**” in some contexts, it also carries the more important meaning: “OF THE ORDER OF” or “the NATURE OF”.

It is used in this way as follows:

- i) “The sons of the prophets” (I Kings 20:35) meant “of the order of the prophets”;
- ii) The “sons of the singers” (Nehemiah 12:28) meant “of the order of the singers”;
- iii) “Of the sons of Asaph” (Nehemiah 11:22) meant “of the order of Asaph”.

Hence, the phrase “Son of God” means “of the order of God” or “nature of God” as a claim to Christ’s undiminished Deity. 2 Greek words for son, “Huios”, same nature; “teknon” boy. Ancient Jews and Orientals used the phrase “son of” to indicate sameness of nature and equality of being. When Jesus claimed to be the Son (Huios, never teknon) of God, His Jewish contemporaries fully understood that He was claiming to be fully equivalent to God. Hence, when Jesus claimed to be the Son (Huios) of God, the Jews said, “We have a law, and by our law he ought to die, because he made himself the Son of God”. (John 19:7). “he said that God was his Father, making himself equal with God.” (John 5:18).

**Ask:** If the phrase “son of” meant sameness of nature and equality of being among the ancients, as historical records clearly show, then what does this tell us about the meaning of the phrase “Son of God”? **Answer:** Jesus has the same nature as God.

### **Christ was the Son of God before His human birth:**

- i) “For God sent not his Son into the world to condemn the world . . .” (John 3:17). That Christ, as the Son of God, was sent into the world, implies that He was the Son of God before His incarnation.
- ii) Proverbs 30:4 shows God as the Creator who has a Son:  
“What is his name, and what is his son’s name?” This speaks of God the Father and God the Son in present tense terms in OT times.
- iii) “the form of the fourth is like the Son of God.” (Daniel 3:25). Nebuchadnezzar threw three men into the fiery furnace, yet he saw the Son of God walking with them in the furnace. The Masoretic Text and Septuagint reads, “Son of God” (singular) not “a son of the gods” as in the JW New World Translation and the NIV.

**6. I Corinthians 15:28** “And when all things shall be subdued unto him, then shall the Son also be subject unto him that put all things under him, that God may be all in all.”

**Watchtower teaching:** JW's cite this passage to teach that Jesus is not equal to the Father and is not God Almighty. (*Reasoning from Scriptures*, p.410). JW's teach that all people and Jesus are in complete subjection to Jehovah God. They say that, if Christ were God Almighty, then He wouldn't be in subjection to anyone.

### **The Bible teaching:**

- 1) The word “subject” here does not apply to Christ’s nature or being. It refers to Christ’s **voluntary subjection to the Father** to work out the plan of salvation to become the God-man, the Redeemer, the Mediator, and to save humanity from hell. To be the ideal role-model as the perfect man, Christ had to obey the Father to redeem humanity.

**Objection:** JW's emphasize that now in the glorified state, Christ is still in subjection to the Father, implying that Jesus is not God as the Father is.

**Answer:** This assumes that Jesus did not retain His human nature in heaven. If a JW can understand that Jesus still retains His human nature now in heaven and that his humanity will always be in subjection to the Father, then the JW objection is solved. Christ was raised immortal in the very same human body in which He died (Luke 24:37-39, Acts 2:31) and ascended in that same resurrection body (Acts 1:11). As Mediator between God and man, He possesses a human nature (I Timothy 2:5). Christ returns as the “Son of Man (Matthew 26:64), a title showing His humanity. Because Christ still possesses his human nature, then He is still in submission to the Father, but His Divine nature makes Him equal to the Father

**Key:** On the **human** side, Jesus is **lesser** than the Father.  
On the **divine** side, Jesus is **equal** to the Father.

- 2) Apart from Jesus’ humanity, Jesus has always been and always will be in subjection to the Father, because of the hierarchical relationship in the Trinity.

Christ has equality of being with the Father, but Christ performs tasks requiring submission or subordination to the Father.

**Ask:** Do you submit to the police? (Yes). Are you of inferior nature to the police? (No).

**Ask:** Does your body submit to your mind? (Y). Is your body less human than your mind?

**Ask:** Is it right for a wife to submit to her husband? (Yes).

Is she therefore of inferior nature to her husband? (No).

So why does WT say that since Christ submits to the Father, He is inferior in nature?

**Note:** There is no contradiction between an **equality of being** and a **functional subordination** among the Persons in the Godhead.

- 3) I Corinthians 15:28 teaches that, in the plan of salvation, the Son’s role is to mediate between man and God the Father, only until the end of the Millennium. Then, when the task of redeeming man is complete, Christ ceases acting as Mediator, and voluntarily surrenders the Kingdom to the Father. When Christ delivers up the administration of the earthly kingdom to the Father, then the triune God will reign as God and no longer through the man Christ Jesus.

Gabriel's words are still true in Luke 1:33: “He (Christ) shall reign over the house of Jacob **forever**: and of his (Christ’s) Kingdom there shall be **no end**”.

**Conclusion:** Christ, as man, will hand over the Kingdom to God the Father (I Cor. 15:24), so that Christ, as God, will reign forever with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

“His (Christ’s) dominion is an **everlasting** dominion”. (Daniel 7:13,14).

## **7. I Corinthians 8:6 - “One God the Father . . .”**

“But to us there is but **one God, the Father . . . and one Lord Jesus Christ . . .”**

**Watchtower teaching:** JWs argue that, since there is “one God” (Jehovah) who is distinct from “one Lord” (Jesus Christ), then Jesus cannot be God.

**Biblical reasoning:** If this WT reasoning is correct, then the same logic leads us to conclude that the Father is not Lord.

**Note:** If the reference to the Father being the “one God” proves that Jesus is not God, then by the same logic we must conclude that the reference to Jesus Christ as the “one Lord”

**means that the Father is not Lord.** No JW will concede that the Father is not Lord.

You cannot interpret the first part of the verse one way, and the second part of the verse another way. The faulty logic of JWs here is their assumption that the use of a title for one person (the Father) in one context, automatically rules out its application to another person (Jesus Christ) in another context. JWs should consult what all Scripture says about the Father and about Jesus Christ.

- i) The **Father** is called **Lord** in Matthew 11:25: “I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth”.
- ii) **Jesus Christ** is called **God** in John 20:28: “My Lord and my God”, and in Hebrews 1:8: “Unto the Son he saith: Thy throne **O God . . .**” etc.

Hence “God” and “Lord” are used interchangeably of the Father and the Son.

**Ask:** “Can you see that, since **Jesus as one Lord** does **not** mean that the **Father is not Lord**, then by the same logic, the **Father as “one God”** does **not** mean that **Jesus is not God**?”

## **8. John 20:17 - “My God and Your God”**

“I ascend unto my Father, and your Father; and to **my God**, and your God.”

**Watchtower teaching:** The JW book *Reasoning from the Scriptures*, p.212, says, “To the resurrected Jesus, the Father was God, just as the Father was God to Mary Magdalene.” JWs argue that because Jesus referred to “My father” and “my God”, Jesus cannot be Almighty God Himself.

**The Bible teaching:** Why did Jesus call the Father “my God”? Does this imply that Jesus is not God? No, not at all. Christ had only a divine nature before the incarnation. After His birth as a man, He took on a human nature. Therefore, it is **in Christ’s humanity** that He acknowledged the Father as “my God”.

**Key verse:** “Wherefore, in **all things** it behoved him to be **made like unto his brethren**, that he might be a merciful and faithful high priest in things pertaining to God.” Hebr. 2:17

Since Christ came as a man and since some of **man’s proper duties** are to worship God, pray to God and address God as “My Father” and “My God”, then it was perfectly correct for Jesus (**speaking as a man**) to address the Father in prayer and to call Him “My God”.

**Question:** Why didn’t Jesus just say, “I am ascending to **our Father** and **our God**?”

**Answer:** Jesus always carefully distinguished His relationship with the Father from humans’ relationship with the Father.

**Key:** Jesus was God’s Son by **nature**, but Christians are God’s sons by **adoption**.

Jesus **never spoke of** the Father as “**Our Father**” but as “**the Father**” or “**My Father**”. (The Lord’s Prayer is how Christians (Our) should pray.)

**Ask:** “Why did Jesus always say “the Father” or “my Father” but **never “our Father”**?

**Conclusion:** Because Jesus is **God’s Son** by **nature**, He is truly **God**.

Because Jesus is also truly a **man** by **nature**, He can call the Father “**my God**”.

## **9. John 14:28 - “The Father is greater than I”.**

**Watchtower teaching:** The JW book *Let God be True*, 1946, p.110 says that Jehovah is greater than Jesus in his **office** and **person**. Jehovah, they say is intrinsically greater than Jesus, and hence Jesus cannot be God Almighty. The JW book *Reasoning from the Scriptures*, p.410, says, “The fact that Jesus is lesser than Jehovah proves that He cannot be God in the same sense that Jehovah is”.

**The Bible Teaching:** In John 14:28 Jesus is not speaking about His **nature** or **being** (Christ had earlier said in John 10:30, “I and the Father are one”), but about His lowly position of incarnation as a man. The *Athanasian Creed* says that Christ is “equal to the Father as touching His Godhood, and inferior to the Father as touching His manhood”. Christ was here contrasting His human humiliation, shame, suffering, rejection, opposition by enemies, and soon crucifixion, with the Father’s majesty, glory and worship by the angels in heaven.

**Key:** Jesus said, “The Father is **greater** (Greek: meizon) than I”, not “The Father is **better** (Greek: kraitton) than I”. “Greater” refers to the Father’s greater position (in heaven), not to a greater **nature**. If the word “better” had been used, this would indicate that the Father had a better nature than Jesus.

- i) The distinction is made clear in Hebrews 1:4 where ‘better’ (Gk: kraitton) is used to teach Jesus’ superiority over the angels in His nature and position.
- ii) This difference between “greater” and “better” is seen in this example:  
“The President of a country is **greater** (Greek: meizon) **in position** than his people, but as a human being he is **not better** (Greek: kraitton) in nature than his people”.
- iii) Jesus in becoming a man, not only took on a lower position than the **Father**, but also took on a **lower position than the angels**. “But we see Jesus, who was made a **little lower** than the angels for the suffering of death”. (Hebrews 2:9)

**Ask:** “Do you agree that a President is greater in position but not better in nature than his people?”

**Ask:** “In view of **greater** (meaning higher in position) and **better** (meaning higher in nature), is it not clear that in John 14:28, Jesus is speaking of the Father’s **temporary higher position** and not his higher nature than Jesus?

**Q: How did Christ make Himself of no reputation when He became a man? (Phil. 2:6-9)**

1. He veiled His **preincarnate glory** in order to dwell among men, but never surrendered His deity or divine glory. On Mount Transfiguration He allowed His glory to shine briefly. If Christ had not veiled His glory, mankind would not have been able to look at Him. When John saw His glory on Patmos he said, “I fell at His feet as dead”. (Rev. 1:17).
2. He submitted to a voluntary non-use of some of His divine **attributes** (occasionally) in order to achieve His objectives. He never surrendered His attributes, but He did voluntarily cease using some of them on earth. Jesus showed His divine attributes of:
  - i) **omniscience** (“He knew all men” John 2:24; 16:30; “Lord thou knowest all things” 21:17).
  - ii) **omnipresence** (John 3:13 “the Son of man which is in heaven”).As God He was everywhere at once, but as man He chose to walk there.
- iii) **omnipotence** (Matthew 28:18 “all power is given unto me”.)
3. He condescended to take on the **likeness** (form, appearance) of man and the form of a servant. (Phil 2:7). His becoming a man involved **gaining human attributes** (subject to weakness, pain, sorrow and temptation), but **not giving up** his divine attributes.

**Conclusion:** “The Father is greater than I” (John 14:28) said Jesus from the vantage point of His incarnation as a man. This verse relates to Christ’s voluntary subordination to the Father to accomplish his work on earth. ”Greater than” refers to His greater **position** not his nature.

## **10. Mark 13:32 “But of that day and hour knoweth no man, no not the angels . . . neither the Son, but the Father”.**

**Watchtower teaching:** JWs say that, because Christ was ignorant of the day of His return, He cannot be Almighty God because God knows all things.

**Bible teaching:** Christ before His incarnation was **one in person** and **one in nature** (100% God). Christ after his incarnation was **one in person**, but **two in nature** (100% God and 100% man). He who had always been God the Huios, now took on a human nature at his incarnation. The attributes of Christ's human nature and divine nature both belong to His one person.

Thus Christ at the same time had seemingly contradictory qualities, possessing both **human** nature and **divine** nature:

He was finite, and yet infinite;

He was weak, and yet omnipotent;

He was increasing in knowledge, and yet omniscient;

He was limited to one place at a time, and yet omnipresent.

In Christ's incarnation, His one person possesses the attributes of both divine and human natures. Whatever is true of either His human nature or divine nature is true of His one person. **Christ sometimes operated as a man, and sometimes operated as God**, all in the one person. Christ in His human nature knew hunger (Luke 4:2), weariness (John 4:6) and sleepiness (Luke 8:23). Christ in His divine nature was omniscient (John 21:17), omnipresent (John 1:48) and omnipotent (John 11).

**Key:** At different times, Christ operated under the major influence of one or the other of His two natures. He operated in the human sphere to achieve His purposes in salvation.

Both of Christ's natures operated in many Gospel events:

i) Christ's desire to eat a fig as he approached a fig tree reflected that natural ignorance of the human mind (Matthew 21:19). (ie: in His **humanity** He did not know from a distance that there was no fruit on the tree). But then He revealed His **divine** omnipotence by causing the fig tree to wither.

ii) Jesus in His **divine omniscience** knew that Lazarus had died, so he set off for Bethany (John 11:11). When Jesus arrived, He asked (in His **humanness**, without exercising His omniscience) where Lazarus had been laid (v 34). Jesus, as the God-man is simultaneously **omniscient** as God (along with the Father and the Holy Spirit), and yet **ignorant** of some things as man (along with mankind).

iii) Jesus in Mark 13:32 was speaking from the vantage point of His **humanity**, as one member of the human race who was not omniscient (not knowing the date of His return). As a man his knowledge was increasing. As God it was infinite. If Jesus was speaking from the vantage point of His **divinity**, He would not have said the same thing.

**Note:** In Christ's divine nature, He is just as omniscient as the Father. “He knew what was in man” (John 2:25). “Now are we sure that thou **knowest all things**” (John 16:30).

“Lord, thou **knowest all things**” (John 21:17).

“In whom are hid **all the treasures** of wisdom and **knowledge**” (Colossians 2:3).

**Ask:** “Can anyone other than God be omniscient?” (No).

**Ask:** “Since Christ had both a human and divine nature, and since He used His omniscience often, can you see that **Jesus was speaking from His human nature** when He said that He didn't know the day or the hour of His return?

## **11. Isaiah 9:6 - Is Jesus “a Mighty God” or “Jehovah God”?**

“His name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, the Mighty God (410), the Everlasting Father, the Prince of Peace”.

**Watchtower teaching:** JWs concede that Jesus is a “mighty God”, but they are adamant that He is not Almighty God as Jehovah is. They think that Christ is one of lesser gods.

**Bible teaching:** The Bible shows that both Jesus and Jehovah are called “Mighty God”.

Jehovah is called “Mighty God” in:

- a) “The remnant of Israel . . . shall stay upon **Jehovah**, the remnant of Jacob shall return . . unto the **mighty God** (410).” (Isaiah 10:20,21).
- b) “the Great, the **Mighty God** (410), **Jehovah** of hosts, is his name.” (Jeremiah 32:18).
- c) “The **mighty God**, even **Jehovah**, hath spoken...” (Psalm 50:1).

Because Jehovah and Jesus are both called “Mighty God”, this proves Christ’s equality with God the Father.

**Ask:** Since Jehovah is called “Mighty God” (Isaiah 10:21) just as Jesus is called “Mighty God” (Isaiah 9:6), doesn’t this mean that the Watchtower is wrong in saying that “Mighty God” means a lesser deity?

**Ask:** If **both** Jesus and Jehovah are “Mighty God”, then what does this tell you about Jesus’ divine nature?

**Ask:** If both Jesus and Jehovah are equally “Mighty God”, then isn’t this two members of the Trinity?

**Note:** There is only one Mighty God in heaven:

- a) “I am the first and I am the last; beside me there is no God (430).” (Isaiah 44:6b).
- b) “Is there **a God** (433) besides Me? Yea, there is no God; I know not any.” (Isaiah 44:8b).
- c) “I am the LORD (JHVH), and there is **none else**, there is no God beside me.” Isaiah 45:5

The NWT translates John 1:1 as “the word was **a god**”.

Isaiah 44:8b shows this to be false by denying the existence of “a god” other than Jehovah. The phrase “Mighty God” is “Elohim” in Hebrew, meaning “Fullness of power”, portraying Christ as the “powerful Governor of the universe”.

Notice that “**Elohim** (430)” is also used to describe Jehovah God as:

- i) “The God (430) of the whole earth.” (Isaiah 54:5).
- ii) “The God (430) of all flesh.” (Jeremiah 32:27).
- iii) “I prayed to the God (430) of heaven.” (Nehemiah 2:4).
- iv) “For the Lord (JHVH) your God (430) is God (430) of gods....a great God.” (Deut 10:17).

In Isaiah 40:3, **Jesus** is called both **Jehovah** (3068) and **Elohim** (430) in the same verse:

“Prepare ye the way of the **Jehovah**, make straight in the desert a highway for our **God** (430)”.

Mark 1:3 and John 1:23 apply Jehovah here to Jesus.

**Question:** What is meant by calling Jesus, “Everlasting Father”?

Since Jesus is not the Father, why does Isaiah call Jesus “the Everlasting Father”?

**Answer:** Jesus considers the Father as someone other than Himself over 200 times in the NT. “Everlasting Father” in Isaiah 9:6 means “**Father of eternity**”.

“Father of eternity” means “**possessor of eternity**”. Hence, Christ as “Father of eternity” means that He is an eternal Being. Only God is eternal. This proves that Jesus is 100% God.

## 12. John 17:3

NWT	John 17:3	KJV
"This means everlasting life, their taking in <u>knowledge</u> (noun) of you the <b>only true God</b> , and of the one whom you sent forth, Jesus Christ".		"And this is life eternal, that they may know (verb) thee the <b>only true God</b> , and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent."

This is a most commonly used verse by JWs in two ways:

- 1) The NWT changes the Greek "know (verb in KJV) thee" to "take in knowledge (noun) of you". The JW then offers a "free home Bible study" to take in this so-called knowledge of God. Those who accept the offer are quickly switched from the Bible to a Watchtower booklet. Watchtower facts keep filling their heads as they take in Watchtower knowledge, but they never get to really know Jesus Christ as Saviour and God personally. Real Christianity is entering God's family and really knowing God through Jesus Christ as Saviour (Galatians 4:5-9; Romans 8:14-16). For example: If you "take in knowledge" about a movie star, it does not mean that you "know" that movie star personally.
- 2) JWs use John 17:3 to deny the deity of Christ. They say that because the Father is called "the only true God", then Jesus Christ cannot be the true God.
  - a) The context is Jesus as a man praying the great High Priestly prayer to the Father, and as such it was proper for the man Christ Jesus to call the Father "the only true God". Christ would not have said this if it was spoken from the viewpoint of His deity.
  - b) If Jesus' reference to the Father as "the only true God" was meant to exclude the Son from deity, then the same principle of interpretation would have to apply to Jude 4 where Jesus Christ is called "our only owner and Lord, Jesus Christ" (NWT). This would have to exclude the Father from Lordship and ownership. No JW (or anyone else) would accept this.

They speak of the Father as "Lord Jehovah", even though Jude 4 calls Jesus "our only Lord". The Holy Spirit is also called "Lord" in II Corinthians 3:17, "the Lord is that Spirit".

Conclusion: The use of the word "only" is not used exclusively of the Father, nor of the Son, nor of the Holy Spirit.

Jesus being called our "only" Lord does not exclude the Father or Holy Spirit being Lord. The Father being called "the only true God" does not exclude the Son or Holy Spirit from deity.

αἰώνιος ζωὴ ἵνα γινώσκωσι  
everlasting life in order that they may be knowing

σὲ τὸν μόνον ἀληθινὸν θεὸν καὶ ὃν

Ask: you the only true God and whom

life. 3 This means everlasting life, their taking in knowledge

of you, the only true

Q1: According to John 17:3, how many true Gods are there?

JW: Only one: Jehovah the Father

Q2: Right. Now, would you agree that whatever is not true must be false? (JW:Yes)

Q3: Then, if there is only one true God, all other gods must be false gods, right?(JW:Yes)

Q4: Now, according to John 1:1 in the NWT, Jesus is a god. Do you agree with that?(Yes)

Q5: Well then, is Jesus a true God or a false god? (JW: Hmm, I don't know).

Q6: He can't be a false god, can He, since that would mean John was guilty of falsely honouring Jesus as a god? Therefore Jesus must be a true God. But Jehovah is the only true God. Therefore Jesus must be Jehovah.

Note: "True" means here "real or genuine" as opposed to false gods and idols.

John 17:3 does not take away from Jesus Christ's deity, because John establishes it elsewhere (John 1:1; 5:18,23; 8:24,58; 20:28).

### **13. Psalm 110:1 “The Lord (JHVH<sup>3068</sup>) said to my Lord (Adonai<sup>136</sup>) sit thou at my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool.”**

**Watchtower teaching:** JWs say that since Jehovah is speaking in this verse and since the “Lord” is a distinct person from Jehovah, then Jesus must not be Jehovah God Almighty. In Matthew 22:41-45 Jesus claims that He Himself is the “Lord” referred to by David in this Psalm. They therefore conclude that Jesus is not Jehovah, but the one Jehovah speaks to.

**Bible Teaching:** This verse proves the deity of Christ.

**Question 1:** Christ asks the Pharisees, “Whose Son is he (Christ)?” regarding the deity of the Messiah. (Matthew 22:42)

**Answer:** The Pharisees reply, “The son of David”. Their answer was correct but incomplete. II Samuel 7:12-16 shows the Messiah to be the human son of David.

Psalm 110:1 shows the human Messiah also to be God (Adonai), a fact that Christ wanted the Pharisees to acknowledge. Christ anticipated the Pharisees’half-answer.

That’s why Christ then asks a question regarding Psalm 110:1.

**Question 2:** “The **LORD** (JHVH 3068) said unto my **Lord** (Adonai 136), sit thou on my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool. If David then call him (Messiah, Christ, Son of David) Lord (Adonai 136), how is he (Adonai=God) his (David’s) son?” Matt 22:44,45

**Answer:** Here the first person of the Trinity (God the Father) invites the second person of the Trinity (God the Son) to sit at His right hand.

It seems odd that David would call his own son “My Lord” (Adonai, a title used exclusively of God). The Messiah would be David’s son, but He would also be David’s God.

He would be both God and man.

**Question 3:** Jesus drove the point home to the Pharisees by asking, “If David then call him Lord (Adonai, Deity), how is he his son?” (Matthew 22:45).

**Answer:** The Pharisees should have replied that “David called his son Lord because He is **God as well as man**.” They would then be trapped into allowing Christ to be the Messiah, being both man and God. The Pharisees realised their dilemma, so they refused to answer.

**Key:** Psalm 110:1 proves the undiminished deity of Jesus Christ, because the same word used for “Lord” (Adonai) in Psalm 110:1 of Jesus Christ (Adonai the Son) is also used of the Father (Adonai the Father) many times in Scripture, such as:

- 1) “Three times in the year all thy males shall appear before the **Lord** (Adonai) **God** (JHVH 3068)”. (Exodus 23:17).
- 2) “For the **Lord** (JHVH 3068) your God (Elohim 430) is God (Elohim) of gods, and **Lord** (Adonai 136) of lords, a great God (El 410), a mighty, and a terrible”(Deuteronomy 10:17)
- 3) “Behold, the ark of the covenant of the **Lord** (Adonai 136) of all the earth passeth over before you into Jordan”. (Joshua 3:11)
- 4) “And Joshua said, Alas, O **Lord** (Adonai) God (JHVH)...” (Joshua 7:7)
- 5) “I prayed therefore unto the **Lord** (JHVH 3068), and said, O **Lord** (Adonai) God (JHVH 3069), destroy not thy people . . .” (Deuteronomy 9:26)

Other references to **Lord (Adonai<sup>136</sup>) God (JHVH)** are:

Deuteronomy 3:24; Exodus 34:23; 15:17; 4:10,11; 5:22; Judges 6:22; 13:8; 16:28;  
II Samuel 7:18,28,29; I Kings 2:26; 8:53; Psalm 68:20; 69:6; 71:5,16; 73:28; 109:21; 141:8;  
Isaiah 3:15; 28:16; 22:5,12,14,15; 25:8; 40:10; 48:16; 49:22; 50:4; 52:4; 56:8 etc.

Ask: Did you know that “Adonai” (Lord) used of Jesus Christ in Psalm 110:1 is also used of the Father in Exodus 23:17; Deuteronomy 10:17; Joshua 3:11?

Ask: Can you see that Jesus’ statement to the Pharisees in Matthew 22:42-45 was that the Messiah (Christ) would be David’s son as well as David’s God (Adonai)?

Question: Does “Adonai” mean Jehovah God?

Answer: Yes, for these reasons:

- 1) It is linked together with “JHVH” (Exodus 23:17).
- 2) Jehovah calls himself “Adonai” in Isaiah 8:7, “The **LORD** (JHVH) spake also unto me again saying: . . . Now therefore behold the **Lord** (Adonai) bringeth up . . .”

3) **אֲדֹנֵי the Lord; only used of God, Gen. 18:27; 113, 136**

Jud. 13:8; Ezr. 10:3; Neh. 1:11, etc., etc. [“Chiefly (in the Pentateuch always) where God is submissively and reverently addressed; as in the phrases בָּי אֲדֹנִי Ex. 4:10, 13; Jos. 7:8; Neh. 1:11, comp. Gen. 15:2; 18:30—32; Ex. 34:9, etc. Then also where God is spoken of, 1 K. 13:10; 22:6; 2 K. 7:6; 19:23; Isa. 6:8; 8:7.

(Gesenius’ Hebrew Chaldee Lexicon to the Old Testament, p. 12)

4) WE Vine’s Complete Expository Dictionary of OT and NT Words, p. 140 states that ‘Adonai’ applies to God:

When applied to God, *ādōn* is used in several senses. It signifies His position as the One who has authority (like a master) over His people to reward the obedient and punish the disobedient: “Ephraim provoked him to anger most bitterly; therefore shall he leave his blood upon him, and his reproach shall his Lord return unto him” (Hos. 12:14). In such contexts God is conceived as a Being who is sovereign ruler and almighty master. The word is often a title of respect, a term of direct address usually assuming a specific concrete lord-vassal or master-servant relationship (Ps. 8:1).<sup>3</sup> In some cases the word appears to be a title suggesting God’s relationship to and position over Israel: “Three

times in the year all thy males shall appear before the Lord God” (Exod. 23:17). In such contexts *ādōn* is a formal divine name and should probably be transliterated if the proper emphasis is to be retained.<sup>4</sup> In the form *ādōnāy* ← the word means “Lord” par excellence or “Lord over all,” even as it sometimes does in the form *ādōn* (cf. Deut. 10:17, where God is called the “God of gods, and Lord of lords”; Josh. 3:11, where He is called the “Lord of all the earth”).

The word *ādōnāy* appears in Gen. 15:2: “And Abram said, Lord God, what wilt thou give me, seeing I go childless, . . . .” This word frequently appears in Psalms (Ps. 68:17; 86:3) and Isaiah (Isa. 29:13; 40:10).

The JW claim that Jesus cannot be God because Jehovah spoke to Him, is faulty because we who are from the finite earthly realm cannot assume that God who is of infinite heavenly realms must fit into our earthly logic patterns with which we are familiar. God’s ways are greatly above our ways. For example, in Genesis 18:1-3 Abraham addressed the three visitors as “Jehovah”. The two who left to visit Sodom, Lot called them “Jehovah” (19:18), yet the one who remained, Abraham continued to address Him as “Jehovah” (18:22,26,27,30,31,32,33).

Note: JWs often mockingly ask the question when Jesus prays to Father: “Does God talk to Himself?” Yes He does, as in Genesis 18:17-19 where God asks Himself a question: “And Jehovah said, Am I keeping covered from Abraham what I am doing?”

Later in v. 22 Jehovah separates.

Hence the Father can talk to the Son, with the Son still being 100% God.

Ask: If you reject the Trinity because you can’t understand it, then how do you explain how a brown cow by eating green grass gives white milk?

**14. John 4:23 - Do we worship the Father only?** “True worshippers shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth: for the Father seeketh such to worship Him.”

**Watchtower teaching:** JW's say that only the Father is to be worshipped, not Jesus who they claim to be a lesser deity.

**Bible teaching:**

1. Early Watchtower editions say: “to worship Christ in any form cannot be wrong”. (1880).

**Ask:** Why did early Watchtower magazines say that we should worship Jesus, while later editions say that we should not?

**Ask:** Were earlier editions of the Watchtower unscriptural?

2. The NWT shows its anti-Christ bias by translating the Greek word for worship “προσκυνεω” (proskuneo) as “worship” when it applies to the Father (21 times), devils (14 times) and angels (2 times), but as “obeisance” when it applies to Christ (16 times).

**Ask:** What rule of Greek grammar do you use to so inconsistently translate “proskuneo”?

3. When Christ was worshipped as God, He always **accepted** such worship as appropriate. Jesus accepted worship from: i) Thomas (John 20:28)

- ii) a leper (Matthew 8:2).
- iii) a ruler (Matthew 9:18).
- iv) a Syrophoenician woman (Matthew 15:25).
- v) Mary Magdalene (Matthew 28:9).
- vi) the disciples (Matthew 28:17).
- vii) a blind man (John 9:38).
- viii) God does not rebuke the wise men for worshipping Jesus (Matthew 2:11).
- ix) God tells all the angels to worship Jesus (Hebrews 1:6).

4. When **Paul** and **Barnabus** healed a man at Lystra, the crowd shouted: “The gods are come down to us in the likeness of men”. (Acts 14:11). When Paul and Barnabus saw that the people were preparing to worship them, they immediately and severely **rebuked the misconception** that they were gods, by forbidding the people worshipping them.

By contrast, **Jesus never corrected His followers when they bowed down and worshipped Him.** Jesus' accepting worship as appropriate, proves He is God in the flesh. If Jesus was a man or an angel, He should have refused worship, as the angel rebuked John in Rev.22:8,9. A man or angel accepting worship is sin. Only God is to be worshipped. “Thou shalt worship no other God; for the Lord (JHVH) is a jealous God.” (Exodus 34:14).

**Consider the following discussion led by a JW:**

JW: Whom do you worship as God? What is his name? (You: The Lord or God).

JW: That's a title. What is God's name?

You: Jesus. (Saul in Acts 9:5,17 prays to Jesus, asking “Who art thou Lord?” The Lord replies “I am Jesus.”) God should know His name.)

JW: Reads John 4:23 and says, “You are not a true worshipper, because you are worshipping the Son. The Bible says here that true worshippers will worship **the Father**. Do you know the Father's name?

JWs then present their standard arguments about the name Jehovah.

JWs preaching theme is: Deny the Deity of Christ, and teach that only the **Father** (Jehovah) must be worshipped. To establish this doctrine they show certain verses, clearly avoiding Isaiah 9:6 (the mighty God), John 1:1 (the word was God), John 8:58,59 (before Abraham was, I am); John 20:28 (My Lord and my God), Colossians 2:9 (in him dwelleth all the fullness of the Godhead bodily), Hebrews 1:6 (Let all the angels of God worship him), I Timothy 3:16 (God was manifest in the flesh) all showing the deity and worship of Christ.

You ask JW: While agreeing that the Father should be worshipped, do you respect the Father's wishes in other matters too? (Yes).

Read John 5:23 where the Father requires “that all men should honour the Son, even as they honour the Father”. **Do you give worshipful honour to the Son? (No).**

**Then your worship of the Father is in vain**, because the same verse continues:

**“He that honoureth not the Son, honoureth not the Father which hath sent him”.**

The words "**even as**" mean that we must honour both the Father as God, and the Son as God.

**Ask:** Do you give worshipful honour to the Son as you do to the Father? (No)

Then your worship is in vain and you are not giving worshipful honour to the Father.

**15. Mark 10:17,18 “Why callest thou me good? There is none good but one, that is, God.”**

**Watchtower teaching:** JW's claim that this verse proves that Jesus is not God, as Jesus said, only God is truly good. They say that Jesus here would not accept the title "God". JW's say, "Jesus was saying that no-one is as good as God, not even Jesus." (*Should you Believe in the Trinity*, p17)

**Bible Teaching:** Jesus was saying to the rich young ruler:

"You have given me a title belonging only to God. Do you understand and mean that I am God?" Jesus was not denying that He was God or good.

Jesus was asking him to examine the implications of what he was saying. Jesus asked in effect, “By calling me good, are you saying that I am God?” Jesus did not deny His deity, but His question was a veiled claim to it. Either Jesus was good and God, or a bad man.

**Ask:** Where in the text does Jesus explicitly say that He is not good?

By asking, "Why do you call me good?" this is not denying Christ's goodness.

**Note:** Jesus did claim to be good and hence God: 'I am the **good** shepherd'. (John 10:14) and "There is none good but one, that is **God**". (Mark 10:18)

**16. Hebrews 9:27** In this verse, the Watchtower adds “for all time”. Why?

This occurs in no NT manuscripts. The NWT does not even place this phrase in brackets.

This misleads readers to think that it is part of the NT text.

NWT	Hebrews 9:27	KJV
And as it is reserved for men to die <b>once for all time</b> , but after this judgment.	And as it is appointed unto men <b>once</b> to die, after this the judgment.	

The Watchtower organisation believes that unbelievers will be annihilated, with no continued existence in hell. This is why they add "for all time", thus giving the meaning that unbelievers die only once, and are annihilated for all time.

The intended, correct meaning is that men die (physically) once, and that they will be resurrected, judged and sentenced to the everlasting lake of fire (Revelation 20:11-15), with a continued conscious existence forever.

The Watchtower have added, “for all time” to agree with their theological bias on the annihilation of the soul at death. “For all time” is not found in any NT Greek manuscript.

**Ask:** Is it right to add words that change a text's meaning as the Watchtower has done?

**Ask:** Where is the Greek expression “for all time” in Hebrews 9:27? Show it to me!

**Ask:** What are you going to do about it?

27 καὶ καθ' according to  
And as it is reserved for  
of himself. 27 And  
σον ἀπόκειται τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἔπας  
how much it is lying off to the men once  
ἀπόθανεν, μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο κρίσις,  
to die. after but this (thing) judgment.

## **11. THE TRINITY**

**Watchtower Teaching:** JW arguments against the Trinity are:

- i) If Jesus is God, who ran the universe during the three days that Jesus was dead in the grave? Satan had a great chance to take control.  
**Answer:** Jesus' body died, not His soul or spirit. He along with the Father and the Holy Spirit still ran the universe.
- ii) If Jesus is the immortal God, He could not have died.  
**Answer:** The immortal God, by taking on a mortal body, had His mortal body die.
- iii) Since God is not a God of confusion (I Corinthians 14:33), it is impossible that the Bible would talk of a God who could not be understood by human reason. JW's claim that the Trinity is incomprehensible and unreasonable. "We worship what we know" (John 4:22).  
**Answer:** Man's lack of understanding has never stopped new discoveries. What percent of the total knowledge of the universe do you possess? (about zero percent).  
**Ask:** Could there be something about God that you don't comprehend? (eg: His Trinity?).
- iv) The word "Trinity" is not in the Bible.  
**Answer:** Neither is "Bible", "organisation", "Kingdom Hall", chocolate, motor car, etc. Say to the JW: "By this logic you would agree that Kingdom Halls don't exist either?" This is shallow reasoning designed to throw the Christian off guard.  
If it can be proved that the Bible teaches a certain truth, then naming that truth does not make it unbiblical. We should ask: "Is the particular teaching in the Bible?"
- v) The **Watchtower has misrepresented the Trinity doctrine** in order to make its denial more plausible. They erect a straw man that is easily knocked down.  
They call the Trinity a "freakish looking, three headed God" (*Let God be True*, p 102)  
"This doctrine of three Gods in one God . . ." (*Studies in Scripture*, 1899, Vol 5, p 60,61)  
**Note:** Trinitarians do not believe in "three Gods in one God".  
They believe in **one God**, with **three co-equal persons** in the one Godhead.

### **1. Refuting the Watchtower's FALSE Quotes of Early Church Writers**

The Watchtower is quite happy to tell lies by inventing statements allegedly made by six Ante-Nicene Church writers who lived before 325 AD.

Page 7 of their publication "*Should you believe in the Trinity?*" is reproduced on the next page showing the Watchtower's claims that these ancient writers taught that Jesus Christ was not God. These quotes are false and invented by the Watchtower. They are easily refuted by the photocopied excerpts of the 10 volume set of genuine Ante-Nicene church fathers' quotes that prove these early writers strong belief in and defence of the Trinity.

In the Watchtower's false quotes we notice that:

- 1) None of these references are given a source, making them nearly impossible to check.  
It is almost certain that the Watchtower has invented these quotes.
- 2) Notice the lie of the central bold quote on page 7: "There is no evidence that any sacred writer even suspected the existence of a [Trinity] within the Godhead".  
We refute this Watchtower lie, and prove beyond doubt that both the Trinity and the full deity of Christ were well known and firmly believed as early as 110 AD as seen from the quotes by the Ante-Nicene (before 325 AD) church fathers which follow the Watchtower quote.

[testament] and other early Christian writings."—*Encyclopædia of Religion and Ethics*.

The formulation 'one God in three Persons' was not solidly established, certainly not fully assimilated into Christian life and its profession of faith, prior to the end of the 4th century. . . . Among the Apostolic Fathers, there had been nothing even remotely approaching such a mentality or perspective."—*New Catholic Encyclopedia*.

#### **What the Ante-Nicene Fathers Taught**

THE ante-Nicene Fathers were acknowledged to have been leading religious teachers in the early centuries after Christ's birth. What they taught is of interest.

Justin Martyr, who died about 165 C.E., called the prehuman Jesus a created angel who is "other than the God who made all things." He said that Jesus was inferior to God and "never did anything except what the Creator . . . willed him to do and say."

Irenaeus, who died about 200 C.E., said that the prehuman Jesus had a separate existence from God and was inferior to him. He showed that Jesus is not equal to the "One true and only God," who is "supreme over all, and besides whom there is no other."

Clement of Alexandria, who died about 215 C.E., called God "the uncreated and imperishable and only true God." He said that the Son "is next to the only omnipotent Father" but not equal to him.

Tertullian, who died about 230 C.E., taught

The following quotes are from the 10 Volume set of *The Ante-Nicene Fathers*, translations of The Writings of the Fathers down to A.D. 325, by editors Alexander Roberts and James Donaldson, American Reprint of the Edinburgh edition, revised and arranged by A C Coxe, published by W.B. Eerdmans, Grand Rapids, Michigan, reprinted in May 1987.

The Watchtower's claim that Constantine and the Council of Nicea introduced the deity of Christ and Trinity doctrines in 325 AD is proven false by these pre-325 AD quotes to the contrary:

i) Justin Martyr (110-165 AD),

**Volume I, page 263:**

'His Son, being God'

**Volume I, page 219**

Justin Martyr says::

'Christ existed as  
God before the ages'

that this Christ existed as God before the ages, ||

**Volume I, page 264)**

Justin Martyr says  
that 'Christ is Lord  
and God'.

the supremacy of God. He observed: "The Father is different from the Son (another), as he is greater; as he who begets is different from him who is begotten; he who sends, different from him who is sent." He also said: "There was a time when the Son was not. . . . Before all things, God was alone."

Hippolytus, who died about 235 C.E., said that God is "the one God, the first and the only One, the Maker and Lord of all," who "had nothing co-eval [of equal age] with him . . . But he was One, alone by himself; who, willing it, called into being what had no being before," such as the created prehuman Jesus.

Origen, who died about 250 C.E., said that "the Father and Son are two substances . . . two things as to their essence," and that "compared with the Father, [the Son] is a very small light."

Summing up the historical evidence, Alvan Lamson says in *The Church of the First Three Centuries*: "The modern popular doctrine of the Trinity ?

... derives no support from the ?

language of Justin [Martyr]; and this observation may be extended to all the ante-Nicene Fathers; that is, to all Christian writers for three centuries after the birth of Christ. It is true, they speak of the Father, Son, and . . . holy Spirit, but not as co-equal, not as one numerical essence, not as Three in One, in any sense now admitted by Trinitarians. The very reverse is the fact."

Thus, the testimony of the Bible and of history makes clear that the Trinity was unknown throughout Biblical times and for several centuries thereafter.

"**There is no evidence that any sacred writer even suspected the existence of a [Trinity] within the Godhead." —The Triune God ?**

language of Justin [Martyr]; and this observation may be extended to all the ante-Nicene Fathers; that is, to all Christian writers for three centuries after the birth of Christ. It is true, they speak of the Father, Son, and . . . holy Spirit, but not as co-equal, not as one numerical essence, not as Three in One, in any sense now admitted by Trinitarians. The very reverse is the fact."

Thus, the testimony of the Bible and of history makes clear that the Trinity was unknown throughout Biblical times and for several centuries thereafter.

CHAP. CXXVI.—THE VARIOUS NAMES OF CHRIST  
ACCORDING TO BOTH NATURES. IT IS SHOWN  
THAT HE IS GOD, AND APPEARED TO THE PA-  
TRIARCHS.

Therefore neither Abraham, nor Isaac, nor Jacob, nor any other man, saw the Father and ineffable Lord of all, and also of Christ, but [saw] Him who was according to His will His Son, being God, and the Angel because He ministered to His will ; whom also it pleased Him to be born man by the Virgin ; who also was fire when He conversed with Moses from the bush.

" And that Christ being Lord, and God the Son of God, and appearing formerly in power as Man, and Angel, and in the glory of fire as at the bush, so also was manifested at the judgment executed on Sodom, has been demonstrated fully by what has been said." /

ii) Irenaeus (120-202 AD)

Volume I, page 328 not only shows the NWT to be wrong on John 1:1 but also calls Christ 'God'

iii) Clement of Alexandria (153-217 AD)

In Volume 2, p 468, written in 193 AD, Clement clearly quotes the Holy Trinity as Father, Son & Holy Spirit.

page 173

iv) Tertullian (200-250 AD)

Volume 3, page 598

page 598

Tertullian against Praxeas,

Volume 3, p.606

Tertullian correctly quotes John 1:1, saying that Christ is God. (Volume 3, p. 607)

Very properly, then, did he say, "In the beginning was the Word," for He was in the Son ; "and the Word was with God," for He was the beginning ; "and the Word was God," of course, for that which is begotten of God is God.

①

I understand nothing else than the Holy Trinity to be meant ; for the third is the Holy Spirit, and the Son is the second, by whom all things were made according to the will of the Father.<sup>3</sup>

This Word, then, the Christ, the cause of both our being at first (for He was in God) and of our well-being, this very Word has now appeared as man, He alone being both, both God and man—the Author of all blessings to us ;

this one only God has also a Son, His Word, who proceeded<sup>4</sup> from Himself, by whom all things were made, and without whom nothing was made. Him we believe to have been sent by the Father into the Virgin, and to have been born of her—being both Man and God, the Son of Man and the Son of God, and to have been called by the name of Jesus Christ;

while the

mystery of the dispensation<sup>5</sup> is still guarded, which distributes the Unity into a Trinity, ② placing in their order<sup>6</sup> the three Persons—the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost: three, however, not in condition,<sup>7</sup> but in degree;<sup>8</sup> not in substance, but in form; not in power, but in aspect;<sup>9</sup> yet of one substance, and of one condition, and of one power, inasmuch as He is one God, from whom these degrees and forms and aspects are reckoned, under the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.<sup>14</sup>

when all the Scriptures attest the clear existence of, and distinction in, (the Persons of) the Trinity. ③

Still, in these few

quotations the distinction of Persons in the Trinity is clearly set forth. For there is the Spirit Himself who speaks, and the Father to whom He speaks, and the Son of whom He speaks.<sup>15</sup>

CHAP. XII.—OTHER QUOTATIONS FROM HOLY SCRIPTURE ADDUCED IN PROOF OF THE PLURALITY OF PERSONS IN THE GODHEAD.

Now if He too is God, according to John, (who says,) "The Word was God,"<sup>8</sup> then you have two Beings—One that commands that the thing be made, and the Other that executes the order and creates.

Tertullian again quotes the Trinity on a fourth occasion.  
(Vol 4, page 99)

v) Hippolytus (170-236 AD)  
Volume 5, page 228 mentions the Trinity and quotes John 1:1 correctly.

⑥

vi) Origen (185-254 AD)  
Volume 4, page 255. Twice he quotes the word 'Trinity', as Father, Son and Holy Spirit

Also on page 258 he quotes the Trinity in '*Origen de Principiis*', written in 230 AD.

which we have manifestly shown to be the case with Christ and the Holy Spirit alone, as undoubtedly with the Father also? For it was proved that there was nothing compound in the nature of the Trinity.

⑨

vii) Thaumaturgus (205-265 AD)  
Volume 6, pages 42, 45

VII.

⑩

But some treat the Holy Trinity<sup>7</sup> in an awful manner, when they confidently assert that there are not three persons, and introduce (the idea of) a person devoid of subsistence.<sup>8</sup>

we believe that three persons — namely,

Father, Son, and Holy Spirit — are declared to possess the one Godhead: for the one divinity showing itself forth according to nature in the Trinity<sup>12</sup> establishes the oneness of the nature; and thus there is a (divinity that is the) property of the Father, according to the word, "There is one God the Father;"<sup>11</sup> and there is a divinity hereditary<sup>12</sup> in the Son, as it is written, "The Word was God;"<sup>13</sup> and there is a divinity present according to nature in the Spirit — to wit, what subsists as the Spirit of God — according to Paul's statement, "Ye are the temple of God, and the Spirit of God dwelleth in you."<sup>14</sup>

⑬

Wherefore the Trinity is to be adored, to be glorified, to be honoured, and to be reverenced;

For the very Church itself is, properly and principally, the Spirit Himself, in whom is the Trinity of the One Divinity — Father, Son, and Holy Spirit.<sup>13</sup>

"Go ye

and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost."<sup>16</sup> And by this He showed, that whosoever omitted any one of these, failed in glorifying God perfectly. For it is through this Trinity<sup>17</sup> that the Father is glorified. For the Father willed, the Son did, the Spirit manifested. The whole Scriptures, then, proclaim this truth.

This is most clearly pointed out by the Apostle Paul, when demonstrating that the power of the Trinity is one and the same, in the words, "There are diversities of gifts, but the same Spirit; there are diversities of administrations, but the same Lord; and there are diversities of operations, but it is the same God who worketh all in all. But the manifestation of the Spirit is given to every man to profit withal."<sup>2</sup> From which it most clearly follows that there is no difference in the Trinity, but that which is called the gift of the Spirit is made known through the Son, and operated by God the Father. "But all these worketh that one and the self-same Spirit, dividing to every one severally as He will."<sup>3</sup>

8. Having made these declarations regarding the Unity of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit, let us return to the order in which we began the discussion.

XVIII.

We acknowledge that the Son and the Spirit are consubstantial with the Father, and that the substance of the Trinity is one, — that is, that there is one divinity according to nature, the

⑪

And those who have fellowship with men that reject the consubstantiality as a doctrine foreign to the Scriptures, and speak of any of the persons in the Trinity as created, and separate that person from the one natural divinity, we hold as aliens, and have fellowship with none such.<sup>5</sup> There is one God the Father, and there is only one divinity. But the Son also is God, as being the true image of the one and only divinity, according to generation and the nature which He has from

xx.

⑯

And that the holy Trinity is to be worshipped without either separation or alienation, is taught us by Paul, who says in his Second Epistle to the Corinthians: "The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the communion of the Holy Ghost, be with you all."<sup>9</sup>

## **2. Is the Trinity a Pagan Concept? No!** Because:

- i) The Babylonians and Assyrians believed in triads of gods, which were three separate gods (polytheism) governing other gods. This is totally different from the Trinity of only one God (monotheism) with three persons within the one Godhead.
- ii) Triads of gods pre-date Christianity by about 700 years and were far removed from Israel
- iii) Some pagan ideas have some truth in them, such as the pagan Flood legends.  
Just because pagans spoke of a concept that remotely resembles a biblical concept, does not mean that Christians stole it from the pagans.
- iv) JW's quote Hislop's *The Two Babylons* to support their case, yet they don't tell us that Hislop believes in the Trinity, as seen from Hislop's quote:  
"They all admitted a **Trinity**, but did they worship the **Triune Jehovah**?" (p. 90)
  - About **80% of the sources** that the WT quotes are from **Trinitarians**. We ask: "How can the WT disprove the Trinity by quoting sources who believe the Trinity?
  - **15%** of their sources are secular works like *Encyclopaedia Britannica*.
  - **5%** of WT sources are **invalid sources of Biblical truth**, eg: sceptics, spiritists, Unitarians.
  - The WT always finds some **unknown, obscure** person to agree with them. They do not examine the credibility of such sources. Most WT sources have no credibility & no authority.
  - The WT rarely gives **page numbers** of its quotes to check the **source or context**.
- v) JW's claim they represent the "faith once delivered to the saints". They claim that the Trinity idea was introduced in 325 AD. What they don't say is that current WT teachings have no precedent in history. They do not say who were the JW's of the first three centuries or later. No early church "father" represented their beliefs. The WT is historically bankrupt.
- vi) The WT, by showing a **three-headed god**, use the "straw-man effect", where they misrepresent what Christians believe, and then proceed to "shoot down" this "straw man". This is seen in five pictures of three-headed gods which are supposed to represent the God of Christendom. ("Should you believe in the Trinity" p 10).
- vii) The WT is happy to misquote sources to prove their point.  
Consider page 6 "Should you believe in the Trinity", where they misquote the *New Encyclopaedia Britannica* by failing to give the full relevant quote. They stop the quote at the asterisk \*  
"The Encyclopaedia Britannica (1976 Edition) correctly states:  
*"Neither the word Trinity, nor the explicit doctrine as such, appears in the New Testament,"*"  
[\***They stop the quote here, ignoring the rest of the article which endorses the Trinity:**]  
*"nor did Jesus and his followers intend to contradict the Shema in the Old Testament: 'Hear, O Israel: The Lord our God is one Lord' (Deuteronomy 6:4). The earliest Christians, however, had to cope with the implications of the coming of Jesus Christ and of the presence and power of God among them - ie, the Holy Spirit, whose coming we connected with the celebration of Pentecost. The Father, Son, and Holy Spirit were associated in such New Testament passages as the Great Commission: "Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit" (Matthew 28:19); and in the apostolic benediction: "The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ and the love of God and the fellowship of the Holy Spirit be with you all" (2 Cor. 13:14). Thus, the New Testament established the basis for the doctrine of the Trinity. The doctrine developed gradually over several centuries and through many controversies."*  
Any early church council disputes were over fine points of Trinity clarification, such as the substance, nature and omnipotence of Father, Son and Holy Spirit, never over whether the Trinity was right or wrong. The truth of the Trinity was always accepted.

### **3. Refuting Watchtowers' wrong application of I Corinthians 14:33**

"for God is not the author of confusion, but of peace . . ."

**Watchtower Teaching:** JWs say that because God is not the author of confusion, the Trinity doctrine cannot be true because it is so unreasonable. How can the Father, Son and Holy Spirit each be God, and yet there be only one God? It doesn't make sense to them.

**Bible Teaching:** Just because one can't fully understand something, doesn't mean it is false.

- i) Finite humans cannot possibly understand everything about the infinite God.

"How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways past finding out." (Romans 11:33).

"For my thoughts are not your thoughts, neither are your ways my ways, saith the Lord.

As the heavens are higher than the earth, so are my ways higher than your ways, and my thoughts than your thoughts." (Isaiah 55:8,9).

- ii) Can you fully understand how light can be both a particle of matter and a wave form?

- iii) Can you fully understand how God had no beginning? (No). Do you reject the idea? (No).

**Ask:** Should we reject the Trinity doctrine because we don't fully understand it, when we accept other things about God and the universe which we don't fully understand?

I Corinthians 14:33 means that a church should avoid disharmony in its services by only having two or three prophets speak in a service, and only one at a time.

"Confusion" means "parts of a whole which are at strife with one another".

"Peace" means "parts of a whole acting in harmony".

### **4. Refuting WT's misunderstanding of John 17:3 (See earlier study on page 868 ).**

### **5. Refuting WT's misunderstanding of Deuteronomy 6:4 and Mark 12:29**

"Hear, O Israel, the Lord (JHVH) our God (Elohim) is one Lord (JHVH)." (Deut 6:4).

**Watchtower teaching:** JWs say that, since God is one, He cannot be Triune at the same time. Why would God speak as one person if He were composed of three persons?

**Bible teaching:** The ordinary name of God (Elohim) is in the plural form.

"Hear, O, Israel, Jehovah our Elohim, one Jehovah." Deuteronomy 6:4.

If God had intended to assert a solitary, exclusive type of unity, the expression would have been "Eloah", not the plural "Elohim".

It does not say: "Hear, O Israel, Jehovah, our Elohim, one **Eloah**."

The use of Elohim (a uniplural noun) means: "there is a real plurality, yet Jehovah is one."

**Ask:** Who is Jehovah? Is it the Father alone? Is Jesus Jehovah? Is the Holy Spirit Jehovah?

If we can find verses teaching that Jesus is Jehovah (or God) and the Holy Spirit is Jehovah, then we have proved the Trinity.

- i) **The Holy Spirit is called Jehovah:** "Jehovah is the Spirit". (2 Corinthians 3:17 NWT).

- ii) **Jesus Christ is called God**, as follows:

(1) "Our Lord Jesus Christ who is the blessed and **only Potentate**, the King of kings, & Lord of lords; who only hath immortality, dwelling in the light which no man can approach unto." (I Timothy 6:14-16)

(2) "The Word was **God**." (John 1:1).

(3) "of the great **God** and our Saviour Jesus Christ." (Titus 2:13).

(4) "the righteousness of **God** and our Saviour Jesus Christ." (II Peter 1:1).

(5) "if ye believe not that **I am, ye shall die in your sins.**" (John 8:24).

(6) "Before Abraham was, **I am.**" (John 8:58).

(7) "**God** was manifest in the flesh." (I Timothy 3:16).

(8) "Thomas said unto **him**, My Lord and **My God.**" (John 20:28).

(9) "in him dwells **all** the fullness of the **Godhead** bodily." (Colossians 2:9).

(10) "unto the **Son** he saith, Thy throne, O **God** is forever." (Hebrews 1:8).

- (11) "If you publicly declare . . . that Jesus is **Lord**." (KIT: "ha Adon" in Hebrew footnote of Romans 10:9. In the 1961 edition of NWT, p.1453, "ha Adon" = Jehovah).
- (12) "that he (Christ) might be **Lord** both of the dead and the living." (Romans 14:9).  
In verses 6-11 of NWT "κύριος" (Lord) is translated 7 times as Jehovah, except in v.9. Why?
- (13) "in his **Son Jesus Christ**. This is the **true God**, and eternal life." (I John 5:20).
- (14) "feed the church of **God**, which he hath purchased with **his own blood**." (Acts 20:28).

## **6. Notice how God reveals Himself in stages to man:**

- (1) God revealed His **Unity** as the **one and only true God**, to refute the nations' many gods.
- (2) God revealed the **Trinity** (Jehovah=Father+Son+HS) in the **Old Testament** in:  
"Jehovah your God is **God of gods** (the **Father**), and **Lord of lords** (the **Son**)."  
(Deut.10:17).  
"Thus saith Jehovah the King of Israel (Father), and his redeemer Jehovah of hosts (the Son). Isai44:6.  
"God said "let us make man in **our** image . . ." Genesis 1:26  
**Jehovah God** said, "Behold the man is become as one of **us** . . ." Genesis 3:22; 11:5,7.  
"Spirit of the LORD spake by me,.God of Israel said,.the Rock of Israel spake." 2 Sam23:2,3  
"the **Lord** saying . . . who will go for **us**?" Isaiah 6:8.  
"What is **his** name....and what is his **Son's** name." Proverbs 30:4; **2 Samuel 23:2,3**  
"the **Lord God** (Father), and his **Spirit** (HS), hath sent **me** (Jehovah the Son)." **Isaiah 48:16**  
**LORD**...their Saviour,..the **angel** of his presence saved them..vexed his **holy Spirit**." **Isaiah 63:7-10**.

- (3) God revealed the **fullness of the Trinity** doctrine in the **New Testament**:  
Matthew 28:19 "baptizing them in the **name** (singular name, not plural) of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit."  
I John 5:7 "There are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are **one**."  
Revelation 22:1,3,4 "the **throne** (of God and of the Lamb) shall be in it; and **his servants** shall serve him; they shall see **his face**, and **his name** shall be in their foreheads."  
**Key:** God and the Lamb have **one throne, one name, one face & one ownership of servants.**  
II Corinthians 13:14 "The grace of the **Lord Jesus Christ**, the love of **God**, and the communion of the **Holy Ghost**". There is one God, but three persons within the Godhead.

- (4) Early Christians with a strong Jewish background, who knew Deuteronomy 6:4, continually **refer to Jesus** as "**Lord**" and "**God**" (Romans 10:13, I Thess 5:2, I Peter 2:3; 3:15 They often apply to Jesus many Old Testament texts which refer to Jehovah, such as:
  - a) Jesus Christ in Matthew 3:1-3 fulfils Isaiah 40:3 to "**Prepare** the way of **Jehovah**" & **Elohim**.
  - b) Jesus Christ's **glory** in John 12:41 is Jehovah's glory in Isaiah 6:1-5.
  - c) Jesus Christ's **voice** as the sound of many waters in Revelation 1:15 is identical to Jehovah's voice as the sound of many waters in Ezekiel 43:2.
  - d) Jesus Christ being **pierced** in Rev 1:7 is the same one as Jehovah being pierced in Zech 12:10
  - e) Jesus Christ being **called on for salvation** in Romans 10:13, is the same as Jehovah being called on for salvation in Joel 2:32.
  - f) Jesus Christ, the Lamb, is the **everlasting light** in Revelation 21:23, just as Jehovah "shall be . . . an everlasting light" in Isaiah 60:19,20.

- Ask:** Do you agree that Trinitarians believe Deuteronomy 6:4 teaches only one true God?  
**Ask:** Do you understand that Trinitarians **don't** teach that there are three gods in the Trinity, but that there is only **one God** with three persons within the one Godhead?  
**Ask:** How do you explain that the early Jewish Christians who believed Deuteronomy 6:4, applied to Jesus many Old Testament texts that were originally written of Jehovah?

## **12. BIBLE PROOFS OF THE TRINITY**

**Key:** The Father, Son and Holy Spirit are so clearly and consistently linked in Scripture that, assuming that God is not three persons, makes it impossible to understand some passages. Though JWs exalt human reasoning against the Trinity doctrine, saying it is unreasonable, those who submit to God's Word must conclude that it is unreasonable to doubt the Trinity. Consider these scriptures proving the Trinity:

### **1. Matthew 28:19 The “Name” of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit**

**Watchtower teaching:** JWs ask, "Does this verse prove the Father, Son and Holy Spirit are equal in substance, power and eternity?" They say, "No, no more than listing three people Tom, Dick and Harry mean that they are three in one." They say that the Trinity doctrine is imposed on the text, not derived from it.

**Bible Teaching:** The key point is that the word "**name**" is **singular** in the Greek NT, thus proving that there is **one God**, but **three distinct persons** within the Godhead.

This proves the Trinity because Jesus did not say:

- i) "into the **names** (plural) of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit."
- ii) "into the **name** of the Father, and into the **name** of the Son, and into the **name** of the Holy Spirit", as if we had three separate beings.
- iii) "into the **name** of the Father, Son and Holy Spirit" omitting the three articles (the), as if the Father, Son and Holy Spirit might be three designations of a single person.

What He does say is:

"into the **name** (singular) of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit".

Jesus first teaches the **unity of the three** by combining them all within a single name.

He then teaches that each is a different person by introducing **each** of them in turn with the **article** (tou):

μαθητεύσατε πάντα τὰ ἔθνη, βαπτίζοντες make disciples of all the nations, baptizing	αὐτοὺς εἰς τὸ ὄνομα τοῦ πατρὸς them [persons] into the name of the Father	καὶ τοῦ υἱοῦ καὶ τοῦ ἁγίου πνεύματος, and of the Son and of the holy spirit,	and make disciples of people of all the na- tions, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the holy spirit,
--	--	---	---

**Ask:** Can you see that rules of grammar dictate **plurality** (the, the, the) within **unity** (the name), because the word "**name**" is **singular** and **definite articles** (Greek: tou) are placed in front of Father, Son and Holy Spirit?

Other verses showing "**three-in-oneness**" of the Godhead are:

- i) **At the creation of man**, "God said, let **us** make man in **our** image, after **our** likeness . ." (Genesis 1:26). "Our image" in v.26 is explained as God's image in v.27. The one true God consists of three persons who are able to confer with one another and carry out their plans together, while still being one God.
- ii) **After the Fall**, "the **Lord (Jehovah)** God (Elohim) said, Behold, the man is become as one of **us** ." (Genesis 3:22). "Us" refers back to LORD (Jehovah), showing plurality within the Jehovah Godhead.
- iii) **At the Tower of Babel**, "the **LORD** (Jehovah), said . . let **us** go down" (Genesis 11:6,7).
- iv) **Isaiah** "saw the **Lord (Adonai)** sitting upon a throne (v.1) mine eyes have seen the King, the **LORD (Jehovah)** of hosts (v.5). I heard the voice of the **Lord** (Adonai) saying: "Whom shall I send, and who will go for **us**?" (Isaiah 6:1,5,8). Here Isaiah sees "**Adonai**" on the throne, then Isaiah calls Him "**Jehovah** of hosts" (v.5). Adonai asks, "Who will go for **us**?" The "us" shows plurality in the Jehovah Godhead. This equivalence of Adonai and Jehovah (both called "us") proves the Trinity Godhead.

## 2. Genesis 18 and 19. Three men each called Jehovah.

JWs believe that it is impossible for Jehovah God to exist as three persons: Father, Son and Holy Spirit. Yet Genesis 18 and 19 shows Jehovah appearing to Abraham as three men. This shows that even the impossible from a human viewpoint is possible with God. Notice that:

- i) Abraham addresses the three as “Jehovah” (v.3 NWT);
- ii) When **two** of the three men **depart** to visit Lot in **Sodom**, Abraham continues to address the remaining one as “Jehovah” (Genesis 18:22,26,27,30,31,32,33).
- iii) Lot addressed the other two as “Jehovah” (Genesis 19:1,18 NWT).  
“Then Lot said to **them**: “Not that please, **Jehovah**. ” (19:18 NWT)
- iv) “Then **Jehovah** made it rain sulphur and fire from **Jehovah**, from the **heavens** upon Sodom and Gomorrah.” (Genesis 19:24)

Notice the mention here of two Jehovahs, one in heaven who sends judgment on Sodom and Gomorrah, at the bidding of the other Jehovah on earth.

This gives strong evidence for **more than one** person in the Godhead. The Jehovah upon earth was one of three persons to visit Abraham, one of whom stays behind to speak further to Abraham and is called **Jehovah**. (Genesis 21:1 “**Jehovah** turned his attention to Sarah”). Hence this shows that it is possible for Jehovah to manifest Himself as three-in-one.

## 3. II Corinthians 3:17 - “Jehovah is the Spirit.” (NWT).

JWs challenge Christians to prove the Trinity in the Bible. This can be done if we find verses teaching that the Holy Spirit is Jehovah God, and the Son is Jehovah God.

2 Corinthians 3:17 teaches this: “Now Jehovah **is** the Spirit.” What part of “**is**” don’t you get? How much clearer can it be than this, which states that the **Holy Spirit is (=) Jehovah God?** This proves the Deity of the Holy Spirit, and the existence of 2 persons in the Godhead.

## 4. I John 5:7,8 The Johannine Comma, the famous Trinitarian proof text (3 Heavenly witnesses).

NWT	KJV
<p>“For there are three witness bearers,            OMIT            OMIT            OMIT            the Spirit, and the water and the blood,            and the three are in agreement.”</p>	<p>“For there are three <u>that</u> (oi=<u>masc</u>) bear record  <b>in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the</b>  <u>Holy Ghost: and these three are one. And</u>  <u>there are three that bear record in earth,</u>            the Spirit, and the water, and the blood: and  <u>these (oi=masc) three agree in one.”</u></p>

**Watchtower teaching:** JWs claim that this passage ought not to be in the Bible, because it is not in most Greek manuscripts. It is omitted by most modern Bible versions.

**Bible Teaching:** Erasmus omitted it from his first edition of the printed Greek NT (1516), because it occurred in the Latin Vulgate and not in any Greek manuscript. To quieten the outcry that followed, he agreed to restore it if it could be found in one Greek manuscript. Two Greek manuscripts, Codex 61 and 629 were found, so Erasmus included it in his 1522 edition. Since these manuscripts are late (14th and 15th Century), some think the readings are corrupt. What do we answer? (See p551-552). 2 witnesses in v.9 imply 2 witnesses in v.7

**5. In II Corinthians 13:14, (the Apostolic Benediction) why is there a change in the order of the persons of the Trinity, compared to Matthew 28:19, if not to show that in this Trinity none is before or after the other, and none is greater or less than another?**

“The grace of the **Lord Jesus Christ**, and the love of **God**, and the communion of the **Holy Ghost**, be with you all. Amen.” (II Corinthians 13:14).

“Baptizing them in the name of the **Father**, and of the **Son**, and of the **Holy Ghost**.” Matt. 28:19.

## 30 BIBLE PROOFS OF THE TRINITY:

**Jehovah** your God, is a **God of Gods** and **Lord of lords**, a great God, a mighty, and a terrible' (Deuteronomy 10:17)

We prove the Trinity because each of them have 30 identical attributes, possessed by no-one else except God.

The Father, Son and Holy Spirit are so closely and consistently linked in Scripture, that, assuming that God is not three Persons (as WT does) makes it impossible to understand many passages. Consider this list of attributes and activities which prove the Trinity of the Godhead:

	<u>Father</u>	<u>Son</u>	<u>Holy Spirit</u>	<u>= Jehovah God</u>
1. Each raises Jesus from the dead	'Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father'. (Romans 6:4)	'Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up. He spake of the temple of His body' (John 2:19-21)	'Christ... being put to death in the flesh, but quickened by the Spirit' (1 Peter 3:18)	'Now the God of peace that brought again from the dead, our Lord Jesus' (Hebrews 13:20)
2. Each created the world	'One God, the Father, of whom are all things' (I Corinthians 8:6)	'One Lord Jesus Christ, by whom are all things' (I Corinthians 8:6)	'The Spirit of God hath made me'	'In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth' (Genesis 1:1)
3. Each saves man	'For Jehovah your God, is God of gods, and Lord or lords' (Deuteronom. 10:17) 'All things were made by him'. (John 1:3)	'Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law' (Galatians 3:13) 'the world through him might be saved' (John 3:17)	'he saved us, by the washing of regeneration and renewing of the Holy Ghost' (Titus 3:5)	'Whosoever is born of God...' (1 John 3:9)
4. Each is called <u>God</u>	'God our Father' (I Timothy 1:2)	'Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners' (I Timothy 1:15)  'a son is given... his name shall be called...the mighty God.' (Isaiyah 9:6)	'Jehovah is the Spirit'	-
5. Each is <u>eternal</u>	'eternal life, which was with the Father' (1 John 1:2)	'whose going forth have been from of old from everlasting' (Micah 5:2); 'even the Son of Man which is in heaven'. (John 3:13)	'through the eternal Spirit'	'the eternal God is thy refuge' (Deuteronomy 33:27)
6. Each is <u>omnipresent</u>	'Where shall I flee from thy presence?' (Psalm 139:7)	'Neither knoweth any man the Father, except the Son' (Matt 11:27)	'where shall I go from thy Spirit?'	'Do not I fill heaven and earth? saith Jehovah' (Jeremiah 23:24)
7. Each knows each other fully	'no man knoweth the Son but the Father' (Matthew 11:27)	'Lord (Jesus Christ), thou knowest all things'. (John 21:17)	'The things of God knownew no man, but the Spirit of God.' (1 Cor. 2:11)	'God knoweth' (II Corinth 11:11)
8. Each are <u>omniscient</u>	'his understanding is infinite'	'Upholding all things by the word of his power' (Hebrews 1:3) Matt.28:18 "The Son quickeneth whom he will". (John 5:21)	'The Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God'. (1 Cor. 2:10)	'The Lord knoweth' (I Cor. 3:20)
9. Each is <u>omnipotent</u>	'The Lord God omnipotent reigneth.'	'The will of the Father which hath sent me' (John 5:30)	'Is the Spirit of the Lord straitened (curtailed, wax short)?' (Micah 2:7)	'with God, all things are possible'
10. Each has a <u>will</u>	'Revelation 19:6	'There are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost' (1 John 5:7)	'the selfsame Spirit, dividing to every man severally as he will.' (1 Cor.12:11)	'I come to do thy will, O God'
11. Each bears witness in heaven	'There are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost' (1 John 5:7)	'ye are justified in the name of the Lord Jesus' (1 Corinthians 6:11)	'God is witness'	'Hebreews 2:9)
12. Each justifies believers	'God. Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus' (Romans 3:23,24)	'Sanctified in Christ Jesus'	'It is God that justifieth'	(Romans 8:33)
13. Each sanctifies believers	'Sanctified by God the Father' Jude 1	'Sanctified in Christ Jesus'	'Ye are sanctified ... by the Spirit of our God' (1 Cor 6:11; Romans 15:16)	'The very God of peace sanctify you wholly' (1 Thessalonians 5:23)
14. Each gives life	'In hope of eternal life, which God that cannot lie, promised' (Titus 1:2)	'The promise of life which is in Christ Jesus' (II Timothy 1:2)	'Shall of the Spirit reap life everlasting'. (Galatians 6:8)	'Jehovah thy God, ... He is thy life'. (Deuteronomy 30:20)

15. Believers are baptised in the name of each	'Baptising them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost'	'... and of the Holy Ghost' (Matthew 28:19)	-
16. Each are always with believers	'the love of God... be with you all' (II Corinthians 13:14)	'The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, be with you all!' (II Corinthian 13:14)	'the communion of the Holy Ghost, be with you all.' (II Corinthian 13:14)
17. Each one directs believers	'God (HS) himself, and our Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, direct our way unto you.' (I Thessalonians 5:11)	'God (HS) himself, and our Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, direct our way unto you.' (I Thessalonian 3:11)	'The Spirit of truth, ... he will guide you into all truth'. (John 16:13)
18. Each partakes in election	'Elect according to the foreknowledge of God the Father' (I Peter 1:2a)	'Elect ... unto obedience and sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ' (I Peter 1:2c)	'Elect ... through sanctification of the Spirit' (I Peter 1:2b)
19. Each raise believers from the dead	'As the Father raiseth up the dead, and quickeneth them' (John 5:21)	'Even so the Son quickeneth whom he will!' (John 5:21)	'God, who quickeneth the dead' (Romans 4:17); (Corinthians 6:14)
20. Each are involved in the atonement	(SON)	(HOLY SPIRIT)	(GOD)
	'How much more shall the blood of Christ, (Hebrews 9:14a)	'who through the eternal Spirit (Hebrews 9:14b)	'purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God' 14d
21. Each is Holy	'Holy Father, keep ...' (John 17:11)	'ye denied the Holy One' (Acts 3:14)	'Saying, 'Holy, Holy, Holy, Lord God Almighty, which was, and is, and is to come'. (Rev 4:8; Isaiah 6:3)
22. Each is True	'He that sent me is true'. (John 7:28; 8:26)	'I am the way, the truth' (John 14:6)	'thou hast redeemed me, O Jehovah God of truth' Psalm 31:5
23. Each is a Lawgiver	'I delight in the law of God' (Romans 7:22)	'So fulfil the law of Christ' (Galatians 6:2)	'There is one lawgiver, ...' (James 4:12)
24. Each dwells in believers	'If any man love me, he will keep my words: and my Father will love him, and we will come into him ...' (John 14:23)	'I (Christ) in you' (John 14:20)	'God hath said, I will dwell in them, and walk in them' (II Corinthians 6:16)
25. Each strengthens believers	'my God shall be my strength' (Isaiah 49:5)	'Christ may dwell in your hearts by faith'. (Ephesians 3:17)	'to be strengthened with might by his Spirit in the inner man' (Ephesians 3:16)
26. Each comforts believers	'The Father shall give you another Comforter'. (John 14:26)	'I can do all things through Christ which strengtheneth me'. (Philippians 4:13)	'The Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost' (John 14:26)
27. Each fills believers with their love	'if any man love the world, the love of the Father is not in him' (John 2:15)	'The love of Christ constraineth us' (II Corinthians 5:14)	'the love of the Spirit' (Romans 15:30)
28. Each is good	'there is none good but one, that is, God' (Mark 10:18)	'Good Master' (Mark 10:17)	'Thou gavest also thy good Spirit to instruct them' (Nehemiah 9:20)
29. Each declares his decision to send Jehovah the Son	'Jehovah the Son says:	'Come ye near unto me (Jesus Christ) ... , and now the Lord God (the Father), and his Spirit'	'Thus saith Jehovah that made thee, .. . I am the first, and I am the last; and beside me there is no God' (Isaiah 44:6 ... ) (Isaiah 55:2,3)
30. Together they introduce themselves, as King, Redeemer & Spirit	Thus saith Jehovah the King of Israel, (Isaiah 44:6)	'and his redeemer Jehovah of hosts; I will pour my spirit upon thy seed	

### **13. PROOF THAT JESUS CHRIST IS JEHOVAH GOD**

The Bible proves the co-equal Deity of Jesus Christ with God the Father by:

- i) **Explicit statements** that Christ is Jehovah and God.
- ii) Both the Father and the Son have the **same attributes, claims and majesty**.
- iii) **Appearances of Jehovah God** the Son to Old Testament saints who **worshipped** Him.
- iv) New Testament examples of **Prayer to Christ**.
- v) Father and Son have the **same divine offices**.

Let us consider each of these proofs:

#### **I. EXPLICIT STATEMENTS THAT CHRIST IS JEHOVAH GOD**

##### **1. Isaiah 9:6 - "His name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The Mighty God,"**

In Isaiah 9:6 Jesus is called "**the mighty God**" (Hebrew "*El Gibbor*" is "God the mighty").

This is the title of **Jehovah God** in Isaiah 10:21; Jeremiah 32:18; Habakkuk 1:12; Psalm 50:1.

- a) "Jehovah...The remnant shall return ....unto **the mighty God**". Isaiah 10:21.
- b) "the Great, **the Mighty God**, Jehovah of hosts, is his name,..." Jeremiah 32:18.
- c) "O Jehovah,...O **mighty God**, thou hast established them for correction." Habakkuk 1:12.

Are there two mighty Gods? No! That would be polytheism.

Hence Jesus is Jehovah, the Mighty God.

Ask: Since Isaiah was a Jew, and believed in only one God (Jehovah), who did Isaiah understand the Mighty God to be? (obviously Jehovah).

Ask: Then why did Isaiah call **Jehovah** the Mighty God (in 10:20,21), and also call **Christ** the Mighty God (in 9:6)?

Ask: Who does this make Christ to be? (clearly Jehovah, the Mighty God.)

**Conclusion:** There is one God. He is revealed in the OT as **Jehovah**.

In the NT, He is revealed as **Jehovah the Son** (part of the Triune Godhead).

##### **Question JW's might ask:**

- 1) To whom did Jesus pray on the cross if He was God?
- 2) When Jesus was baptized, whose voice came from heaven, his own voice? No, the Father's.

**Answer:** JW's have not been able to distinguish between God the Father and God the Son. Therein lies their difficulty. As to how **two persons** can be **equally the one God**, and yet be separate is not explained in the Bible, but it is taught. God ought to know who He is. Who are we to argue with God? JW's pride must bend, and their will must bow to Jesus as Jehovah God the Son (Greek: Huios). Tied in with the **Deity of Christ** is His Saviourhood.

##### **2. Isaiah 44:6 "Thus saith Jehovah the King of Israel (the Father), & his redeemer Jehovah of hosts (Jesus Christ); I am the first, and I am the last; and beside me there is no God."**

a) Here, two members of the Jehovah Godhead are speaking, each of whom are called Jehovah. b) Jehovah the Father and Jehovah the Son jointly claim the title "I am the first, & I am the last". Notice that the Lord Jesus Christ calls Himself by this title "I am the first and the last" in Revelation 1:17,18 and in Revelation 2:8.

- c) The first person Jehovah owns the second person Jehovah as seen by the possessive pronoun "**his**", describing Jesus Christ as "Jehovah's redeemer" and "Jehovah of hosts". This proves that two related persons are in the Jehovah Godhead.
- d) The New Testament reveals "Jehovah the Redeemer" to be Jesus Christ in Galatians 3:13 "Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law...". See also Rev.5:9 and I Peter 1:18.
- e) The NWT rearranges v.6 to make one person, not two persons speaking as Jehovah. They do this by putting "said" between "Jehovah" and "the King of Israel" which has the

effect of confusing the reader so we don't know if 'Jehovah' is or isn't 'the King of Israel'.

Notice that: 1) the Hebrew Masoretic text, 2) the Septuagint translate it correctly, but the 3) JW NWT translates it wrong as usual

- 1) "So says Jehovah, the King of Israel, and his Redeemer, Jehovah of hosts: I am the First and I am the Last; and there is no God except Me. 'And

6 בְּדָאֵמֶר יְהוָה מֶלֶךְ־יִשְׂרָאֵל וְנֹאֲלֹה  
his and Israel the Jehovah says Thus  
.Redeemer of King  
430 369 1107 :314 7223 6635 3068  
,God there except and the I and the I :hosts Jehovah  
no is Me ,last (am) first (am) of

## 2) Septuagint

"Thus saith God the King of Israel, and the God of hosts that delivered him; I am the first, and I am hereafter: beside me there is no God."

6 "This is what Jehovah has said, the King of Israel<sup>1</sup> and the Repurchaser of him,<sup>2</sup> Jehovah of armies, 'I am the first and I am the last,<sup>3</sup> and besides me there is no God!'

NWT

3. Isaiah 48:12,16 "I am the first, I also am the last" (v.12). *This is Jehovah the Son speaking.* "Come ye near unto me (Jehovah the Son, Jesus Christ), hear ye this (*something important*) .....and now the Lord God (Jehovah the Father), and his Spirit (Jehovah the Holy Spirit), hath sent me (Jehovah the Son)" (v.16).

a) This describes how God the Father and God the Holy Spirit send Jehovah the Son to earth to redeem mankind. Verse 17 shows the speaker to be Jehovah the Son by the phrase "Thus saith Jehovah, thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel; I am Jehovah thy God..." (v.17). Here, Jesus Christ as well as being "thy Redeemer" is also called "the Holy One." Acts 3:14.

b) This also shows the existence of three persons called "Jehovah" in the Jehovah Godhead. The Lord God and His Spirit send Jehovah the Son who calls Himself "the first and the last".

4. In Zechariah 2:8-11, Jehovah the Son states twice that Jehovah the Father has sent Him to Israel. This proves that there are at least two persons in the Godhead, both called Jehovah. v.8 "For thus said Jehovah of hosts (the Son) . . ."

v.9 "Ye shall know that Jehovah of hosts (the Father) hath sent me."

v.11 "I (Jehovah the Son) will dwell in the midst of thee, and thou shalt know that Jehovah of hosts (Father) hath sent me unto thee." (Zechariah 2:8-11).

Lesson: Jehovah (the Father) sends Jehovah (the Son). Two persons here are named Jehovah. This clearly proves that Jesus Christ in His pre-incarnate state is fully Jehovah God.

5. In Zechariah 3:2: "Jehovah said unto Satan, Jehovah rebuke thee, O Satan."

Again, one person in the Jehovah Godhead speaks about another person in the Jehovah Godhead. (See Isaiah 48:16 "the Lord God (Father) and his Spirit, hath sent me (Son)". Rules of Grammar dictate that the sentence be understood as follows:

"Jehovah (the first person=person speaking) said unto Satan (the second person=person spoken to), Jehovah (the third person=person spoken about) rebuke thee."

## 6. John 1:1 - 'The word was God' (See page 850-855)

- a) In John 1:1, the KIT left-hand column states that Jesus is God: 'God was the Word', but in the right-hand column the NWT contradicts the KIT by saying 'the Word was a God'.

1 Ἐν ἀρχῇ ἦν ὁ λόγος, καὶ ὁ λόγος  
In beginning was the Word, and the Word  
ἦν πρὸς τὸν θεόν, καὶ θεὸς ἦν ὁ λόγος.  
was toward the God, and god was the Word.

1 In [the] beginning  
the Word was, and  
the Word was with  
God, and the Word  
was a god.\*

Also, see the Emphatic Diaglott (a JW version) by Benjamin Wilson who was honest enough to translate John 1:1 correctly in the right-hand column as 'the Logos was God'.

b) In John 1:1 we read of Jesus Christ: "the Word was WITH God, and the Word was God". The Watchtower denies that Jesus is fully God, but says that Jesus is a "little God" who is with Jehovah. Does such a "little God" exist with Jehovah? No because:

- Moses and Jehovah contradict the WT by saying in Deuteronomy 32:39:  
"there is **NO GOD WITH** me".
- Isaiah and Jehovah also contradict the Watchtower by saying in Isaiah 44:8:  
"Is there **a God beside me**? yea, there is **no God**; I know not any."

Logic: Since Jesus is not a "little God", and He is with God, then He must be true God.

Ask: Who do you believe, Jehovah, Moses, and Isaiah on the one hand, or the Watchtower?

## 7. John 1:3 and Malachi 2:10. Christ and the Father are the ONE GOD of Creation.

In Malachi 2:10 we read, "hath not one God created us?"

Comparing this with the NT, we see this **ONE GOD** of Creation to be Jesus Christ:

"**All things** were made by him; and without him was not anything made that was made." John 1:3. "For by him were **all things** created, . . . **all things** were created by him and for him." (Colossians 1:16; Hebrews 1:2,10).

Conclusion: Do you agree that this proves that:

If **Jesus Christ** = Creator of all things by himself, and **One God** = Creator,  
then **Jesus Christ** = the **One God**.

Ask: Why does the WT add "[other]" five times in Colossians 1:16,17,20 when it is not in any Greek manuscript? Not even the JW KIT has "other" in its Greek text. The WT thinks that, by adding "[other]" it will break the connection that proves Jesus Christ is the One

God of Creation.

τὰ πάντα δι' αὐτοῦ καὶ εἰς αὐτὸν authorities. All [other]  
the all (things) through him and into him things have been  
ἐκτίσται· 17 καὶ αὐτὸς ἔστιν πρὸ created through him  
it has been created; and he is before and for him. 17 Also,  
πάντων καὶ τὰ πάντα ἐν αὐτῷ he is before all [other]  
all (things) and the all (things) in him things and by means  
συνέστηκεν, 18 καὶ αὐτός ἔστιν ἦ  
it has stood together, and he is the of him all [other] things were made to

8. In John 3:13, John states that Jesus Christ is **God** because He is OMNIPRESENT: "even the Son of man which IS IN HEAVEN". Only God can be in two places at once, on earth talking to Nicodemus and at the same time in heaven. (See p.814).

## 9. John 4:42 Christ and the Father are the "only Saviour".

In John 4:42, the woman at the well declares of Jesus that "this is indeed the Christ, the Saviour of the world".

In Titus 1:3,4, God and the Lord Jesus Christ are both declared to be "our Saviour": "God our Saviour" (v.3), and "Lord Jesus Christ our Saviour." (Titus 1:4).

Comparing these with Isaiah 43:11 and Hosea 13:4 each of which state that there is NO SAVIOUR BESIDES JEHOVAH, we learn that because Jesus Christ is our Saviour so also He must be Jehovah God.

Since Jehovah God = our only Saviour, and, Since Jesus Christ = our only Saviour, then, **Jehovah God = Jesus Christ**.

This is true because no-one else other than Jehovah is allowed to be "our Saviour".

"I, even I, am Jehovah; and beside me there is NO SAVIOUR." (Isaiah 43:11).

"I am Jehovah thy God . . . there is NO SAVIOUR beside me." (Hosea 13:4).

Ask: Do you agree that because Jesus and Jehovah are the only Saviour, then Jesus is Jehovah?

**10. John 5:18 - “Therefore the Jews sought the more to kill him, because he . . . said also that God was his Father, MAKING HIMSELF EQUAL WITH GOD.”**

Here Jesus makes himself equal with God. Notice:

- a) This is John’s conclusion, not only the Jews’ conclusion.
- b) Jesus did not correct them, nor deny this as a valid conclusion.

**Question:** Why did John bother quoting this?

**Answer:** Because John also believed that **Jesus is equal with God**, and it supported the theme in John’s Gospel that Jesus is the True God.

**11. John 5:23 - “That all men should honour the Son, even as they honour the Father.**

He that honoureth not the Son honoureth not the Father which hath sent him.”

To honour the Son even as you honour the Father, means to treat both of them equally as God.

**Question:** Do you give the Son worshipful honour **EVEN AS** (KJV) or **JUST AS** (NWT) you honour Jehovah God the Father? (No).

**Ask:** Do you honour men or Michael the Archangel even as you honour the Father? (No.) This proves that the Son is not a mere man, nor is he an angel, but is to be honoured as Jehovah God.

**Ask:** Do you agree that God here commands us to honour Jesus Christ as God the Father?

**12. John 6:46 “Not that any man hath seen the Father”.**

This begs the question: “Who then did OT saints see that they declared to be God?”

Example:

The man on the throne in Ezekiel 1:26 is identified as the **God of Israel** in Ezekiel 10:20.

This can only be Jesus Christ who is Jehovah God the Son because “Not that any man hath seen the Father.” John 6:46.

**13. John 8:24 “If ye believe not that I am (εγώ εἰμι “ego eimi”), ye shall die in your sins”**

**Ask:** You don’t want to die in your sins, do you? Then you must believe that Jesus is “I am” (εγώ εἰμι). Christ, by claiming to be “I am” was claiming to be Jehovah God who designated Himself in this way in Exodus 3:14 and in the Greek Septuagint in Isaiah 43:10,

“Be ye my witnesses .....saith the Lord God (Jehovah) ...that ye may know, and believe, and understand that **I am** (εγώ εἰμι) he.”

Here Christ claims to be the “I am” Jehovah God of Isaiah 43:10,11 & Exodus 3:14 (LXX, KJV). If people don’t believe that Jesus is fully God, the “I am” of Exodus 3:14, they will die in their sins without forgiveness. Belief that Jesus Christ is fully God is essential for salvation. Hence JW’s are not saved because they do not believe that Jesus is Jehovah God “I am”.

**14. John 8:58 - “Before Abraham was, I am.” (See pages 856-857)**

“Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Before Abraham was, I am.”

Jesus attests to his full deity here by claiming for Himself the name of God that was revealed to Moses in Exodus 3:14: “God said unto Moses I AM THAT I AM: and he said, thus shalt thou say unto the children of Israel, **I AM** hath sent me unto you.”

The Watchtower wrongly translates John 8:58 as:

“Before Abraham came into existence, **I have been**”. (NWT).

Jesus did not use the name “**EGO EN**” (“I was” or “I have been”), but **EGO EIMI** (I am).

**Note:** At Jesus’ claim to be “I AM”, the Jews picked up stones to stone Jesus for blasphemy. If Jesus said what the NWT declares He said (“I have been”) then the Jews would not have attempted to stone Him for blasphemy.

**Key:** The KIT in the left-hand column has ‘*ego eimi*’ translated correctly as ‘I am’, which contradicts the KIT right-hand column ‘I have been’.

58 Jesus

58 εἶπεν αὐτοῖς Ἰησοῦς Ἄμην ἀμῆν  
Said to them Jesus Amen amen  
λέγω ὑμῖν, πρὶν Ἀβραὰμ γενέσθαι  
I am saying to you Before Abraham to become  
ἐγὼ εἰμι.  
I am.

said to them: “Most truly I say to you, Before Abraham came into existence, I have been.”

## 15. John 10:30 – “I and my Father are One. Then the Jews took up stones again to stone him.”

**Watchtower teaching:** What did Jesus mean when He said this to a group of Jews?

JWs quote John 17:21,22, where Jesus prayed to the Father that the disciples “may all be one . . . that they may be one, even as we are one.” JWs say that, since the same Greek word for “one” (en) is used in both passages, Jesus was not praying for His disciples to become a single entity, nor was He praying that they become a part of the Trinity. Instead, He was praying that they have **unity of thought and purpose, just as He and the Father had.** (*Should you believe in the Trinity?* p.24).

Just as Christ and His body members are regarded as one, so are Jehovah and Christ regarded as one. They are all **one in agreement, purpose and organisation.** (*Let God be True*, p104).

**Bible Teaching:** The context of John 10 proves that more is meant by “en” than just unity of purpose or agreement. How do we know this? By the way the Jews responded to Jesus’ claim by picking up stones to stone Him to death. The Jews understood that Jesus was claiming to be fully God, as v.33 states: “For a good work we stone thee not; but for blasphemy; and because that thou, being a man, **makest thyself God.**”

**Ask:** (1) Why would the Jews pick up stones to kill Jesus if all He was affirming was His unity of purpose with the Father?

**Ask:** (2) Didn’t the Jews already have unity of purpose with the Father?

**Ask:** (3) If Jesus was just stating His unity of purpose with the Father, then why did the Jews understand His words to claim that He was God? (v.33).

**Ask:** (4) If (as the WT says), the Jews were mistaken in thinking Christ to be God, why didn’t Jesus correct their misunderstanding? Instead, Jesus endorsed their understanding (v.34-38), as seen by them seeking to take Him again in v.39.

The John 17:21 context is very different, as the Greek word for “one” (en) refers to unity among people tending to be divisive over various issues. That is why Christ prayed for unity among believers.

The way the word “one” is used in John 17:21 does not determine its meaning in John 10:30.

**Ask:** (5) If the oneness that Christ shares with the Father is identical to the oneness that believers have with Christ, then all believers should be able to insert their names in these verses:

- “I (your name) and the Father are one.” (John 10:30, NWT)
- He who does not honour (your name) does not honour the Father who sent him.” John 5:23.
- “All things that the Father hath are Mine (your name).” (John 16:15).

**Ask:** (6) Are you willing to insert your name in these verses? Obviously not!

## 16. John 10:33 “thou being a man, makest thyself God.”

In John 10:33, John records and endorses the Jews’ accusation that Jesus is **claiming to be God:** “For a good work we stone thee not; but for blasphemy; and because that thou, being a man, **makest thyself GOD.**” v.33.

"Jesus answered them, Is it not written in your law, I said, Ye are gods?" v.34.

**Watchtower Teaching:** To this, JW's reply that Jesus was denying being God, claiming to be no more God than the Jews.

**Bible Teaching:**

v.34 "Jesus answered them, Is it not written in your law (Old Testament law in Psalm 82:1,6,7), I said, ye are gods? (Hebrew "gods" = *elohim*<sup>430</sup>).

v.35 "If he called them (Old Testament Jewish judges or magistrates) gods unto whom the word of God came (Jewish magistrates were entrusted with judging justly).

v.36 "Say ye (Jesus' listeners) of him (Christ), whom the Father hath sanctified, and sent into the world, "Thou (Jesus) blasphemest"; because I said, I am the Son of God?"

v.39 Therefore they sought again to take him . . .".

Jesus' words, rather than denying His deity, still left the Jews understanding that He was claiming full deity and equality with God because they still sought to arrest him for blasphemy. (v.31-33 and 39).

**Explanation:** Jesus in v 34 is quoting from Psalm 82:**1-6** which says:

v.1 "God standeth in the congregation of the mighty; he judgeth among the gods (*Elohim*<sup>430</sup>)

v.2 "How long will ye judge unjustly . . .?"

v.6 "I have said, Ye are gods<sup>430</sup> and all of you are children of the most High".

v.7 "But ye shall die like men . . ."

"Ye are gods" is said of magistrates, because of the dignity and honour of their office.

It shows that the word translated "gods" (*Elohim*) can rightly be applied to men, though rare. It applied to Moses (Exodus 7:1; 4:16) and to magistrates (Exodus 21:6; 22:8,9) because they were representing God. The meaning is:

If the Scripture applies the word "god" to earthly magistrates, it is right to apply the term to those in office and authority. If applied to magistrates, it cannot therefore be blasphemy to use this word of Jesus Christ the Messiah who is so much more exalted and sanctified by the Father than earthly magistrates.

- Note:** 1) Jesus did not deny that he meant to apply the term to himself, as seen by His using the expressions "I and my Father are one" v.30; "Son of God" v.36, and "god" v.34.  
2) Jesus did not deny that it was properly applied to himself.  
3) Jesus did not deny that it implied that he was God.

**Key:** Jesus stated only that they were inconsistent in applying "Elohim" (god) to human magistrates and not allowing it also to be applied to Jesus Christ as Messiah.

Hence, Jesus said that the Jews were not authorised to charge him with blasphemy for applying "god" to himself, because the law applied "Elohim" (gods) to human judges and because God endorsed Jesus as "Son of God" by His miracles.

**17. John 17:5 Christ and Father share the same glory, that Jehovah won't give to another.**

In John 17:5 Jesus said that before the world existed, He had the same glory as the Father:

"And now, O Father, glorify thou me with thine own self with the glory which I had with thee before the world was." (John 17:5).

Comparing this with **Isaiah 42:8** we see that Jehovah will not give his glory to another:

"I am the LORD (Jehovah): that is my name: and my glory will I not give to another".

**Conclusion:** Because Jesus shared the same glory with the Father, and because this glory is exclusively Jehovah's and no one else's, then this proves that Jesus Christ is Jehovah God.

## **18. John 20:28 “Thomas answered and said unto him, “My Lord and my God”.”**

Thomas addresses Jesus as “My Lord and **my God**”, thus recognizing Jesus as Jehovah God the Son. Jesus commended Thomas on his belated acknowledgement of Jesus as God. **Watchtower Teaching:** JWs dismiss this verse as a simple record of Thomas’ shock and surprise at seeing the risen Christ. A modern parallel might be “Oh, my God!” Perhaps Thomas was making an emotional exclamation that was directed to Jehovah God, though spoken to Jesus. (*Should you Believe in Trinity*, p.29).

### **Bible Teaching:**

- If Thomas said, “My Lord and my God” as expressing shock or surprise, then he would have been guilty of **blasphemy**, and of taking God’s name in vain. First century Jews regarded any careless use of God’s name as **blasphemy**.
- If Thomas had taken God’s Name in vain, Jesus clearly would have rebuked him for it.
- Instead, Jesus commended Thomas for believing that Jesus was both Lord and God. (“Thomas, because thou hast seen me thou hast believed” v.29). If Jesus was only a man or a god, He should have corrected Thomas’ wrong opinion, but Jesus reinforced Thomas’ conclusion here.
- Thomas wasn’t calling Jesus “a god”; he was calling Jesus his Lord and his God. If Jesus was not Almighty God, He would have corrected Thomas by saying something like, “No, I am just a god, a lesser god. Jehovah is the only true God. You must not put me in Jehovah’s place. Only Jehovah may be called my Lord and my God.” But Jesus said no such nonsense. He commended Thomas for recognizing Him as the true God. If Thomas said “My Lord and my God” as an emotional exclamation of astonishment, as JWs think, then Thomas would be talking to himself. But v.28 states he was talking to Jesus by using the word “him”.

### **Ask:**

- If Thomas was just expressing surprise, wouldn’t this be taking God’s Name in vain?
- If Thomas took God’s Name in vain, don’t you think Jesus would have rebuked him?
- Why do you think that Jesus commended Thomas, instead of rebuking him?
- What did Thomas believe in John 20:28,29? (Answer: That Jesus was Lord and God).
- Thomas here quotes Psalm 35:23 which is used of Jehovah: “O LORD (Jehovah) . . . my God and my Lord.”
- When a Hebrew says “my God”, he means Jehovah. (*Aid to Bible Understanding*, p.133,134).
- The JW KIT on John 20:28 is translated as: “The Lord of me and the God of me.”

The JW KIT (1985) calls Jesus in John 20:28 “the God (ο̄ θεος) of me”, a title that JWs reserve **only for God**. (Theos preceded by the definite article “ο̄”).

<p>Θωμᾶς καὶ εἶπεν αὐτῷ Ὁ κύριός μου καὶ θεός μου.      29 λέγει αὐτῷ ὁ Ἰησοῦς <u>the God of me!</u>      Is saying to him the <u>Jesus</u></p>	<p>28 ἀπεκρίθη Answered</p>	<p>28 In answer Thomas said to him: “My Lord and my God!”</p>
---	---------------------------------	---

## **19. Acts 20:28 - “Feed the church of God, which he hath purchased with his own blood.” (See page 843)**

## **20. Romans 10:9 “Ha Adon” = the True Lord (of Isaiah 1:24):**

In Romans 10:9, the right-hand column of KIT says, “if you publicly declare . that Jesus is **Lord**...you will be saved”. The left-hand column has *Kurios* translated as “Lord”.

**Note:** The footnote lists 7 Hebrew New Testaments (J<sup>12, 13, 14</sup>, J<sup>16, 17, 18</sup>, J<sup>22</sup>) which call Jesus by the title “**ha-Adon**”, then they state “not Jehovah”.

Whoever wrote this footnote must have forgotten what the NWT (1961 edition appendix said under the heading “Isaiah 1:24 - the true Lord” as follows:

“This is the translation of the Hebrew expression “**ha-Adon**”, this being the title “**Adon**” (Lord or Master) preceded by the definite article “**ha**”. Although there are many lords or masters, this prefixing of the definite article before the title Adon limited the application of the title to JEHOVAH GOD.” (Gesenius Grammar, Section 126, paragraph d, p.404,405).

In the Hebrew OT, “**ha-Adon**” occurs nine times: Exodus 23:17; 34:23; Isaiah 1:24; 3:1; 10:16,33; 19:4; Micah 4:13; Malachi 3:1 “Suddenly there will come to His temple the **true Lord** whom you people are seeking”.

This refers to Jesus coming to the temple and casting out the money changers. John 2:13-17.

**Conclusion:** The KIT contradicts itself by saying that Jesus is “not Jehovah”, then giving a footnote saying that He is Jehovah (ha-Adon) according to the NWT (1961 edition, p.1453).

## 21. I Corinthians 15:47 - “the second man is the Lord from heaven” (KJV).

In I Corinthians 15:47, Paul states that Jesus Christ is “**the LORD** from heaven”, not as NWT reads “the second man is from heaven”, because:

- No man hath ascended to heaven (John 3:13), and
- Before Christ’s conception, He was in heaven and He was **not a man**.

**Watchtower Teaching:** “the second man is (OMIT) out of heaven.” (NWT)

The NWT, like other modern versions, is based on the Westcott and Hort Greek Text, which in turn is derived mostly from Codex Vaticanus, a corrupted 4th Century manuscript from Egypt, which is at variance with the Majority of NT readings.

**Bible Teaching:** The majority of manuscripts read “the Lord”.

**Question:** Isn’t it coincidental that all modern versions, based on the corrupt Egyptian readings, have one major fact in common: that they omit many Deity of Christ verses?

The KJV “the second man is **the Lord** from heaven” is a clear proof of Christ being God, as there is only one Lord from Heaven, and He is “Jehovah”.

What manuscript support is there for “the Lord” in I Corinthians 15:47? See *UBS Greek NT*:

(1) **Thirteen early writers** known as **Church Fathers** quote it:

a) **Hippolytus** 170-236 AD, Vol. 5, p 167

HIPP. Who else is this than as is shown us by the apostle, “the second man, **the Lord** from heaven?”<sup>14</sup>

b) **Tertullian** 200-250 AD against Marcion,

Vol. 3, page 451

In like manner (the heretic) will be refuted also with the word “**man:**” “The first man is of the earth, earthly; the second man is **the Lord** from heaven.”<sup>2</sup>

Vol.3, page 529

We read in so many words:<sup>11</sup> “The first man is of the earth, earthly; the second man is **the Lord** from heaven.”<sup>12</sup>

c) **Victorinus**, Vol 7, page 342 was made the creation ; secondly, man, **the lord** of the human race, as says the apostle.<sup>19</sup>

- d) **Basil** 379 AD
- e) **Chrysostom** 407 AD
- f) **Maximinus** 428 AD
- g) **Cyril** 444 AD
- h) **Euthalius** 450 AD
- i) **Theodore** 466 AD
- j) **Ps-Athanasius** 550 AD
- k) **Cosmas** 550 AD
- l) **John Damascus** 749 AD
- m) **Origen** 254 AD

(2) **Six Uncial Greek Manuscripts** contain “the Lord”:

- a) Codex Sinaiticus corrected (Aleph)
- b) Codex Alexandrinus (A)
- c) Codices D, K, P, Ψ.

(3) **Nineteen Minuscule Greek Manuscripts** numbered 81, 104, 181, 326, 330 436, 451, 614, 629, 1241, 1739, 1877, 1881, 1962, 1984, 1985, 2127, 2492, 2495.

(4) **Byzantine lectionaries** contain the words “the Lord”.

(5) **Ancient versions** containing “the Lord” are:

- |                       |             |
|-----------------------|-------------|
| a) Syriac Peshitta    | d) Gothic   |
| b) Syrian Harclean    | e) Armenian |
| c) Syriac Palestinian |             |

**Conclusion:** 44 ancient witnesses from all over the ancient world testify to Jesus Christ as being “the Lord from heaven”. NWT is wrong here because no man originated from heaven.

**22. I Timothy 3:16 - “God was manifest in the flesh.” (KJV).** (See page 804).

Paul states that Jesus Christ is “God was manifest in the flesh”.

**Watchtower Teaching:** “He was made manifest in the flesh” (NWT)

**Bible Teaching:** “God” is the correct reading, not “He”, because

1. Of the 300 Greek manuscripts containing I Timothy 3:16, only five late cursive manuscripts (9th, 12th, 13th Century) omit “God”. The Uncials, Aleph, A and C have been altered so that either “God” or “who” can be deduced. Codex Alexandrinus “A” (450 AD) quotes “God”. Although the middle stroke which distinguishes “God” from “who” has been retouched, the fine original stroke is discernible at each end of the fuller stroke of the corrector. (Wetstein, 1716, quoted in “True or False” p.33 D.O.Fuller).

2. **The following early church writers** have “God” ( Greek: “theos” for God ):

- 1) Ignatius (90 AD) quotes “theos” 3 times
- 2) Barnabus (90 AD)
- 3) Hippolytus (190 AD) quotes “theos” twice
- 4) Dionysius of Alexandria (265 AD)
- 5) Gregory of Nyssa (394 AD), quotes “theos” 22 times
- 6) Gregory of Nazianzus (390 AD) quotes “theos” 2 times.
- 7) Dionysius of Alexandria (265 AD).
- 8) Didymus of Alexandria (398 AD).
- 9) Diodorus of Tarsus (394 AD).
- 10) Chrysostom (407 AD) quotes “theos” 3 times.
- 11) Cyril of Alexandria (444 AD) quotes “theos” 3 times.
- 12) Theodore (466 AD) quotes “theos” 4 times.
- 13) Severus, bishop of Antioch (512 AD).
- 14) Macedonius (506 AD).
- 15) Euthalius (400 AD).
- 16) Thaumaturgus (270 AD).
- 17) Constitutiones Apostolicae (250 AD).
- 18) John Damascene (730 AD) quotes “theos” twice.
- 19) Epiphanius, Deacon of Catana (787 AD).
- 20) Several ancient scholia.

3. **Ancient versions** quoting “God” in I Timothy 3:16 are:

- 1) Georgian version (500 AD)
- 2) Harklean version (616 AD)
- 3) Slavonic version (800 AD)

4. **All the Byzantine Lectionaries** read in assemblies of the faithful from 300 AD onwards.

5. Those few manuscripts which have “who” (os) in the place of “God” (theos), do not have a complete sentence without the subject “God”.
6. A **neuter noun** “mystery” cannot be followed by the **masculine** pronoun “who” (os).
7. **To avoid having a clause with no subject**, the NWT arbitrarily drops the word “who” (os), and invents a new word “**He**” which is **not found** in any Greek manuscript.

See “*The Revision Revised*”, Dean Burgon, p.485-497.

ἀληθείας·	<b>16</b>	καὶ	δομολογουμένως	μέγα	ἐστίν	the truth.	16	Indeed,
truth;		and	confessedly	great	is			the sacred secret of
τὸ	τῆς	εὐσεβείας	μυστήριον·	“Ος		this	godly	devotion* is
the	of the	revering well	mystery;	Who		admittedly	great:	‘He
ἐφανερώθη	ἐν	σαρκί,	ἐδικαιώθη	ἐν		was made manifest		in flesh, was declared
was manifested	in	flesh,	was justified	in				

### Conclusion:

- 1) “**God**” (theos) in I Timothy 3:16 is witnessed by exactly 300 Greek manuscripts, by 3 ancient versions, and by 20 early church writers.
- 2) “**Who**” (os) in the place of “theos”, is quoted by only 6 manuscripts, by one version, and certainly by no church writers.
- 3) “o” is quoted by one Greek manuscript (D), by 5 ancient versions & 2 late Greek writers. Hence the NWT has no manuscript support for “He”, compared with 323 major witnesses for “God” (“theos”).

Question: Whom would you choose to believe: 323 witnesses for “God” or none for “He”?

23. **Titus 2:13 - “the glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ.”**  
(See page 847-849)

24. **Hebrews 1:6 - “Let all the angels of God worship him.”**

Question: Would it be right to give the same worshipful honour to the Son, which is given to the Father (John 5:23)? (See page 846-847).

25. **Hebrews 1:8 - “But unto the Son he saith, “Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever”**“ (See page 844-845)

26. **Hebrews 1:10 - “And Thou, Lord, in the beginning hast laid the foundation of the earth; and the heavens are the works of thine hands. . . . thou art the same, and thy years shall not fail.”** (v.12)

Verse 10 is the second Old Testament passage applied to the Son, after Hebrews 1:8.

Hebrews 1:10 is quoted from Psalm 102:25,26,27 which is introduced in Psalm 102:1 as a **prayer to God** as the Creator (“Hear my prayer, O Jehovah”).

In Hebrews 1:10,11,12 the writer applies Psalm 102:25-27 to Christ as Jehovah the Creator. This proves that the Son is Jehovah, who created the heavens and the earth.

Note: In Hebrews 1, Jesus is declared to be God, because He is:

- 1) **Creator** (v 2,10) “by whom also he made the worlds”;
- 2) The **same substance as the Father, just as the Sun’s rays** (*Alpha, Beta, Gamma* rays) are the **same substance as the sun**) (“the brightness of the Father’s glory” v.3).
- 3) The **express (exact) image** of the Father’s person (v.3). 893

- 4) **Omnipotent** and **Omnipresent**: “upholding all things by the word of His power.” (v.3).
- 5) Father/Son relationship.
- 6) **Worshipped** as God (v.6).
- 7) **Addressed** as God (v.8).
- 8) Has the same **Throne** as God (v.8).
- 9) **Unchangeable** and **Eternal** (v.12).

## **27. II Peter 1:1 - “the righteousness of God and our Saviour Jesus Christ.”**

(See page 849-850). ”God and our Saviour” refer to Jesus Christ by the Granville Sharp rule.

## **28. Revelation 1:8 and 22:13 - “The Alpha and Omega.”**

Christ and the Father are both called **“Alpha and Omega”**, **“the beginning and the end”**, **“the first and the last”**.

“I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, the first and the last.” (Revelation 22:13) Jesus here clearly claims to be Jehovah God, because God claims the same titles to Himself in Revelation 21:6; 1:8; Isaiah 44:6 and 48:12.

“Alpha and Omega” to the Jews meant all the intermediate letters, signifying totality or entirety. Hence, when used of God (or Christ), “Alpha and Omega” represents the eternal, Almighty God, who has always existed in the past and who will always exist in the future. For any created being to claim to be the Alpha and Omega would be sheer blasphemy.

**Ask:** Since Jesus in Revelation 22:13 claims to be the “First and the last”, as well as “Alpha and Omega” - and since Jehovah God in Isaiah 44:6 says: “I am the first, and I am the last, besides me there is no God” - what must we conclude about Jesus Christ’s true identity?

<b>Jesus Christ is God</b> because both are called “ <b>Alpha and Omega</b> ” and “ <b>the beginning and the end</b> ”		
<b>GOD</b>	=	<b>JESUS CHRIST</b>
Revelation 21:5,6,7		Revelation 22:12-16
“I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end”		“I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end.”
refers to <b>God</b> because: i) I will be his God (v 7) ii) He that sat upon the throne (v 5.)		refers to <b>Jesus Christ</b> because: i) Behold, I come quickly (v 12) ii) I Jesus (v.16) iii) I am the root and offspring of David (v.16) iv) I am the bright and morning star (v.16) v) <i>Watchtower</i> , Oct.1, 1978, p.15, “Jesus.. I am coming quickly.” vi) “the First and the Last” (v.13)
		refers to <b>God</b> because: i) v.8 says Jehovah God ii) v.8 says the Almighty

<b>Jesus Christ is God</b> because both are called “ <b>the first and the last</b> ”.			
<b>GOD</b>	<b>GOD</b>	=	<b>JESUS CHRIST</b>
Isaiah 48:12	Isaiah 44:6		Revelation 2:8
“I am the first. I am the last”	“I am the first, and I am the last.”		Revelation 1:17,18
refers to <b>God</b> because: “My own hand laid the foundation of the earth.” (v 13)	“beside me there is no <b>God</b> .”		refers to <b>Jesus</b> <b>Christ</b> because “who became dead and came to life.”
			refers to <b>Jesus</b> <b>Christ</b> because “I am he that liveth and was dead” (v.18)

29. **Psalm 103:19** “**Jehovah** hath prepared his thone in the heavens; and his kingdom ruleth over all,” and **Matthew 11:25** “I thank thee, O Father, **Lord** of heaven and earth”. **Acts 10:36** “Jesus Christ: (he is **Lord** of all).”

**I Corinthians 2:8** “Had they known it they would not have crucified the **Lord** of glory.”

**I Corinthians 12:3** “No man can say that Jesus is the **Lord** but by the Holy Ghost.”

**I Corinthians 15:47** “the second man is the **Lord** from heaven.”

**II Corinthians 4:5** “We preach not ourselves, but **Christ Jesus the Lord.**”

**Philippians 2:11** “Every tongue should confess that **Jesus Christ is Lord**”.

**Luke 2:11** “For unto you is born this day a Saviour which is **Christ the Lord.**”

As the Roman Caesars claimed to be God by the title “Caesar is **Lord**”, so Paul and early Christians stated their belief that Jesus is God by the declaration that “**Jesus is Lord**”.

As the Father is Lord of all, so is Jesus Christ Lord of all. Hence Jesus Christ is fully God.

30. **Jesus and Jehovah own the same throne, servants, face, name, priests, temple and light:**

i) **Both occupy the same THRONE.**

“flowing out from the throne (of God and of the Lamb).” (Revelation 22:1,3).

Yes, God and the Lamb occupy the **same throne**, not two thrones indicating inequality of rank or nature, but **ONE THRONE** indicating **EQUALITY of rank and nature.**

ii) **Both own the SERVANTS.** (Revelation 22:3).

“the throne (of God and of the Lamb) shall be in it; and **HIS SERVANTS** shall serve **HIM**”.

Both Jehovah and Jesus are referred to as “**HIS**” and “**HIM**” (singular =one Triune God).

iii) **Both have the same FACE.**

“they shall see **HIS** face.” (Revelation 22:4) not “their faces” but “**his** face”.

iv) **Both have the same NAME.**

“**HIS** name shall be in their foreheads.” (Revelation 22:4).

God and the Lamb have the **same NAME**, not “their names” but “**His** name”.

v) **Both own the first resurrection PRIESTS.** (Revelation 20:6).

“they shall be **priests** (of God and of Christ), and shall reign with **HIM** a thousand years”.

God and Christ are referred to as **HIM** (singular), not “they” (not two gods).

vi) **Both God and the Lamb are the TEMPLE of the New Jerusalem.**

“for (the Lord God Almighty and the Lamb) are the **temple** of it.” (Revelation 21:22).

God and Christ are the **same TEMPLE** (singular), not temples (plural).

vii) **Both God and the Lamb are the LIGHT of the New Jerusalem.**

“for (the glory of God did lighten it, and the Lamb is the **light**) thereof.” Revelation 21:23.

God and Christ are the **same light source** (singular), not lights (plural).

31. **Colossians 2:9** “In him (Christ) dwells **all the fullness** (exhausts the limits) of the Godhead bodily. 32. **Micah 5:2 says of Christ:** “whose (Christ’s) goings forth have been from of **old** (Heb: qedmah <sup>6924</sup> =eternal), from **everlasting** (Heb: olam <sup>5769</sup> =eternity)”. **Habakkuk 1:12** uses (qedmah) the same word of Jehovah: “Art thou not from **everlasting** (Heb: qedmah <sup>6924</sup> = eternal) O Jehovah my God.”

33. **I John 5:20** “...in his Son **Jesus Christ. This is the true God**, and eternal life”.

34. **Malachi 3:1** “**the Lord (Heb: Ha Adon= God)** shall suddenly come to his temple.” Jesus fulfilled this as God coming to His temple in John 2:13-17 and Matthew 21:12,13 “My house..”

**Conclusion:** JW, has it ever occurred to you that Jesus Christ just might be Jehovah the Son (Huios)? If He is, then what? When justice called for you to be cast into hell forever, mercy answered by putting Jesus of Nazareth to death in your place. If you call on Jehovah the Son, Jesus Christ, to be your Saviour now, He will save you and give you eternal life.

When the Watchtower prophecy of the world ending in 1975 failed, 2000 WT congregations disappeared worldwide and over 1 million people left the organisation.

Why don’t you leave the WT today and come to Jesus Christ for salvation?

## **II. BOTH the FATHER and the SON HAVE the SAME 120 ATTRIBUTES, CLAIMS and MAJESTY.**

See page 811 for a list of 120 attributes that are true of both God the Father and God the Son. "I am Jehovah - that is my name: and my glory will I not give to another." (Isaiah 62:8). The glory of these 120 attributes are jointly owned by the Father and the Son, and nobody else. Jesus Christ is Jehovah God, equally with the Father, because both the Father and Son alone have the following attributes:

1. both are to be **honoured equally** (John 5:23)
2. both are the **I AM** (Exodus 3:14-15; John 8:24,58)
3. both are the **Mighty God** (Isaiah 10:20,21; Jer 32:18; Psalm 50:1; Isaiah 9:6; Gen 49:24)
4. both own the **same throne** (Psalm 45:6,7; Hebrews 1:8; Revelation 22:1,3)
5. both accept **worship** (Exodus 34:14; I Chronicles 16:29; Hebrews 1:6; Matthew 28:9)
6. both **laid the foundation of the earth** (Psalm 102:24-27; Isaiah 48:13; Hebrews 1:10-12)
7. One God has **created mankind** (Mal.2:10; Prov.16:4; Isaiah 44:24; Col 1:16; John 1:3)
8. both are the **Shepherd** (Psalm 80:1; Gen 49:24; John 10:11; Hebrews 13:20; I Peter 5:4)
9. both are from **Everlasting** (Psalm 90:2; Habakkuk 1:12; Micah 5:2; Hebrews 7:3.)
10. both are the **First and Last** (Isaiah 44:6; Revelation 1:17,18; Rev. 2:8; See p.54.)
11. both are the **Alpha and Omega** (Revelation 1:8; 21:5-7; 22:13-16; See p.54)
12. both come and **Reward** (Isaiah 40:10; 62:11; Revelation 22:12)
13. both are **unchangeable** (Malachi 3:6; Hebrews 13:8)
14. both have **unsearchable riches** (Romans 11:33; Ephesians 3:8)
15. both are the **Holy One** (Isaiah 43:15; Acts 3:14)
16. both are **omnipresent** and **fill all things** (Psalm 139:7; Jer. 23:24; Eph. 4:10; John 3:13)
17. both are **omniscient** (Psalm 147:5; Prov. 14:3; John 21:17; John 16:30; Colossians 2:3)
18. both are **omnipotent** (Genesis 17:1; Matthew 28:18; Hebrews 1:3)
19. both are **eternal** (Deuteronomy 33:27; Hebrews 7:3; Micah 5:2)
20. both own the **everlasting Kingdom** (Psalm 145:13; Daniel 7:14; II Peter 1:11)
21. both are **Lord of all** (Psalm 103:19; Matthew 11:25; Acts 10:36)
22. both are the **only Saviour** (Isaiah 43:11; Titus 1:3,4; Philippians 3:20; II Peter 1:1; 3:18; Luke 2:11; Hebrews 5:9; Acts 4:12)
23. both are the **Truth** (Deuteronomy 32:4; John 14:6)
24. both are **sinless** (Deuteronomy 32:4; Hebrews 4:15)
25. both are **in the beginning** (Genesis 1:1; John 1:1)
26. both God and the Son are **the Judge** (Psalm 82:8; John 5:22), but the **Father is not the Judge** (John 5:22 "The Father judgeth no man").
27. both are **our Hope** (Psalm 39:7; I Timothy 1:1)
28. both **shelter believers under their wings** (Psalm 91:2,4; Matthew 23:37)
29. both are **our Redeemer** (Psalm 130:7,8; Isaiah 44:6; Galatians 3:13; Titus 2:14)
30. the **glory** of both was **seen by Isaiah** (Isaiah 6:3,5; John 12:41)
31. both are **the Rock** (Deuteronomy 32:3,4,18; Psalm 18:31; I Corinthians 10:4)
32. both are to be **looked to** for salvation (Isaiah 45:22; John 1:29; John 6:40)
33. to both shall **every knee bow** and **every tongue confess** (Isaiah 45:23; Philippians 2:10; Romans 14:10,11)
34. the **enemies** of both shall **perish** (Psalm 92:9; Philippians 3:18,19)
35. both send the **Holy Spirit** (Joel 2:28; John 16:7)
36. to both shall **all men come** (Psalm 65:2; Isaiah 45:24; John 12:32)
37. both **forgive sins** (Exodus 34:7; Mark 2:5,7; Colossians 3:13)

38. both **blot out sin** (Isaiah 43:25; Hebrews 1:3; I John 1:7)
39. both **still storms** (Psalm 107:29; Matthew 8:26)
40. both **own the Holy Spirit** (Matthew 10:20; Romans 8:9)
41. both **seek the lost** (Ezekiel 34:16; Luke 19:10)
42. to both are **applied 10 aspects of the Lord's Prayer** (Matthew 6:9-13; see page 954)
43. both **receive believers to glory** (Psalm 73:24; John 14:3)
44. both are our **One Master** (Malachi 1:6; Matthew 23:8,10)
45. both are **served by believers** (Deuteronomy 10:20; Colossians 3:24)
46. both **lead believers to living waters** (Psalm 23:2; Revelation 7:17)
47. both **correct believers** (Proverbs 3:12; Revelation 3:19)
48. both **prepare a place for believers** in heaven (Hebrews 11:16; John 14:2)
49. both are **all in all** (I Corinthians 15:28; Colossians 3:11)
50. both are **known** by believers (Galatians 4:9; Philippians 3:10; John 17:3)
51. both are **cleaved to** by believers (Deuteronomy 10:20; John 15:4)
52. both are the **light of the world** (Psalm 27:1; John 8:12)
53. both are the **Light** of the New Jerusalem (Isaiah 60:19,20; Revelation 21:23)
54. both **give eternal life** (Psalm 36:9; John 10:28)
55. both are called "**My Lord and my God**" (Psalm 35:22,23; John 20:28)
56. both are **our Righteousness** (Isaiah 45:24; I Corinthians 1:30; Jeremiah 23:5,6)
57. both have the **same voice** as of many waters (Ezekiel 43:2; Revelation 1:15)
58. both are **witnessed to** by believers (Isaiah 43:10; Acts 1:8)
59. both **own the peace given to believers** (Philippians 4:7; John 14:27)
60. both **own the gospel** (I Thessalonians 2:2; Romans 1:16)
61. both **give saving grace** (Titus 2:11; Acts 15:11)
62. both are **our peace** (Judges 6:24; Ephesians 2:14)
63. both are **pierced and looked upon** (Zechariah 12:10; John 19:37)
64. both **sanctify believers** (Exodus 31:13; I Corinthians 6:11)
65. both **give victory** to believers (Psalm 98:1; I Corinthians 15:57)
66. both **heal people** (Exodus 15:26; Matthew 9:35)
67. both equally **own the churches** (I Corinthians 15:9; Romans 16:16; I and II Thess. 1:1)
68. both own the **Kingdom** (Matthew 6:33; Rev. 11:15).
69. both are **glorified by the Gentiles** (Isaiah 24:15; II Thessalonians 1:12; Matthew 12:21)
70. both own the **Day of the Lord** (Isaiah 13:6; Philippians 1:6; II Thessalonians 2:2)
71. both **give grace to believers** (Romans 5:15; Colossians 1:6; II Cor. 8:9; Galatians 6:18)
72. both **own the same glory** (Romans 5:2; II Corinthians 8:23)
73. both own the **same love** (John 5:42; II Corinthians 5:14)
74. both own the **same Word** (Psalm 119:11; I Thessalonians 2:13; Colossians 3:16)
75. both own **salvation** (Luke 3:6; Jonah 2:9; Acts 4:12; II Timothy 2:10)
76. both were **served equally by Paul** (Titus 1:1; Romans 1:1); and by James (James 1:1)
77. both own the **commandments** (I John 5:3; John 14:15)
78. both had their **way prepared** by John the Baptist (Isaiah 40:3; Mark 1:1-3)
79. both **search all hearts** (Psalm 139:1; Revelation 2:23)
80. both **own the same flock** (I Peter 5:2; John 21:15,16)
81. both **ascend on high, lead captivity captive, and give gifts to men** (Psalm 68:17,18; Ephesians 4:7-10)
82. both are **like a Bridegroom** (Isaiah 62:5; Mark 2:19,20)

83. both **receive the glory of God alone** forever and ever (Isaiah 42:8; Galatians 1:4,5; I Peter 5:10,11; II Peter 3:18; Hebrews 13:21; I Peter 4:11; Revelation 1:5,6)
84. both are the **source of fruit** (Hosea 14:8; John 15:5)
85. both are our **source of strength** (Psalm 119:28; Philippians 4:13)
86. both **give rest for our souls** (Jeremiah 6:16; Matthew 11:29)
87. both **shall appear at Christ's return** (Psalm 102:16; Zechariah 14:3,4,5; Titus 2:13)
88. both **will come to earth** (Isaiah 40:10; Revelation 22:7,12,20)
89. both are to be **trusted in** (Jeremiah 17:7; Ephesians 1:12; John 14:1)
90. both are **our King** (Isaiah 6:5; 33:22; Revelation 17:14; 19:16; I Timothy 6:14,15)
91. both will **wound their enemies' heads** (Psalm 68:21; 110:6)
92. both take **vengeance** (Romans 12:19; II Thessalonians 1:7,8)
93. both will be **opposed by the Antichrist's armies** (Isaiah 34:22; Revelation 19:19)
94. both will **fight against the Antichrist's armies** at Armageddon (Zechariah 14:3; Revelation 19:11,13,21)
95. both will **destroy death** (Isaiah 25:8; II Timothy 1:10).
96. both **receive the faith of believers** (I Thessalonians 1:8; Galatians 3:26)
97. both are **our life** (Deuteronomy 30:20; Colossians 3:4)
98. both are **to be prayed to** (Matthew 6:9; Acts 7:59)
99. both **raised up Christ** (Acts 2:32; John 2:19,21)
100. both **own all of the other** (John 16:15)
101. both **enter the east gate of Jerusalem** (Ezekiel 44:1,2; Luke 19:37-45)
102. the **man on the throne** in Ezekiel 1:26 is identified as the **God of Israel** in Ezek 10:20
103. both names are placed on the **same level in the baptism formula** (Matthew 28:19)
104. both **fellowship equally with believers** (I John 1:3).
105. both **comfort believers** (Isaiah 66:13; Philippians 2:1).
106. both **receive doxologies of worship in heaven** (Revelation 5:8-10; 5:11,12; 5:13,14).
107. both **jointly send grace and peace** to the churches (Romans 1:7).
108. both the **love of the Father & love of the Son** are an equal privilege given to us (John 14:21)
109. both jointly **declare themselves to be Jehovah**, "I am the first, & I am the last." Isaiah 44:6
110. both **come to his temple**, "the Lord shall suddenly come to his temple." Malachi 3:1; Mat 21:13
111. both are the **King of Israel** (Isaiah 44:6; John 1:49).
112. both can be **blasphemed** (God-Rom.2:24; HS-Luke 12:10; Christ-Luk22:65; Acts 13:45; 18:5,6; 26:9,11)
113. both are **always with all believers** (Matthew 28:20; 2 Corinthians 13:14).
114. both are the **one lawgiver** (God-Rom.7:22; Christ-Gal.6:2; HS-Rom.8:2; James 4:12).
115. both have the **same face** (Revelation 22:3,4)
116. both have the **same Name** (Revelation 22:3,4)
117. both own the **same servants** (Revelation 22:3)
118. both are the **Temple** of the New Jerusalem (Revelation 21:22)
119. **Heavens are the work of thy hands** (Psalm 102:24-27; Hebrews 1:10-12)
120. **both are called the Ancient of Days**. (Daniel 7:9,13,22; Revelation 1:13-15).  
Since both Jesus and the Father have these same attributes, both are Jehovah God.  
There are not 2 Gods, but One God in 3 persons. One who has these attributes must be God.  
**The Lord's Prayer** is devoted to worshipping the Father. Jesus conceals His personal glory in this prayer as seen by other Scriptures which are just as true of Christ as the Lord's Prayer is of the Father. Notice the Scriptures, said of Christ, that prove we could address the Lord's Prayer to the Son on page 815.

### III. APPEARANCE OF JEHOVAH THE SON TO OLD TESTAMENT SAINTS WHO WORSHIPPED HIM.

The One who appears in the form of an angel or man, is, in the immediate context, declared to be God, or Jehovah. Who was this Being? He was not the Father, because no man has seen Him at any time, or can see Him and live (Exodus 33:20; John 6:46; 1:18).

He who appeared was Jehovah God the Son, the Word, as seen in these examples.

Jesus Christ was worshipped on 17 NT occasions, yet we never find Him refusing worship. Notice these pre-incarnate appearances of God the Son being seen and accepting worship.

i) It was God the Son whom Ezekiel saw and worshipped as a man sitting on the throne (Ezekiel 1:26) who was later identified as the God of Israel (Ezekiel 10:20). “Upon the likeness of the throne was the likeness as the appearance of a man above upon it.” (Ezek 1:26,28)

ii) The elders saw the God of Israel. (Exodus 24:9,10,11). This was God the Son.

iii) It was God the Son whom Moses worshipped, as the Angel of Jehovah at the bush.

“The angel of the Lord appeared unto him in a flame of fire out of the midst of a bush.” (Exodus 3:2). “God called unto him out of the midst of the bush.” (Exodus 3:4).

iv) It was God the Son with whom Jacob wrestled: “I have seen God face to face” Gen32:28,30

v) It was God the Son whom Joshua worshipped. This worship was accepted by this person known as the Captain of the host of the Lord (Jehovah). (He “did worship” Joshua 5:14).

vi) It was God the Son whom Manoah (father of Samson) saw, saying, “We shall surely die, because we have seen God.” (Judges 13:22)

vii) Isaiah cried, “Woe is me! for I am undone . . . for mine eyes have seen the King, the Lord (Jehovah) of hosts.” (Isaiah 6:5). In John 12:41, John says this was God the Son: “These things said Esaias, when he saw his (Christ’s) glory, and spake of him.”

viii) It was God the Son who spoke to Hagar (Gen. 16:7-14) “Jehovah that spake unto her” 13.

ix) “Jehovah went before them” in Exodus 13:21 is said to be “the angel of God which went before” (Exodus 14:19), and led Israel in a pillar of cloud by day & a pillar of fire by night.

### IV. NEW TESTAMENT EXAMPLES OF PRAYER TO CHRIST:

#### The Kingdom Interlinear Translation (KIT) teaches prayer to Jesus.

The Watchtower teaches that prayer should be addressed only to Jehovah God.

“Prayer should be directed only to the Creator, Jehovah.” (*The Truth That Leads to Eternal Life*, 1968, p152

Consider these prayers directed to Jesus:

i) STEPHEN at his martyrdom, prayed to Jesus saying: “Lord Jesus, receive my spirit.”

(Acts 7:59). Stephen worshipped Christ with his dying breath as very and eternal God.

Ask: Isn’t this prayer to Jesus?

ii) The KIT tells us to pray to Jesus:

“if ever anything you should ask me in the name of me this I shall do” (John 14:14, KIT, p483).

Here Jesus invites us to beseech HIM in prayer, and in the authority of His own name.

If a JW should ever pray aloud to Jesus in a Kingdom Hall, he’d be disfellowshipped.

14 ἐάν τι αἰτήσῃς με ἐν τῷ ονόματί μου τοῦτο προιήσω.  
if ever anything you should ask me in the name of me this I shall do.

Son. 14 If you ask anything in my name, I will do it.

iii) When SAUL was blinded on the way to Damascus, he prayed to Jesus:

“Who art thou LORD? and the Lord said: I AM JESUS . . .” (Acts 9:5).

“and he trembling and astonished said, Lord what would thou have me to do?” (Acts 9:6).

iv) **Ananias** **prayed to Jesus** before he met Saul: (v.11).

"The Lord said unto him (Ananias), Arise, and go into the street which is called Straight, and enquire in the house of Judas for one called Saul of Tarsus, for behold he prayeth, and hath seen in a vision a man named Ananias coming in, and putting his hand on him, that he might receive his sight" (v 12, 13). "Then **Ananias answered, Lord, I have heard by many of this man, how much evil he hath done to thy saints at Jerusalem.**"

**(Note:** Here Ananias prays (v.13) to the Lord, who is identified in v.17 as **JESUS:**

"The Lord, even **Jesus**, that **appeared unto thee in the way** as thou camest, **hath sent me**, that thou mightest receive thy sight".) Hence, both Saul and Ananias pray to Jesus.

v) **All the Christians at DAMASCUS** called on **Jesus' name** according to Ananias.

"He hath authority from the chief priests to bind all that **CALL on thy name.**" (v.14). Ananias is still talking to Jesus in prayer. He states that the Chief Priests are persecuting the Christians for **calling on Jesus' name**. The chief priests would not be worried by them calling on the Father's name, but **calling on Jesus' name made the priests angry**.

vi) **JESUS rebukes the Jews:** "Ye will not come to me, that ye might have life." (John 5:40). How were they to come to Christ? By **prayer to Him, asking Christ for Life** (John 4:10).

vii) "**ALL** that in every place **call** upon the name of Jesus Christ our Lord." (I Cor 1:2).

Are not all true believers praying to and worshipping Christ by calling upon His name? Yes! Do we pray to angels or men? No! We only pray to God. Christ, as the omniscient God, hears and understands millions of prayers a second from all over the world.

viii) We are to **trust in Christ**, as we trust in God. "Let not your heart be troubled: ye believe in God, believe also in me." (John 14:1). Trusting Christ is prayer to Christ.

ix) "At the **name** of Jesus every **knee** should bow . . . that **every tongue** should **confess** that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father." (Philippians 2:10,11).

**Ask:** Would it be right for all creatures in the universe to bow, adore and exalt a fellow creature? How could bowing to a creature glorify God the Father?

Hence Christ cannot be a creature, but is God the Son.

x) Is it worship of the Father when Peter concludes his prayer to God in I Peter 5:10,11 with the **Doxology to the Father:** "To him be glory and dominion for ever and ever, Amen?"

Yes, this is adoration and worship to God. Let us be consistent.

**This same Doxology is given to the Son in:**

--II Peter 3:18 "But grow in grace and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour **Jesus Christ**. To him be **glory** both **now and for ever**. Amen."

--I Peter 4:11 "that God in all things may be glorified through **Jesus Christ**, to whom be **praise and dominion for ever and ever**. Amen."

--II Timothy 4:18 "The **Lord** shall deliver me from every evil work, and will preserve me unto his heavenly kingdom, to whom be **glory** for ever and ever. Amen."

--Revelation 1:5,6 "Unto **him** that loved us, and washed us from our sins in his own blood. And hath made us kings and priests unto God and His Father; to him be **glory and dominion for ever and ever**. Amen"

A T Robertson in "Word Pictures in the NT" Vol 6, p.126 confirms that these refer to Christ, especially I Peter 4:11 as follows:

"To whom

(dative) is," that is to Jesus Christ the immediate antecedent, but in Rom. 16:27 and Jude 25 the doxology is to God through Christ. For other doxologies see I Pet. 5:11; II Pet. 3:18; Gal. 1:5; Rom. 9:5; 11:36; Phil. 4:20; Eph. 3:21; I Tim. 1:17; 6:16; II Tim. 4:18; Heb. 13:21; Rev. 1:6; 5:13; 7:12. The others addressed to Christ are II Pet. 3:18; II Tim. 4:18; Rev. 1:6.

4 out of 17 Doxologies are to Christ. The same words are spoken to the Father as to the Son.

xii) In Revelation 5:8-14, first the redeemed fall down and adore the Lamb only (v.8-10).

Secondly, unlimited angels adore the Lamb only (v.11,12).

Thirdly, all creatures in the universe adore the Father and the Lamb. (v.13,14).

xiii) **God** and the **Lamb** have one Throne, one Face, one Name and we are servants of both. "proceeding out of the **throne** (of God and of the Lamb)." (v.1).

"the **throne** (of God and of the Lamb) shall be in it; his servants shall serve him." (v.3).

"They shall see his face; and his name shall be in their foreheads." (Revelation 22:1,3,4).

The word "**his**" (singular) applied to "God and the Lamb" indicates that both God and the Lamb own the servants, have the same face, have the same name, and own the same throne. Hence, we see the one and equal supremacy and unity of the Father and the Son.

## V. FATHER AND SON HAVE THE SAME DIVINE OFFICES

i) The Son's name is placed on the same level as the name of the Father in Matthew 28:19. "Baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit."

Would God allow a created being's name to be put on the same level as the Father?  
Never!

ii) The love of the Father and of the Son is shown as an equal privilege given to us.

"He that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him." (John 14:21).

iii) Believers fellowship equally with both the Father and the Son.

"Truly our fellowship is with the Father, and with his Son Jesus Christ." (I John 1:3).

iv) Eternal life is for believers to know equally both the Father and the Son. "This is life eternal, that they may know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ." (John 17:3).

v) Paul and James are servants of both God and Christ:

"Paul, a servant of God, and an apostle of Jesus Christ." (Titus 1:1).

"James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ." (James 1:1).

"Paul, an apostle . . . by Jesus Christ, and God the Father." (Galatians 1:1).

vi) The Father and Son both equally own the church:

"The church....in God our Father, and the Lord Jesus Christ." (I Thess.1:1; II Thess 1:1).

vii) The Father and Son both equally bestow grace and peace. "Grace be unto you, and peace from God our Father, and the Lord Jesus Christ." (II Thessalonians 1:2).

viii) The Father and the Son both love us, console us, and give us hope. (II Thess. 2:16).

Both are co-equal in their power to grant our petitions.

## **14. CHRIST'S BODILY RESURRECTION** “I have power to take it again” Jn 10:18

**Watchtower Teaching:** “Jesus was raised to life as an invisible spirit. He did not take up again that body in which he had been killed . . .” “*Let your Name be sanctified.*” (p.266). The Watchtower teaches that Jesus’ body was disposed of by God.

The NWT mistranslates I Peter 3:18 as “being put to death in the flesh, but made alive in the spirit” to teach merely a spiritual resurrection of Christ.

**Bible Teaching:** I Peter 3:18 refers to when Christ died. His Spirit went and preached to spirits in prison (v.19,20). After three days, Christ’s physical body was raised.

I Peter 3:18 (KJV) correctly reads: ‘put to death in the flesh, but quickened by the Spirit.’ Which Scriptures best teach Christ’s bodily resurrection?

1. “They were terrified and affrighted, and supposed that they had seen a spirit.” (v.37) He said unto them, “Behold my hands and my feet, that it is I myself: handle me and see; for a spirit hath not flesh and bones, as ye see me have.” (**Luke 24:37, 39**)

Notice that the resurrected Christ says here that:

- (1) He is not a spirit;
- (2) His resurrection body has flesh and bones;
- (3) His physical hands and feet are proof of His physical resurrection;

Jesus is trying to convince them that He, “I myself” has a permanent physical body which still had the nail scars in His hands and feet. This is opposite to the WT teaching that Christ’s body was disposed of and that He became only a spirit. If the WT claim was correct, then Jesus would be deceiving the disciples here in showing them His body.

2. “Then saith he to Thomas, . . . reach hither thy hand, and thrust it into my side: and be not faithless, but believing.” (**John 20:27**)

Here Jesus says that He has a physical side that He challenges Thomas to touch.

3. “Neither did his flesh see corruption.” - Acts 2:30,31

NWT	KJV
<p>“he would seat one from the fruitage of his loins <u>OMIT</u>  <u>OMIT</u>  upon his throne,  he saw beforehand and spoke concerning the resurrection of the Christ, that neither was he forsaken in Hades,  <u>nor did his flesh see corruption.</u>”</p>	<p>“of the fruit of his loins,  <u>according to the flesh</u>, he would <u>raise up Christ</u>  to sit on his throne;  He seeing this before spake of the resurrection of Christ, that his soul was not left in hell,  <u>neither his flesh did see corruption.</u>”</p>

Notice the following:

- a) God promised David that “according to the flesh, he would raise up Christ to sit on his throne.” (v.30). This is a bodily resurrection of Christ, not spiritual. The NWT omits this because of its corrupt Westcott-Hort Greek text. Well over 38 manuscripts have it.
- b) “neither did his flesh see corruption” (v.31) means that Christ’s body did not decay. Why? Because Jesus was raised from the dead in a material, fleshly body.

4. “I will raise it up . . . he spake of the temple of his body.” John 2:19-21.

“Jesus answered and said unto them, Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up (v.19). But he spake of the temple of his body.” (v.21).

Jesus here promised that He Himself would raise up His own body after three days.

See how Jesus uses the word “body” meaning a bodily resurrection, not a spiritual resurrection.

Ask: How does Jesus define “the temple” in John 2:19-21? Since Jesus said that He would raise His body, doesn’t this mean a bodily resurrection would occur?

**5. Christ promises to eat of the fruit of the vine in the Kingdom. Only a body can eat.**  
“I will not drink of the fruit of the vine, until the Kingdom of God shall come.” Luke 22:18.  
Jesus here showed that his resurrected body would be able to eat and drink even in the  
Kingdom of God. Notice that a non-material spirit cannot eat and drink. Jesus promised the  
disciples in Luke 22:30 “that ye may eat and drink at my table in my Kingdom.”

**Ask:** If Jesus expected to become an immaterial spirit, why would He promise the disciples  
that they would eat and drink with Christ at His table in His Kingdom?

**6. Christ ate a broiled fish and a honeycomb in front of them. Luke 24:41,42.**

**7. “he that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies.” Rom. 8:11**

As Christ’s body was raised physically from the dead, so shall our mortal bodies be raised.

**8. His resurrection body “breathed” on them.” John 20:22.** A spirit cannot breathe, can it?

**9. “His feet shall stand in that day upon the Mount of Olives...” Zechariah 14:4.**

A spirit does not have feet. Only a physical body has feet as Jesus has at His second coming.

**10. “One shall say unto him, What are these wounds in thine hands?” Zechariah 13:6.**

**Ask:** How can a non-material spirit have wounds in his hands which can be observed?

**11. The resurrected, glorified Christ touched John,** laying his right hand on him. Rev. 1:17.

**Watchtower Objection:** JW’s quote I Corinthians 15:44,50 to support their claim that Jesus  
was raised from the dead as a spirit creature:

a) “It is sown a natural body; it is raised a **spiritual body**. There is a natural body, and there  
is a **spiritual body**.” (v.44).

b) “**flesh and blood** cannot inherit the Kingdom of God.” (v.50). JW’s claim that Jesus must  
have had a spiritual resurrection, because flesh-and-blood bodies cannot exist in heaven.  
They claim that mortality and corruption belong to the fleshly body.

#### **Bible Teaching:**

a) **The Greek word for body, “soma”** (4983), always means a material body, an  
organised whole made up of parts, when used of a person (Zodhiates, NT Word Study,p.1358).  
The spiritual body in I Cor.15:44 is not an immaterial body, but a supernatural, **spirit-dominated body**.

It is a body directed by the spirit, as opposed to a body under the dominion of the flesh.  
There are no exceptions to Paul using “soma” for a material body.

Paul even refers to a **believer** as a “**spiritual man** who judges all things” (I Cor. 2:15), yet  
Paul did not mean an immaterial invisible man with no physical body.

He meant a **spirit-controlled** man with a **flesh and blood body**.

**Ask:** In I Corinthians 2:15 (“He that is spiritual judgeth all things”), is Paul discussing an  
invisible spirit creature or a material, flesh-and-blood human? Can you see that being  
“spiritual” does not demand a non-material body? The same is true in I Corinthians 15:44.

b) **Key:** In v.50 “flesh and blood” is an idiom meaning that mortal, perishable, earth-bound  
humans, as we are now, cannot have a place in God’s glorious, heavenly Kingdom.

c) “this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality.” 53.

Nothing is taken away from us (materialness). Instead immortality is “**put on**” or **added** to us

**Ask:** Don’t the words “**put on**” mean **adding** something to humanity (that is immortality),  
not taking away something from humanity (our material body)?

**Conclusion:** Since Christ’s resurrected body could **eat, drink, breathe** (John 20:22), **show**  
**His hands and feet with scars** (Luke 24:40), be **touched**, and have **flesh and bones** (Luke  
24:39), it is certain that this body was a material body. This is especially true since Jesus  
corrected the disciples’ misconception that they had seen a spirit (Luke 24:37).

For the JW’s to say that a body is not a body, is their last resort of redefining common words.

## **15. IS SALVATION BY CHRIST or by WATCHTOWER WORKS?**

The difference between salvation by faith and works is that, with faith, God does it, but with works, we try to do it ourselves. JWs often give “lip service” to salvation by grace through faith in Christ. In reality, they believe in works for the Watchtower for salvation. They urge readers to “come to Jehovah’s organisation for salvation.” (WT, 15 Nov. 1981, p.21).

*Watchtower* magazine of 15 Aug 1972, p.491 asks JWs to “work hard for the reward of eternal life.” Eternal life is a gift (Romans 6:23), never a reward to be earned.

JWs cannot know for sure if they have salvation during this life.

The WT tells JWs that if they fail to serve God “properly” in the millennium, they will be annihilated.

They believe that eternal life becomes theirs, only by serving God till the end of the 1000 years. JWs believe that Jesus’ death only wiped out the sin inherited from Adam.

They claim that Christ’s atonement allows men to work their way to salvation.

They claim that the “gift” of Christ’s ransom sacrifice is free to all, only to give us a chance to work for our salvation.

JWs claim that being born again is only for the 144,000 anointed class.

JWs claim the “other sheep” don’t need to be born again, but hope to live forever on paradise earth.

JWs falsely claim six steps to being born again:

- i) Take in accurate knowledge of God. This is a mistranslation of John 17:3 where they change “that they may know (verb) thee (KJV)” to “their taking in knowledge (noun) of you”. The unbeliever may have knowledge about God, but only the saved person knows God personally. Jesus will say to unbelievers “I never knew you: depart from me.” Mat 7:23
- ii) Exercise faith, which they define as **belief** plus **works**. (See Eph.2:9 “not of works lest.”).
- iii) Repentance from bad works.
- iv) Conversion, which they define as doing works fitting repentance.
- v) Dedication to Jehovah, which they define as dedication to the Watchtower Organisation.
- vi) Baptism, as an outward sign of their dedication (*Watchtower*, Feb 1, 1982, p.25-29).

For a JW, the above does not ever guarantee them to be born again; it just puts them in line. They think that only 144,000 are born again. Since the 144,000 places were supposedly filled in 1935, most JWs believe they can never be born again.

JWs believe that three classes of people will be saved by good works:

- a) The 144,000 to heaven;
- b) The “other sheep” to earth; and
- c) Non-JWs who have lived good enough lives to earn salvation.

The Pharisees (like the JWs) believed in study and obedience to the Law, but Jesus said that was not enough. They had to come to Jesus as the giver of eternal life. Only by the indwelling Christ can believers do good works. JWs live in fear of dying at Armageddon.

JWs twist five main Scriptures regarding salvation:

### **1. John 3:3,5,7 - Being Born again**

“Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, Verily I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the Kingdom of God. Ye must be born again.” (John 3:3,7).

**Watchtower Teaching:** JWs do not believe that they must be born again. If you ask a JW if he has been born again, he will say: “That doesn’t apply to me. It’s only for the 144,000 anointed ones. I belong to the “great crowd” who will live on the earth under Kingdom rule.”

The WT organisation has taught them that: “The “other sheep” do not need any such rebirth, for their goal is life everlasting in the restored earthly paradise.” (WT, 15 Feb 1986, p.14).

### Our Biblical Response:

**Question 1:** When Jesus said, “Unless **anyone** is born again, he cannot see the Kingdom of God.” (John 3:3 NWT), did He allow for any exceptions? (No!).

**Question 2:** In I John 5:1 (NWT) “**Everyone believing** that Jesus is the Christ has been born from God”, does the expression “everyone believing” leave any believer out? (No).

**Question 3:** In Galatians 4:5,6 (NWT) didn’t Christ come so “that we . . . might receive the **adoption** as sons. Now because you are sons, God has sent forth the **Spirit** of his Son into our hearts, and it cries out “Abba, Father”.”

**Ask:** Have you been adopted as a son of God, by receiving the Spirit of Christ into your heart, as shown here? (No)

**Question 4:** In Romans 8:9 “Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.” Remind the JW that he has admitted that he has not received Christ’s Spirit to dwell in his heart by being born again.

**Ask:** In the light of Romans 8:8,9 can you reach any other conclusion than that you **cannot please God** (v.8) and that **you do not belong to Christ?** Re-read Romans 8:8,9,14-16.

### Bible Teaching:

Scripture is clear that the opportunity to become born again is not limited to 144,000 people in the so-called anointed class, but is **open to all who believe in Jesus Christ as follows.**

a) **I John 5:1** “**Whosoever** (everyone) believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God.” There are no exceptions. Anybody and everybody who believes that Jesus is the Christ is born again.

b) **John 3:16** “that **whosoever** believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.”

c) **I John 4:7** “**everyone** that loveth is born of God.”

**Key:** Notice here that God never mentions that the number to be born again is restricted to 144,000 but is unlimited to “whosoever believeth”.

Note: Jesus did not need to be born again because He never sinned (Hebrews 5:15).

Only sinners being dead spiritually need to be born again.

“Ye” in John 3:7 means “**everybody**” plural. Being born again of the Spirit means that we who were born physically with a dead spirit inherited from Adam, experience a spiritual rebirth by the Holy Spirit giving us new spiritual life. Everyone must be born again.

Paul did not divide believers into two classes, but said:

a) “Henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness which the Lord, the righteous judge shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto **ALL** them also that love his appearing.” (II Timothy 4:8).

b) The new birth is not limited to 144,000, but is available to “any man”: “If **any man** be in Christ, he is a new creature . . .” (II Corinthians 5:17).

c) Never do we read of a limited number being placed on those who are born again.

“Being born again, not of corruptible seed but of incorruptible, by the word of God.” I Peter 1:23  
“**everyone** that doeth righteousness is born of him.” (I John 2:29).

“**whosoever** believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God ...” (I John 5:1).

**Question:** What about you? Have you been born again? You **must** be born again!

**2. Present tense salvation:** Matthew 24:13 “But he that shall endure unto the end (of the 7 year Tribulation), the same shall be saved (from the Antichrist’s persecutions).” The Watchtower Society has convinced JWs that they are unsaved and that they cannot be saved in this present life. They do not believe that they will have to answer for their sins. The JW book “*Make Sure of all Things*” on page 332 states: “Salvation to **life** involves time and is not completed when one becomes a Christian.” They believe that nobody can be sure of salvation until they have continued their good works up to the end of the 1000 years. Their idea is completely false as seen from these scriptures, showing that we **now possess** a **present tense salvation**:

- |                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| 1) I John 5:12          | “He that has the Son, <b>has life</b> .”                     |
| 2) I John 5:13          | “that ye may <b>know</b> that ye have eternal <b>life</b> .” |
| 3) John 3:36            | “He that believeth on the Son <b>has everlasting life</b> .” |
| 4) I John 3:2           | “Beloved, <b>now are we</b> the sons of God . . .”           |
| 5) I Corinthians 1:18   | “but unto us which <b>are saved</b> . . .”                   |
| 6) II Corinthians 2:15  | “in them that <b>are saved</b> . . .”                        |
| 7) Ephesians 2:5,8      | “by grace <b>ye are saved</b> ;”                             |
| 8) I Thessalonians 1:10 | “Jesus, which <b>delivered us</b> from the wrath to come.”   |
| 9) II Timothy 1:9       | “Who <b>has saved us</b> . . .”                              |
| 10) Titus 3:5           | “according to his mercy he <b>saved us</b> .”                |

11) I John 2:12 “I write unto you because your sins **are forgiven** you for his name’s sake.”

12) Romans 8:16 “The Spirit itself bears witness with our spirit that **we are** the children of God.”

**Think:** If all the people converted in the apostles’ time up to 100 AD were totalled, they would have taken up the 144,000 places even before the JWs came on the scene!

### 3. Romans 10:13 - “Calling on Jehovah”

NWT	KJV
“Everyone who calls on the name of <b>Jehovah</b> will be saved.”	“For whosoever shall call upon the name of the <b>Lord</b> (Greek: κυριος) shall be saved.”

JWs quote this verse to claim that the proper use of God’s correct name - “Jehovah” - is essential to obtaining salvation. They explain this as: “Everyone who calls on the name of Jehovah will get away safe.” (Joel 2:32). (*Man’s Salvation out of World Distress* p.111), meaning get away safe at Armageddon. This is completely redefining salvation from being “salvation from sin” to “salvation from Armageddon”.

**Bible Teaching:** JWs have inserted the word “Jehovah” which is not in any NT manuscript.

**Question:** Why didn’t they translate “**Lord**” in Philippians 2:11 as “Jehovah”?

**Answer:** Because it would prove that “Jesus Christ is Jehovah”.

Paul is here quoting Joel 2:32: “calling on the name of Jehovah”, and applying it to Christ. Paul is here equating “calling on Jehovah” with “calling upon Jesus Christ”, hence proving that Christ is Jehovah. The context of Romans 10:4-14 is Jesus Christ, where Jesus’ name is mentioned in v.4,6,7,9,11,12.

**Ask:** Why isolate v.13 as referring to Jehovah, when every other verse here refers to Jesus Christ? Is not Jesus Christ shown to be Jehovah here?

Also, for Peter, Jesus is the Lord of Joel 2:32 in Acts 2:21.

This proves that Jesus is the Jehovah of Joel 2:32.

The WT magazine (1 May 1978, p.12), says that Romans 10:13 refers to Jesus Christ.

However, the WT magazine (1 Feb 1980, p.61) states that it refers to Jehovah.

**Ask:** How can the Watchtower reverse its interpretation on this important verse?

#### **4. I Timothy 2:5,6 - No Mediator for the Great Crowd.**

"For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus; who gave himself a ransom for all."

**Watchtower Teaching:** They argue that, because Jesus mediates between God and men, He cannot be viewed as God, since a mediator is separate from those needing mediation. The WT claims that Christ's ransom sacrifice corresponded exactly to Adam's life. The WT argues that, if Jesus were a part of the triune Godhead, "the ransom price would have been infinitely higher than what God's Law required." (*Should you believe in the Trinity?*, p.21).

**Bible Teaching:** The folly of WT reasoning that "for Jesus to be a mediator between God and men, means that He cannot be God", is seen in that He could not be man either, if the requirement was to be separate from both parties. The truth is that Jesus CAN mediate between God and men **because He is both God and man**. It was only as a man that Christ could represent humanity and die as a man. As God, however, Christ's death has infinite value, sufficient to provide redemption for the sins of all people.

Isaiah 43:11 states that it is only God who saves: "I, even I, am the LORD (Jehovah); and beside me there is **no Saviour**." This important verse shows that:

a) A claim to be Saviour is a claim to be God; and

b) There is only **one Saviour**, that is God.

Hence Jesus is God, as seen by the NT calling Him "Saviour" in John 4:42, Titus 2:13, 2 Peter 1:1

**Ask:** Can you see how that **only God is the Saviour** (Isaiah 43:11), and that **Jesus is the Saviour** (Luke 2:11) requires that Jesus be God Almighty?

**Ask:** Since the WT claims that Christ's death was only a "corresponding ransom" for Adam, why did God need to send His Son to earth as a man, if all that was required was a perfect human? God could have created a perfect human from scratch.

In the Watchtower magazine, April 1, 1979, a reader's question asks:

"Is Jesus the mediator only for anointed Christians (the 144,000)?" The WT answered "yes".

These remaining few are the only ones allowed to partake in the annual communion service. This means that only about 5000 of the 144,000 are alive today (in 1996), who have a mediator. All other JWs have no mediator. I John 2:2 states that:

"He is the propitiation for our sins: and not for our sins only, but also for the sins of the whole world."

**Ask:** Since the WT claims that Jesus is Michael the archangel, how can he be the "MAN" Christ Jesus (I Timothy 2:5)? This verse was written in 65 AD, with Jesus being in heaven, yet the WT claims that Jesus after His death reverted back to being Michael the archangel. Both Jews and JWs think that they can go to the Father without a mediator.

**Ask:** If one can get eternal life without Christ as mediator, then who needs Christ, and why did Christ have to die? If Christ only became sin for the 144,000, then the others have no sin bearer, no Saviour, and are still in their sins, in which they must die. What advantage is there in being a JW? (None whatsoever!)

**Ask:** You may ask them: "If you aren't sure of eternal life, you have nothing to offer me."

Hence the imaginary earthly class have no Saviour, no mediator, no intercessor, no access to Jehovah, only eternal damnation.

**Conclusion:** About 200 times the NT states that salvation is by faith in Christ as Saviour, not by works, as seen in Ephesians 2:8,9; Titus 3:5; Galatians 2:16, etc.

**Note:** Acts 16:31,34 equate believing in Christ and believing in God as identical acts.

"Believe on the **Lord Jesus Christ**, and thou shalt be saved." (v.31).

"Believing in **God** with all his house." (v.34).

## **16. WATCHTOWER FALSE PROPHECIES**

Four principles of dealing with JW's on their false prophecies are as follows:

**Principle I** - The real problem with JW's is the question of **religious authority**.

JW's think that the WT has the greatest Hebrew, Greek and Bible scholars, when they have none.

JW's think that all religious questions are solved in Brooklyn, and nowhere else can truth be found. JW's look unquestioningly to the WT, just as medieval Roman Catholics looked to Rome for truth.

To a JW, the Bible has no real authority, except as correctly interpreted by the Watchtower. JW's are trained not to trust themselves or others to interpret the Bible, only the Watchtower. If you silence and refute a JW by Bible arguments, which he cannot answer, he will just contact the Watchtower and they will give him their answers.

**Key:** As long as a JW trusts the WT organisation, you'll never get anywhere with him. Once a JW's **confidence** and **trust** in the WT **organisation** is shaken, he is more readily brought to salvation.

**Principle II** - To destroy a JW's blind obedience and submission to the WT, you must show them that the **Watchtower is not trustworthy or reliable**.

You must prove that the WT is not "God's visible organisation on earth."

**Key:** He must see that he has been deceived by the Watchtower. Until his confidence in the WT has been destroyed, he is unable to place his confidence or authority in the Bible alone. Until he looks to the Bible alone, there is no real common ground between you and a JW.

**Principle III** - To destroy a JW's blind allegiance to the WT, we must show from **Scripture** and **Watchtower literature** that the **Watchtower is a FALSE PROPHET**, and hence is unreliable, fraudulent, untrustworthy, and not worthy of his belief, obedience or submission. Tell a JW: "The Watchtower is a false prophet and is trying to deceive you and me. It is condemned by Scripture as a false prophet."

**Question:** How can we show that the Watchtower is a false prophet?

**Step 1:** A **true prophet** of God will give prophecies that will come true 100% of the time (Deuteronomy 18:20-22; Matthew 7:15-20).

A **false prophet** will give prophecies that fail to come true. The WT claims to be God's inspired prophet who gives prophecies under angelic direction. (WT, 1 April, 1972, p.197-200).

**Step 2:** Deuteronomy 18:20-22 and Matthew 7:15-20 tell us how to judge if the WT is a true or false prophet.

**Step 3:** In 100 years of giving prophecies, the WT has a **100% failure rate**.

All WT prophecies have been shown to be false by the passage of time.

**Step 4:** Deuteronomy 18:20-22 and Matthew 7:15-20 prove that the WT is a false prophet and does not speak in Jehovah's name. The Bible therefore commands us not to believe, trust, respect or fear the WT.

**Step 5:** Just as the WT has given **false prophecies**, so it has given **false doctrines**.

The WT has tried to cover up its false prophecies by wilful and deliberate lies and deceit.

**Principle IV** - It is best to first get the JW to recognize and **acknowledge that the WT is a false prophet**, then to discuss **doctrine** and Bible passages.

Let us look at these four steps proving how the WT is a false prophet:

**Step 1:** Get the JW to agree that the Bible clearly teaches that a **true prophet of God gives prophecies coming true 100% of the time**, & **false prophets give prophecies that don't come true**.

Today, there are many “prophets”, all claiming to speak in God’s name.

We must ask the question found in Deuteronomy 18:21:

“If thou say in thine heart, “How shall we know the word which the Lord hath **not** spoken?””

**Question:** Has Jehovah given us a test for us to distinguish between true and false prophets?

**Moses’ test:** Yes, it is **Deuteronomy 18:22:** “When a prophet speaketh in the name of Jehovah, if the thing **follow not**, nor come to pass, that is the thing which Jehovah hath **not** spoken; but the prophet hath spoken it presumptuously: thou shalt not be afraid of him.”

**Jesus’ test:** **Matthew 7:15-20** gives the test to distinguish between true and false prophets: “Beware of false prophets, which come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves. Ye shall know them by their fruits . . A corrupt tree brings forth evil fruit.” The fruits of the tree are the prophecies of the prophet.

Just as a good tree **never** bears evil fruit, so a true prophet **NEVER** gives a false prophecy.

Jesus said, “By their fruits (prophecies) ye shall know them.”

In the JW Awake magazine, October 8, 1968, p.23 they say:

“True, there have been those in times past who predicted an “end to the world”, even announcing a specific date . . Yet, nothing happened. The “end” did not come. They were guilty of false prophesying. Why? What was missing? Missing from such people were God’s truths and the evidence that He was guiding and using them.”

Hence, a false prophet, even though he spoke in Jehovah’s Name, gave false prophecies (endorsed & published by WT) which failed to come true. Here, the WT admits to being a false prophet.

**Step 2: Has the Watchtower ever claimed to be God’s prophet today?** Is the WT Society the “faithful and wise servant of Jehovah” proclaiming inspired messages from angels?

**Ask** the JW to “read aloud the following sentences”, and

**Ask** the JW to “explain what you have just read”. Get him to answer the questions himself. At Step 2, don’t discuss if WT prophecies have come true.

Get the JW to agree that the WT claims to be God’s prophet before you go to Step 3.

Consider this article in the Watchtower magazine of April, 1, 1972, pages 197 to 200.

The front page is reproduced on the next page to give the context, and to prove to JWs.

This **“prophet”** was not one man, but was a body of men and women. It was the small group of footstep followers of Jesus Christ, known at that time as International Bible Students.

**Today** they are known as **Jehovah’s Christian witnesses.**” (Watchtower, 1 April 1972, p.197).

**Ask:** Does the Watchtower claim “Jehovah’s Christian Witnesses” are God’s prophet for today?

**Step 3: Ask, “Can we agree that the Watchtower “prophet” has given prophecies about events and dates in the future?”** (Don’t argue about 1914 here).

**Ask** “Let us apply Moses’ test and Jesus’ test of a prophet to this modern day prophet.”

1. **What date is set for the close of that battle** (ie: Armageddon)?

“The date of the close of that “battle” is definitely marked in Scripture as **October 1914.**

It is already in progress, its beginning dating from October 1874.”

(Zions Watchtower, 15 January 1892, p.1353).

—yet so great is our  
confidence in the Word of God and in the light of present  
truth shining upon it, that we could not have doubted its  
testimony whatever had been the appearances. **The date of**  
**the close of that “battle” is definitely marked in Scripture as**  
**October, 1914. It is already in progress, its beginning dating**  
**from October, 1874.**



*'They shall know that*  
**A PROPHET  
WAS  
AMONG THEM'**

JEHOVAH GOD is interested in having people know him. Though he is invisible to human eyes, he provides various ways by which they can know his personality. They can know what to expect from him and what he expects of them.

One can come to understand that Jehovah is a God of surpassing wisdom by observing creation. This also reveals the loving care with which he designed things for man's welfare and enjoyment. A second way to know God is through his Word of truth, the Bible. Herein one finds the full expression of Jehovah's purpose toward mankind—why man is on the earth and the blessings that God has in store.

A third way of coming to know Jehovah God is through his representatives. In ancient times he sent prophets as his special messengers. While these men foretold things to come, they also served the people by telling them of God's will for them at that time, often also warning them of dangers and calamities. People today can view the creative works. They have at hand the Bible, but it is little read or understood. So, does Jehovah have a prophet to help them, to warn them of dangers and to declare things to come?

**IDENTIFYING THE "PROPHET"**

These questions can be answered in the affirmative. Who is this prophet? The cler-

gy of the so-called "Christian" nations hold themselves before the people as being the ones commissioned to speak for God. But, as pointed out in the previous issue of this magazine, they have failed God and failed as proclaimers of his kingdom by approving a man-made political organization, the League

Ezek. 2:5 of Nations (now the United Nations), as "the political expression of the Kingdom of God on earth."

However, Jehovah did not let the people of Christendom, as led by the clergy, go without being warned that the League was a counterfeit substitute for the real kingdom of God. He had a "prophet" to warn them. This "prophet" was not one man, but was a body of men and women. It was the small group of footstep followers of Jesus Christ, known at that time as International Bible Students. Today they are known as Jehovah's Christian witnesses. They are still proclaiming a warning, and have been joined and assisted in their commissioned work by hundreds of thousands of persons who have listened to their message with belief.

Of course, it is easy to say that this group acts as a "prophet" of God. It is another thing to prove it. The only way that this can be done is to review the record. What does it show?

During the World War I period this group, the International Bible Students, was very active in preaching the good news of God's kingdom, as their Leader Jesus Christ had set this work before them in his prophecy at Matthew 24:14. They took literally Jesus' words to the Roman governor Pontius Pilate: "My kingdom is no part of this world." (John 18:36) They also took to heart Jesus' words to his fol-

107

## 2. Did the Times of the Gentiles end in October 1914?

a) In 1889 the WT said, "we present proofs that the setting up of the kingdom of God has already begun . . . and that **"the battle of the great day of God almighty"** (Revelation 16:14), which will **end in AD 1914** with the complete overthrow of the earth's present rulership, is **already commenced.**" (In their 1915 edition of this same book they changed 'AD 1914' to 'AD 1915').

b) On July 15, 1894 they said, "But bear in mind that the **end of 1914** is not the date for the beginning, but for the **end of the time of trouble.**" (Reprints, p.1677).

- c) In 1904 they said, "The stress of the great time of trouble will be on us soon, somewhere between 1910 and 1912 culminating with the end of the "times of the Gentiles", October 1914." (*The New Creation*, p.579).

But the year 1914 ended without a single one of these predictions coming true.

- d) In *Pastor Russell's Sermons* (1917, p.676), Charles Taze Russell, founder and first president of the Jehovah's Witnesses, said of World War I, "The present great war in Europe is the beginning of the Armageddon of the Scriptures."

### 3. Did God destroy the churches wholesale in 1918?

"Also, in the year 1918, when God destroys the churches wholesale and the church members by millions, it shall be that any that escape shall come to the works of Pastor Russell to learn the meaning of the downfall of "Christianity". ("*Finished Mystery*, 1917 edition, p.485).

**Question:** Why did the 1926 edition change this quote to: "When God begins to destroy the churches"?

#### FINISHED MYSTERY 1917 edition

*The Boiling Cauldron*

485

#### PASTOR RUSSELL DEAD, BUT SPEAKING AGAIN

24:25, 26. Also, thou son of man, shall it not be in the day when I take from them their strength, the joy of their glory, the desire of their eyes, and that whereupon they set their minds, their sons and their daughters. That he that escapeth in that day shall come unto thee, to cause thee to hear it with thine ears?—Also, in the year 1918, when God destroys the churches wholesale and the church members by millions, it shall be that any that escape shall come to the works of Pastor Russell to learn the meaning of the downfall of "Christianity."

#### FINISHED MYSTERY 1926 edition

*The Boiling Cauldron*

485

#### PASTOR RUSSELL DEAD, BUT SPEAKING AGAIN

24:25, 26. Also, thou son of man, shall it not be in the day when I take from them their strength, the joy of their glory, the desire of their eyes, and that whereupon they set their minds, their sons and their daughters. That he that escapeth in that day shall come unto thee, to cause thee to hear it with thine ears?—Also, in the year 1918, when God begins to destroy the churches and the church members by millions, it shall be that any that escape shall come to the works of Pastor Russell to learn the meaning of the downfall of "Christianity."

### 4. Did Christ return to Earth in 1874 and set up the Millennium?

"The Millennium began in 1874, with the Return of Christ." (*Studies*, Vol 7, p.386).

"After the Second Adventist hopes were disappointed in 1874, Barbour convinced Russell that Christ actually returned invisibly in 1874." (*Studies*, Vol 7, p.54).

### 5. Did Abraham, Isaac and Jacob get resurrected and return to life in 1925?

The Society had a mansion in San Diego named *Beth-Sarim* (House of Princes) waiting for these resurrected prophets. It was built in 1930. Frederick Franz (the president of the Society) in 1942 wrote a book titled *The New World*, and it says among other things:

"and hence those faithful men of old may be expected back from the dead **any day now**. In this expectation the house of San Diego, California, which house has been much publicized with malicious intent by the religious enemy, was built in 1930, and named "Beth-Sarim", meaning "House of the Princes". It is now held in trust for the occupancy of those princes on their return." (*The New World* page 104). The **house was sold a few years later**. "The year 1925 is a date definitely and clearly marked in the Scriptures, even more clearly than that of 1914." (Watchtower 15 July 1924, p.211). "Some anticipated the work would end in 1925. The Lord did not so state."

(Watchtower 1 August 1926, p 232).

## 6. How can Revelation 1:7 "Behold he cometh with clouds, and every eye shall see him" fit with this WT quote?

"Surely there is not the slightest room for doubt in the mind of a truly consecrated child of God that the Lord Jesus is present and has been since 1874." (WT, 1 Jan. 1924, p5).

"We are not to look for Christ to be visible to human eyes when he comes again."

(Watchtower, 15 February 1955, p.102).

## 7. Did the Battle of Armageddon take place in 1975?



**W**HAT about all this talk concerning the year 1975? Lively discussions, some based on speculation, have burst into flame during recent months among serious students of the Bible. Their interest has been kindled by the belief that 1975 will mark the end of 6,000 years of human history since Adam's creation. The nearness of such an important date indeed fires the imagination and presents unlimited possibilities for discussion.

\* But wait! How do we know their calculations are correct? What basis is there for saying Adam was created nearly 5,993 years ago? Does the one Book that can be implicitly trusted for its truthful historical accuracy, namely, the Inspired Word of Jehovah, the Holy Bible, give support and credence to such a conclusion?

<sup>3</sup> In the marginal references of the Protestant *Authorized* or *King James Version*, and in the footnotes of certain editions of the Catholic *Douay* version, the date of man's creation is said to be 4004 B.C.E. This marginal date, however, is no part of the inspired text of the Holy Scriptures, since it was first suggested more than fifteen centuries after the last Bible writer died, and was not added to any edition of the Bible until 1701 C.E. It is an insertion based upon the conclusions of an Irish prelate, the Anglican Archbishop James Ussher (1581-1656). Ussher's chronology was only one of the many sincere efforts made during the past centuries to determine the time of Adam's creation. A hundred years ago when a count was taken, no less than 140 different timetables had been published by se-

'Are we to assume from this study that the battle of Armageddon will be all over by the autumn of 1975, and the long looked for 1000-year reign of Christ will begin by then? Possibly. It may involve only a difference of weeks or months, not years.' (Watchtower, 15 August 1968, p.499).

"A great crowd of people are confident that great destruction is imminent, which has been a major factor in their decision not to have children." (WT, 8 Nov. 1974, p.11).

"Reports are heard of brothers selling their homes and property and planning to finish out the rest of their days in this old system in the pioneer service. Certainly this is a fine way to spend the short time remaining before the wicked world's end."

(Kingdom Ministry, May 1974, p3)

## 8. Did the Great Pyramid grow by 41 inches (3457 minus 3416=41) in 10 years (1903-13)?

"the Great Pyramid. seems in a remarkable way to teach, in harmony with all the prophets, an outline of the plan of God, past, present and future." (Studies, Vol 3, 1903 edition, p.314).

"Then measuring . . . we find it to be 3416 inches, symbolizing 3416 years.....

This calculation shows AD 1874 as marking the beginning of the period of trouble..

(Studies, Vol 3, 1903 edition, p.342)

"Then measuring . . . we find it to be 3457 inches, symbolizing 3457 years . . .

This calculation shows AD 1915 as marking the beginning of the period of trouble ..."

(Studies, Vol 3, 1913 edition, p 342)

"Those who have devoted themselves to the pyramid . . . The mind of such was turned away from Jehovah and his Word." (Watchtower 15 November 1928, p 344)

## 9. According to the Watchtower 'prophet', will man ever reach the moon by rocket?

Man on

earth can no more get rid of these demonic  
"heavens" than man can by airplane or rockets  
or other means get up above the air envelope  
which is about our earthly globe and in which  
man breathes.

This Watchtower false prophecy was printed in 'The Truth shall make you Free' p.285 in 1943. It was proven false on October 4, 1957 when Russia's Sputnik I escaped earth's air envelope.

## 10. Note the Watchtower's confidence that their false prophecies will come true:

a) 1874: The Day of Vengeance, p.621.

Our Lord,  
the appointed King, is now present, since October 1874.  
A. D., according to the testimony of the prophets, to those  
who have ears to hear it; and the formal inauguration of  
his kingly office dates from April 1878, A. D. :

b) 1914: 'Studies in the Scriptures,' Series II, 1912, p.76,77.

**INTERNATIONAL BIBLE STUDENTS ASSOCIATION**  
BROOKLYN, LONDON, MELBOURNE, BARMEN,  
ELBERFELD, OREBRO, CHRISTIANIA.

1912

In this chapter we present the Bible evidence proving  
that the full end of the times of the Gentiles, i. e., the full  
end of their lease of dominion, will be reached in A. D.  
→ 1914; and that that date will be the farthest limit of the rule of  
imperfect men.

c) 1925: 'Millions Now Living Will Never Die', p.88-89.

They are

to be resurrected as perfect men and constitute the princes or rulers in the earth, according to his promise. (Psalm 45:16; Isaiah 32:1; Matthew 8:11) Therefore we may confidently expect that 1925 will mark the return of Abraham, Isaac, Jacob and the faithful prophets of old, particularly those named by the Apostle in Hebrews chapter eleven, to the condition of human perfection.

d) 1975: 'Awake', 8 October, 1968, stated that 6000

years of human history would end in autumn 1975. When Do 6,000 Years End?

'Why Human Creation will be Set Free', p.29:

the published timetable resulting from this independent study gives the date of man's creation as 4026 B.C.E.† According to this trustworthy Bible chronology six thousand years from man's creation will end in 1975, and the seventh period of a thousand years of human history will begin in the fall of 1975 C.E.

"So six thousand years of man's existence on earth will soon be up, yes, within this generation.

How can it be determined when 6,000 years of human history will end?

According to reliable Bible chronology, Adam and Eve were created in 4026 B.C.E.\* From the autumn of

4026 B.C.E. to 1 B.C.E. ....	4,025 years
1 B.C.E. to 1 C.E. ....	1 year
1 C.E. to 1968 C.E. ....	1,967 years

Total to autumn 1968 .... 5,993 years

This would leave only seven more years from the autumn of 1968 to complete 6,000 full years of human history. That seven-year period will evidently finish in the autumn of the year 1975.

**Step 4 - Ask:** Now that you have examined Watchtower prophecies, you can apply the Biblical test to see if the Watchtower is a true or false prophet.

What was supposed to happen, according to the Watchtower, on the following dates: 1874, 1914, 1918, 1925 and 1975?

**Question 1:** With Judgment Day honesty, we must ask ourselves, "Did any of the above prophecies fail to come about?" The only honest answer is that, "All of them failed to be fulfilled. Every one of them failed. They were all false prophecies."

**Question 2:** What verdict did Moses and Jesus tell us to pass on the Watchtower?

**Answer:** The Watchtower is a false prophet (Deuteronomy 18:22). It is not God's organisation, and it does not speak in Jehovah's Name (Deuteronomy 18:20). We should not be afraid of it or respect it. (Deuteronomy 18:22). We must immediately take our stand with Moses and Jesus in rejecting the Watchtower as a false prophet (Matthew 7:15).

**Question 3:** But, if the Watchtower is a false prophet and cannot be trusted, but must be rejected, to where shall we turn for spiritual guidance?

**Answer:** Not to any human organisation, but to the Bible, God's Word as our only ultimate authority.

Re-examine everything the Watchtower has taught you. Study the Bible **without their books or magazines**. Don't let a false prophet tell you what the Bible says.

You must study the Bible for yourself.

## **17. CONTRADICTIONS AND FALSE DOCTRINES OF THE WATCHTOWER:**

### **1. Big Brother thought control of the Watchtower**

“An individual must have *The Watchtower* to understand the Bible.” *1983 Yearbook*, p21  
“Avoid independent thinking . . . questioning the counsel that is provided by God’s visible organization.” (*Watchtower* 15 January 1983, p 22).  
“Fight against independent thinking.” (*Watchtower* 15 January 1983, p 27).  
“Unless we are in touch with this channel of communication that God is using, we will not progress along the road to life, **no matter how much Bible reading we do.**”  
(*Watchtower*, 1 December 1981, p 27).

“The Vatican belittles Bible study by claiming it is the only organization authorized and qualified to interpret the Bible.” (*Watchtower* 1 July 1943, p 201).

“from among the ranks of Jehovah’s people . . . haughty ones . . . say that it is sufficient to read the Bible exclusively, either alone or in small groups at home. But, strangely, through such “Bible reading”, they have reverted right back to apostate doctrines that commentaries by Christendom’s clergy were teaching 100 years ago..”  
(*Watchtower*, 15 August 1981, pp 28-29).

“Meekly go along with the organization. Do not pit human reasoning, sentiment, and personal feelings **against the organization.**” (*Watchtower*, 1 February 1952, p 80).

### **2. Has the Watchtower swallowed the “exclusivism” lie of the Roman Catholic church?**

McClintock and Strong’s *Cyclopoedia*, Volume II, page 386, says:

“As the **Roman hierarchy** was developed, the **clergy** came to . . . be recognized as the **only priesthood** and the **essential means of communication** between man and God.”

(*1000 Years*, pp 377-78).

“Is not the **Watch Tower** Bible and Tract Society the **one and only channel** which the Lord has used in dispensing his truth continually since the beginning of the harvest period?”  
(*Watchtower*, 1 April 1919, p 6414).

### **3. Why did the Watchtower change its view on vaccination and organ transplants?**

a) “**Vaccination** is a direct violation of the everlasting covenant that God made with Noah after the flood.” (*Golden Age*, 4 February 1931, p 293).

“Vaccinations appear to have caused a marked decrease in diseases” *Awake*, 22 Aug 65, p20

b) Jehovah’s Witnesses consider **all organ transplants** to be cannibalism, hence unacceptable.”  
(*Awake*, 8 June 1968, p 21).

“Organ transplants are not necessarily cannibalistic.” (*Watchtower*, 15 March 1980, p 31).

### **4. Why did the Watchtower change its view on Christmas?**

“Don’t quibble about the date; **join in with the world and celebrate Christmas.**”  
(*Watchtower*, 1 December 1904, p.3468).

“We all need to face up to the fact that **Christmas** and its music are not from Jehovah, the God of truth. Then what is their source? Satan the Devil.” (*Watchtower*, 15 Dec.1983,p 7).

### **5. Why did the Watchtower change its view on the Cross?**

“beginning with the issue of October 15, 1931, *The Watchtower* no longer bore the cross and crown symbol on its cover.”  
(*1975 Yearbook*, p 148).

### **6. Why did the Watchtower change its view on who Jesus and Michael are?**

a) “Let all the angels of God worship him” [that must include Michael, the chief angel, hence Michael is not the Son of God.]”  
(*Watchtower*, November 1879, p 48).

“Michael the great prince’ is none other than **Jesus Christ** himself. Daniel 12:1.”

(*Watchtower 15 December 1984, p 29.*)

“Michael in Revelation 12:7 is the **pope of Rome**.” .....(*Studies, Vol 7, p 188.*)

b) “**Jesus** is the Alpha and the Omega, the **Almighty**, of Revelation 1:8.”

(*Studies, Vol 7, p 15.*)

“**Jesus** is the Alpha and the Omega of Revelation 21:6”. (*Studies, Vol 7, p 318.*)

## 7. **Why is the Watchtower confused about Romans 10:13, 10:14 and Revelation 22:12?**

a) “**Romans 10:13** is referring to **Jesus**.” (*Watchtower, 1 May 1978, p 12.*)

“Romans 10:13 is referring to **Jehovah**.” (*Watchtower, 1 February 1980, p 16.*)

b) “**Romans 10:14** refers to **Jesus**.” (*Watchtower, 1 December 1903, p 3282.*)

“Romans 10:14-16 refers to **Jehovah**.” (*Watchtower, 1 July 1940, p 200.*)

c) “**Revelation 22:12** is referring to **Jehovah**.” (*Awake, 22 August 1978, p 28*)

“Revelation 22:7, 12, 20 is referring to **Jesus**.” (*Watchtower, 1 October 1978, p 15.*)

## 8. **Why does the Watchtower teach JW’s to tell lies?**

“Lying to God’s enemies is **not really lying but war strategy**.” (*WT, 1 June 1960, p352.*)

## 9. **Why did the Watchtower change its view on military service?**

“no command in the Scriptures against military service.” (*WT, 1 August 1898, p 2345.*)

“nothing against our consciences in going into the army.” (*WT, 15 April 1903, p 3180.*)

“Due to conscience, Jehovah’s Witnesses refuse military service.” (*WT, 1 Feb 1951, p73*)

“Should you defend yourself? A homeowner has the right to inflict hard blows. Jesus’ apostles had at least two swords.” (*Watchtower, 8 September 1975, pp 27-28.*)

## 10. **Why did the Watchtower change its view on worshipping Christ?**

“You must worship and bow down to Jehovah’s chief one, namely Jesus Christ.”

(*Watchtower, 15 October 1945, p 313.*)

## 11. **Is salvation in a man-made Watchtower Organisation or in Christ?**

“come to Jehovah’s organization for salvation . . .” (*Watchtower, 15 Nov 1981, p 21.*)

“Put faith in a victorious organization!” (*Watchtower, 1 March 1979, p 1.*)

## 12. **Is it right for the Watchtower to tell people to defer marriage till lasting peace comes to the earth?**

“We can well defer our marriage until lasting peace comes to the earth.” (*Children, p366*)

“Forbidding to marry is wrong.” (*Watchtower, 1 April 1964, p 199.*)

“Those who forbid marriage have departed from the faith.” (*WT, 15 Sept. 1979, p 31.*)

“Shocking as it is, even some who have been prominent in Jehovah’s organization have succumbed to immoral practices, including homosexuality, wife swapping, and child molesting.” (*Watchtower, 1 January 1986, p 13.*)

## 13. **Would a true prophet of God make false prophecies about World War II?**

“The Nazis will destroy the British.” (*Fifth Column, p 15.*)

The new book titled *Children* will prove useful “in the remaining months before Armageddon.” (*Watchtower, 15 September 1941, p 288.*)

“The **end of Nazi Fascist hierarchy** will come and will mark the **end forever of demon rule.**” (*Watchtower, 15 December 1941, p 377.*)

#### **14. Which famous people were expected to live in Beth-Sarim?**

“... those **faithful men of old** may be expected back from the dead any day now . . .

In this expectation the house of San Diego, California, which house has been much publicized with malicious intent by the religious enemy, was built, in 1930, and named “**Beth-Sarim**”, meaning “House of the Princes”. It is now held in trust for the **occupancy of those princes on their return.**” (*New World*, p 104).

“**Job** is to be resurrected shortly with those faithful men and to appear on earth with them.” (*New World*, p 130).

“The year 1925 came and went. Jesus’ anointed followers were still on earth as a class.

The faithful men of old times - **Abraham, David** and others - **had not been resurrected** to become princes in the earth (Psalm 45:16). So, as Anna MacDonald recalls:

“1925 was a sad year for many brothers. Some of them were stumbled; their hopes were dashed . Instead of it being considered a “probability”, they read into it that it was a “certainty”, and some prepared for their own loved ones with expectancy of their resurrection”.” (*1975 Yearbook*, p 146).

#### **15. From 1940-43, the Watchtower made 44 predictions of the immanence of Armageddon. Why did they fail?**

Consider these examples:

In September **1940** they said, “The kingdom is here, the king is enthroned. Armageddon is just ahead... The great climax has been reached.” (*The Messenger*, September 1940, p 6)

They said, “The Final End is Very Near”. (*The Watchtower*, Sept. 15, 1941 p 276).

“The remaining months before Armageddon . . .” (p 288).

They said, “The time is at hand for Jesus Christ to take possession of all things.”

(*The Watchtower*, January 15, 1942 p 28).

On May 1, **1942** they said, “Now, with Armageddon immediately before us . . .”(p 139).

On May 1, **1943** they said, “The final end of all things . . . is at hand”.” (p139).

On September 1, **1944** they said, “Armageddon is near at hand.” (p 264).

In **1946**, “The disaster of Armageddon . . . is at the door.” (*Let God be True* 1946, p 194).

In **1950** they said, “The March is on! Where? To the field of Armageddon for the “war of the great day of God the Almighty.””“ (*This Means Everlasting Life*, 1950, p 311).

In **1953** they said, “Armageddon is so near at hand it will strike the generation now living.” (*You May Survive Armageddon* speech p 11).

In **1955** they said, “It is becoming clear that the war of Armageddon is near its breaking out point.”. (Ibid p 331).

In **1958** they said, “When will Armageddon be fought? . . . It will be very soon”.”

(*From Paradise Lost to Paradise Regained*, 1958, p 205).

JW leaders in *Awake* magazine, 8 October, 1968, p 23 admitted that certain persons had falsely predicted the end of the world. They asked why these false prophecies were given. Here they admit that they themselves were false prophets, that they lacked God’s guidance, and were lying:

“True, there have been those in times past who predicted an “end to the world”, even announcing a specific date. The “end” did not come. They were guilty of false prophesying. Why? What was missing?.....Missing from such people were God’s truths and the evidence that **He was guiding** and using them.” (*Awake*, 8 Oct.,1968, p.23).

**Note:** Deuteronomy 18:20-22 states that false prophets must die.

## **16. Why did Armageddon fail to come in 1975 as the Watchtower predicted?**

In *Kingdom Ministry, May 1974*, the world's end was said to be "so very near" that JWs were commended who sold "their homes and property" to devote themselves to full-time service in "the short time remaining before the wicked world's end". (p 3). In **1975** they said, "The fulfillment . . . is immediately ahead of us."

(*Man's Salvation out of World Distress at Hand*, p 312).

In **1975** they said, "Very short must be the time that remains . . ." (Ibid p 349).

**1975** came and went, thus discouraging and embarrassing the WT and JWs. Yet from **1976** to today the WT still says Armageddon and the end of the world is very near.

**Conclusion:** If the WT has been wrong on every prediction, how can anybody trust it?

**Question:** Why has the WT missed the date of Armageddon every time it predicted it? The WT has not only lied to people they call "God's enemies", but they have lied to their own people.

After reading these WT false prophecies, and its own admission that it lied, how can the WT be trusted any more?

**Ask:** Has the Watchtower ever lied, covered up, or changed doctrines and dates?

If God speaks through the WT, then He must change His mind very often.

Consider the following changes in dates, prophecies and doctrines:

1. They changed the beginning of the "time of the end" from 1799 to 1914;
2. They changed the date of the second coming of Christ from 1874 to 1914;
3. They changed the nature of Christ's return from earthly visible to heavenly and invisible;
4. They changed the end of the 6000 years of creation from 1872 to 1975;
5. They changed vaccination from being forbidden to being permitted;
6. They changed the "Faithful and wise servant" from C T Russell to the WT Society;
7. They changed from allowing worship of Jesus to forbidding it;
8. They changed their view of Israel from literal national to spiritual of all believers.

**Question:** Why so many changes?

**Answer:** Since the predicted events didn't happen, they covered up their false prophecies to hide the fact that God really hadn't spoken through the Watchtower Society.

Do their false prophecies support their claim of spiritual enlightenment and guidance?

What a joke! The WT Society has mislead millions of people in claiming it is God's sole channel of communication on earth today.

Rutherford believed that God's Holy Spirit had ceased to function as his teacher, and had been replaced by angels who taught him in his mind. (WT, Sept 1, 1930, p.263 & Feb 1, 1935, p.41). Today the leaders claim that both the Holy Spirit and angels communicate information to them. (WT, March 1, 1972, p.155 and Aug 1, 1987, p.19).

**Conclusion:** False prophecies lead us to conclude that the Watchtower is receiving its information from **demons**, rather than from God.

**Question:** Why, when the WT knew of demon spirits guiding Johannes Greber in 1956, did they still continue quoting him to support their doctrines (for 20 years) until **1976**.

"Very plainly the spirits in which ex-priest Greber believes, helped him in his translation."

*Watchtower*, 15 February **1956**, p.110-111.

The WT quotes Greber for support in these cases after 1956:      *Make Sure*, **1965**, p 489.

*Aids to Bible Understanding*, p 1134 and 1669.

*Watchtower*, Sept 15, **1962**, page 554.

*Watchtower*, Oct 15, **1975**, page 640.

*Watchtower*, April 15, **1976**, page 231.

**Question:** If the Watchtower is God's voice, why did they not know that Greber was an occult spiritist?

The Watchtower condemns itself as a false prophet in "Paradise Rest", p.353:

"*Jehovah . . . will put all false prophets to shame by not fulfilling the false prediction.*"

"*A pastor prophesied the end; he was called a false prophet*". WT, 15 Oct 1958, p.613.

"*Similarly*" the "false prophet" is not a person, but is a system or an organisation."

Watchtower, 15 June 1974, p.381.

The Watchtower is setting itself up for another false prophecy as seen in the following quote:

"*Before the 1914 generation completely dies out, God's judgment must be executed.*"

Watchtower, 1 May 1985, p.4.

Beware of Jehovah's false witnesses!

**Ask:** Do you agree with the Watchtower instruction that when one discovers false prophets, "then the people should no longer trust them as safe guides?"

(May 15, 1930, p.154).

A JW may defend the WT by saying that those prophecies were "mistakes" and that the organisation has learned not to predict when the end of the world will be.

**Ask:** Read the statement purpose inside the front cover of Awake:

"This magazine builds confidence in the Creator's promise of a peaceful and secure New Order before the generation that saw the events of 1914 pass away."

This is another prophecy!

**Conclusion:** Rather than fearfully obey the Watchtower, recognize it as a false prophet, leave it, and follow the **true prophet**, Jesus Christ.

## 18. **FOUR TESTS for the WATCHTOWER**

to check if it is God's sole channel Of communicating His will to man today.

If God speaks only through the Watchtower society, then:

**Test 1:** The New World Translation must be accurate. But is it? No, see the earlier section.

**Test 2:** According to Deut. 18:20-22 its prophecies must all come true. But have they? No.

**Test 3:** Its scholarship should be trustworthy. But is it? No, due to them changing doctrines, dates and interpretations.

**Test 4:** If they admit to receiving teachings from angels or spirits, which have been proven false, then is their "spirit" source trustworthy? No, it's from demons, because demons lie.

## 19. **THE 144,000 ANOINTED CLASS and OTHER SHEEP**

### Watchtower Teaching:

They claim that only 144,000 JWs go to heaven, as the "Anointed class". (Rev.7:4; 14:1-3).

They claim that all other JWs are part of God's "other sheep", and will live forever on a paradise earth.

They claim that only the 144,000 are born again as sons of God to share in the heavenly Kingdom. These will have a spiritual existence in heaven, not a physical resurrection, as they claim that "flesh and blood cannot inherit God's Kingdom".

JWs teach that only a few enter this spiritual Kingdom as a "little flock" of believers.Luke12:32

JWs claim that this 144,000 began with the apostles and was filled in 1935.

The WT teaches that only members of the 144,000 anointed class are:

1) Born again	12) Members of Christ's body
2) Sons of God	13) Members in God's temple
3) Brothers with Christ	14) Members of Abraham's seed
4) Conformed to Christ's image	15) Members of the royal priesthood
5) In union with Christ	16) Justified by faith
6) Heirs with Christ	17) Sanctified
7) Members of the New Covenant	18) Receive glorified bodies
8) Can partake of the Lord's Supper	19) Enjoy life in heaven
9) Baptized into Christ's death	20) Will rule with Christ
10) Baptized in the Holy Spirit	21) Will see Christ and God
11) Members of the church	

This list makes most New Testament blessings and privileges **irrelevant** for most JWs. The WT claims that the 144,000 will rule from heaven over the great crowd on earthly paradise (Rev 7:9), where the earth will remain forever (Ecclesiastes 1:4; Psalm 104:5). The great crowd (Revelation 7:9) is the same as the “other sheep” of John 10:16, who hope to survive Armageddon and enjoy Christ’s rule on a perfect earth. Salvation for both classes is by works of witnessing or distributing WT literature door to door. Consider these verses the WT uses and the correct Bible replies:

### **1. Luke 12:32 - The “Little Flock” as the 144,000 “Anointed class”**

**Watchtower teaching:** “Fear not, little flock; for it is your Father’s good pleasure to give you the Kingdom.” JWs claim that only this group go to heaven. WT teaches that Old Testament saints such as Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, and prophets are not part of this “little flock”, but are part of the “other sheep” of John 10:16, the “great crowd” of Revelation 7:9.

#### **Bible Teaching:**

- 1) The WT interpretation of Luke 12:32 **violates the context**. Luke 12:22-34 shows Jesus speaking to His disciples on earth in the first century, not to another 144,000 anointed class that might develop from 30 AD to 1935. JWs are reading something into the passage that is not there.
- 2) Elsewhere Jesus referred to His disciples as sheep in His flock:
  - (a) Matthew 10:16 - “I send you forth as sheep in the midst of wolves.”
  - (b) Matthew 26:31 - “I will smite the shepherd, and the sheep of the flock shall be scattered abroad.” (Spoken to the disciples before His crucifixion.)

Jesus called His disciples a “little flock” because they were a small, defenceless group that could be easily preyed upon. They need not to worry because Christ would protect them.

**Ask:** In Luke 12:22, who is Jesus speaking to? (His 12 disciples).

**Ask:** Where in Luke 12:32 does it say that the little flock is the 144,000 of Revelation 7:14?

**Ask:** How do you know that the 144,000 was completed in 1935?
- 3) Jesus never once restricted the Kingdom of God or Kingdom of Heaven to 144,000 people.  
**Ask:** Can you think of any verse in the Bible where Jesus limits the citizenship of heaven to 144,000?
- 4) I John 5:1 “Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God.” The words “whosoever believeth” are open ended, including everybody who believes, not just 144,000.  
**Ask:** Doesn’t the “whosoever” in I John 5:1 include everyone and not just 144,000?
- 5) The Watchtower teaching that Old Testament saints are not part of the heavenly class is wrong, as seen from Hebrews 11:13-16 where Abel, Enoch, Noah and Abraham all sought a heavenly country (v.16), not an earthly one.
- 6) Matthew 8:11 shows Abraham, Isaac and Jacob sitting down in the Kingdom of heaven.  
**Ask:** Who is right here, the Bible or the Watchtower?

## 2. Revelation 7:4 and 14:1-3 - Are the 144,000 in the “anointed class”?

**Watchtower Teaching:** The WT claims that the 144,000 are a literal number of people, but that 12,000 people from each of the 12 tribes of Israel are not literally national Israel. We ask, “Why would 144,000 be literal, but the 12,000 in each tribe be figurative?” WT reply:  
a) There never was a tribe of Joseph in the OT, even though it is mentioned in Rev. 7:4-8;  
b) The tribes of Ephraim and Dan are not included in Revelation 7;  
c) The Levites, not reckoned as an OT tribe, are mentioned as a tribe in Revelation 7.

### **Bible Teaching:**

- 1) **Ask:** Why does the WT switch interpretation in Revelation 7:4 from literal (144,000 as a precise number of people) to figurative in the last part of the verse where they say the 12,000 do not represent precise numbers of people from each of Israel’s 12 tribes?
- 2) **Women** are excluded from this group of 144,000 in Revelation 14:4  
“These are they which were not defiled with women; for they are virgins.”  
Masculine pronouns used show that this group are **all men**.
- 3) Heaven awaits **all** who believe in Christ, not just the 144,000. Check these verses:
  1. Philippians 3:20 “For our conversation is in **heaven**; . . .”
  2. Colossians 3:1 “Seek those things which are **above**.”
  3. Hebrews 3:1 “Wherefore, holy brethren, partakers of the **heavenly** calling.”
  4. Hebrews 12:22 “But ye are come unto Mount Zion, and unto the city of the living God, the.....**heavenly** Jerusalem . . .”
  5. 2 Corinthians 5:1 “We know that if our earthly house of this tabernacle were dissolved (physical death), we have a building of God, an house not made with hands, eternal in the **heavens**.”
  6. Colossians 1:5 “For the hope which is laid up for you in **heaven**, whereof ye heard before in the word of the truth of the gospel.”
  7. Hebrews 11:16 “But now they desire a better country, that is, an **heavenly** . . .”
  8. Hebrews 10:34 “Knowing in yourselves that ye have in **heaven** a better and an enduring substance.”
  9. I Peter 1:4 “To an inheritance . . . **reserved in heaven for you**.”
  10. Revelation 19:1 “I heard a great voice of much people in **heaven**.”
  11. Matthew 6:20 “Lay up for yourselves treasures in **heaven**.”
  12. John 12:26 “. . . **where I am** (heaven), **there** shall also my servant be.”
  13. John 14:3 “I go and prepare a **place** for you..that **where I am** (heaven), there **ye** may be also.”

**Key:** Making a difference between those with an earthly and heavenly destiny has no warrant in the Bible anywhere.

1. God has chosen the poor of this world who are rich in faith to inherit the kingdom, not just the 144,000. “Hath not God chosen the **poor of this world** rich in faith, and **heirs of the Kingdom** which he hath promised to them that love him.” (James 2:5). There is no distinction made here between 2 classes, only the poor of this world, (more than 144,000)
2. All who believe in Christ receive God’s righteousness. “The righteousness of God by faith of Jesus Christ unto **all** and upon **all** them that believe: for there is no difference.” (Romans 3:22).
3. John 10:16 “there shall be **one fold** (flock), and one shepherd.” -  
not two folds, one on earth and one in heaven, but **ONE FLOCK** (NWT).

**Ask:** How do you reconcile WT teaching of two flocks (WT: one earthly and one heavenly) with John 10:16 which says that **all believers will be together in one flock** (NWT)?

**Question 1:** “Are the 12 tribes of Israel in Revelation 7:14 literal or figurative?

Nowhere else in the Bible are references to the 12 tribes of Israel figurative. They are always a literal, ethnic group.

**Ask:** Can you see that the WT interpretation of Revelation 7:4 goes against common usage of literal “tribe” and literal “Israel”?

**Question 2:** Why are the OT tribes of Dan and Ephraim omitted in Revelation 7?

The Old Testament has 20 varying lists of tribes of Israel.

- a) **Dan’s** tribe was omitted because they were guilty of idolatry, and were largely wiped out (Judges 18:1,30). Dan became one of two centres of idolatry in the Northern Kingdom (I Kings 12:29).
- b) **Ephraim** is omitted from Revelation 7, while Joseph and Manasseh are included. Why? Ephraim was also involved in idolatry and pagan worship (Judges 17; Hosea 4:17).

**Ask:**

- 1) What is the Watchtower’s position on idolatry?
- 2) If the tribes of Dan and Ephraim were guilty of idolatry, do you think that these tribes should be listed in Revelation 7 as God’s servants? (No).
- 3) So you agree that there is a good reason for omitting Ephraim and Dan in Revelation 7?
- 4) Can you see that the Watchtower’s figurative interpretation of the 12 tribes is wrong, because it is based on the rightful omission of Dan and Ephraim?

**Question 3:** Why was the tribe of Levi included in the Revelation 7 list?

In the Old Testament, the tribe of Levi were not part of the 12 tribes because of their priestly separation under the Mosaic Law. Now that their tribe’s priestly functions have ceased with the first coming of Christ, our Great High Priest, there is no further need for their services as priests. Hence there is no reason for keeping them separate from the other tribes any longer. They will be properly included in the tribal listing in Revelation 7 and 14.

Therefore the WT’s view of the 144,000 as a specially anointed class is twisting of scripture.

**Note:** JWs insist that the 12,000 from each tribe of Israel are figurative or symbolic.

**Question:** How is it that the sum of 12 symbolic numbers equals a literal 144,000? How can 12 times a symbolic 12,000 equal a literal 144,000? The total should also be symbolic, according to their reasoning, to be consistent. Their interpretation again gives a contradiction.

### 3. John 10:16 - The “Other Sheep”

“And **other sheep** I have, which are not of this fold: them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold and one shepherd.”

**Watchtower Teaching:** JWs believe in two classes of people: the 144,000 heavenly class, and the “other sheep”, great crowd class who will receive eternal life and live forever on an earthly paradise.

**Bible Teaching:** The “other sheep” in John 10:16 refers to Gentile believers, as opposed to Jews who are the “lost sheep of Israel”. (Matthew 10:6 and 15:24).

The one flock and one shepherd of John 10:16 agrees with Galatians 3:28 with “neither Jew nor Greek . . . ye are all one in Christ Jesus.”

All believers will dwell together as “one flock” under “one shepherd”.

There will not be one flock of believers in heaven, and one flock of believers on earth.

**Ask:** How do you reconcile WT teaching of two classes, when the Bible clearly states that God’s people are one in Christ, and are part of “one flock” under “one shepherd”?

#### **4. Revelation 7:9 - The “Great Crowd” as the “Other Sheep”**

“After this I beheld, and lo, a **great multitude** (“**great crowd**” in NWT), which no man could number, of all nations, and kindreds, and people, and tongues, stood **before** the **throne**, and before the Lamb . . .” (Revelation 7:9).

**Watchtower Teaching:** JW’s teach that in 1935 God stopped calling people to a heavenly hope with Christ. They say that in 1935 he began gathering a secondary class of believers, outside the body of Christ, who would live forever on earth in the flesh, as the great crowd of Revelation 7:9-17.

This is one of the WT’s major doctrines, because it is the basis for convincing JW’s that:

- 1) They cannot become members of the body of Christ (I Corinthians 12:27).
- 2) They cannot be born again (John 3:3).
- 3) They cannot go to heaven (II Timothy 4:18).
- 4) They cannot be baptized by the Holy Spirit (I Corinthians 12:13).
- 5) They are not entitled to share in the communion loaf and cup (I Corinthians 10:16-17).
- 6) They are not in Christ’s New Covenant (Hebrews 12:24).
- 7) They cannot be fully justified by faith in Christ (Romans 3:26).

Hence the WT uses this “1935 Doctrine” to rob its followers of the NT relationship with God

**Ask:** Where does the Bible teach that entrance to the Christian congregation would be closed in 1935, with a secondary great crowd being gathered after that? Nowhere!

They can find no Biblical support for the 1935 date.

They refer to Rutherford’s “flash of light” on 31 May 1935 at the Washington JW Convention.

Note: The verses JW’s cite actually locate the great crowd as “before the throne and before the Lamb” (Revelation 7:9), “before the throne of God” (7:15), and “in his temple” (7:15), all heavenly locations, rather than on the earth as the WT teaches.

This is similar to the wording of the only other mention of the “great crowd” in Revelation 19:1 “I heard . . . a loud voice of a **great crowd in heaven.**” (NWT).

**Ask:** Where is this great crowd? In heaven! Emphasize that the WT has taught them wrongly. Jesus in John 17:20-24 prayed that all His present and future disciples would “be with me where I am” in heaven regardless of whether they were saved before or after 1935.

Consider the following conversation with a JW:

**Q1: You:** I’ve heard that you believe that you are part of a **great crowd** who will receive everlasting life on earth, instead of going to heaven. Is that true? Can you show me the Great Crowd in the Bible?

**JW:** Yes, it is in Revelation 7:9, “look! a great crowd...before the throne and before the Lamb”

**Q2: You:** But Revelation 7:15 places the **great crowd** before the throne of God in heaven, doesn’t it? “...they render him sacred service day and night in his temple.” (NWT).

**JW:** Well, the throne of God is in heaven, but the great crowd is on the earth. All creation stands before the throne of God.

**Q3: You:** Would you read Rev 19:1 in your Bible to see where it locates the great crowd?

**JW:** It says, “After these things I heard a loud voice of a great crowd in heaven.”

**Q4: You:** A great crowd where?

**JW:** The great crowd is on earth.

**Q5: You:** Is that what the verse says? Read it again.

**JW:** It says heaven, but the great crowd is on earth.

**Q6: You:** How can you say that the great crowd is on earth, when your Bible plainly says “a great crowd in heaven”?

## **Conclusion:**

**Ask:** Where in the Bible does it say that the great crowd is exempt from heaven?

**Ask:** Where does it say that the great crowd is relegated to live on earth?

**Ask:** Since the great crowd serves God in His temple (7:15), where is God's temple located?

Answer: Revelation 11:19 and 14:17 say "the temple which is in heaven".

**Ask:** According to Revelation 19:1, is the great crowd in heaven or on earth?

## **19. WATCHTOWER and BIBLE SUFFICIENCY**

"All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness; That the man of God may be perfect, throughly furnished unto all good works." (II Timothy 3:16,17).

JWs agree with and quote this verse often, but they don't really believe that a man of God is "fully competent and completely equipped" (NWT) unless he has their organisation's books and magazines. To them, the Bible alone is not enough.

What happens if a JW does read the Bible alone, without WT books and magazines?

Note what they say about their ex-members:

"They say that it is sufficient to read the Bible exclusively, either alone or in small groups at home. But strangely, through such "Bible reading", they have reverted right back to the apostate doctrines that commentaries by Christendom's clergy were teaching 100 years ago." (*Watchtower*, 15 Aug 1981, p 28,29).

So the WT itself admits that JWs who begin reading the Bible alone, stop believing WT doctrines, and return to the doctrines taught in Christian churches.

**Question:** Whose doctrines then, are the ones that are truly based on the Bible?

Fundamental Christianity's doctrines are Bible based, by the WT's own admission.

## **20. BIRTHDAYS**

JWs who celebrate Birthdays, Christmas, Easter or send Birthday cards, will be disfellowshipped. The WT only admits to two birthdays in the Bible, but three were celebrated. There was Pharaoh's (Genesis 40:20), Herod's (Matthew 14:6) and Jesus Christ's birthday which was celebrated by the angels (Luke 2:10-14).

The WT conveniently omits Christ's birthday because it destroys their point in saying that all birthdays in the Bible were negative. They forbid birthday celebrations because Pharaoh killed the chief baker and Herod killed John the Baptist on their birthdays.

**Bible Teaching:** We allow birthday celebrations because:

- 1) Jesus Christ's birthday was celebrated by angels, shepherds and wise men. WT doesn't celebrate Christ's birthday, because Jesus is not of supreme importance to them.
- 2) Paul said that observing special days was the individual's own choice (Romans 14:5,6).
- 3) JWs celebrate their wedding anniversaries which celebrates the birth of their marriage.
- 4) Concluding that a particular day is evil, just because something bad happened on that day, is very warped logic. This is "guilt by association".

Genesis 40:20-22 proves only that Pharaoh was evil, not birthdays.

**Ask:** What is the source of evil in Genesis 40:20-22? Pharaoh or the birthday?

In Job 1:4, Job's sons went and feasted in their houses, every one on his day. This phrase "on his day" most likely referred to each son's birthday. When their birthday arrived, to celebrate it, each invited his brothers and sisters to eat and drink with him. Job 1:1 describes Job as perfect and upright, which God would not say if celebrating birthdays was wrong.

## **21. IS JESUS “MICHAEL THE ARCHANGEL”?**

**Watchtower Teaching:** WT claims that Daniel 10:13,21; 12:1; and I Thess 4:16 teach that:

- 1) Jesus existed as Michael the **archangel** before his birth to Mary; then
- 2) Jesus gave up his spirit existence as an angel when he entered Mary’s womb to become a **human**;
- 3) At the resurrection he was recreated as Michael the **archangel**.

They describe Christ’s progressive existence as angel, then human, then angel.

“Michael, one of the chief princes” (Daniel 10:13). “Michael your prince” (Daniel 10:21).

“Michael the great prince” (Daniel 12:1). JWs think that Jesus must be Michael because of Michael’s authority over other angels as a chief prince.

The WT teaches that Jesus Christ was Michael the archangel, who was born as a human, died and was raised up as an archangel again. They refer to Jesus Christ as Michael the archangel. (*Watchtower*, 15 Feb, 1979, p.31).

### **Bible Teaching:**

- 1) Michael is “one of the chief princes” (10:21), but Jesus Christ is the only begotten Son in John 3:16. “Begotten” in Greek is “monogenes” meaning unique, same in every detail. Michael being “one of the chief princes” means that he is just one among a group of chief angels.

**Ask:** Where is Jesus called a “chief Prince” in the Bible?

**Ask:** Where is Jesus clearly mentioned in Daniel 10:13?

**Ask:** Isn’t Jesus as “King of kings and Lord of lords” (Revelation 19:16) much higher in authority than one of a group of chief princes?

- 2) **Ask:** “To which of the angels did God ever say “thou art my son”?” (Hebrews 1:5).

- 3) The Bible mentions Michael the archangel five times as:

1. “Michael, one of the chief princes” (Daniel 10:13).
2. “Michael, your prince” (Daniel 10:21).
3. “Michael, the great prince” (Daniel 12:1).
4. “Michael the archangel . . . durst not bring against him (the devil) a railing accusation, but said The Lord rebuke thee.” (Jude 9).
5. “Michael and his angels fought against the dragon.” (Revelation 12:7).

**Ask:** Which of these verses state that Michael is Jesus Christ? None of them.

- 4) The WT claims support from I Thessalonians 4:16 “the Lord himself will descend from heaven with a commanding call, with an archangel’s voice and with God’s trumpet.” NWT  
**Ask:** If using an archangel’s voice makes Jesus an archangel, then having God’s trumpet makes Jesus to be God.

**Note:** I Thessalonians 4:16 doesn’t explicitly say that Jesus Himself speaks with the voice of the archangel. When Jesus comes from heaven to rapture the church from earth, He will be accompanied by Michael the archangel. It is the archangel’s voice that shouts, not Jesus’ voice. Jesus doesn’t shout, but Michael does shout. This is like what happens at the end of the seven year tribulation, when Jesus returns “from heaven with his mighty angels.” (II Thessalonians 1:7).

If angels accompany Christ at the end of the 7 year tribulation, then clearly Michael will accompany Christ at the rapture before the 7 year tribulation, so Michael cannot be Jesus.

- 5) In Jude 9, Michael did not have the authority to rebuke Satan, but Jesus **did have the authority** as follows:

Jesus said “Get thee hence, Satan” (Matthew 4:10) and  
“Get thee behind me, Satan” (Mark 8:33).

- 6) Michael said to Satan, "The **Lord** rebuke thee", proving that the only one with the authority to rebuke Satan is God. So, Matt. 4:10 proves that Jesus Christ is the **Lord God**.
- Ask:** Since Michael could not rebuke Satan in his own authority, but Jesus could and did rebuke Satan, doesn't that mean that Michael and Jesus are different persons?
- 7) All the angels (Michael included) are commanded to worship Christ. (Hebrews 1:6).
- 8) The writer of Hebrews asks several questions about angels and Jesus Christ, which prove them to be different persons:
  - i) "Unto which of the angels said he at any time, thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee?" (Hebrews 1:5).
  - ii) "To which of the angels said he at any time, Sit on my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool?" (Hebrews 1:13).
  - iii) "Unto the angels hath he not put in subjection the world to come (millennium)." (Hebrews 1:13).
  - iv) "For verily, he took not on him the nature of angels." (Hebrews 2:16).
  - v) Does Michael sustain all things by the word of his power? (See Hebrews 1:3). No!
  - vi) Is it right to honour Michael the archangel just as you honour the Father? (John 5:23).
- 9) **Ask: Do good angels refuse worship?** (Certainly). When John fell down to worship the angel, the angel rebuked him, saying "See thou do it not ....worship God". (Rev 22:8,9). The Father commands **all** the angels (Michael included) to worship Christ (Hebrews 1:6). The "proskuneo" worship that angels refuse to accept but say to give to God, the Father commands this same "proskuneo" worship to be given to the Son. Hence the Son cannot be an angel, but must be God. True Bible students soon discover that Jesus is no mere angel, but God. This lesson must be learnt so they may "honour the Son just as they honour the Father". (John 5:23 NWT).
- 10) Jesus Christ is unchangeable: "Jesus Christ the same, yesterday and today and forever". (Hebrews 13:8). The WT view of Jesus is that He was Michael who changed to become a man, and who at his resurrection changed back to Michael the archangel. The Watchtower Jesus is changeable. They have a false and different Jesus.
- 11) Jesus Christ created all the angels, including the thrones and principalities of which Michael is a chief prince of a principality. "For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers." (Colossians 1:16).

## 22. WITNESSING TO A JW

- 1) **Do work persistently with the JW.** Never give up unless they refuse further contact.
- 2) **Do try to answer every question they have.** If you don't know the answer to a question, say, "That's a good question. I'm not sure what the answer is, but I'll do some research this week to find out the answer. Can we talk about this next week?"
- 3) **Do allow the JW to save face.** When you think the JW has lost the argument and is deflated, be loving and kind and say, "We can get awfully uptight in these areas if we let ourselves. Let's just forget that you're a JW and I'm a Baptist (or whatever) and let's just think of ourselves as two people who want to know the whole truth. Right?" Disarming the situation in this way will help lower the defensive barriers and create an atmosphere where the JW may want to hear what you have to say.
- 4) **Don't lose your patience.** He must see that the WT has led him astray.
- 5) Pray for the Holy Spirit to speak to his heart and to fill you.

## **23. BLOOD TRANSFUSIONS**

**Watchtower Teaching:** The WT forbids blood transfusions because of Genesis 9:4 “But flesh with the life thereof, which is the blood thereof, shall ye **not eat**”.

The WT teaches that a blood transfusion is the same as eating blood, because it resembles intravenous feeding. This doctrine was invented in 1944.

### **Bible Teaching and Historical facts:**

- 1) Thousands of JW's and their children have died because they followed this WT error.  
**Ask:** Would you really allow your baby to die because of this WT instruction?
- 2) Most JW's are unaware that their leaders have a history of making **medical prohibitions**, then later changing their minds to allow them. Examples include:

(i) **Vaccinations** were forbidden by the WT from 1931 to 1952. JW's had to refuse vaccinations because the WT taught that “vaccination is a direct violation of the everlasting covenant that God made” (*Golden Age*, 4 Feb 1931, p 293).

*Awake* of 22 Aug 1965 admitted that vaccinations have caused a decrease in diseases (p20)

**Ask:** How did the parents of children who died from not being vaccinated, feel when the WT reversed its view in 1952? How many of these children died needlessly?

(ii) **Organ transplants** were allowed by the WT up to **1967**, but were forbidden in 1967 saying that “organ transplants amounted to cannibalism and are not appropriate for Christians.” (WT, 15 Nov 1967, p 702-4, and *Awake* 8 June 1968, p 21). Hence all organ transplants were forbidden for 13 years, during which time many JW's died needlessly. Then in **1980**, the WT changed its mind to allow them, saying that “organ transplants are not necessarily cannibalistic.” (WT, 15 March 1980, p 31).

(iii) **Blood plasma** and blood particles were forbidden to be used by JW haemophiliacs (*Awake*, 22 Feb 1975, p 30). Shortly after, the WT changed its mind to permit certain blood particles to be used, but failed to put it into print for 3 years until 15 June **1978**, p.30 (WT). Only those haemophiliacs who phoned WT headquarters from 1975-78 discovered the change. Others were left to suffer and die.

**Ask:** How long before the WT changes its view on blood transfusions?

**Ask:** Why does the WT keep changing its mind on medical issues?

**Ask:** Is it right for an infallible prophet of God organisation (such as the WT claims to be) to keep changing its mind.

(iv) In **1984**, they allowed for a **bone-marrow transplant**. Bone marrow is the very source of blood. However, they would disfellowship you for receiving a blood transfusion.

- 3) In Genesis 9:4 the context is God forbidding the eating of **animal blood** (as pagans did), not the transfusion of **human blood**. A blood transfusion is not intravenous feeding, because the blood so given does not function as food. When one gives a transfusion, it is not a loss of life, but a transference of life from one person to another. It replenishes and saves a life.

**Ask:** Since blood is not taken in as food to digest, but as life sustaining fluid, is it not clear that transfusion is different from eating?

- 4) Leviticus 3:17 “You must not eat any fat or any blood at all.” (NWT).

**Ask:** Why do WT leaders forbid blood transfusions but allow the eating of fat?

Why not forbid both? The WT is not consistently interpreting the Bible.

Leviticus 17:11,12: “For the life of the flesh is in the blood.” Blood transfusion does not function as food, but simply transfers life from one person to another as an act of mercy.

**Key:** Leviticus 3:17 prohibits eating animal blood, not transfusing human blood.

**Ask:** Where is loss of salvation mentioned in Acts 15:9,11 for receiving a blood transfusion?

**Key:** Acts 15:28,29. A blood transfusion uses blood for the **same purpose** that God intended, as a life-giving agent in the bloodstream. Drinking blood is not God's intended purpose for blood

**Conclusion:** Even though JWs try to forbid blood transfusions with Scripture, their **real reason for forbidding it is blind obedience to the WT**. If the WT organisation lifted its ban on blood transfusions, JWs would freely accept them if needed.

For the WT to admit they were wrong would cause too great a stir in their ranks.

Therefore any changes must be presented as “new light” in order to make it appear that “Jehovah” is making the changes, rather than a few men on the governing body.

## 24. THE CROSS

JWs deny that Jesus died on a cross, claiming that Jesus was nailed to a torture stake (an upright pole without any cross beam). In their NWT they translate “cross” as “torture stake”.

**Definition:** Cross in Greek is “stauros” (4716) meaning “a Roman cross consisting of a straight piece of wood erected in the earth, often with a transverse beam fastened across its top and another piece nearer the bottom on which the crucified persons feet were nailed.” (S. Zodhiates, Complete NT Word Study, p.1308). They illustrate Christ’s death on a single pole with his arms straight above his head with a single nail pinning his hands to a torture stake.

**Question:** Did **one nail** fasten Jesus’ hands above his head, or did **two nails** hold his hands to the opposite ends of a cross beam?

**Answer:**

- 1) “But he (**Thomas**) said unto them, Except I shall see in his hands the print of the **nails**, and put my finger into the print of the **nails**, and thrust my hand into his side, I will not believe.” (John 20:25). Both the KJV and NWT have plural “nails”, one used for each hand, totalling 2 nails.

**Ask:** If Jesus was crucified on an upright stake, why does John 20:25 say that **nails** (plural) were used, instead of a single nail?

- 2) When Jesus spoke of **Peter’s** future crucifixion, He said that Peter’s hands would be stretched **forth (out)** as crucified on a crossbeam and not above his head on a pole.

“But when you grow old, you will stretch **out** your hands . . .” (John 21:18,19 NWT).

**Ask:** From John 21:18,19 how can crucifixion be on a stake if the hands are outstretched?

- 3) **Matthew 27:37** proves a cross crucifixion instead of a stake crucifixion:

“And set up over his head his accusation written, THIS IS JESUS THE KING OF THE JEWS.” If Jesus had died on a stake, it would have said, “over or **above his hands**”.

**Ask:** If Jesus was crucified on an upright stake, why does Matthew 27:37 say that a sign was placed **above Jesus’ head** instead of above Jesus’ **hands**?

- 4) **Early WT literature** stated that Christ was crucified on a **cross**. Examples include:

*Creation*, p.265, 336; *WT* 1 Jan 1891 p.1277; “beginning with its issue of 15 Oct. 1931, the WT no longer bore the cross and crown symbol on its cover” (*1975 Yearbook*, p.148).

**Ask:** Does a true prophet of God change position on important topics like this?

- 5) The WT ignores the facts that:

a) the Greek word “stauros” means a cross as well as a stake, and

b) Romans did execute prisoners on crosses: the **horizontal bar** was called the **“patibulum”**. Prisoners were made to carry the “patibulum” to their place of execution.” (*Seneca, De Vita Beata* 19:3; *Epistola* 101:12; *Tacitus, Historiae*, Vol 4, p 3).

- 6) WT claims that the cross was not used until after 312 AD as the sign of crucifixion, but the cross has been discovered in excavations of Christian tombs much earlier than 312 AD.

## **25. HOLY SPIRIT: Is He a PERSON or an ACTIVE FORCE? 2 Cor 3:17**

**Watchtower Teaching:** The WT claims that the HS is neither a person nor God, but an impersonal “active force” to achieve God’s will, like electricity or radio waves.

**Bible Teaching:** The Holy Spirit is fully God and has personality as He can be blasphemed. The Holy Spirit has the three attributes of personality, those being: mind, emotions and will. An “active force” does not have personal attributes. The WT’s claim of the Holy Spirit being an active force is disproven if the Bible teaches that the Holy Spirit has mind, emotions & will

### **1. The Holy Spirit has a mind.**

(1) “He that searcheth the hearts knoweth what is the mind of the Spirit.” (Romans 8:27).

The word “mind” means “way of thinking”, something which is only true of a person.

(2) “The things of God knoweth no man, but the Spirit of God.” (I Corinthians 2:11).

Ask: How can the Holy Spirit **know** the things of God if the Spirit does not have a mind?  
A force does not know things. To know requires a mind.

(3) “The Spirit searcheth all things.” (I Corinthians 2:10). The Greek word for “search” means to thoroughly investigate a matter, something only a mind can do.

### **2. The Holy Spirit has emotions.**

(4) The Holy Spirit loves: “I beseech you..through the love of the Spirit.” (Rom 15:30 NWT)

(5) “Grieve not the Holy Spirit of God.” (Ephesians 4:30). The Holy Spirit is **grieved** (made sad) when believers sin. Grief is an emotion that one feels. A force can’t be grieved.

### **3. The Holy Spirit has a will. He performs personal acts.**

(6) The Holy Spirit distributes spiritual gifts “to every man severally as he will.” (I Cor.12:11). The phrase “he wills” in Greek means “a decision of the will after previous deliberation”. The Holy Spirit chooses which gifts each believer receives. A force has no such will, nor ability to make decisions.

(7) The Holy Spirit commands: “The Spirit **bade** me go with them.” (Acts 11:12).

(8) The Holy Spirit forbids: “**forbidden** of the Holy Ghost to preach the word in Asia”Act16:6

(9) The Holy Spirit speaks: “The Spirit said to Philip, Go near.” (Acts 8:29).

“The Holy Ghost **said**, separate me Barnabas and Saul.” (Acts 13:2).

“The Spirit **speaketh** expressly”. (I Timothy 4:1).

Ask: How do you explain the WT view of the Holy Spirit being an impersonal force, with the Bible’s teaching that the Holy Spirit has a mind that can know, emotions that can feel love and grief, and a will to make decisions?

(10) The Holy Spirit testifies: “He shall **testify** of me.” (John 15:26).

The same Greek word for testify (or bear witness) used here, is also used of:

a) The **disciples** testifying about **Christ** in John 15:27.

b) **John the Baptist** bearing witness to the **truth** in John 5:33.

c) **God the Father** bore witness to **Cornelius’ (and Gentiles')** conversion by giving them the Holy Spirit. (Acts 15:8).

Just as the disciples, John and God the Father (who are all persons) testified or bore witness, so the Holy Spirit bears witness about Christ. A force cannot bear witness, only a person can. (The Holy Spirit bears witness in heaven and on earth - I John 5:7,8).

(11) The Holy Spirit intercedes or prays for believers. “The Spirit itself makes **intercession** for us with groanings.” (Romans 8:26). Just as Jesus Christ (a person) intercedes for believers (Romans 8:34; Hebrews 7:25), so the Holy Spirit (as a person) intercedes (same Greek word) for believers. A force cannot pray for another; only a person can pray.

- (12) The Holy Spirit **teaches** believers. (“he shall teach you all things.” John 14:26).
- (13) The Holy Spirit **hears**. “Whosoever he shall hear, that shall he **speak**.” (John 16:13).
- (14) The Holy Spirit **shows** us things. “he....shall show it unto you.” (John 16:15).
- (15) The Holy Spirit **restrains** sin. “My Spirit shall not always strive with man.” Genesis 6:3
- (16) The Holy Spirit can be **blasphemed**. “he that shall blaspheme against the Holy Ghost” Mk3:29  
People cannot be blasphemed. We can only be slandered. Only God can be blasphemed.  
By Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit being blasphemed means we've proved the **Trinity**.  
(a) God the Father can be blasphemed. (Revelation 13:6; 16:9).  
(b) God the Son can be blasphemed. (Luke 22:65).  
“And many other things blasphemously they spake against him”.  
(c) God the Holy Spirit can be blasphemed. (Matthew 12:31).  
“Blasphemy against the Holy Spirit shall not be forgiven unto men.”
- (17) The Holy Spirit can be **lied to** (Acts 5:3). Ananias and Sapphira lied to the Holy Spirit.  
Ask: Have you ever lied to electricity and asked electricity to forgive you?
- (18) The Holy Spirit **cries** in our hearts, Abba, Father. (Galatians 4:6).
- (19) The Holy Spirit **approves** some decisions:  
“It seemed good to the Holy Ghost and to us.” (Acts 15:28).
- (20) The Holy Spirit **invites** people to be saved: “The Spirit & the bride say Come” Rev 22:17
- (21) The Holy Spirit **fills us** (Ephesians 5:18) just as God may fill us (Ephesians 3:19).
- (22) The Holy Spirit **uses personal pronouns to describe Himself**: John 15:26; 16:13; (he):  
“The Holy Spirit said, Separate **me** Barnabus...” (Acts 13:2).  
The Holy Spirit considers Himself a person, (“me”), not a personification.

### **Watchtower Objection:**

The main reason the JWs say that the Holy Spirit is an “active force” is because the Greek word for “spirit” (*pneuma*) is neuter.

**Answer:** This is faulty reasoning, because **1)** the gender of a word relates to the **grammatical form** of the word, not to its sex or **physical gender**. Because a word is grammatically neuter does not mean that the object is an “it” or of neuter sex.

(Source: *Elements of NT Greek*, J W Wenham, 1979, p.8).

For example, in Greek, “children” is a neuter word, “desert” is a feminine word, and **2)** In John 15:26 and 16:13, the neuter noun “*pneuma*” is referred to by the **masculine** pronoun **“ekeinos”** (1565 = that one, masculine) recognising the Holy Spirit's masculine personality. “**He** (ekeinos) shall testify of me” (15:26); “when **he** (ekeinos), the Spirit of truth shall come” (16:13). Note: “ekeine” is feminine “that one”, and “ekeino” is neuter).

- (23) The Holy Spirit **comforts** (Gk: *parakletos*) believers. John 14:16, 26; 15:26; 16:7.  
This same Greek word “*parakletos*” (3875) is used of Christ who has personality in John 14:16 and I John 2:1. “Another Comforter” (Gk: *allos parakletos*, John 14:16) means “another of the same kind” as Christ, in contrast to “*heteros*” (2087) meaning “another of a different kind”. As Christ has Deity and Personality, so does the Holy Spirit. To comfort requires empathy, understanding, love, compassion, concern for another's well-being, all being attributes of personality.
- Conclusion:** The Holy Spirit is a person because **1)** He has mind, emotions, and will. **2)** Personal pronouns are used of Him. **3)** He performs personal acts. **4)** He associates with the Father and Son in the Baptism formula, Apostolic benediction and as Church Administrator (I Cor. 12:4-6). **5)** He can be personally mistreated (tempted, lied to, grieved, resisted, insulted and blasphemed). The New Testament clearly shows the Holy Spirit to have a personality and to be God. (“Jehovah is the Spirit.” II Cor. 3:17 NWT).

## **26. COUNSELLING THOSE WHO LEAVE THE WATCHTOWER**

JWs are disfellowshipped for the following reasons:

1. Smoking.
2. Working in defence departments or the military.
3. Being employed by any other religious organisation.
4. Taking a blood transfusion.
5. Saluting the flag.
6. Celebrating birthdays or holidays.
7. Talking to disfellowshipped persons.
8. Disagreeing with any WT doctrines or reading anti-Watchtower literature.

JWs admit that since 1918, they have been teaching a “**new gospel** not taught in centuries past”, namely the invisible return of Christ and setting up the kingdom in 1914 (WT, 1 May 1981, p.17). They therefore fall under the curse of Galatians 1:8,9 for preaching a false gospel and a false Jesus (II Corinthians 11:4). Those leaving the WT are faced with FEAR of:

1) **Being an Apostle.** If the WT can be shown to be a false religion, then being an apostate from a false religion would please God.

Leaving the WT is not leaving the “doctrine of Christ” (II John 9). Instead, it is seeking to follow Christ who welcomes all who come to Him. (Matthew 11:28-30).

2) **Fear of losing all their friends** through disfellowshipping. It is painful to lose close friends and family members whom you love dearly. Being rejected and unable to speak to your close friends and family members is a strong reason for JWs to stay in the WT. Jesus promises those who leave the WT and follow Jesus will receive a hundredfold now, along with houses, brothers, sisters, mothers, children, lands and persecution and in the world to come eternal life (Mark 10:28-30). Christ will give you strength to endure this hardship. Ex-JWs can be a real source of comfort.

3) **Fear of dying at Armageddon.** If the JW sees the error of the WT concept of Armageddon and God's judgment, this will remove the fear of dying at Armageddon.

Point him to **Christ's return to catch believers up to heaven before Armageddon.** (John 14:1-3; I Thessalonians 4:16-18; I Corinthians 15:51,52; Revelation 3:10). Point him to “no condemnation to those who are in Christ Jesus (Romans 8:1,2), the security of salvation (John 10:28; I Peter 1:4,5) and the difference between the Judgment Seat of Christ of rewards for believers after the rapture (II Corinthians 5:10; I Corinthians 3:10-15) and the Great White Throne Judgment of unbelievers at the end of the Millennium (Rev. 20:10-15). Get them to understand the Second Coming. (Chapters 34-39,74 of this book).

4) **Fear of loss of faith in God** being the same as loss of faith in the WT organisation.

The ex-JW must understand that God does not work through man-made organisations, but deals with people individually and lovingly. Our faith is not in an organisation, but in Jesus Christ Himself. We must have a relationship with God rather than with the WT organisation. It is possible to lose faith in fellow Christians or in a church or in the WT organisation, without losing faith in Christ.

5) **Fear of Confusion over Doctrine.** Up till now the ex-JW has placed their trust in WT writings as truth. They have been forbidden to read other Christian books because they are not part of the WT. (Such books are quoted if it suits the WT’s purpose). The ex-JW must learn what true Bible study is, by studying the Bible verse by verse and book by book.

Read the Bible without reading WT publications. Learn to harmonise all the verses on a certain subject. Show above average love to such people.

## **27. WAR AND SELF-DEFENCE**

JWs permit self-defence, but not for going to war. The WT once allowed military service: “There is no command in the Scriptures against military service. It would be quite right to shoot, not to kill.” (*Watchtower*, 1 Aug 1898, p.231).

“There could be nothing against our conscience in going into the army” (*Watchtower*, 15 April 1903, p.120). The WT later completely reversed their position:

“It is only due to **conscience** that (JWs) have objected before draft boards to participating in the armed conflicts and defence programmes of worldly nations.” (WT, 1 Feb, 1951, p73).

JWs allow for self-defence in *Awake*, 8 Sept 1975, p.27,28.

“It’s okay to protect one’s family in self-defence (Ephesians 5:25).

“One could also defend one’s spiritual brothers and sisters from personal attack if necessary, based on John 15:13” (*Watchtower*, 1 June 1968, p.347).

JWs believe that:

- 1) **Self**-defence is proper.
- 2) Defending one’s **family** is proper.
- 3) Defending one’s **spiritual brothers and sisters** is proper.
- 4) Defending one’s **neighbour** who is being viciously attacked may be proper according to Luke 10:27 (“love your neighbour as yourself”).

**Conclusion:** Their position is contradictory. They believe in self-defence, but cannot draw a line Biblically between who is their neighbour and who isn’t.

**Note:** Melchizedek blessed Abraham after returning from slaughtering the kings who had captured Lot (Genesis 14; Hebrews 7:1). Here God approves of Abraham (and hence us today in the NT) fighting a just war to defend our own people. God doesn’t rebuke Abraham or Melchizedek here. This is an example of Watchtower stupidity. If Muslims conquered Australia they would slaughter every JW who didn’t convert to Islam.

**Ask:** Would you JWs fight an enemy on your doorstep? (Yes). Then you admit it is right to fight him as he approaches our country and that it is right to have a military and police force.

**Ask:** Does the WT want us to disband our police force? (No). There is no real difference between police and the military. If everyone took their view, our country and freedom would have been lost to the Muslims & dictators years ago. Freedom is won or lost on the battlefield. JWs want a free society to spread their heresies, but they don’t want to fight for it. Others can. Muslims would have captured all of Europe in 732 AD if Charles Martel’s army had not defeated them at the Battle of Tours.

The **role of government** is to: “be a terror to evil works” (Romans 13:3); “he is the minister of God, a revenger to execute wrath upon him that doeth evil.” (Romans 13:4).

**Ask:** Do you want the freedom to spread your views? (Yes). Then why shouldn’t you help pay to preserve this freedom? User pays. If you use it, you pay for it.

## **28. WATCHTOWER BRAINWASHING and THOUGHT CONTROL**

The WT calls itself a “society” (implying that each member has some say) to cover the truth that the real rulership is in the hands of a few men.

The WT convinces its followers that it is the only true religion by:

- i) Using half truths to explain their position.
- ii) Misquoting secular authorities to support their position.
- iii) Altering or covering up their own history of false prophecies or doctrinal reversals.

The WT society refers to itself as the “mother”.

"If we are to walk in the light of truth, we must recognize not only Jehovah God as our father but his organisation as our "**mother**"". (WT, May 1957, p.274).

George Orwell's book "1984" describes a world power (like the WT) that juggles with truth and historical records in order to make themselves look as if they are always right. The WT does this by: **a)** Preventing the average JW from accessing their past false predictions; **b)** Passing off the past as irrelevant. Whatever they taught in the past is not to be believed any longer. To believe previous views would be apostasy. They must gain victories over their memory. For example:

- i) To know that the WT led people to believe that the end of the world would be in **1975**, yet after its failure to happen, they denied their prediction was false. They believed this denial was truthful.
- ii) To forget that the WT predicted the end of the world in **1914** and later to change it to a prediction of Christ's invisible return in 1914 to cover up their false prediction. The **WT's self-deception** is making up one lie to cover another lie.

When JWs won't give you a direct answer it is because:

- a) They cannot speak or think independently of the organisation.
- b) They fear being humiliated for independent thinking, disfellowshipped and separated from their family members and friends.

The governing WT body commands JWs to stop short at the threshold of any dangerous thought.

- a) If the JW questions the system, it leads to
- b) Undermining his mental programming as doubts creep in, which leads to
- c) the JW thinking for himself.

The JW, due to fear of being chastised or humiliated, learns to kill his speculations and not allow his mind to move ahead or think independently of the organisation. The Governing Body will now represent his mind on all important matters. It's the only "safe" way. A JW automatically learns to put aside disturbing thoughts, such as he might be asked at a door.

**Ask:** "Why don't we examine the record of the Watchtower over the past 100 years?"

The JW will make an unconscious refusal to follow through on a logical argument initiated by others. While on the defensive, JWs will often misunderstand or draw a blank on the simplest of arguments. This is Orwell's "Crimestop" initiated by "Big Brother", known as **protective stupidity** or complete control over one's mental processes.

JWs believe that the WT is infallible. The WT defends its false predictions by:

- 1) Jehovah God was just testing you (WT, 15 Feb 1984, p.26).
- 2) For a ship to get from A to B it must sometimes tack or zigzag (WT, 1 Dec 1981, p.27).
- 3) "We are not false prophets, because we admit our mistakes." (WT, 1 Nov. 1972, p.644). Yet, any false prophets who predict an end to the world are going to admit their mistake the next day. How else could they hold on to their followers?

It was good for them to be anxious for the end of the world, because it keeps them "on the watch". Orwell's "1984" says, "The secret of rulership is to combine a belief in one's own infallibility with the power to learn from past mistakes." (p.177).

The WT has taught millions of JW to:

- 1) Think the opposite of what is true.
- 2) Not to question the matter at all.

**Conclusion:** The ex-JW needs to discard the mental gymnastics the WT has taught him, and start reading and believing the Bible. A JW must see the Bible truths that:

- 1) Jesus said that everyone must be born again to enter the Kingdom of God. (John 3:3,7).
- 2) Cultivate a real relationship with Jesus Christ rather than the WT. John 17:3 “know thee”
- 3) Jesus said not to listen to those who claim that Christ has returned secretly or invisibly (as WT says happened in 1914). Jesus said that He would come as lightning (Matthew 24:23-27) and every eye would see Him. (Revelation 1:7).
- 4) Jesus said that He is returning to take believers home with Him. John 14:3; I Thess. 4:16,17
- 5) The writer of Hebrews says that Jesus is definitely not an angel (Hebrews 1:4,5,6,8,10,13).
- 6) John says that Jesus is the very substance and nature of God (John 1:1; 5:18, 23; 8:58; 20:28; 8:24; 10:30; I John 5:7,8,20). Jesus is the “express image of his person.” Hebrews 1:3.

**29. THE DIVINE NAME** (John 17:6,26 “I have declared unto them **thy name**.”) Jesus manifested or declared the Father’s name by making known His nature, character, law, will, attributes and his plan of mercy. “Declare” means to “unfold, to lead, to show the way”. Gradually, by Jesus’ words and works, He revealed to people the nature of God, as they were able to bear it (John 16:12). The Father’s name refers to His nature, as Jesus meant Saviour. The word “name” is often used to describe the person & his reputation. I Tim.6:1; Rom.2:24. JWs say that we only get life through using “Jehovah’s” name. They quote verses such as:

- 1) “Everyone who calls on the name of Jehovah will get away safe.” (Joel 2:32, NWT).
- 2) “Our Father which art in heaven, hallowed be **thy name**.” (Matthew 6:9).
- 3) “I have manifested thy name unto the men which thou gavest me.” (John 17:6).
- 4) “I have declared unto them **thy name**, and wilt declare it.” (John 17:26).
- 5) “Father, glorify **thy name**. Then came a voice from heaven, saying, I have both glorified it, and will glorify it again.” (John 12:28).

**Question 1:** What is God’s name?

**Answer:** Exodus 3:13,14,15: “And Moses said unto God, Behold, when I come unto the children of Israel, and shall say unto them, The **God** of your fathers hath sent me unto you; and they shall say to me, **What is his name?** what shall I say unto them? And God said unto Moses, I AM THAT I AM, and he said, Thus shalt thou say unto the children of Israel, **I AM** hath sent me unto you.” (v.14) “this is my name for ever.” (v.15).

Hence, when Moses asks God what His name is, God tells Moses to tell Israel that His name is “**I AM**”, and that this is God’s name **forever**.

As a result, we should expect Jesus in the New Testament, when He stated that He **manifested** or **declared** God’s name to His disciples, that Jesus would have declared the name “**I AM**” to his disciples. (John 17:6,26). Nowhere does the NT record Jesus declaring the name “Jehovah” to anybody. He does declare God’s name “I AM” to people.

**Question 2:** Where did Jesus use God’s Name of “**I AM**” in His ministry?

**Answer:** Jesus made God’s sacred name, “**I AM**” meaningful to His disciples as follows:

- 1) “I am the **bread of life**.” (John 6:35,41,48,51).
- 2) “I am the **light** of the world.” (John 8:12; 9:5).
- 3) “I am from above.” (John 8:23).
- 4) “If ye **believe not** that I am, ye shall **die in your sins.**” (John 8:24).
- 5) “When ye have **lifted up** the Son of man, then shall ye know that I am.” (John 8:28).
- 6) “Before Abraham was, I am.” (John 8:58).
- 7) “I am the **door of the sheep.**” (John 10:7,9).
- 8) “I am the **good shepherd.**” (John 10:11,14).

- 9) "I am the resurrection and the life." (John 11:25).
- 10) "Where I am (*ego eimi*) there shall also my servant be." (John 12:26, and John 14:3).
- 11) "Now I tell you **before it come**, that, when it is come to pass, ye may believe that I am (*ego eimi*). " (John 13:19). See Isaiah 41:23 where both Father and Son tell the future.
- 12) "I am (*ego eimi*) the way, the truth and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me." (John 14:6).
- 13) "I am (*ego eimi*) the true vine." (John 15:1,5).
- 14) "As soon then as he had said unto them I am, they went backward, and fell to the ground." (John 18:6).
- 15) "Jesus answered, **I have told you that I am** (*ego eimi*). " (John 18:8).
- 16) "I am (*ego eimi*) the First and the last; I am he that liveth, and was dead." (Rev. 1:17,18).
- 17) "Then spake the Lord to Paul, . . . For I am (*ego eimi*) with thee . . ." (Acts 18:9,10).
- 18) Saul said: "Who art thou Lord? And the Lord said, I am (*ego eimi*) Jesus, whom thou art persecuting." (Acts 9:5 and 22:8).

### We get eternal life through Jesus Christ's name:

- 1) "But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing, ye might have life through his name." John 21:31.
- 2) "The name of Jesus Christ . . . neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved." (Acts 4:10,12)
- 3) "These things have I written unto you that believe on the name of the Son of God; that ye may know that ye have eternal life." (I John 5:13).

### We are called by Jesus Christ's Name, not by the name "Jehovah":

- 1) Colossians 3:17 "Whatsoever ye do in word or deed, do all in the name of the Lord Jesus"
- 2) Revelation 2:13 Jesus said to the Pergamos Christians: "Thou holdest fast my name." The Pergamos Christians held fast Jesus Christ's name, not the name "Jehovah".
- 3) Revelation 3:8 Jesus said to the Philadelphian Christians: "Thou . . . hast kept my word, and hast not denied my name" (ie: Jesus' name). No mention of the name "Jehovah" here.
- 4) II Timothy 2:19 "Let everyone that nameth the name of Christ depart from iniquity."
- 5) Revelation 2:3 "For my name's sake hast laboured." No mention of the name "Jehovah".
- 6) Isaiah 65:15 "The Lord God shall slay thee, and call his servants by another name."

**Question 3:** What is that other name?

**Answer:** Christians. Acts 11:26 "The disciples were called Christians first in Antioch."

- 7) Revelation 22:3,4 "His name shall be in their foreheads." God & the Lamb have one name, as seen by "God & the Lamb" (3) with singular "his" name.

### The meaning of God's Name "I AM" that Jesus Revealed

Jesus revealed the Father's Name by showing the disciples that:

- 1) Jesus was **all they needed**, as seen in the "I AM" statements Jesus claimed to Himself.
- 2) The Father sent Jesus. Jesus was equally God. Jesus' words and works came from the Father.
- 3) "I have manifested thy name" means "I have revealed the nature of God".

One of Jesus' ministries was to declare the Father's nature to mankind (John 1:18)

"The only begotten Son, which is in the bosom of the Father, he hath declared him".

### Conclusion:

JWs, by coming to grips with the basic teachings of God's Word (without WT publications) will be released from the Watchtower deception and be taught by the Holy Spirit (I John 2:27). Will you receive Christ as your Saviour and trust the Bible as God's Word, or will you trust the false prophet of the Watchtower? Leave the Watchtower today.

## **30. SEQUENCE OF VERSES TO DISCUSS and QUESTIONS TO ASK**

**Ask:** May we make an appointment to ask some questions about the Bible?

**Q1:** Do you believe that Jesus is the “I AM” God of Exodus 3:14 and John 8:24? If not, then John 8:24 says that you’ll die in your sins. Do you want to die in your sins? (p.887).

**Deity of Christ:**

**Q2:** Do you honour the Son even as (KJV) or just as (NWT) you honour the Father? John 5:23p847

**Q3:** Why does NWT translate “eimi” as “am” 129 out of 130 NT times except where it proves Christ is God in John 8:58 where it translates it as “have been”? What Greek rule do they use? 856

**Q4:** Why does the Kingdom Interlinear Translation (KIT) correctly translate John 8:58 (ego eimi) as “I AM”, which contradicts the NWT reading of “I HAVE BEEN” (ego en)? 856

**Q5:** Since Jehovah is called “Mighty God” (in Isaiah 10:21; Psalm 50:1; Jeremiah 32:18) and Jesus is called “Mighty God” in Isaiah 9:6, what does this tell you about Jesus? (If JW says Jesus is a lesser god, ask “Is Jesus a true God or a false god?”) If JW says “a true god”, ask “How many true Gods are there?” (One). Hence Jesus is part of the Jehovah Godhead(p867).

**Q6:** Why does the Watchtower quote John 1:1 as “the word was a God”, which contradicts (1) the KIT; (2) 12 early church writers; (3) all Greek experts in the world; (4) The Emphatic Diaglott “the logos was God”; and (5) Colwell’s Rule of Greek grammar which explains why “Theos” drops the article. Theos drops the article and is placed before the Greek verb (was) in order to identify the “word” (logos) with the article as the subject. (p.850-5).

**Q7:** In Acts 7:59, was Stephen praying (talking to) Jesus when he said, “Lord Jesus, receive my spirit”? (p.899).

**Q8:** Why does the KIT tell us to pray to Jesus in John 14:14 “If ever anything you should ask me in the name of me this I shall do”? (p.899).

**Q9:** Why are 4 out of 17 doxologies to the Son? (p.900). 2 Peter 3:18; 1 Peter 4:11; 2 Tim 4:18

**Q10:** In Revelation 5:8-14, why do the redeemed (v.8-10), the angels (v.11,12) and all creatures (v.13,14) fall down and adore the Lamb? Isn’t this worshipping Christ? (p.901).

**Q11:** If God and the Lamb have the one throne, one face, one Name and they are the same Temple, the same light of New Jerusalem, and own the same servants, then doesn’t this make them the One True God Jehovah? (p.901, 896).

**Q12:** How many books that are FOR the Trinity have you read?

**Q13:** Why does the WT forbid you reading books on the other side? Don’t you think that its only fair and reasonable to read books against the WT, to get a balanced view of all the facts? Have they got something to hide that they are afraid of?

**Q14:** Why does the Watchtower insert [other] four times in Colossians 1:16,17, when “other” is not in any New Testament Greek manuscript? (p.840). Why does the NWT insert [other] in Philippians 2:9, when “other” is not in any New Testament manuscript? (p.841).

**Q16:** Why does WT add [Son] in Acts 20:28 when “Son” is not in any NT manuscript? p.843.

**Q17:** Why does the Watchtower change “Thy throne O God” to “God is thy Throne” in Hebrews 1:8 thus ignoring the Masoretic Hebrew text, the Septuagint, Psalm 45:6 parallelism and four early church writers who all quote it as “Thy Throne O God”? (p.844-5).

**Q18:** Why does the Watchtower translate “proskuneo” as “worship” when it applies to God, angels, devils, antichrist and images, but when “proskuneo” is used for worshipping Christ as God, they translate it 16 times as “do obeisance”? Why? (p.847).

**Q19:** If angels refused worship, why did Christ accept worship 16 times? (p.847).

**Q20:** What does it say about Jesus’ true identity if He accepts the same “proskuneo” worship as the Father? (p. 847).

**Q21:** Why does the Watchtower change “worship him” in the 1961 NWT edition of **Hebrews 1:6** to “**do obeisance**” in the 1971 NWT? (p.847).

**Q22:** Why does the Watchtower break the Greek Granville-Sharp Rule in **Titus 2:13** and II Peter 1:1 which prove Christ’s deity, but get it **right** everywhere else where Christ’s deity is not an issue? (p.847-8).

**Q23:** Why does the **KIT** contradict the NWT in **John 17:3** where the NWT translates a **verb** (*ginoskosi* = know) as a **noun** (take in knowledge)? (p.878).

**Question:** Is it right to mistranslate a verb as a noun?

**Q24:** If you reject the Trinity because you can’t understand it, then how do you explain how a brown cow by eating green grass gives white milk? (Proverbs 26:5).

**Q25:** In **Hebrews 9:27**, why has the Watchtower added “for all time” which occurs in no New Testament manuscripts? (p.872).

**Question:** Where are the Greek words “for all time” in Hebrews 9:27? Show them to me.

**Question:** Is it right to add words to change a passage’s meaning, as the WT has done?

**Q26:** Why did the Watchtower not include quotes by early church writers to show that they DID believe in the Trinity and the Deity of Christ? (p.873).

**Question:** Why did the Watchtower not give the source of their false quotes of early church writers? (Lamson’s article of 1869 is not a true source. We need Volume and page numbers).

**Q27:** Doesn’t 2 Corinthians 3:17 “Jehovah is the Spirit” (NWT) prove that **the Holy Spirit is Jehovah** God and hence the Deity of the Holy Spirit? Do you agree that if a=b then b=a? **881**

**Q28:** In **I John 5:7,8** if the Johannine comma is not part of the text (as NWT thinks), why are there two masculine articles (“that” and “these”) before and after the passage omitted by NWT? These masculine articles arise because they must agree with masculine Father & Word in v.7. Neuter Spirit, water and blood in v.8 don’t produce masculine articles in v.7,8. (p.881).

**Q29:** In **John 20:28**, if Thomas was just expressing surprise, wouldn’t this be taking God’s name in vain? Wouldn’t Jesus have rebuked him for this? (p.890). What did Thomas believe here? (That Jesus was his Lord and his God). KIT calls Jesus “the God of me”. (p.890).

**Q30:** Doesn’t “**HA-ADON**” applied to Jesus in **Romans 10:9** prove that Jesus is the “True Lord” of Isaiah 1:24? (NWT 1961 edition, p.1453). (p.890).

**Q31:** Why did the NWT mistranslate **I Corinthians 15:47** as “the second **man** is from heaven” (omitting Jesus as “**the Lord**” from heaven), when no man hath ascended to heaven, and Jesus was not a man in heaven before His incarnation? (John 3:13). (p.891).

**Q32:** Why did the NWT omit “God” in **I Timothy 3:16** and replace it with “**He**” when “**He**” is in no NT manuscript, and “**God**” is in 300 Greek manuscripts, 3 versions & 20 writers? **892**.

**Q33:** Since Jesus and Jehovah are both “**the first and the last**” and “**alpha and omega**”, what does this tell you about who Jesus is? (p.894).

**Q34:** When did “**HA ADON**” (the **True God**) come to His temple, if not Jesus in John 2:13-17 and Matthew 21:12,13 as **Malachi 3:1** and NWT 1961, p.1454 states? (p.895).

**Q35:** In **Micah 5:2**, Christ is “**QEDMAH**” meaning “eternal” and in **Habakkuk 1:12** Jehovah is “**QEDMAH**”. Doesn’t this mean that Jesus is Jehovah, as only Jehovah is eternal? p.895.

**Q36:** Doesn’t **Acts 16:31,34** prove Jesus is God by equating belief on Christ with belief in God? (p.907).

**Q37:** Have you looked up in the Bible all the 120 attributes of Christ which are also true of Jehovah God the Father on pages 896-898? Christ must be Jehovah with these 120 attributes.

**Q38:** Who appeared as Jehovah God to the nine Old Testament saints, if “no man hath seen the Father”? (**John 6:46**) (p.899). It was Jehovah God the Son!

**Q39:** Have all your sins been removed? (No). Then you can't enter God's kingdom.

**Q40:** In John 1:1, "The word (Christ) was God". Why does WT translate John 1:1 as "a god", when in John 1:6,12,13,18 where "theos" also has no definite Greek article, they translate it as "God" every time? Don't they want Christ to be God? Are they anti-Christ? Isaiah 44:8 says: "Is there a God beside me? yea, there is no God; I know not any." (p.850).

**Q41:** Why does the WT insist that Christ is first created, when the meaning of "**firstborn**" (Gk: "prototokos" in Colossians 1:15) means "**pre-eminent or ruler**"? David (Psalm 89:27), Ephraim (Genesis 41:50-52 and Jeremiah 31:9), Jacob (Exodus 4:22), and Solomon (I Chronicles 3:1,2) were all called "firstborn", but none of them were born first. (p.860). Why? Because "firstborn" can mean "chief", as with Christ, and not first created (Grk: prototktis).

**Q42:** In Isaiah 9:6, Jesus Christ is called the "**everlasting Father**" meaning "Father of Eternity". Only God is possessor, or Father of Eternity. Doesn't this prove Christ is God? 867

**The Divine Name:** (p.834,934).

**Q43:** Do you **do everything** (in word or deed) **in the name of Jesus Christ** as Colossians 3:17 (NWT) commands or do you do all in the name of Jehovah? (p.935).

**Q44:** Since Jesus never addressed the Father as "**Jehovah**" in the NT, why should we? (p834)

**Q45:** If Jesus, the Holy Spirit and Paul all address God as "**Father**" and never as "**Jehovah**", then shouldn't we also call God "Father", and not "Jehovah"? (p.834-5).

**Q46:** Which New Testament manuscripts have "Jehovah" in them? (Answer: None).

**Q47:** Why does the NT always lift up Jesus' Name and not Jehovah's Name? (p.835-6).

**Q48:** What is God's name according to Exodus 3:13-15? (p.934).

**Q49:** Which name of God did Jesus declare (John 17:26) while He was on earth? ("I AM").

**Q50:** In whose name do we receive eternal life according to John 21:31; Acts 4:10,12; I John 5:13, Jesus or Jehovah? (p.935).

**Q51:** Why does the NWT not translate "Lord" as "Jehovah" in the New Testament when the New Testament verse is quoting an Old Testament verse referring to Jehovah in the case of Hebrews 1:10; I Peter 3:15; (p.837-8)? This breaks the WT's own rule on p.11 KIT.

**Q52:** Does "Lord" in Romans 10:13 refer to Jesus Christ or to Jehovah? The Watchtower, 1 May 1978 p.12 says it refers to Jesus Christ. (p.906).

**Christ's Resurrection body:** (p.902).

**Q53:** Why does the Watchtower say Jesus did not resurrect bodily, when His resurrection body could **eat, breathe, have feet, have hand wounds, touch** people, and have **flesh and bones**? (p902). Was He tricking them? Why would believers get a resurrection body and not Christ?

**Q54:** Didn't Jesus state that **His body** had been literally raised from the dead in Luke 24:37,39? "They supposed that they had seen a **spirit**. Behold my hands and my feet, that it is I myself: handle me and see; for a spirit hath not **flesh and bones** as ye see me have." (902).

**Present Tense Salvation:** (p.906).

**Q55:** Why does the Watchtower say we can't be sure of salvation ("Salvation to life involves time and is not completed when one becomes a Christian." "*Make Sure of All Things*", p.332), when 12 scriptures on p.906 say we "ARE SAVED" with a **present tense salvation**? (p.906). eg: 1 John 2:12 "your sins are forgiven"; 1 John 3:2 "Now are we the sons of God"; 1 Cor.1:18; "us which are saved", I John 2:25; "has promised us eternal life",

**Q56:** In the light of present WT teachings, would you explain John 5:24? Ask: What is this everlasting life? How can you be sure of having it right now as this verse says? (To JWs, no one has eternal life until after Christ's 1000 year rule.) What does it mean "not come into judgment"? (To JWs judgment is physical death). What is this death that one passes out of? What life have they entered?

**Q57:** Do you have a mediator between you and God? (p.907) (No. WT,15 Aug.1989, p30,31).

## The New Birth: (p.904).

**Q58:** To how many people is the new birth available, according to John 3:3 (anyone, NWT), I John 5:1 (everyone, NWT), I John 4:7 (everyone, NWT), II Corinthians 5:17 & I John 2:29?

**Q59:** Where does the Bible say that the number to be born again is limited to 144,000? It is unlimited to whosoever believes (p.905). I Peter 1:21,23.

## Is Jesus Michael the Archangel?: (p.925).

**Q60:** If the Watchtower says Jesus is Michael the archangel, how can he also be “the man Christ Jesus”, now that He is in heaven? (**I Timothy 2:5**).

**Q61:** Why would God command all the angels to worship a fellow-created angel? (**Heb 1:6**). Isn't it wrong to worship a creature? (p.846,847,925,926).

**Q62:** If worshipping Jesus should be changed to “do obeisance” (as WT thinks), why didn't God use the Greek word “**sebomai**” which means “do obeisance”? (p.846).

**Q63:** In **Jude 9**, Michael did not have the authority to rebuke Satan (saying “Jehovah rebuke thee” NWT) but Jesus DID have this authority to rebuke Satan in Matthew 4:10 and Mark 8:33. What does this tell you about who Jesus is? (The Lord God Jehovah). (p.925-6).

**Q64:** To which of the angels did God ever say, “Thou art my Son”? (Hebrews 1:5). (p.925).

## Q65: Watchtower False Prophecies: (p.908).

- 1) Do you agree that a true prophet of God gives prophecies coming true **100%** of the time, while false prophets give prophecies which don't always come true. (Deut. 18:20-22)?
- 2) Has the Watchtower ever claimed to be **God's prophet for today**? (Get JW to read WT, 1 April 1972, p.197 on p.910).

**Ask:** Does the WT claim that **Jehovah's Christian witnesses** are **God's prophet** today?

- 3) Can we agree that the WT prophet has given prophecies about events and dates in the future? (Ask 9 questions on p.909-913).

- 4) Applying Moses' test to see if the WT is a true or false prophet, what was supposed to happen according to the WT in 1874, 1914, 1918, 1925 and 1975?

**Question:** With judgment day honesty, did any of these prophecies fail to come true?

**Answer:** All of them failed. They were all false prophecies.

**Question:** What verdict did Moses and Jesus tell us to pass on prophets such as the WT? (WT is a false prophet, is not God's organisation and does not speak in Jehovah's name.) We must side with Moses and Jesus in rejecting the WT as a false prophet. Will you?

**Q66:** Why did the WT change its view on **vaccination, organ transplants, Christmas, the Cross, on who Jesus and Michael are, worshipping Christ, military service, and deferring marriage?** (p.915-6).

**Q67:** Why did the WT prediction of Armageddon in **1975** fail to happen? (15 Aug 1968) p912

**Q68:** Do you agree with the WT command that when one discovers a false prophet, then “people should no longer trust them as safe guides”? (WT, 15 May 1930, p.154) (p.919).

## The 144,000: (p.919).

**Q69:** How do you know the 144,000 was completed in 1935? (p.920).

**Q70:** Why would 144,000 be literal, but 12,000 from each tribe be figurative? (12 x 12,000 figurative ≠ 144,000 literal). (p.921-2).

**Q71:** Why does the WT ignore 13 scriptures which say believers go to heaven? (p.921).

**Q72:** Doesn't “**ONE FLOCK**” (**John 10:16** NWT) refute the WT idea of “two flocks”, one in heaven and the other on earth? (p.921).

**Q73:** In **Revelation 19:1** (NWT), where is the great crowd? (in heaven. WT says “on earth”.p923)

**Blood Transfusions:** (p.927).

**Q74:** Why did the WT change its mind from forbidding **vaccinations, organ transplants, blood plasma and bone marrow transplants**, to allowing them? (p.927).

**Q75:** How did the parents of children who died from not being vaccinated, feel when the WT reversed its view in 1952? How many children died needlessly? (p.927).

**Q76:** Why does the WT forbid blood transfusion but allow eating of fat? They disobey Lev 3:17

**The Cross:** (p.928). **Q77:** Did **one nail** fasten Jesus's hands **above** his head or did **two nails** hold his hands on the opposite sides of a cross beam (Latin: cross-beam = *patibulum*)? p 928.

**Q78:** How many nails were in Jesus' hands according to **John 20:25**? (p.928).

**Q79:** If Jesus was crucified on an upright stake, why does **Matthew 27:37** say that a sign was placed above Jesus' HEAD, instead of above Jesus' HANDS? (p.928).

**Q80:** Why did the WT change its mind on Jesus dying on a cross to Jesus dying on a stake in 1931? (p.928). **Question:** Does a true prophet of God change its mind on such issues?

**Q81:** Why does the WT say the Holy Spirit is not a person but an active force, when the Holy Spirit has 23 attributes of personality? (pp.929-30).

**Q82:** If Jehovah is the **only Saviour**, the **only Judge**, the **only Creator**, has **Glory possessed only by himself**, yet **Christ** also has these attributes, what does this say who Jesus is? p.896.

**Heaven:** (p.35,36,921).

**Q83:** Why does the WT ignore the following verses in saying that we don't go to **heaven**? Colossians 1:5; I Peter 1:4 "reserved in heaven for you"; Rev 6:9; 19:1; Matthew 6:20; John 12:26; John 14:3; Hebrews 3:1; 10:34 ;11:16; 12:1; II Cor 5:1,8; Phil. 1:23. (p.35,36).

### **31. THE TRINITY OF THE GODHEAD SEEN IN NATURE.**

**Question:** How is the Trinity of the Godhead seen in nature as in Romans 1:20 "for the invisible things of him from the **creation of the world** are **clearly seen**, being understood by the **things that are made**, even his eternal **power** and **Godhead**; so that they are without excuse.

**Answer:** a) We see God's eternal **power** in earthquakes, volcanoes, wind, millions of stars, galaxies, waves, floods, lightning, sun, moon, nuclear bombs, etc.

b) We see the **Trinity of the Godhead** with so many things coming in "threes", reminding us of the Father, Son, Holy Spirit, all three members of the creator Godhead. Examples are:

- 1) **The Physical Universe: Space, mass, time.**
- 2) **Space:** 3 dimensions of space are: length, breadth, height. **18) Sun:** heat, light, radiation
- 3) **Mass:** 3 phases of matter are: solid, liquid, gas. **19) Earth** is land, sea, atmosphere.
- 4) **Time:** 3 tenses of time are: past, present, future. **20) Trees** made of roots, trunk, leaves.
- 5) **Light:** 3 directions of light wave oscillation are: horizontal, vertical, back and forward.
- 6) **Colours:** 3 primary colours of light are: red, blue, yellow. **21)Blood:** red, white, platelet
- 7) **Kingdoms:** 3 Kingdoms are: Animal, vegetable, mineral. **22)Sun:** alpha, beta, gamma ray
- 8) **Animal:** 3 kinds of Animal: fish, bird, land animals. **23)Insects:** head, thorax, abdomen
- 9) **Minerals:** 3 main kinds of Minerals are: igneous, sedimentary, metamorphic.
- 10) **Man:** 3 components of Man are: body, soul (personality), spirit. (I Thess. 5:23).
- 11) **Divine institutions:** 3 Divine institutions are: marriage, human government, church.
- 12) **Musical notes:** 3 notes make up a musical chord. **24) Sun's mass** = 333,000 x earth.
- 13) **Sub-atomic particles:** 3 main sub-atomic particles are: proton, electron, neutron,.
- 14) **Mankind:** 3 divisions of the human race: Jew, Gentile, Church of God. (I Cor.10:32).
- 15) **Earth:** is the third planet from the Sun. **25) DNA code:** phosphate, deoxyribose, bases.
- 16) **Forces:** nuclear, gravitational, electromagnetic. **26)Cell:** nucleus, cytoplasm, membrane
- 17) **Heavens:** 3 heavens are: atmosphere, space, God's throne.

## **32. QUESTIONS TO ASK TO REFUTE JW OBJECTIONS**

1. **Psalm 110:1** “The Lord (*Jehovah*) said to my Lord (*Adonai*) sit thou . . .” (p.869).  
**Ask:** Did you know that Adonai (Lord) used of Jesus in Psalm 110:1 is also used of the Father in Exodus 23:17, Deuteronomy 10:17, Joshua 3:11?

2. **Proverbs 8:22,23** “I was set up from everlasting” (p.860).

**Ask:** Where is Jesus Christ mentioned in this passage? Was there a time when God had no wisdom? Is Christ a woman who cries in the streets? (Proverbs 8:1; 1:20,21).

3. **Isaiah 9:6** Is Jesus a “Mighty God” or “Jehovah God”? (p.867).

**Ask:** Since Jehovah is called “mighty God” in Isaiah 10:21;and Jeremiah 32:18, just as Jesus is called “Mighty God” (Isaiah 9:6), doesn’t this mean that the Watchtower is wrong in saying that Jesus as Mighty God means He is a lesser deity?

**Ask:** If both **Jesus** and **Jehovah** are “Mighty God”, then what does this tell you about Jesus’ divine nature?

4. **Mark 10:17,18** “Why callest thou me good? There is none good but one, that is, God.”<sup>872</sup>  
**Ask:** Where in the text does Jesus explicitly say that He is not God? Jesus did claim to be good and hence God in John 10:14: “I am the **good** shepherd”.

5. **Mark 13:32** “But of that day hour knoweth no man, no not the angels . . . neither the Son, but the Father.” (p.866).

Christ’s one person possessed the attributes of both divine and human natures.

Christ sometimes operated as a man and sometimes operated as God,

e.g: Christ in His human nature knew hunger, weariness and sleepiness, but in His divine nature was **omniscient, omnipresent** and **omnipotent**.

**Key:** In Christ’s divine nature, He is just as omniscient as the Father, as the following verses state:

“Lord, thou **knowest all things.**” (John 21:17).

“Now are we sure that thou **knowest all things.**” (John 16:30).

“In whom are hid **all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.**” (Colossians 2:3).

**Ask:** Can anyone other than God be omniscient? (No).

**Ask:** Since Christ had both a human and a divine nature, and since He used His omniscience often, can you see that Jesus was speaking from His **human nature** when He said that He didn’t know the day or hour of His return?

6. **John 3:16** “He gave His only begotten Son.” (p.862).

**Ask:** If “son of” (Greek: Huios, not Teknon), meant “sameness of nature and equality of being” among the ancients, as historical records clearly show, then what does this tell us about the meaning of the phrase “Son of God”?

**Ask:** What did Jesus mean when He said of Himself: “All things that the Father hath are mine”. (John 16:15)? (Answer: Jesus is alone all that God is).

7. **John 4:23** “True worshippers shall worship the Father...” (p.871).

Do we worship the Father only?

**Ask:** Do you give worshipful honour to the Son **just as** you do to the Father? (John 5:23). If no, then your worship is in vain and you are not honouring the Father.

**Ask:** Why did the Watchtower (1880) say “to worship Christ in any form cannot be wrong”, while later Watchtower editions say we should not worship Christ?

**Ask:** What rule of Greek grammar does the Watchtower use to translate “*proskuneo*” as “worship” when it refers to the Father (21 times), devils (14 times), angels (2 times), but as “**obeisance**” when it refers to **Christ** (16 times)?

**Ask:** Why did Paul refuse worship (Actrs 14:11), the angel refuse worship (Revelation 22:8,9) but Jesus never refused worship?

8. **John 14:28 “The Father is greater** (Greek: *meizon*) **than I”** (p.865).

Jesus did not say that “the Father is **better** (Greek: *kreitton*) than I”.

Greater refers to the Father’s greater **position** (in heaven), not to a greater **nature**.

**Ask:** Do you agree that a president is **greater in position** but not **better in nature** than his people?

**Ask:** In view of **greater** (meaning higher in position) and **better** (meaning higher in nature - see Hebrews 1:4), is it not clear that in John 14:28, Jesus is speaking of the Father’s **temporary higher position** and **not higher nature** than Jesus? (p.865).

9. **John 17:3 “know thee the only true God”** (p.868).

The Watchtower says that, because the Father is called “the only true God”, then Jesus cannot be the true God.

**Ask:** The context is Jesus as a man, praying the great high priestly prayer to the Father.

As such it was proper for the **man Christ Jesus** to call the Father “the only true God”.

Christ would **not have said this** if it was spoken from the viewpoint of His **deity**.

**Ask:** Since Jesus being called our only Lord (Jude 4 NWT) does not exclude the Father (Matthew 11:25) and the Holy Spirit from being called Lord, why must the Father being called “the only true God” exclude the Son and Holy Spirit from being called God?

**Ask:** According to John 17:3, how many true Gods are there? (One).

Do you agree that whatever is not true is false?

If there is only one true God, all other gods must be false gods.

In John 1:1, NWT says that Jesus is a god, right? Is Jesus a true God or a false god?

He cannot be a false god, can He, since that would mean John was guilty of falsely honouring Jesus as a god. Therefore Jesus must be a true God.

But Jehovah is the only true God. Therefore, Jesus must be Jehovah.

10. **John 20:17 “I ascend to . . . My God and your God.”** (p.864).

It is in Christ’s humanity that He acknowledged the Father as “my God”.

**Ask:** Since man’s proper duties are to worship God, pray to God and address God as “my Father” and “my God”, can you see that it was perfectly correct for Jesus (speaking as a man) to address God as “my Father” and “my God”? (p.864).

11. **I Corinthians 8:6 “One God the Father . . . and one Lord Jesus Christ.”** (p.864).

**Ask:** Do you know that the Father is called Lord of heaven and earth? (Matthew 11:25).

**Ask:** Can you see that, since Jesus as one Lord does not mean that the Father is not Lord, then by the same logic, the Father as “one God” does not mean that Jesus is not God? 864

12. **I Corinthians 11:3 “The head of Christ is God.”** (p.858).

**Ask:** Are women inferior in nature to men because men exercise headship over women?

If no, why does WT teach that the Father’s headship over Christ means that Christ is inferior in nature to the Father? (p.858).

13. **I Corinthians 15:28 “Then shall the Son also be subject unto Him.”** (p.863).

Jesus’ humanity will always be in subjection to the Father.

**Ask:** Do you submit to the police? (Yes). Are you of inferior nature to the police? (No). So why should Christ be of inferior nature to the Father, because He submits to Him?

**Ask:** “Of His (Christ’s) Kingdom there shall be no end.” (Luke 1:38). Can you see that **Christ as man**, will hand over the administration of the earthly kingdom to God the Father, so that then **Christ as God**, will reign forever with the **Father** and the **Holy Spirit**, as the Triune God and **no longer reign through the man Christ Jesus?** (p.863).

#### 14. Colossians 1:15 “the firstborn (Greek: prototokos) of every creature.” (p.860).

Ask: Why didn't Paul use the term “first created” (Greek: protoktisis) here if he meant that Christ was the first one created by Jehovah? (p.860).

Ask: What does “firstborn” mean? (p.860).

Ask: What does Psalm 89:27 mean by calling David “firstborn”, when he was the last born son? (p.861).

#### 15. Revelation 3:14 “The Beginning (Greek: Arche) of the Creation of God”. (p.859).

Ask: Since “Arche” used of God Almighty (in Rev.21:6 and 22:13) does not mean that God had a created beginning, why do you insist that, when “Arche” is used of Christ, it means that Christ had a created beginning? (eg: Archbishop, architect, beginner).

### 33. Places where KIT gives the right reading, contradicting NWT

The upper cutout is from the Kingdom Interlinear Translation (KIT), and the lower cutout is from The Emphatic Diaglott NT. Both are Watchtower approved and published.

#### 1. John 1:1 ‘The word was God’

Why does KIT contradict NWT to give right reading: ‘The word was God’? (p 854)

1 'Ἐν ἀρχῇ ἦν ὁ λόγος, καὶ ὁ λόγος  
In beginning was the Word, and the Word  
ἦν πρὸς τὸν Θεόν, καὶ Θεὸς ἦν ὁ λόγος.  
was toward the God, and god was the Word.

1 In [the] beginning  
the Word was, and  
the Word was with  
God, and the Word  
was a god.\* 2 This

Ἐν ἀρχῇ ἦν ὁ Λόγος, καὶ ὁ Λόγος  
In a beginning was the Word, and the Word  
ἦν πρὸς τὸν Θεόν, καὶ Θεὸς ἦν ὁ Λόγος.  
was with the God, and a god was the Word.

1 In the †Beginning  
was the †Logos, and the  
Logos was with God, and  
the Logos was God.

#### 2. John 8:58 ‘Before Abraham was, I am’

Why does KIT give the right reading ‘I am’, contradicting NWT ‘I have been’? (p 857)

58 εἶπεν αὐτοῖς Ἰησοῦς Ἄμην ἀμήν  
Said to them Jesus Amen amen  
λέγω ὑμῖν, πρὶν Ἀβραὰμ γενέσθαι  
I am saying to you Before Abraham to become  
ἐγὼ εἰμί. 59 ἤραν οὖν λίθους  
I am. They lifted up therefore stones

58 Jesus

said to them: “Most  
truly I say to you,  
Before Abraham came  
into existence, I have  
been.”\* 59 Therefore

εἶπεν αὐτοῖς ὁ Ἰησοῦς: Ἄμην  
Said to them the Jesus; Indeed  
ἀμῆν λέγω ὑμῖν, πρὶν Ἀβραὰμ γενέσθαι,  
Indeed I say to you, before Abram to have been born,  
ἐγὼ εἰμι. ἤραν οὖν λίθους, ἵνα  
I am. They took up therefore stones, that

..  
58 \*JESUS said to them,  
“Indeed, I assure you, Be-  
fore Abraham was born, I  
am he.”

#### 3. John 14:14

KIT tells us to pray to Jesus (p.899).

14 ἐάν τι αἰτήσῃτε  
if ever anything you should ask  
δύναματί μου τοῦτο ποιήσω.  
name of me this I shall do.

με  
me

Son. 14 If you ask  
anything in my name,  
I will do it.

#### 4. John 17:3

Why does the KIT give the right reading ‘know you (verb)’ contradicting the NWT ‘taking in knowledge (noun)?’ (p.868).

**3 αὐτῇ δέ ἐστιν ἡ**  
This but is the  
αἰώνιος ζωὴ ἵνα γινώσκωσι  
everlasting life, in order that they may be knowing  
σὲ τὸν μόνον ἀληθινὸν θεόν καὶ ὁν  
you the only true God and whom  
ἀπέστειλας Ἰησοῦν Χριστόν.  
you sent forth Jesus Christ.

3 This means everlasting life, their taking in knowledge of you, the only true God, and of the one whom you sent forth, Jesus Christ.

#### 5. Acts 20:28

Where is ‘Son’ in the Greek? (p.843).

**28 προσέχετε ἔαυτοῖς καὶ πάντι**  
Be you paying attention to selves and to all  
τῷ ποιμνίῳ, ἐν ᾧ ὑμᾶς τὸ πνεῦμα τὸ  
the flock, in which you the spirit the  
ἅγιον ἔθετο ἐπισκόπους, ποιμαίνειν τὴν  
holy put overseers, to be shepherding the  
ἐκκλησίαν τοῦ θεοῦ, ἣν περιεποιήσατο  
ecclesia of the God, which he reserved for self  
διὰ τοῦ αἵματος τοῦ ἰδίου. 29 Ἐγὼ  
through the blood of the own (one). I

28 Pay attention to yourselves and to all the flock, among which the holy spirit has appointed you overseers, to shepherd the congregation of God,\* which he purchased with the blood of his own [Son].\*

#### 6. Colossians 1:16,17 and Philippians 2:9

Where is ‘other’? (pp 841, 840, 886) **16 ὅτι ἐν αὐτῷ** because in him

ἐκτίσθη τὰ πάντα ἐν τοῖς οὐρανοῖς  
it was created the all (things) in the heavens  
καὶ ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς τὰ δόρατα καὶ  
and upon the earth, the (things) visible and  
τὰ ἀόρατα, εἴτε θρόνοι εἴτε  
the (things) invisible, whether thrones or  
κυριότητες εἴτε ἀρχαὶ εἴτε ἔξουσίαι·  
lordships or governments or authorities;  
τὰ πάντα δι' αὐτοῦ καὶ εἰς αὐτὸν  
the all (things) through him and into him  
ἐκτίσται· 17 καὶ αὐτὸς ἐστιν πρὸ<sup>τ</sup>  
it has been created; and he is before  
πάντων καὶ τὰ πάντα ἐν αὐτῷ  
all (things) and the all (things) in him  
συνέστηκεν, 18 καὶ αὐτὸς ἐστιν ἡ  
it has stood together, and he is the

16 because by means of him all [other] things were created in the heavens and upon the earth, the things visible and the things invisible, no matter whether they are thrones or lordships or governments or authorities. All [other] things have been created through him and for him. 17 Also, he is before all [other] things and by means of him all [other] things were made to exist, 18 and he is

**9 διὸ καὶ δ**  
through which also the  
θεὸς αὐτὸν ὑπερύψωσεν,  
God him put high up over, and  
ἔχαριστο αὐτῷ τὸ ὄνομα τὸ ὑπὲρ  
he graciously gave to him the name the over  
πάντων ὄνομα, every name.

9 For this very reason also God exalted him to a superior position and kindly gave him the name that is above every [other] name.

#### 7. I Timothy 3:16

No manuscript has ‘He was manifest in the flesh’. But 323 manuscripts have ‘God was manifest in the flesh’. (p.804,892).

**16 καὶ δομολογουμένως μέγα ἐστὶν**  
and confessedly great is  
τὸ τῆς εὔσεβείας μυστήριον· Ὡς  
the of the revering well mystery; Who  
ἔφανερώθη ἐν σαρκί, ἐδικαίωθη ἐν  
was manifested in flesh, was justified in

16 Indeed, the sacred secret of this godly devotion\* is admittedly great: ‘He was made manifest in flesh, was declared

8. **Hebrews 1:6** Why did the Watchtower change ‘worship’ (NWT 1961 edition) to ‘do obeisance’ (NWT 1985 edition)? (p.846).

6 ἡ δέ πάλιν εἰσαγάγῃ  
Whenever but again he should lead in  
τὸν πρωτότοκον εἰς τὴν  
the Firstborn (one) into the  
οἰκουμένην, λέγει Καὶ  
being inhabited [earth], he is saying And  
προσκυνησάτωσαν αὐτῷ πάντες ἄγγελοι  
let do obeisance toward him all angels  
θεοῦ.  
of God.

6 But when he again brings his First-born into the inhabited earth, he says: “And let all God’s angels worship him.”

6 But when he again brings his Firstborn into the inhabited earth, he says: “And let all God’s angels do obeisance to him.”

## 9. **Hebrews 1:8**

Why does NWT reverse the word order, contradicting the KIT ‘Thy throne O God’? p.844

8 πρὸς δὲ τὸν υἱὸν  
toward but the Son  
‘Ο θρόνος σου ὁ θεὸς εἰς τὸν αἰώνα  
The throne of you the God into the age  
τοῦ αἰώνος, καὶ ἡ ῥάβδος τῆς εὐθύτητος  
of the age, and the staff of the straightness  
ῥάβδος τῆς βασιλείας αὐτοῦ.  
staff of the kingdom of him.

8 But with reference to the Son: “God is your throne forever and ever, and [the] scepter of your kingdom is the scepter of uprightness.

## 10. **Hebrews 9:27**

Where is ‘for all time’? (p 872)

27 καὶ καθ'  
And according to  
ὅσον ἀπόκειται τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἀπαξ  
how much it is lying off to the men once  
ἀποθανεῖν, μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο κρίσις,  
to die after but this (thing) judgment,

27 And as it is reserved for men to die once for all time, but after this a judgment, 28 so also

## 11. **I Peter 3:15**

KIT says to sanctify Christ as Jehovah God (footnote), quoting Isaiah 8:13. (p.837).

15 κύριον δὲ τὸν Χριστὸν  
Lord but the Christ  
ἀγιάσατε ἐν ταῖς καρδίαις ὑμῶν, ἔτοιμοι  
sanctify you in the hearts of you, ready

15 But sanctify the Christ as Lord\* in YOUR hearts, always ready to make a de-

12\*<sup>z</sup> Jehovah, J7.8.11-14,16-18,20,22,(23),24; Lord, nABVgSyP.  
nABC; the Lord God, Textus Receptus; Jehovah God,

15\* The Christ as Lord, J7.8.11-14,16,17,24.

## 12. **1 John 5:7,8**

### Masculine

τρεῖς εἰσὶν οἱ μαρτυροῦντες, 8 τὸ  
three are the (ones) bearing witness, the  
πνεῦμα καὶ τὸ ὕδωρ καὶ τὸ αἷμα, καὶ οἱ  
spirit and the water and the blood, and the  
τρεῖς εἰς τὸ ἐν εἰσιν.  
three into the one (thing) are.

7 ὅτι  
Because  
8 τὸ  
bearing witness, the  
the spirit and the water and the blood,  
and the three are in agreement.\*

7 For there are three witness bearers, 8 the spirit and the water and the blood, and the three are in agreement.\*

3 neuter nouns are mismatched with 2 masculine articles.

Below we set out the declension of the definite article:

### Singular Number

CASE	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	ENGLISH
Nom.	ὁ	ἡ	τό	the
Gen.	τοῦ	τῆς	τοῦ	of the
Dat.	τῷ	τῇ	τῷ	to the
Acc.	τὸν	τὴν	τό	the

### Plural Number

CASE	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	ENGLISH
Nom.	οἱ	αἱ	τά	the
Gen.	τῶν	τῶν	τῶν	of the
Dat.	τοῖς	ταῖς	τοῖς	to the
Acc.	τοὺς	τάς	τά	the

### 13. Revelation 19:1

Where is the great crowd? KIT and NWT say that they are in heaven. (p.923).

**19** Μετὰ ταῦτα ἤκουσα ὡς φωνὴν μεγάλην ὅχλου πολλοῦ ἐν τῷ οὐρανῷ λεγόντων Ἀλληλουία· ἡ σωτηρία καὶ ἡ οὐρανοῦ δόξα καὶ ἡ δύναμις τοῦ θεοῦ ἡμῶν, glory and the power of the God of us,

**19** After these things I heard what was as a loud voice of a great crowd in heaven.

They said: "Praise Jah, you people! The salvation and the glory and the power belong to our God,\*

14. Did you know that Clement of Alexandria (153-217 AD), Tertullian (200-250 AD), Hippolytus (170 AD) & Origen (185-284 AD) believed in the Trinity and Deity of Christ?

(p.875)

a) Clement: Volume 2, p.468, 173  
ing else than the Holy Trinity to be meant; for the third is the Holy Spirit, and the Son is the second, by whom all things were made according to the will of the Father.<sup>3</sup> This Word, then, the Christ, the cause of both our being at first (for He was in God) and of our well-being, this very Word has now appeared as man, He alone being both, both God and man—the Author of all blessings to us;

b) Tertullian: Volume 3, p.598,606,607

Still, in these few quotations the distinction of Persons in the Trinity is clearly set forth. For there is the Spirit Himself who speaks, and the Father to whom He speaks, and the Son of whom He speaks.<sup>13</sup>

when all the Scriptures attest the clear existence of, and distinction in, (the Persons of) the Trinity, and indeed furnish us with our Rule of faith,

For the very Church itself is, properly and principally, the Spirit Himself, in whom is the Trinity of the One Divinity—Father, Son, and Holy Spirit,<sup>13</sup> while the mystery of the dispensation<sup>9</sup> is still guarded, which distributes the Unity into a Trinity, placing in their order<sup>10</sup> the three Persons—the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost: three, however, not in condition,<sup>11</sup> but in degree;<sup>12</sup> not in substance, but in form; not in power, but in aspect;<sup>13</sup> yet of one substance, and of one condition, and of one power, inasmuch as He is one God, from whom these degrees and forms and aspects are reckoned, under the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.<sup>14</sup>

Now if He too is God, according to John, (who says,) "The Word was God,"<sup>8</sup> then you have two Beings—One that commands that the thing be made, and the Other that executes the order and creates.

Him we believe to have been sent by the Father into the Virgin, and to have been born of her—being both Man and God, the Son of Man and the Son of God, and to have been called by the name of Jesus Christ;

Vol. 3,  
p.606

Vol. 4,  
p.99

Vol. 3,  
p.598

Vol. 3,  
p.607

946

Vol. 3,  
p.598

c) Hippolytus: Volume 5, p.228

"Go ye

and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost."<sup>16</sup> And by this He showed, that whosoever omitted any one of these, failed in glorifying God perfectly. For it is through this Trinity<sup>17</sup> that the Father is glorified. For the Father willed, the Son did, the Spirit manifested. The whole Scriptures, then, proclaim this truth.

This is most clearly pointed out

by the Apostle Paul, when demonstrating that the power of the Trinity is one and the same, in the words, "There are diversities of gifts, but the same Spirit; there are diversities of administrations, but the same Lord; and there are diversities of operations, but it is the same God who worketh all in all. But the manifestation of the Spirit is given to every man to profit withal."<sup>18</sup> From which it most clearly follows that there is no difference in the Trinity, but that which is called the gift of the Spirit is made known through the Son, and operated by God the Father. "But all these worketh that one and the self-same Spirit, dividing to every one severally as He will."<sup>19</sup>

8. Having made these declarations regarding the Unity of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit,

e) Thaumaturgus: (205-265 AD), Vol.6, p.42,45.

VII.

But some treat the Holy Trinity<sup>7</sup> in an awful manner, when they confidently assert that there are not three persons, and introduce (the idea of) a person devoid of subsistence.<sup>8</sup> Wherefore we clear ourselves of Sabellius, who says that the Father and the Son are the same. For he holds that the Father is He who speaks, and that the Son is the Word that abides in the Father, and becomes manifest at the time of the creation,<sup>9</sup> and thereafter reverts to God on the fulfilling of all things. The same affirmation he makes also of the Spirit. We forswear this, because we believe that three persons — namely, Father, Son, and Holy Spirit — are declared to possess the one Godhead: for the one divinity showing itself forth according to nature in the Trinity<sup>10</sup> establishes the oneness of the nature; and thus there is a (divinity that is the) property of the Father, according to the word, "There is one God the Father;"<sup>11</sup> and there is a divinity hereditary<sup>12</sup> in the Son, as it is written, "The Word was God;"<sup>13</sup>

XVIII.

We acknowledge that the Son and the Spirit are consubstantial with the Father, and that the substance of the Trinity is one, — that is, that there is one divinity according to nature, the Father remaining unbegotten, and the Son being begotten of the Father in a true generation, and not in a formation by will,<sup>3</sup> and the Spirit being sent forth eternally from the substance of the Father through the Son, with power to sanctify the whole creation. And we further acknowledge that the Word was made flesh, and was manifested in the flesh-movement<sup>4</sup> received of a virgin, and did not simply energize in a man. And those who have fellowship with men that reject the *consubstantiality* as a doctrine foreign to the Scriptures, and speak of any of the persons in the Trinity as created, and separate that person from the one natural divinity, we hold as aliens, and have fellowship with none such.<sup>5</sup> There is one God the Father, and there is only one divinity. But the Son also is God, as being the true image of the one and only divinity, according to generation and the nature which He has from

## **118. 10 Proofs that Jesus Christ is the Messiah**

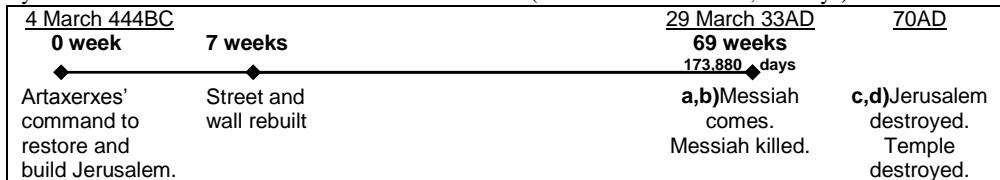
It is well known that the Jewish religion and the nation of Israel have rejected Jesus Christ's claim to be their Messiah. It matters not what men think, but what God says in His Word.

What do the Old Testament Prophets, the Law and Psalms say about how we can identify Who is the true Messiah that Israel is looking for? Consider these 10 proofs that Jesus Christ is the Messiah:

**1. Daniel 9:24-27** states that the Messiah will come and be killed BEFORE the city of Jerusalem and its Temple are destroyed in 70AD.

a) "After 62 weeks (33AD) b) shall Messiah be cut off (killed), but not for himself: and the people (Romans) of the prince that shall come (future European Antichrist) c) shall destroy the city (of Jerusalem in 70AD) and d) the sanctuary (the Temple in 70AD)." (Daniel 9:26). This teaches 4 things:

a) Messiah offers himself to Israel as their Prince on **29 March 33AD** after 69 weeks (=7 + 62) of years. This occurs at the end of the 62-week interval (ie:  $69 \times 7 \times 360 = 173,880$  days).



b) Messiah will be rejected by Israel (Sunday 29 March 33AD) and killed (Friday 3 April 33AD).

c) Romans will destroy **Jerusalem**.

d) Romans will destroy the **Temple**. This happened in 70AD.

Jesus Christ fulfils Daniel's prophecy that Messiah comes & is killed before Jerusalem & the Temple are destroyed in 70AD.  $10\text{pm } 4\text{ March } 444\text{BC} + (173,880/365.2422 = 476.06766 \text{ days}) = 3\text{pm } 29\text{ March } 33\text{AD}$

**2. Psalm 22:8-16** contains **six prophecies** fulfilled by Jesus Christ at His first coming:

The Jewish Chief Priests, scribes and elders would mock the Messiah, while on the cross.	
1. Psalm 22:8 "He <u>trusted</u> on the LORD that He would deliver him: let him deliver him."	Matthew 27:43 "He trusted in God; let him deliver him now."
2. Psalm 22:14 "all my <u>bones</u> are out of joint."	
3. Psalm 22:15 "my <u>tongue</u> cleaveth to my jaws."	John 19:28 "I thirst."
4. Psalm 22:15 "they <u>pierced</u> my hands and my feet."	Matthew 27:35 "they crucified him."
5. Psalm 22:18 "they <u>part</u> my garments among them, and <u>cast lots</u> upon my vesture."	Matthew 27:35 " <u>parted</u> his garments, casting lots."
6. Psalm 69:21 "they gave me also <u>gall</u> for my meat; and in my thirst they gave me <u>vinegar</u> to drink."	Matthew 27:34 "They gave me <u>vinegar</u> to drink mingled with <u>gall</u> ."

**3. Zechariah 13:6.** When Messiah returns to earth, someone will ask him about His hand wounds:

"And one shall say unto him, What are these wounds in thine hands?"

Then shall he answer, Those with which I was wounded in the house of my friends."

The context of Zechariah chapters 13,14 refers to the Messiah returning to earth to rescue Israel.

**Question:** If the returning Messiah has hand wounds, doesn't this fit Jesus Christ as being the Messiah?

**4. Micah 5:2.** The Messiah would come from **Bethlehem**.

Once again, Jesus Christ qualifies as the Messiah by being born where the prophet Micah prophesied: "But thou, Bethlehem Ephratah, though thou be little among the thousands of Judah, yet out of thee shall he come forth unto me that is to be ruler in Israel; whose goings forth have been from of old, from everlasting." The Messiah would be:

- a) Born in Bethlehem.
- b) Become Israel's future ruler.
- c) Have existed everlasting in the past. Only God is everlasting.

This shows that Jesus Christ is the Messiah, and is also God.

**5. Zechariah 9:9.** Messiah the King of Israel would enter Jerusalem in a humble manner, riding on an ass, and on the foal of an ass.

"Rejoice greatly, O daughter of Jerusalem: behold thy King cometh unto thee: he is just, and having salvation; lowly, and riding upon an ass, and upon a colt the foal of an ass."

Jesus Christ again fits the description of being Israel's Messiah, because He entered Jerusalem in 33AD on an ass and her foal, to offer Himself as King. This is described in Luke 19:28-44; Matthew 21:1-9; Mark 11:1-10; John 12:12-19. When Jesus Christ entered Jerusalem on a colt, the people addressed Him as, "Blessed be the King that cometh in the name of the Lord." (Luke 19:38).

After the Pharisees rejected Jesus Christ as King, He then prophesied Jerusalem's soon destruction. This happened in 70AD, because Israel failed to recognize that this was the day that Daniel prophesied Messiah's coming (Daniel 9:26). This day was 173,880 days after 10pm 4 March 444BC (Neh 2:1-8).

**6. Zechariah 11:12,13.** God said that 30 pieces of silver would be:

a) The price that Israel would put on their God,

b) cast to the potter,

c) cast in the house of the LORD.

"Thus saith the LORD my God; . . .(v.4) If ye think good, give me my price; . . .so they weighed for my price 30 pieces of silver (v.12). . and the LORD (Jehovah) said unto me, Cast it unto the potter: a goodly price that I was priced at of them. And I took the thirty pieces of silver, and cast them to the potter in the house of the LORD." (Zechariah 11:13).

Notice here that Jehovah God states that Israel priced Him at 30 pieces of silver.

Jesus Christ fulfilled each of these 3 prophecies, proving that He is Jehovah, the God of Israel:

<b>Zechariah 11:12,13</b>	<b>Jesus Christ (Matthew 26:14-16; and 27:3-7)</b>
a) God valued at <u>30 pieces of silver</u> .	"they covenanted with him (Judas) <u>for 30 pieces of silver</u> ." (Matthew 26:14-16).
b) Money will be cast to a <u>potter</u> .	"Chief priests took the silver pieces and... bought with them the <u>potter's field</u> ." (Matthew 27:6,7).
c) Money will be cast in the <u>Temple</u> .	"He (Judas) cast down the pieces of silver in the <u>Temple</u> ." (Matthew 27:3-5).

**7. Isaiah 40:3.** Messiah would be preceded by a messenger.

This messenger would warn people that Israel's Messiah was about to come and they should prepare to welcome Him. The messenger's message would be:

"The voice of him that crieth in the wilderness. Prepare ye the way of the LORD, make straight in the desert a highway for our God." (Isaiah 40:3).

This was the message of John the Baptist: "Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make his paths straight." (Matthew 3:3; Mark 1:3; Luke 3:3; John 1:23).

Because Israel's leaders rejected John the Baptist's message, the warning of Malachi 4:6 came true in the destruction of Jerusalem in 70AD: "Lest I come and smite the earth with a curse."

Israel's sad history over the past 1950 years is due to the curse that Malachi said would come on them for rejecting Jesus Christ as their Messiah.

**8. God's servant.** Isaiah 52:13 to 53:12 describe the Messiah as God's servant that would be exalted very high. Details of this passage match Jesus Christ as being the Messiah.

Question: If this does not refer to Jesus Christ, then to whom does it refer?

i) "his visage was so marred more than any man." (v.14).

This fits the brutal disfigurement that Jesus Christ received from His persecutors.

ii) "He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows.....we esteemed him not." (53:3).

This fits how Israel's leaders despised and rejected Jesus Christ.

iii) "the LORD hath laid on him the iniquity of us all." (53:6).

- This fits how Jesus Christ was killed on the same night as the Passover lamb was slain.

- This fits the Old Testament animal blood sacrifices that pointed to the once for all sacrifice of Jesus Christ as the Saviour for all mankind's sins. Friday 3 April 33AD was a full moon.

- iv) “he made his grave with the wicked.” (53:9)  
This fits how Jesus Christ was crucified between two thieves (Luke 23:39-43).
- v) “he made his grave . . . with the rich in his death.” (53:9).  
This fits how Jesus Christ was buried in a rich man’s tomb (Joseph of Arimathaea). Luke 23:50-53.
- vi) “he was cut off out of the land of the living.” (53:8).  
This fits how Jesus Christ’s life was brutally cut off in his prime.
- vii) “he had done no violence, neither was any deceit in his mouth.” (53:9).  
This fits how Jesus Christ showed no violence or deceit. Nobody found any fault in Him. This “no fault” testimony was made by Pilate, Pilate’s wife, a Roman Centurion, a repentant thief, Judas.
- viii) “when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin.” (53:10).  
This fits how Jesus Christ fulfilled, in his sacrificial death, the many kinds of offerings for sin that Moses commanded.
- ix) “he shall prolong his days.” (53:10).  
This fits how Jesus Christ rose from the dead, was seen by hundreds of witnesses over 40 days, ascended to heaven from the Mount of Olives, will return to the Mount of Olives (Zechariah 14:4) and will have nail prints in his hands at his return.
- x) “he was numbered with the transgressors.” (53:12).  
This fits how Jesus Christ was considered a sinner by many Jews, even to today.

## **9. Hosea 5:15 to 6:1.2**

God addresses Israel in Hosea 5:15 as being displeased with an offence that Israel has committed.

God promises to return to His place until Israel acknowledges that offence.

- a) “I will go and return to my place, till they acknowledge their offence, and seek my face: in their affliction they will seek me early.” (Hosea 5:15).

**Question 1:** What was the offence that Israel committed?

**Answer:** That of rejecting and crucifying their Messiah.

**Question 2:** What does God mean by “returning to my place”? Where is God’s place?

**Answer:** God’s place is heaven, to which Christ ascended 40 days after His resurrection.

**Question 3:** Why is the word “return” used?

**Answer:** Because Jesus Christ came from heaven to earth, then returned to heaven.

**Question 4:** What is the affliction that God says will cause Israel to repent and seek God’s face?

**Answer:** The trouble that is happening now in the Middle East will culminate in the Antichrist’s invasion of Israel and the suffering they will experience.

b) Hosea 6:1,2 are Israel speaking:

Verse 1 is a call by Israel to return to God to be healed and bound up.

Hosea 6:2 is an amazing verse that fits perfectly with the timing of Israel’s return to their homeland after about 2000 years of being scattered among the nations.

“After two days will he revive us: in the third day he will raise us up, and we shall live in his sight.”

Notice that this appears to be saying that:

► After two days (or 2000 years in 2 Peter 3:8) God would revive Israel spiritually as a nation by their acknowledging their offence of crucifying Jesus Christ. When did Israel die spiritually? (33AD).

Luke 13:35. This would be followed by them receiving Jesus Christ as their Messiah (Zech 12:10), and

► In the third day (about 2033-3033AD) Israel will be raised up as the chief nation when Messiah returns. Q: If the third day is exactly 1000 years (Rev 20:1-7), then the first 2 days must be 2000 years.

## **10. Isaiah 9:6 states that the child that would be born would be “the Mighty God.”**

“For unto us a child is born, ....his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The Mighty God.”

Jehovah calls Himself “The Mighty God” in Psalm 50:1 (“The Mighty God, Jehovah hath spoken...”); Jeremiah 32:18 “the Mighty God, Jehovah of hosts, is his name.” Isaiah 10:21.

This proves Jesus Christ to be Israel’s Messiah and God.

**Conclusion:** Have you received Jesus Christ as your Saviour, Messiah and God?

Why not do so right now today?

## **119. JESUS CHRIST IS GREATER THAN MOHAMMED**

To understand which religion is the true religion- Christianity or Islam. (p.1070). We should study:

- i) Its founders (Christ & Mohammed). ii) Its book (the Bible & Quran). iii) Its God (Jehovah & Allah).
- Who has the better credentials, Jesus or Mohammed? You decide yourself. Compare these differences:
1. Jesus raised the dead, Mohammed couldn't. Jesus raised Lazarus after being dead for 4 days (John 11), Jairus' daughter (Luke 8:49-56) and the widow of Nain's son (Luke 7:11-17). This means that Jesus has power to raise all people from the dead, including you.
  2. Jesus healed all sicknesses, Mohammed couldn't. Jesus healed 10 lepers (Luke 17:11-19), a man born blind (John 9), paralysed (Matt. 8:5-13), dumb, maimed, lame multitudes (Matt. 15:29-31), withered hand (Mark 3:1-5), hunchback (Luke 13:11), replaced a severed ear (Luke 22:50,51), healed from a distance (John 4:46-54), "as many as touched him were made whole." (Mark 6:56).
  3. Jesus had power over nature, Mohammed didn't. Jesus stilled storms and waves (Mark 4:35-41). Jesus multiplied 5 loaves and 2 fishes to feed 5000 men (John 6:1-14). Jesus walked on the water (John 6:15-21; Matthew 14:22-36). Jesus cast demons out of an insane, demonised man (Mark 5:1-20).
  4. Jesus had power to forgive sins, Mohammed didn't. "Son of man has power on earth to forgive sins" 24 This proves Jesus is God. "who can forgive sins, but God alone?" (Luke 5:17-26).
  5. Jesus rose from the dead, Mohammed didn't. (John 20:1-31; Luke 24:1-53). Jesus raised Himself from the dead: "Destroy this temple and in 3 days I will raise it up." John 2:19.
  6. Jesus ascended visibly to heaven, Mohammed didn't. (cloud received him out of their sight. Ac1:9-11)
  7. Jesus accepted worship as God, Mohammed didn't (John 9:38; Luke 24:52). **Q:** Would Jesus lie?
  8. Jesus claimed equality with God, Mohammed didn't. John called Jesus: 'the Word was God' John 1:1 'Jews sought to kill him, because he said that God was his Father, making himself equal with God.' John 5:18 Jesus said He was God: "If ye believe not that I am, ye shall die in your sins." John 8:24. (Ex.3:14). "That all men should honour the Son, even as they honour the Father." John 5:23.
  - Thomas called Jesus "My Lord and my God." John 20:28. Jesus has 120 attributes of God. Ans811 Paul called Jesus: "God was manifest in the flesh." I Timothy 3:16.
  - Isaiah called Jesus: "The Mighty God." Isaiah 9:6. "Father, Word, Holy Ghost:...are one." I John 5:7.
  9. The Prophets called Jesus the "Son of God" meaning that He was identical with God.  
**Question:** How can God have a Son? **Answer:** As man is soul, body, spirit, so God is Father, Son, HS.
    - a) Daniel called Jesus the Son of God: "the form of the fourth is like the Son of God." Dan 3:25
    - b) David said that God has a Son: "Kiss the Son lest he be angry." Psalm 2:12.
    - c) Solomon said that God has a Son: "Who hath established the ends of the earth? (God) What is his name, and what is his son's name, if thou canst tell?" Proverbs 30:4,5.
    - d) Gabriel called Jesus the Son of God: 'He shall be great, &shall be called the Son of the Highest (v32), that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God.' Luke 1:26-35
    - e) Jesus called Himself the Son of God on 4 occasions: John 5:25; 9:35; 10:36; 11:4.
    - f) God the Father called Jesus "my beloved Son" at His baptism. (Matthew 17:5).
    - g) 8 New Testament characters called Jesus the Son of God: John the Baptist (John 1:34), Nathanael (John 1:49); Peter (John 6:69); Martha (John 11:27); John (John 20:31); Centurion 'Truly this was the Son of God.' (Matt. 27:54); Paul (Rom.1:4); Ethiopian Eunuch (Acts 8:37)
  10. Jesus was sinless, Mohammed was a sinner, a murderer. Those testifying that Jesus was sinless were: Pilate's wife (Mat.27:19), Pilate (Mat.27:24), thief on the cross (Luke 23:41); Judas (Mt.27:4)
  11. Jesus died for the sins of the world, Mohammed didn't. "While we were yet sinners, Christ died for us." (Romans 5:8). "The Lord hath laid on him the iniquity of us all." (Isaiah 53:6).
  12. Jesus fulfilled many Old Testament prophecies, Mohammed didn't. See Table of 45 Prophecies.
  13. Jesus prophesied the future, Mohammed didn't.
    - a) The Roman destruction of Jerusalem. (Luke 19:41-44).
    - b) The only escape from this Roman invasion was to flee to the mountains when you see Jerusalem surrounded with armies. (Luke 21:20-24).
    - c) False Christs, wars, famines, disease, earthquakes, gospel preached worldwide (Mat.24:1-14)
    - d) The Roman destruction of the Temple. (Matthew 24:2).
    - e) Jerusalem being under Gentile control until the end of the age. (Luke 21:24).

14. Jesus gave **superior teachings**. Mohammed's teachings are repetitive, hate filled, many threats of hell, fanciful (turning people to apes), violent, inciting to war, contradictory, fatalistic, anti-Christ and anti-Christian, fear of Allah's punishment, and discriminating against women (Quran 4:34).
  15. Jesus promised to return to earth to set up His kingdom, resurrect and judge all men, Mohammed didn't. "I will come again." (John 14:3). Angels promised it (Acts 1:10,11).
  16. Jesus cast out demons who called him "the Holy One of God" (Luke 4:31-37). Mohammed didn't, but accepted the help of demons/jinn to spread Islam. (72:1-).
  17. Jesus' place of birth (Bethlehem in Micah 5:2) and time of coming to offer Himself as King of Israel (3pm 29 March, 33AD in Daniel 9:24-26) were prophesied by the prophets Micah & Daniel.
  18. Jesus showed love, compassion and forgiveness to sinners (eg: Woman taken in adultery, harlots, sufferers) Mohammed didn't (100 lashes for adulterer (24:2), cut off a thief's hand (5:39)).
  19. Jesus sent the **Holy Spirit** as our Comforter, Mohammed didn't. "But the Comforter, which is the **Holy Ghost**, whom the Father will send in my name.." (John 14:26,16-18; 16:7-14).  
Holy Spirit is the Comforter, not Mohammed because a) He shall be **with you forever** (John 14:16)  
b) The disciples knew Him "**ye know him**" (John 14:17). c) He shall be **in you** (John 14:17).  
d) Be called the **Holy Ghost** (John 14:26). e) Be called the **Spirit of Truth** (John 16:13); M abrogated f) **Glorify Jesus** (John 16:14). Mohammed did none of these. Islam hopes **you won't read John 14:26**
  20. Jesus' birth and death were witnessed by **signs in heaven**. The Bethlehem star guided wise men from the east (Matthew 2:1,2,7-10), and darkness covered the earth for 3 hours at His death (12-3pm; Matt 27:45; Mark 15:33). Mohammed had no heavenly signs witnessing his birth or death.
  21. Jesus gave us a **high moral example to follow**. Mohammed gave us a **low moral example** of war, murdering people to spread Islam, stealing, taking slave girls and other men's wives, lying, etc.
  22. Jesus won people by **love, truth, miracles**. Mohammed won people by **sword, violence, threats, terror** ('Make war' 8:39; 9:73 'Fight' 9:29; 'Fighting is obligatory for you' 2:216; 'cut' 8:12).
  23. Jesus preached peace ('Peace I leave with you' John 14:27) and **love your enemies** (Matt 5:44). Mohammed preached fighting ("Fighting is obligatory." Q2:216; "Make war on them." Q 8:39).
  24. Jesus commanded Christians to **love one another**, Mohammed commanded Muslims to **fight Christians and Jews**. "Fight against those to whom the **Scriptures** were given." (Q9:29).  
"Believers (Muslims), take neither **Jews** nor **Christians** for your friends." (Q5:51).  
"A new commandment I give unto you that ye love one another as I have loved you." John 13:34.
  25. Jesus guarantees **Christians a home in heaven**, Mohammed doesn't. . Mohammed was unsure of heaven (Q46:9; Buk.Vol 1,372 ). Jesus said to Christians "I go to prepare a place for you" John 14:2 "He that has the Son has life" I Jn5:12. "rejoice because your names are written in heaven." Luk10:20 **Moh:** "none is secure from the punishment of their Lord." Q70:28. 'nor do I know what will be done with me or with you' Q46:9. Q19:71 says all Muslims go through or over hell. 'There is not.'
  26. Jesus never took other men's wives for himself, Mohammed took Zayneb off his adopted son Zayd, and got Allah to approve it. ('Keep your wife to yourself... We gave her to you..' Q33:37).
  27. Jesus never killed or robbed anyone, Mohammed ordered his men to kill thousands of men (800 Bani Qurayza 33:26), steal their goods, take their wives, daughters as slave girls. 'slaves you possess' Q4:3
  28. Jesus elevated, honoured and defended women. "why trouble ye the woman?" (Matthew 26:10). Mohammed taught men to beat their wives (4:34), to replace wives (4:20), to treat them like fields (2:223), to take women as slave girls (33:52; 4:3), called them enemies (64:14), and that men are superior to women (4:34; 2:228).
  29. Jesus forbade violence, but Mohammed commanded it. "Jesus said, Put up again thy sword into his place; for all they that take the sword shall perish with the sword." Matthew 26:52.  
"Whoever fights for the cause of Allah, we shall richly reward him. (Q4:74).  
"True believers fight for the cause of Allah." (Q4:76).
  30. Jesus has a personal relationship with Christians, changing us to loving, kind, peaceful people. Mohammed has no relationship with Muslims. No Muslim knows Mohammed or Allah personally. Christians know God the Father & God the Son personally. "truly our fellowship is with the Father and with his Son Jesus Christ." I John 1:3.
- Jesus died for your sins and rose again. Call on Jesus Christ to save you from your sins now.**  
"Whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved." Romans 10:13.

**120. MAIN QUOTES IN THE KORAN.** The Koran is divided into 114 Chapters or Suras, named:

**2. COW** v.67-71 This Sura is “the Koran in summary” having all the main points mentioned elsewhere  
**2:1** This book is not to be doubted. It is a guide to the righteous who...trust what has been revealed to you. Note: The Koran testifies of itself which proves nothing. Jesus and the Bible are testified to by:  
i) John the Baptist (John 5:33-35).  
ii) Christ’s miracles (John 5:36).

iii) God the Father (John 5:37; Matthew 3:17 speaking at Christ’s baptism).  
iv) Many Old Testament Scriptures prophesying of Christ (John 5:39).  
v) Christ’s many prophesies: Jerusalem’s destruction; Jewish dispersion & regathering in the end days.  
vi) Christ’s death for our sins and the resurrection from the dead. (Q 3:55).  
vii) Christ’s message of love and peace compared to Mohammed’s message of hate and war on unbelievers and repetitive threats of punishment in hell, designed to scare readers into conversion.

**2:25** Proclaim good tidings to those who have faith and do good works. They shall dwell in gardens ...fruit to eat. Wedded to chaste spouses, they shall abide therein forever.

Note: This Muslim concept of heaven is clearly man made because:

i) It only contains the best things imaginable to Arab males of 7<sup>th</sup> Century Arabia; gardens, fruit, wine and sex with many women.  
ii) Allah is rarely mentioned in the Muslim heaven.

iii) Women are rarely if ever mentioned in the Muslim heaven.

iv) There are no mentally stimulating benefits in the Muslim heaven such as service to God, opportunity to serve others, ruling in a new universe, only the satisfaction of selfish sensual desires.

**2:34** When we said to the angels: “Prostrate yourselves before Adam”, they all prostrated themselves except Satan who in his pride refused and became an unbeliever.

Note: This story is contrary to the Bible (Genesis 2:16,17). It is recorded about 7 times in the Koran. This makes Satan look good and Allah look bad. (2:34; 7:11; 15:30-33; 17:61,62; 18:50; 20:115; 38:75

**2:41** Have faith in my revelations which confirm your scriptures.

Note: The Koran does not confirm the Bible, but contradicts it on almost every page and on every doctrine, such as Salvation, God, Christ being Son of God, dying, heaven, Israel. (2:87,89).

**2:63-65** Two far-fetched, unbiblical fables are that:

i) Allah “raised the Mount (Sinai) above Israel when giving the covenant. (4:154; 2:63,93).  
ii) You have heard of those of you that broke the Sabbath. We said to them: “You shall be changed into detested apes.” We made their fate an example to their own generation...

**2:79** Woe to those that write the scriptures with their own hands and then declare:“This is from Allah.”

Note: This well describes the Koran as being man made. It differs everywhere from the Bible in that:

i) It Contains no prophesies that have come true.

ii) Has a totally different style and subject matter to every prophet and apostle in the Bible.

iii) It fails to glorify Christ. Christ is honoured in every book of the Bible.

**2:97** Say: “Whoever is an enemy of Gabriel (who has by Allah’s grace revealed to you the Koran... confirming previous scriptures)...an enemy of Allah, His angels, His apostles, of Gabriel, or Michael, will surely find that Allah is the enemy of the unbelievers.”

Note: The Koran in order to build acceptance and credibility claims support from previous sources of the truth such as Allah, angels, prophets, apostles, Gabriel and Michael. When we study their words in the Bible their message is totally different from the Koran. How many Muslims have carefully studied the Bible?

Note: i) Michael the archangel stands for Israel (Daniel 12:1), but the Koran opposes Israel (98:6).

ii) Gabriel’s message in the Bible is opposite to the Koran’s message about Christ:

“in the sixth month the angel Gabriel was sent from God... to a virgin (v.26,27).

The angel said unto her “Fear not, Mary: for thou hast found favour with God. And behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name JESUS. (v.30,31). He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest... of his kingdom there shall be no end. (v.32,33)... that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God.” (v.35). Luke 2:26-35.

The Koran denies that God has a Son, yet the Bible, the apostles, and prophets Daniel (3:25), David (Psalm 2), Solomon (Proverbs 30:4), and Gabriel all say that God has a Son. Who do you believe?

**2:106** If we abrogate a verse or cause it to be forgotten, we will replace it by a better one or one similar. Did you not know that Allah has power over all things?

Note: This verse is fatal to Islam and the Koran, because if Allah can change his mind about whether a verse is in scripture & replace it with a better verse, then Allah is not the all-knowing God of the Bible.

**2:118** The ignorant ask: “Why does Allah not speak to us, or give us a sign?”

Note: These people are not ignorant, but they ask a very good question. The Bible prophets and apostles showed signs and miracles to prove they were truly from God, something that Mohammed could never do. (see Mark 16:20 “Confirming the word with signs following”; 2 Cor.12:12 “Truly the signs of an apostle were wrought among you in all patience, in signs, and wonders, and mighty deeds.”) Isaiah 41:23 says, “Show the things that are to come hereafter, that we may know that ye are gods.”) Mohammed could never do miracles as Jesus did, nor could Mohammed prophecy the future as did Jesus, the Bible prophets and the Apostles.

**2:127** Abraham and Ishmael built the house (The Kabah at Mecca) and dedicated it... Make of our descendants a nation that will submit to you.

Note: There is no Bible evidence or historical evidence that Abraham or Ishmael ever went to Mecca. This is only in the imagination of Mohammed in order to gain support from the Bible.

**2:136** Say: “We believe in Allah and that which is revealed to us (Koran); in what was revealed to Abraham, Ishmael, Isaac, Jacob and the tribes; to Moses, Jesus and the other prophets by their Lord.

Note: Again the Koran appeals to these men to support the Muslim faith. If Muslims studied Bible writings they would see how opposite their teachings are to Mohammed and to the Koran.

**2:154** Do not say that those slain in the cause of Allah are dead. They are alive, but you are not aware of them.

**2:137** He has forbidden you carriion, blood, and the flesh of swine.

**2:185** In the month of Ramadan the Koran was revealed.

**2:216** Fighting is obligatory for you, much as you dislike it.

But you may hate a thing although it is good for you. Allah knows.

**2:217** Whoever of you recants and dies an unbeliever,... shall be the tenants of the Fire, wherein they shall abide forever.

Note: This verse keeps Muslims trapped in Islam for fear of hell.

**2:218** Those that have embraced the faith and those that have fled their land and fought for the cause of Allah, may hope for Allah’s mercy.

**2:221** You shall not wed pagan women, unless they embrace the faith.

**2:223** Women are your fields: go, then, into your fields whence you please.

Note: Women are here compared to an impersonal field of dirt to be used for a man’s own benefit. The Bible gives much greater honour to wives in 1 Peter 3:7: “Husbands, dwell with them according to knowledge, giving honour unto the wife, as unto the weaker vessel, and as being heirs together of the grace of life: that your prayers be not hindered.”

**2:228** Men have a status above women.

**2:230** If a man divorces his wife he cannot remarry her until she has wedded another man and been divorced by him; in which case it shall be no offence for either of them to return to the other.

Note: This clearly contradicts God’s law given to Moses in Deuteronomy 24:1-4 “Her former husband which sent her away, may not take her again to be his wife,... for that is abomination before the Lord. Thou shalt not cause the land to sin.”

**2:244** Fight for the cause of Allah.

**2:246** The Israelites demanded of one of their prophets: “Raise up for us a king and we will fight for the cause of Allah. He replied: “What if you refuse to fight when ordered to do so?” They said: “Why should we refuse to fight for the cause of Allah?” But when at last they were ordered to fight, they all refused except a few of them. Allah knows the evil-doers.”

Note: i) This comes from 1 Samuel 8:1-22 which says: “Make us king to judge us like all the nations.” (v.5)... “that our king may judge us, and go out before us, fight our battles.” (v.20).

The people gave no promise here to fight for the cause of Allah, nor did the Koran's alleged conversation take place.

ii) This passage in the Koran portrays Allah declaring as evil-doers those who refused to fight. This motivates Muslims to fight if they wish to please Allah.

**2:249** When Saul marched out with his army, he said: "Allah will prove you at a certain river. He that drinks from it shall cease to be my soldier, but he that... contents himself with a taste of it in the hollow of his hand, shall fight by my side."

iii) Error in the Koran: The writer of the Koran here confused Saul (1100 BC) with Gideon, (1250 BC). It was Gideon who God told to take his troops to a river to reduce their numbers from 10,000 to 300 by this same drinking test, not Saul. (Judges 7:1-7).

**2:253** We gave Jesus the son of Mary clear signs (proofs) (of Allah's sovereignty) and strengthened him with the Holy Spirit.

Note: i) Jesus was proven by HIS miraculous signs, but Mohammed gave no miracles. Hence Jesus, the prophets and apostles who worked miracles are superior to Mohammed, who worked no miracles.

ii) Allah the moon god of Arabia did not give Jesus clear signs, but it was Jesus' Heavenly Father, the Jehovah God of the Bible who gave these miracles to authenticate Jehovah God the Son as the Messiah and Saviour of the world. Muslims suffer a case of mistaken identity. Their Allah is not the God of the Bible, but the pagan moon god of Arabia. The God of the Bible warns: "I am Jehovah thy God,... Thou shalt have no other gods before me." (Exodus 20:3).

**2:256** There shall be no compulsion in religion.

Note: i) This is contradicted by Sura 8:39 "Make war on them until idolatry shall cease and Allah's religion shall reign supreme."

ii) 2:256 is intended to convince non-Muslims that Islam is a peaceful religion. This is contradicted by "True Muslims **fight** for Allah." (4:76).

**2:259** Allah killed a man, and after 100 years brought him back to life.

This was a Jewish fable of the time, that Mohammed put in the Koran.

**2:260** Allah told Abraham to "Take 4 birds, draw them to you, and cut their bodies to pieces. Scatter them over the mountain tops, then call them back. They will come swiftly to you."

This was a well known fable in Mohammed's time.

**2:271** To give alms (money) in private is better and will atone for some of your sins.

Note: This teaches the error that man can buy his way into heaven. Psalm 49:7 refutes this error.

**Q:** What about a poor man who has no money? Does he go to hell, while a rich man buys his way to heaven?

**2:273** As for those needy men who, being wholly pre-occupied with fighting for the cause of Allah, cannot travel the land in quest of trading ventures... whatever alms you give are known to Allah.

Note: Here the Koran teaches that it is right to sponsor terrorism by paying those who fight for Allah.

**2:275,276,278** Allah has permitted trading and made usury (charging and receiving interest)

unlawful. Those that turn back shall be inmates of the Fire. Allah has laid his curse on usury. Waive what is still due to you from usury.

Note: Most Muslims, Muslim banks, and Muslim governments disobey the Koran here by charging interest and paying interest. This law against interest makes banks unviable. Hence, a pure Islamic state like the Taliban's Afganistan regime could have no banks. They use Pakistan's banks at their borders.

**2:284** Allah will forgive whom he will and punish whom he pleases. Note: No certainty of salvation.

**2:285** They all believe Allah, His angels, His Scriptures, and His apostles. We make no distinction (don't discriminate) against any of His messengers.

Note: False. Muslims do give Mohammed a greater distinction than Jesus and all other Bible prophets.

### 3. The IMRANS (v.32)

**3:4** Those who disbelieve Allah's revelations shall be sternly punished.

**3:11** Allah is severe in punishment.

**3:12** Say to the unbelievers: "You shall be overthrown and driven into hell."

**3:15** The righteous shall be rewarded with... spouses of perfect chastity and contentment before Allah.

**3:16** Those of Allah's servants who say: "Allah we believe in you, forgive us our sins and keep us from the torment of the Fire."

Note: This shows that no Muslim is sure of escaping hell and going to heaven.

**3:19** The only true faith in Allah's sight is Islam.

**3:32** Say "Obey Allah and the Apostle (Muhammed)." If they give no heed, then Allah does not love the unbelievers.

Note: The God of the Bible loves the world of unbelievers (John 3:16 "God so loved the world...").

**3:49** Allah said: "I bring you a sign from your Lord. From clay I will make for you the likeness of a bird. I shall breathe into it and, by Allah's leave it shall become a living bird."

Note: This fable was copied from Thomas' "Gospel of the Infancy of Christ" and placed in the Koran here. The Bible tells us that Jesus' first miracle was at Cana of Galilee, not as a child. (John 2:11).

**3:49** Jesus said: "By Allah's leave I shall heal the blind man, and the leper, and raise the dead to life."

Note: These miracles of Christ prove that Christ is much greater than Mohammed who never did any miracles.

**3:54** Allah is the supreme plotter (best of schemers).

Note: This permits Muslims to plot and scheme treachery because they are just following their god's example. The God of the Bible is honest and truthful.

**3:57** Allah does not love the evil-doers.

**3:62** This is the whole truth: "There is no god but Allah." Isaiah 44:6,8; 45:5,21 'no god but Jehovah.'

**3:69** Some of the People of the Book (Jews and Christians), wish to mislead you.

**3:70** People of the Book! Why do you disbelieve in the revelations of Allah...? See section "Why nobody should become a Muslim," page 993 for 20 reasons.

**3:81** When Allah made his covenant with the prophets, he said: "Here are the scriptures and wisdom which I have given you. Afterward there will come unto you a messenger (or apostle) to confirm them. You shall believe in him and help him."

Note: This comes from Deuteronomy 18:18,19 where God says: "I will raise them (Israel) up a Prophet (Christ, not Mohammed) from among their brethren (Mohammed was not a Jew, but a Gentile Arabian), like unto thee (Moses), and will put my words in his mouth..."

Muslims claim that this prophecy refers to Mohammed, but the Prophet was Jesus Christ because:

i) Jesus was an Israelite, Mohammed was not.

ii) Jesus Christ prophesied the future, Mohammed did not.

iii) Jesus was like Moses in 61 ways (page 1087), Mohammed was not.

iv) Jesus spoke kind words of God, Mohammed spoke words of hate.

v) Jesus went about doing good(Act10:38). Mohammed went about raiding cities, massacring innocent.

**3:85** He that chooses a religion other than Islam (surrender to Allah), it will not be accepted of him, and he will be a loser in the hereafter.

**3:96,97** The first temple ever to be built for mankind was that at Bakkah (Mecca). In it there are clear signs and the spot where Abraham stood to pray... Pilgrimage to the House is a duty to Allah for all who can make the journey.

Note: i) There is no Biblical or historical evidence that Abraham ever visited Mecca.

ii) The Tabernacle, Solomon's temple or Herod's temple were earlier than the Kabah at Mecca.

**3:125** If you have patience and guard yourselves against evil, Allah will send to your aid 5000 angels, if they suddenly attack you.

Note: This angelic help promised to Muslims gives them confidence to start wars against large armies.

**3:151** Obey Allah and the Apostle that you may find mercy. We shall put terror in the hearts of the unbelievers, because they ascribe unto Allah partners.their habitation is the Fire.

Note: i) This permits Muslims to commit acts of terror.

ii) The Koran refers to Christians as hellbound because we believe Jesus is the Son of God.

**3:157,158** If you should die or be slain in the cause of Allah, His forgiveness and mercy would be better than all the riches they amass. (If you should die or be slain) before Allah you will all be gathered. Note: This promises heaven to all Muslims who die fighting for the cause of Allah.

**3:166** The misfortune which befell you when the two armies met was ordained by Allah.

**3:169** Never think that those who were slain in the cause of Allah are dead. No, they are alive, and well provided for by their Lord. Allah will not deny the faithful their reward.

**3:195** Those who fought and were slain (for my cause): I shall forgive their sins and admit them to gardens watered by running streams, as a reward from Allah.

## **WOMEN**

**4:3** If you fear that you cannot treat orphan girls with fairness, then you may marry other women who seem good to you. 2, 3, or 4 of them. But if you fear that you cannot maintain equality among them, marry one only or any slave girls you may own.

Note: This endorsement of the Koran that a man is allowed to marry as many slave girls as he wishes, inevitably leads to them being treated as second class citizens, and denies them the chance of having an husband of their own. It denies many men the chance to be married.

**4:11** A male shall inherit twice as much as a female.

**4:15** If any of your women commit fornication, call in 4 witnesses from among yourselves against them; if they testify to their guilt confine them to their houses till death overtakes them, or till Allah finds another way for them.

**Q:** What penalty exists for men committing fornication? None. He can fornicate by having a “temporary marriage” called Mutah, or a one-night stand.

**4:20** If you wish to replace a wife with another, do not take from her the dowry you have given her...

**4:34** Men have authority over women because God has made the one superior to the other, and because they spend their wealth to maintain them.

**4:34** As for those from whom you fear disobedience, admonish them, and send them to their beds apart, and beat (scourge) them.

Note: Here the Koran encourages men to scourge (beat severely) their wives even on the suspicion of disobedience. The Bible never gives husbands permission for this, but commands “husbands to love your wives as Christ loved the church and gave himself for it”. (Ephesians 5:25).

What harsh power the Koran gives men over women.

**4:56** Those that deny our revelations we will burn in the Fire. No sooner will their skins be consumed than we shall give them other skins, so that they may truly taste the scourge.

Note: What terror-inducing rubbish! Thankfully the love and permanent salvation of Jesus Christ saves us from such fear (John 10:28). “deliver them who through fear of death were all their lifetime” Heb2:15

**4:57** As for those that have faith and do good works, we shall admit them to the gardens... where, wedded to chaste spouses, they shall abide forever.

**4:66** Had we commanded them saying: “Lay down your lives...only a few would have complied. Yet had they done what they were admonished to do, it would have been better for them... We would have bestowed on them from ourself a rich reward.

**4:74** Let those who would exchange the life of this world for the hereafter, fight for the cause of Allah; whoever fights for the cause of Allah, whether he dies or triumphs, we shall richly reward him.

**4:76** True believers fight for the cause of Allah.

**4:77** When they were ordered to fight, some of them feared man as much as they feared Allah. They said: “Lord, why do you bid us fight? Could you not give us a brief respite?”

**4:80** He that obeys the Apostle (Mohammed) obeys Allah.

Note: This was a clever trick by Mohammed to manipulate people into obeying him. God said no such thing. Jeremiah 23:16 “Thus saith the LORD of hosts, Hearken not unto the words of the prophets that prophesy unto you: they make you vain (1891= vain in expectation, to lead astray): they speak a vision of their own heart, and not out of the mouth of the Lord.”

**4:82** If it (Quran) had not come from Allah, they could have surely found in it many contradictions.

Note: People have found many contradictions in it such as, Pharaoh (1500BC), Haman (510BC), Tower of Babel (2250BC) all coexisting (28:38).

**4:84** Therefore fight for the cause of Allah. Rouse the faithful: perchance Allah will overthrow the might of the unbelievers.

**4:89** If they desert you, seize them and put them to death wherever you find them.

Note: Fear of death is why so few people leave Islam. This is a big reason not to become a Muslim.

**4:91** If these do not keep their distance from you, nor offer you peace, nor cease their hostilities against you, lay hold of them, and kill them wherever you find them.

**4:93** He that kills a believer by design shall burn in hell forever.

**4:94** Believers, show discernment when you go to fight for the cause of Allah.

**4:95** i) The believers who stay at home are not the equals of those who fight for the cause of Allah, with their goods and persons.

ii) Allah has given those that fight with their goods & persons a higher rank than those that stay at home

iii) Far richer is the reward of those who fight for Allah.

Note: Jesus said: “all they that take the sword shall perish with the sword.” Matthew 26:52.

“if my kingdom were of this world, then would my servants fight.” John 19:36.

**4:100** He that leaves his dwelling to fight for Allah and his apostle, and is then overtaken by death, shall be rewarded by Allah.

Note: This reminds us of terrorists who go overseas to fight for Allah and who die as a result.

**4:104** Seek out your enemies relentlessly.

Note: Jesus said: “Love your enemies.” Matthew 5:44.

**4:107** Allah does not love the treacherous or the sinful.

Note: This proves that the Koran is not from the Holy God of the Bible, because all men are sinful compared to God. Man’s typical thinking is that he is good compared to others. If God wrote the Koran, it would teach that all men are sinful.

**4:116** Allah will not forgive idolatry.

Note: Error in the Koran here. Jesus said: “All manner of sin and blasphemy shall be forgiven unto men: but the blasphemy against the Holy Ghost shall not be forgiven unto men.” (Matthew 12:31,32).

**4:124** Believers who do good works, both men and women shall enter paradise.

Note: This contradicts over 50 New Testament references that good works don’t save us (Eph.2:8-10; Galatians 2:16). None of us are good compared to God.

**4:141** Allah will not let the unbelievers triumph over the faithful.

Note: This is false as seen by Charles Martel of Europe who defeated the Muslim invaders at the Battle of Tours in 732 AD. This promise makes Muslims feel invincible in warfare.

**4:157** They did not kill him (Jesus), nor did they crucify him, but they thought they did... They did not slay him for certain. Allah lifted him up to himself.

Note: This contradicts the prophets David (Psalm 22:16), Isaiah (53), Daniel (9:26), NT prophets, Jesus (Mark 9:31; 10:34 “shall kill him”), and Quran 19:33 “Blessed I shall be on the day of my death.”

**4:163** We have revealed our will to you (Mohammed) as we revealed it to Noah, Abraham, Ishmael, Isaac, Jacob, Jesus, Job, Jonah, Aaron, Solomon and David.

Note: The true prophet David in Psalm 2:12 calls Jesus the “Son” in the phrase, “Kiss the Son,” contradicting the false prophet Mohammad.

**4:171** People of the Book (Christians):...Believe in Allah and his apostles and do not say “THREE” ...God is but one God. God forbid that He should have a son.

Note: Yes Christians believe that God is one God, but that He has 3 parts (Father, Son, Holy Spirit) each of which is fully God. Jesus is fully God and fully man. As humans have a body, soul and spirit, so God has Father, Son and Holy Spirit, all fully and equally God. The OT and the NT teach this.

**The TABLE** (v.112)

**5:16** Unbelievers are those who declare: “God is the Messiah, the son of Mary.” Say, “Who could prevent Allah, if he so willed, from destroying the Messiah, the son of Mary, his mother, and all the people of the earth?” Note: This is what Satan wants.

**5:30,31** Raven taught Cain how to bury Abel. This was copied from the Targum of Jerusalem.

**5:34** Those that make war against Allah and his apostle and spread disorder in the land shall be put to death or crucified, or have their hands and feet cut off on alternate sides, or be banished from the land.

**5:35** Fight valiantly for His cause, so that you may triumph.

**5:39** As for the man or woman who is guilty of theft, cut off their hands to punish them for their crimes

**5:46,47** Jesus...We gave him the gospel. Note: The Koran never defines the gospel of Christ but the Bible does. (I Cor.15:1-4).

**5:48** The Koran confirms the Scriptures which came before it. Note: False to those who know the Bible

**5:51** Believers (Muslims), take neither the Jews nor the Christians for your friends ...wrongdoers.

**5:56** Believers (Muslims), do not seek friendship of the infidels and those who were given the Book (Bible) before you, who have made your religion a jest.

**5:60** Those whom God has cursed...transforming them into apes and swine. (7:166).

Note: This is unscientific. It never happens.

**5:72** Unbelievers are those that say: "God is the Messiah, the son of Mary."

**5:73** Unbelievers are those that say: "God is one of three." Mohammad never knew Greek or Trinity.

**5:88** Allah does not love the transgressors. (7:55).

**5:116** Allah will say: "Jesus, son of Mary, did you ever say to mankind: 'Worship me and my mother as gods beside God'?"

Note: The Koran's error in thinking that the Trinity is "God, Jesus and Mary".

## CATTLE

**6:39** Allah confounds whom He will, and guides to the right path whom He pleases.

This is the error of Fatalism.

**6:51** They have no guardian or intercessor besides Allah. Note: Jesus is our intercessor. I Timothy2:5,6

**6:88** We chose them.

**6:87** We gave him Isaac, Jacob, Noah, David, Solomon, Job, Joseph, Moses, Aaron, Zacharias, John, Jesus, Elias (Elijah), Ishmael, Elisha, Jonah, Lot.

**6:101** How should he have a son when he had no consort? Because Jesus is not a teknon son, but Huios

**6:145** Who is more wicked than the man who in his ignorance invents a lie about Allah to mislead others? Note: This is exactly what Mohammed has done with the Koran. Bible was proven by miracles.

## THE HEIGHTS

**7:24** Allah who created the heaven and the earth in 6 days. Note: Q 41:9,10,12 says 8 days.

**7:64** We saved him (Noah) & all who were with him in the ark. Note: Q 11:42,43 says 1 son drowned.

**7:124** Pharaoh "Then I will crucify you all." Note: Wrong, as crucifixion was not invented in 1500 BC.

**7:157** Those who shall follow the Prophet-- whom they shall find described in the Torah and the Gospel. Note: This is wrong, because Deuteronomy 18:15-18 describe Jesus Christ not Mohammed.

**7:163** Each Sabbath the fish appeared before them floating on the water, but on week days they never came near them. Thus did we tempt them because they did wrong.

**7:167** He would raise against them (Jews) others who would oppress them cruelly till the day of Resurrection.

**7:179** We have predestined for hell numerous jinn and men.

## THE SPOILS

**8:12** Allah revealed his will to the angels saying: "...I shall cast terror into the hearts of the infidels, strike off their heads, strike off the very tips of their fingers...that was because they defied Allah and his apostle." Note: This is the cause of modern Muslim terrorism to gain world domination.

**8:30** Allah is the best of plotters.

**8:39** Make war on them until idolatry shall cease and Allah's religion shall reign supreme.

**8:41** Know that one-fifth of your spoils shall belong to Allah, and the apostle.

**8:59** Let not the unbelievers think that they will ever get away...Muster against them all the men and cavalry at your command, so that you may strike terror into the enemy of Allah, and your enemy and others beside them who are unknown to you but known to Allah.

**8:65** Prophet, rouse the faithful to arms. O Prophet, exhort the believer to fight. If there are 20 steadfast among you, they shall vanquish 200; and if there are 100, they shall route 1000 unbelievers, for they are devoid of understanding." Note: Mohammad did not foresee smart missiles killing terrorists.

**8:67** A prophet may not take captives until he has fought and triumphed (made slaughter) in the land.

**8:69** Enjoy the good and lawful things you have gained in war.

**8:74** Those that have fought for the cause of Allah, sheltered & helped them, they are the true believers

## REPENTANCE (v.104)

Marks end of idolatry in Arabia. Christian Byzantine Empire had begun to move against the growing Muslim power. This Surah mentions a greater war to come, and instructions with regard to it. v.38-99. Arab tribes who failed to join Muslims in the Tabuk campaign are the “Hypocrites” or half-hearted supporters of Islam.

**9:5** When the sacred months are over, slay the idolaters wherever you find them. Arrest them, besiege them and lie in ambush everywhere for them.

**9:12** If, after coming to terms with you, they break their oaths, and revile your faith, make war on the leaders of unbelief.

**9:14** Make war on them: Allah will chastise them at your hands and humble them. He will grant you victory over them.

**9:18** None should visit the Mosques of Allah except those who believe in Allah and the last day...

**9:19** Worthy is the man that believes in Allah and the last day and fights for Allah's cause.

**9:20** Those that have embraced the faith and left their homes and fought for Allah's cause with their wealth and persons are held in higher regard by Allah. It is they who shall triumph. Their Lord has promised them joy and mercy, and gardens of eternal bliss where they shall dwell forever. Allah's reward is great indeed.

**9:25** Allah has given you victory on many battlefields.

**9:27** Allah will show mercy to whom he will.

**9:29** Fight against such of those to whom the Scriptures were given as believe neither in Allah nor the last Day, who do not forbid what Allah and his apostle have forbidden, and do not embrace the true faith, until they pay tribute out of hand and are utterly subdued.

**9:30** The Jews say Ezra is the Son of God, while Christians say the Messiah is the Son of God. Such are their assertions, by which they imitate the infidels of old. Allah (Himself) fights against them. How perverse are they.

**9:33** It is he who has sent forth his apostle with guidance and true faith to make it triumphant over all religions.

**9:36** You may fight against idolaters in all those months since they fight against you in all of them.

**9:39** If you do not go to war, He will punish you severely, and replace you by other men.

**9:41** Whether unarmed or well-equipped, march on and fight for the cause of Allah, with your wealth and with your persons.

**9:49** Some say “Give us leave to stay behind...” Hell shall engulf the unbelievers.

**9:61** Those that wrong the apostle of Allah shall be sternly punished.

**9:63** The man who defies Allah and His apostle shall abide forever in the fire of Hell.

**9:73** Prophet, make war on the unbelievers and the hypocrites and deal harshly with them. Hell shall be their home: an evil fate.

**9:81** They said to each other: “Do not go to war, the heat is fierce.” Say unto them “More fierce is the heat of Hell-fire.” ...thus shall they be rewarded for their misdeeds.

**9:93** The offenders are those that seek exemption although they are men of wealth...

**9:95** Hell shall be their home, the punishment for their misdeeds.

**9:103** Take alms from them, so that they may thereby be cleansed and purified.

Note: This teaches the error of earning salvation by giving money.

**9:111** Allah has purchased from the faithful their lives and worldly goods and in return has promised them the Garden. They will fight for the cause of Allah, slay, and be slain. Such is the true promise which he has made them in the Torah, the Gospel, and the Koran. And who is more true to His people than Allah? Rejoice then in the bargain you have made. That is the supreme triumph.

**9:122** It is not right that all the faithful should go to war at once.

**9:123** Believers, make war on the infidels who dwell around you. Deal harshly with them. Know that Allah is with the righteous.

## JONAH

**10:3** Unbelievers say: “This man is a skilled enchanter.”

**10:4** Allah created the heaven and earth in 6 days. (11:7).

**10:38** This Koran...confirms what was revealed before it and fully explains the Scriptures. (Wrong).

**10:69** They say: "Allah has begotten a son." God forbid.

**10:74** We saved Noah and those who were with him in the ark.

**10:95** If you (Mohammed) doubt what we have revealed to you, then ask those who read the scriptures that were before you. Note: Any Bible informed Christian will deny the Koran.

**10:101** None can have faith (believe) except by the will (permission) of Allah.

**HUD** (v.50 Prophet of Arabia)

**11:34** If Allah's will is to keep you astray.

**11:42.43** Noah cried to his son who stood apart "Come ride with us, and be not with the unbelievers!" He replied: "I shall seek refuge in a mountain, which will protect me from the flood." The wave rolled between them and Noah's son was drowned. Note: There were no mountains before the Flood (Gen7:19)

**11:114** Good deeds annul ill deeds. Note: This teaches the error of salvation by good works.

**11:119** The word of your Lord shall be fulfilled: "I will fill Hell with jinn and mankind together."

**JOSEPH.** Jacob is portrayed as a prophet who was not deceived by his sons' story of Joseph's death, but strangely enough is distressed through a suspension of his clairvoyance, that he cannot see what has become of Joseph.

**12:111** It is no invented story but a confirmation of the existing scriptures...(Wrong).

**12:96** He threw Joseph's shirt over the old man's face, & he regained his sight.(False, not in the Bible).

**THUNDER** (v.13 Reward and punishment result from obeying or rejecting Allah's laws).

**13:7.27** The unbelievers ask: "Why has no sign been given him by his Lord?"

Note: The Biblical apostles were given signs: "Confirming the word with signs following." Mark 16:20

**13:42** Allah is the master of all scheming (plotting).

Note: So is the Devil. If Allah can scheme, plot and deceive, then Muslims think they can do so as well.

**ABRAHAM** (v.35-41 Abraham's prayer).

**14:9** Their apostles came to them with clear signs (proofs).

**Question:** If Bible apostles had clear signs, why did Mohammed have no signs? Ans:He is not a prophet

**14:16** Hell is before him, and he is made to drink a festering water (liquid pus), which he will sip, but can hardly swallow.

**AL-HIJR** (v.80-84 where the fate of those dwelling at AL-HIJR is described).

**15:1** A glorious Koran

**15:17.18** We have guarded the heavens from every cursed outcast devil. Eavesdroppers are pursued by fiery comets.

**15:28-38** Allah said to the angels: "...fall down and prostrate yourselves unto Adam." (1). Then all the angels prostrated themselves, except Satan. Allah asks Satan why he won't bow down to Adam.

Satan said: "I will not bow to a mortal whom you created of dry clay..." (2,3).

Allah says: "Be gone, my curse shall be on you till Judgment day." (4).

Satan asks Allah: "Reprise me till the day of Resurrection."

Allah agrees: "You are reprieved till the appointed day." (5).

Satan says to Allah: "Since you have seduced me, I will tempt mankind on earth." (6).

Allah replies: "You shall have no power over my servants, only the sinners who follow you. They are all destined for hell." Notice 6 errors in this passage:

- 1) In the Bible, God never told angels to fall down to Adam.
- 2) By Satan refusing, Satan is shown to be doing right.
- 3) God's curse on Satan seems unjust, thus attacking God's justice.
- 4) Satan is seen manipulating God out of being cursed.
- 5) Satan's excuse for tempting mankind, is because God seduced him.
- 6) God only gives Satan power over those destined for hell. God predestines nobody to hell.

**THE BEE** (v.68. Bees actions are typical of duty and usefulness).

**16:43** Ask the People of the Book, if ye know not.

**16:57** They assign unto Allah daughters.

**16:101** When we change one verse for another (Allah knows best what he reveals), they say, "You (Mohammed) are an imposter."

**16:106** Those who deny Allah after professing Islam and open their bosoms to unbelief shall incur the wrath of Allah, grievous punishment awaits them.

Note: This means death to those who leave Islam.

**16:115** He has forbidden you carrion, blood, and the flesh of swine; also any flesh consecrated other than in the name of Allah.

**16:126** If you punish, let your punishment be commensurate with the wrong done to you. But it shall be best for you to endure your wrongs with patience.

**16:127** Do not grieve for the unbelievers.

### **THE NIGHT JOURNEY/ THE CHILDREN OF ISRAEL**

(v.1 relates Mohammed's vision, in which he was carried by night on a heavenly steed to the Temple at Jerusalem, from where he claims that he was caught up through 7 heavens to the presence of Allah).

Note: The Temple of Jerusalem had been destroyed by Rome in 70 AD and did not exist in Mohammed's day. This reference is why Muslims regard Jerusalem as holy and want control of it.

**17:36** Do not follow what you do not know. (7 commandments in v.31-37.)

**17:44** The 7 heavens, the earth, and all who dwell in them give glory to Him.

**17:45** When you recite the Koran, we place between you and those who deny the life to come a hidden barrier.

**17:47** The wrong-doers declare: "The man (Mohammed) you follow is surely bewitched."

**17:78** Recite your prayers at sunset, at nighthfall, and at dawn. Pray during the night as well.

**17:101** To Moses we gave 9 clear signs. Note: False. He was given 10 signs. (Exodus 7:14-11:1).

**17:104** We said to the Israelites: "Dwell in the land. When the promise of the hereafter comes to be fulfilled, we shall assemble you all together." (Out of various nations).

Note: This is a clear false prophecy, because Israelites have already been assembled in the land, and the promise of the hereafter (ie. Day of Judgement) has not yet happened. This is one reason why devout Muslims want Israelites destroyed and out of the land.

**17:111** Cry unto Allah and say: "Praise be to Allah who has never begotten a son; who has no partner in His kingdom; who needs none to defend Him from humiliation."

Note: This denies Jesus Christ being the Son of God & God the Son. Thus Islam is antichrist (I John 2:22)

### **THE CAVE**

This contains the myth of 7 youths who slept in a cave for a long time, and of Dhul Qarneyn (Alexander the Great) who travelled to the sunrise and sunset regions of the earth.

**18:4,5** Admonish those who say that Allah has begotten a son.

A monstrous blasphemy is that which they utter. They preach nothing but falsehood.

**18:84-91. See v.87:** They will ask you about Dhul-Qarnayn (Alexander the Great). Say . . . "he followed a road until he reached the West and saw the sun setting (the setting place of the sun) in a pool of black mud. Hard by he found a certain people."

**18:90,91** Then he followed a road till, when he reached the rising-place of the sun, he found it rising on a people for whom we had appointed no shelter therefrom.

Note: The sun does not set in a pool of black mud, nor does it have a fixed rising place. Mohammed in 620AD did not know how the earth moves around the sun. This is a clear scientific error in the Koran, showing that it cannot be from the true God.

**MARY** (v.16 ...)

**19:16-23** The story of Mary . . . We sent to her Our Spirit in the semblance of a full grown man . . . who said I have come to give you a holy son. Mary said, "How shall I bear a child when I have neither been touched by any man nor ever been unchaste?" Thus did your Lord speak: "**That is easy enough for me**." When she felt the throes of childbirth, she lay down by the trunk of a palm tree.

Note: From this we learn the following:

1) Muslims agree that God has a Spirit. Christians call him the Holy Spirit.

2) Christ being virgin born is 'easy enough for God' so why should Muslims protest God having a Son?

3) This teaches the virgin birth of Christ.

4) This does not confirm the Bible, but contradicts it, because Mary gave birth to Jesus in a stable, not under a palm tree.

**19:29-** How can we speak with a babe in the cradle? Whereupon he (Jesus) spoke and said, “he has purged me of vanity and wickedness. Blessed was I on the day I was born, and blessed I shall be on the day of my death and on the day I shall be raised to life”. Such was Jesus, the Son of Mary, that is the whole truth. God forbid that He himself should beget a son.

Note: From this we learn that:

- 1) Jesus claimed to be sinless, making him greater than Mohammed.
- 2) Jesus states that He will die and be raised to life. This contradicts 4:157 which denies that He died.
- 3) Jesus rising from the dead, makes him greater than Mohammed who remains dead.
- 4) Jesus speaking from the cradle is clearly false and not in the Bible. It does not confirm the Bible.

**19:71** There is not one among you who shall not pass through it (the fire of hell v.68): such is the absolute decree of your Lord. We will deliver those who fear us, and leave the wrongdoers there.

Note: This states that every Muslim will spend time in hell. What a shocking prospect to face. Islam thus offers nothing to solve man’s fear of death. This means that even Mohammed went to hell.

The Bible says, “He that has the Son has life”. Whoever wrote the Koran wants people to go to hell.

**19:88** Those who say: “The Lord of mercy has begotten a son” preach a monstrous falsehood, at which the heavens might crack, the earth break asunder, and the mountains crumble to dust.

Note: The hatred of the Koran to God having a Son is to be compared with Satan’s hatred of Christ. (Revelation 12:4).

#### **TAHA** (v.1)

**20:113** Thus we have revealed it as a lecture (Quran) in Arabic, and have displayed therein certain threats, that they may keep them from evil, or that it may cause them to take heed.

Note: Almost half the verses in the Koran are threats of punishment, torture or hell fire for those who don’t do what the Koran says. Fear is a major motive for Muslims in the Koran.

#### **THE PROPHETS** (the history of the former prophets).

**21:33** The sun and the moon: They float each in an orbit. Note: This idea that the sun moves in an orbit is clearly false. It only seems that way as it appears to cross the sky.

Note: This is scientifically false. The sun does not move in an orbit. It only appeared this way to the 7<sup>th</sup> Century Arabians.

**21:35** Every soul shall taste death. This is false, because Enoch (Genesis 5:24) and Elijah did not die. Christians living when Christ returns will be caught up to heaven without dying.(I Corinthian 15:51-53)

#### **NOAH**

**21:76** We saved him (Noah) and all his kinsfolk from the great calamity.

Contradiction: This contradicts 11:42,43 which states that one of Noah’s sons was drowned.

#### **PILGRIMAGE** (v.26-38 Pilgrimage to Mecca).

**22:19** Garments of fire have been prepared for the unbelievers. Scalding water shall be poured upon their heads, melting their skins and that which is in their bellies.

**22:21** They shall be lashed with hooked rods of iron.

**22:22** Whenever, in their anguish, they try to escape from hell, back they shall be dragged.

**22:27** Exhort all men to make the pilgrimage. Let them spruce themselves, make their vows and circle the Ancient House. Such is Allah’s commandment. He that reveres the sacred rites shall fare better – in Allah’s sight.

**22:47** A day with Allah is as 1000 years of what ye reckon.

**22:65** Allah holds the sky from falling down upon the earth.

Note: False! Nonsense! because the sky is gas, empty space, not something that can fall down on us.

**22:78** Fight for the cause of Allah with the devotion due to him. He hath named you “Muslims” (those who have surrendered).

#### **THE BELIEVERS** (v.1) (The Triumph of believers).

**23:1-6** Blessed are the believers . . . who restrain their carnal desires (except with their wives and slave girls, for these are lawful to them).

**23:91** Never has Allah begotten a son. Note: John 1:14,18; 3:16,18; Hebrew 1:5; I John 4:9 refute this. Mohammad did not know that Greek has 2 words for “son” (Huios=“same nature as” God, & Teknon “child”), nor that “only begotten” (“monogenes” in Greek) means “same in every detail” as God.

**LIGHT** (v.25-40 The Light of God should shine in believers' homes).

**24:2** The adulterer and adulteress shall each be given 100 lashes.

**24:4** Those who accuse (defame) honourable women and cannot produce 4 witnesses shall be given 80 lashes.

**24:43** From heaven's mountains he sends down the hail. Note: False! Hail comes from clouds.

**AL-FUQAN** (v.1 "The Criterion" of right and wrong).

Subject is: The folly of superstition and craving for miracles.

**25:5** And they say: "Fables of the ancients he has written".

**THE POETS** (v.224 where the difference between poets (those who say what they don't mean) and prophets (he who always practises what he preaches) is pointed out.

**THE ANT** (v.18).

**27:12** One of 9 signs to Pharaoh. Note: False. There were 10 miraculous plague signs (Exod 7:14-11:1). Water to blood, Frogs, Lice, Flies, Cattle disease, Boils, Hail/Fire, Locusts, Darkness, Firstborn died.

**27:16** Solomon said: "We have been taught the language of birds."

**27:17** Solomon's forces of jinn, man, birds were called to Solomon's presence & ranged in battle array

**27:28** When they came to the Valley of the Ants, an ant said, "Go into your dwellings, ants, lest Solomon and his warriors should unwittingly crush you."

This is clearly a fable, that birds and ants talk with Solomon.

**THE STORM** (v.25) of Moses' struggles and triumph.

**28:38** Pharaoh said: "Make me, Haman, bricks of clay and build for me a tower that I may climb to the God of Moses".

Note: The error is that the Koran has Pharaoh (1500 BC) living alongside Haman (510 BC) who built the Tower of Babel (2250 BC). This is a serious mistake in the Koran because 7<sup>th</sup> Century Arabs thought of time as in cycles, not as we think of it as linear. This is fatal to the Koran's claim of Divine inspiration.

**28:77** Allah does not love the evildoers.

**THE SPIDER** (v.41 False beliefs are like a spider's web for frailty).

**29:46** Be courteous when you argue with the People of the Book, except with those among them who do evil. Say: "We believe in that which is revealed to us, and which was revealed to you. Our God and your God is one."

Note: This is absolutely false. Allah and the God of the Bible (Jehovah) have very different natures and personalities. Allah is the moon god of 6<sup>th</sup> Century Arabia. In reality Muslims do not believe in the Bible. If they did, they would study it, obey it and worship Jesus Christ as Saviour and God. This is a trick to convert ignorant nominal Christians to Islam, saying we worship the same God. Exodus.20:2,3.

**29:69** Those that fight for our cause we will surely guide to our own paths.

**THE GREEKS** (Dawood translation). **THE ROMANS** (Pickthall's translation of Koran). (v 2).

**30:2** "The Greeks have been defeated." (Dawood).

"The Romans have been defeated." (Pickthall). 2 translations of the Koran contradict each other.

**30:45** He does not love the unbelievers.

**30:47** We sent before you apostles to their peoples, and they showed them veritable signs.

Question: Why did Jesus, Biblical apostles and prophets show signs, but Mohammed show no signs?

**LUQMAN** (v.12–34 mentions the wisdom of Luqman).

**PROSTRATION** (v.15).

**32:5** All will ascend to him in a single day, a day whose space is 1000 years.

**32:13** "I will surely fill Hell with jinn and humans all." Note: Allah (like Satan) wants people to go to hell, but the God of the Bible is not willing that any should perish in hell. (2 Peter 3:9).

**THE CONFEDERATE TRIBES/THE CLANS**

i) This Surah contains the siege of Mohammed's city Yathrib by the Qureysh and Ghatafan clans (Ibn Khaldan's narrative). V.26,27 refer to Mohammed's punishment of the Jewish tribe Bani Qureyzah who had broken their alliance with the Muslims and made common cause with the Qureysh. All their men were put to death, their women and children taken captive, and their property divided among the Muslims.

- ii) 37-** Mohammed ordered the divorce of his adopted son Zeyd from his wife Zeynab because Mohammed wanted to marry Zeynab. When people protested this, Mohammed claimed to have a command from Allah for Zeyd to divorce Zeynab and for Mohammed to marry Zeynab. Note: This screamingly contradicts the God of the Bible who punished the prophet David for taking Uriah's wife.
- iii)** Pickthall says, "With the exception of Aveshah, the daughter of his closest friend, Abu Baker, whom he married at her father's request when she was still a child, all his later marriages were with widows whose state was pitiable..." *Koran* (Pickthall) p. 428. Note: In the West this is paedophilia.
- 33:8** For the unbelievers He (Allah) has prepared a woeful punishment.
- 33:17** Say, "Who can protect you from Allah if it is His will to scourge you?"
- 33:30** Wives of the Prophet! Those of you who commit a proven sin (lewdness) will be doubly punished
- 33:37** You (Mohammed) said to the man (Zayd, Mohammed's adopted son) whom Allah and yourself have favoured: "Keep your wife and have fear of God". You sought to hide in your heart what Allah was to reveal (your intention to marry Zayd's wife). You were afraid of man . . . When Zayd divorced his wife, we gave her to you in marriage.
- 33:38** No blame shall be attached to the prophet for doing what is sanctioned for him by Allah.  
Note: When David took another man's wife, God judged him.
- 33:50** Prophet, we have made lawful to you . . . the slave girls whom Allah has given you as booty; and any believing woman who gives herself to the Prophet and whom the Prophet wishes to take in marriage. This privilege is yours alone.
- 33:51** You may put off any of your wives you please, and take to your bed any of them you please.
- 33:52** It is unlawful for believers to take more wives....except where slave girls are concerned.
- 33:57** Those who speak ill of Allah and His Apostle shall be cursed by Allah in this life and in the life to come. He has prepared for them a shameful punishment.
- 33:59** Prophet, enjoin your wives, your daughters, and the wives of true believers to draw their veils close round them . . . so that they may be recognized and not molested.
- 33:64** Allah has cursed the unbelievers and prepared for them a blazing fire...on the day when their faces (heads) will roll about in the fire...Lord, mete out to them a double scourge, lay on them a mighty curse.
- SHEBA** (v.15 Sheba is in Yemen that was flooded).
- 34:5** Those who strive to refute our revelations shall suffer the torment of a harrowing scourge.  
Note: Nobody is allowed to question the Koran.
- 34:43** Others say: "This (Koran) is nothing but an invented falsehood". Others declare: "This (Koran) is but plain sorcery".
- 34:51** If you could only see the unbelievers when they are seized with terror.
- THE CREATOR** or **THE ANGELS** (v.1).
- 35:43** Evil shall recoil on those that plot evil.
- YASIN** (v.1) This is regarded with reverence, and is recited in times of adversity, illness, fasting and approaching death.
- 36:8** We have bound their necks (unbelievers) with chains of iron reaching up to their chins, so that they cannot bow their heads.
- 36:39** The sun is not allowed to overtake the moon...Each in its own orbit runs. Note: Sun has no orbit
- 36:54** On that day the heirs of Paradise will be busy with their joys. Together with their spouses, they shall recline in shady groves upon soft couches. They shall have fruits and all that they desire.
- THE RANKS** (v.1,164-166 refer to Angels in ranks).
- 37:6** We have decked the lower heaven with constellations (Dawood), (Planets – Pickthall). They guard it against rebellious devils, so that they may not listen in to those on high. Meteors are hurled at them from every side . . . Eavesdroppers are pursued by fiery comets.
- 37:36** Are we to renounce our gods for the sake of a mad poet?
- 37:48,49** The true servants of Allah . . . shall sit with bashful, dark eyed virgins, as chaste as the sheltered eggs of ostriches.
- 37:62-68** We have made this (Zaqqum) tree a scourge for the unjust. It grows in the nethermost part of Hell, bearing fruit like devils heads: on it they shall feed, and with it they shall cram their bellies, together with draughts of scalding water. Then to hell they shall return.

**37:147** Jonah . . . we sent him to a nation 100,000 strong or more.

(Jonah 4:11 states that Nineveh had 120,000 children under age about 7 who could not tell their left hand from their right hand. A total of 100,000 is way out.)  
**SAD** (v.1 the first letter of this Surah).

**38:25,26** David sought forgiveness of his Lord and fell down penitently on his knees. We forgave him his sin.

Question: How is it a sin for David to murder and take another man's wife (Bathsheba), and not a sin for Mohammed to murder and take another man's wife (Zeynab)? Allah has double standards between Mohammed and David. It appears that Mohammed is using Allah as a rubber stamp to endorse whatever he wants to do.

**38:53** The righteous . . . reclining there with bashful virgins for companions, they will call for abundant fruit and drink.

**38:56-58** The transgressors shall burn in hell, a dismal resting place. There let them taste their drink, scalding water, festered blood and other putrid things.

**38:74-89** Satan cursed for not worshipping Adam.

**THE THRONGS** or **TROOPS** (v.71,73).

**39:16** Above them shall be sheets of fire and sheets of fire shall be beneath them. By this, Allah puts fear into his servants' hearts. (Note: Islam is a religion of fear and terror. With Christ love is the motive)

**39:38** A Koran (lecture) in the Arabic tongue, free from any flaw, that they may guard themselves against evil. Note: The Koran has many flaws.

**39:31** In throngs the unbelievers shall be led to hell. They will be told to enter the gates of hell and stay there forever.

**THE BELIEVERS** (v.28-45 describes a believer in Pharaoh's house trying to dissuade Egyptians from opposing Moses).

**40:18** Warn them of the approaching day, when man's hearts will leap up to their throats & choke them

**40:21** Allah scourged them for their sins . . . they had none to protect them.

**40:36** Pharaoh said to Haman: "Build me a tower that I may reach the heavens and look upon the god of Moses."

Note: Pharaoh (1500 BC) and Haman (500 BC) never knew each other. Nor did they build a tower.

**40:71** When with chains and shackles round their necks, they shall be dragged through scalding water and burnt in the fire of Hell.

**REVELATIONS WELL EXPOUNDED** (v.2).

**41:9** Do you disbelieve in him who created the earth in 2 days? He set upon the earth mountains towering high above it. (FALSE). (Genesis 7:19 Mountains were raised up after the Flood, not before).

**41:10** . . . in 4 days provided it with sustenance for all alike.

**41:12** In 2 days He formed the sky into 7 heavens.

Note: Two mistakes in this are as follows:

i) According to Genesis 7:19,20 there were no towering high mountains before Noah's Flood. There were only high hills which the waters covered by 15 cubits (22 feet). Mountains formed after the Flood.

ii) According to Exodus 20:11, "In six days the Lord made heaven and earth, the sea and all that in them is," not 8 days.

**41:16** . . . more shameful still will be the scourge of the life to come.

**41:17** The thunderbolt of a humiliating scourge struck them for their misdeeds.

**41:19** Forewarn them of the day when the enemies of Allah will be brought together & led into the Fire

**41:26** Unbelievers say: "Give no heed to this Koran. Cut short its recital with booing and laughter . . . We will sternly punish the unbelievers . . . The Fire shall for ever be their home."

**41:33** Who speaks better than he who calls men to serve Allah, does what is right and says "I am a Muslim?"

**41:34** Requite evil with good, and he who is your enemy will become your dearest friend.

Note: This is contradicted by **Q42:40** "Let evil be rewarded with like evil."

## **COUNSEL** (v.38).

**42:15** say “I believe in all the Scriptures that Allah has revealed.”

Note: This, they say includes the Bible, yet Muslims do not believe, study or obey the Bible.

**42:26** Grievous punishment awaits the unbelievers.

**42:30** If a misfortune befalls you, it is the fruit of your own labours (what your right hands have earned.)

Note: This is false from experience and from Bible characters who were persecuted for righteousness. Were Job's, Jesus', Joseph's and Daniel's suffering due to their own sins? No.

**42:45** Wrongdoers shall surely suffer everlasting torment.

## **ORNAMENTS OF GOLD** (v.35).

**43:30** Now the truth has come to them, they say: “This is sorcery. We utterly reject it.”

**43:36** He that does not heed the warning of the Merciful shall have a devil for his companion.

**43:63** When Jesus came with evident signs, he said: “I have come to give you wisdom . . . Fear God and follow me.”

Note: Jesus gave evident signs/miracles, but Mohammed could not. Hence Jesus is greater than Mohammed. Jesus commands Muslims to “Follow me”. Do Muslims obey this?

**43:70** Enter Paradise, you and your wives, in all delight. Abiding there forever, you shall find all that your souls desire and all that your eyes rejoice in.

**43:74** Evildoers shall endure forever the torment of Hell. Their punishment will never be lightened, and they shall be speechless with despair.

**43:81** Say to Christians: “If the Lord of Mercy had a son, I would be the first to worship him”.

Note: The prophets refute the Koran here by saying that God does have a Huios Son, not a Teknon Son: Solomon (Proverbs 30:4), Daniel (3:25), David (Psalm 2:7,12), even Gabriel (Luke 1:32,35).

## **SMOKE**

**44:14-16** They denied him (Mohammed) saying: “A madman taught by others”. On that day we will inflict on them the supreme punishment and avenge ourselves.

**44:43-48** The fruit of the Zaqqum tree shall be the sinners' food. Like molten brass, like scalding water, it shall simmer in his belly. A voice will cry, “Seize him and drag him into the depths of hell. Then pour scalding water over his head.”

**44:51** As for the righteous, they shall be lodged in peace together amidst gardens & fountains, arrayed in rich silks & fine brocade. We shall wed them to dark eyed houris. They shall call for every kind of fruit. Note: This shows clearly that the Koran comes from man and not from God, because these good things are the best that a 7th Century Arab male could imagine heaven to be. The True God would have things in heaven beyond our understanding.

Question: What about Muslim women? What will they have? Who will they wed? Dark eyed houris?

## **KNEELING**

**45:9** Those that deride our revelations when they know but little of them shall suffer degrading torment

**45:10** Hell is behind them.

**45:11** Those that deny their Lord's revelations shall suffer the anguish of a woeful scourge.

**45:28** You will see every nation on its knees. (Question: Even today's Muslim nations?)

Note: All this terror, horror, threats of hell, scourge, torment is not borne out by the love of God to man seen in the Bible, Christ's preaching and in beautiful creation. “The goodness of God leads us to repentance.” (Romans 2:4) not threats.

**45:33** The scourge at which they scoffed will encompass them.

**45:34** The Fire shall be your home and none will help you.

## **THE SAND DUNES** (v.20).

**46:11** Unbelievers say: “This is an ancient lie.”

**46:20** We shall say to unbelievers: “Your reward will be degrading torment”. (46:34).

## **MOHAMMED** (v.2).

**47:4-6** When you meet the unbelievers in the battlefield strike off their heads, and when you have laid them low, bind your captives firmly . . . thus shall you do. Had Allah willed, He could Himself have punished them; but He has ordained it thus that He might test you. As for those who are slain in the cause of Allah . . . He will admit them to the Paradise.

**47:15** Therein (Paradise) shall flow rivers of water undefiled, and rivers of milk for ever fresh; rivers of wine . . . and rivers of clear honey. They shall eat therein of every fruit and receive forgiveness from their Lord. Those in Hell forever shall drink scalding water which will tear their bowels.

**47:20** When war is mentioned . . . they faint away for fear of death. Should war be decided upon, it would be better for them to be true to Allah.

**47:25,27** Those who turn back (from Islam)..angels shall gather them, smiting their faces&their backs

**47:33** Believers, obey Allah and obey the Apostle.

**47:35** Do not falter or sue for peace when you have gained the upper hand. Allah is on your side, and will not grudge you the reward of your labours.

## VICTORY

**48:6** Allah is angry with them (hypocrites, idolaters). He has laid on them his curse and prepared for them the fire of Hell.

**48:13** As for those that disbelieve in Allah and His apostle, we have prepared a blazing fire for the unbelievers.

**48:16** Say to the desert Arabs who stayed behind: “You shall be called upon to fight a mighty nation, unless they embrace Islam.”

Note: Here Muslims are told to fight to convert non Muslims.

**48:28** It is He that has sent forth his apostle . . . so that He may exalt it above all religions.

**48:29** Mohammed is Allah’s apostle. Those who follow him are ruthless (hard) against the unbelievers, but merciful to one another.

## THE CHAMBERS (v.4).

**49:15** The true believers are those that have faith in Allah and never doubt; and who fight with their wealth and their persons for the cause of Allah.

## QAF

**50:6** How we built the sky up, . . . leaving no crack in its expanse.

FALSE: 7<sup>th</sup> Century Arabs thought the sky was a solid dome without a crack. It is just gas and space.

**50:7** We spread out the earth and set upon it immovable mountains.

FALSE: Mountains move during earthquakes.

52:11 contradicts this: “On that day.... the mountains move and pass away.” See Revelation 16:18-20.

**56:5** “The mountains crumble away”.

**50:24** A voice will cry: “Cast into Hell every hardened unbeliever”.

## THE WINDS (v.1).

**51:12,13** On the Day of Judgment they shall be scorched in the Fire.

**51:47,48** We built the heaven . . . giving it a vast expanse, and stretched the earth beneath it.

Note: False. The earth was not stretched flat beneath heaven. It is a spherical planet.

## THE MOUNTAIN

**52:13** On that day they (unbelievers) shall be sternly thrown into the fire of hell . . . burn in its flames.

**52:20** They (righteous) shall recline on couches ranged in rows. To dark-eyed houris we shall wed them. Question: What benefits do women have in heaven? No comment.

**52:24** There shall wait on them young boys of their own, as fair as virgin pearls. (Is this pedophilia?)

## THE STAR (v.1).

**53:1,2,3** By the declining star, your compatriot (Mohammed) is not in error, nor is he deceived. He does not speak out of his own fancy.

**53:19** Have you thought on AL-LAT and AL-UZZA, and on MANAT, the third other.

Note: These are names that early Meccans gave to Allah’s daughters.

**53:32** To those who avoid the grossest sins and indecencies, and commit only small offences, your Lord will show abundant mercy.

Note: This allows Muslims to commit sins that they define as “only small offences”. This proves the Koran came from a sinful human mind, not from the Holy God of the Bible who sees all sin as sinful

## THE MOON (v.1).

**54:1** The hour of doom is drawing near,&the moon is cleft in two.(How can the moon be split in two?)

**54:48** On the day when wrongdoers are dragged into the Fire upon their faces, we shall say to them: “Feel the touch of Hell”.

## THE MERCIFUL

**55:35** Flames of fire shall be lashed at you, and molten brass.

**55:41** The wrongdoers . . . shall be seized by their forelocks and their feet.

**55:44** They shall wander between fire and water fiercely seething.

**55:56** There are bashful virgins whom neither man nor jinnee will have touched before.

Virgins as fair as corals and rubies.

**55:72** In each (garden) there shall be virgins chaste and fair. Dark eyed virgins sheltered in tents, whom neither man nor jinnee will have touched.

**55:76** They shall recline on green cushions and fine carpets.

## THAT WHICH IS COMING (v.1).

**56:22-24** Theirs shall be the dark-eyed houris, chaste as hidden pearls; a reward for their deeds.

**56:35-38** We created the houris and made them virgins, loving companions for those on the right hand. Those on the left hand....shall dwell among scorching winds and scalding water.

**56:52-54** As for you sinners who deny the truth, you shall eat the fruit of the Zaqqum tree and fill your bellies with it. You shall drink scalding water.

**56:92-95** If he is an erring disbeliever, his welcome will be scalding water, and he will burn in hell. This is surely the indubitable truth.

## IRON (v.25).

**57:10** Those of you that gave of their wealth before the victory, and took part in the fighting, shall receive greater honour than others who gave and fought thereafter.

**57:15** The fire shall be your home (unbelievers and hypocrites); you have justly earned it, a dismal end.

**57:19** Those that disbelieve our revelations and deny them are the heirs of Hell.

**57:22** Every misfortune that befalls the Earth, or your own persons, is ordained before we bring it into being. Note: This creates an attitude of fatalism, passivity, and lack of initiative because all is foreordained.

**57:25** We have sent our apostles with veritable signs, and through them have brought down scriptures and the scales of justice, so men might conduct themselves with fairness.

Note: This fairness/justice are found in the Bible. Mohammed gave no miraculous signs & no fairness.

**57:27** Jesus, the son of Mary. We gave him the Gospel and put compassion and mercy in the hearts of his followers.

Question: What is the Gospel that Jesus preached that can save sinners from sin and hell?

Answer: That Christ died for our sins, was buried and rose again the third day? (1 Corinthians 15:1-4).

## SHE WHO PLEADED (v.1)

**58:2** Those of you who divorce their wives by declaring them to be their mothers should know that they are not their mothers.

**58:5** Those that oppose Allah and His apostle shall be brought low. Shameful punishment awaits the unbelievers

**58:14** Do you not see those that have befriended a people with whom Allah is angry? Allah has

prepared for them a grievous scourge. They are the inmates of the fire. There shall they abide forever.

**EXILE** (v.2-17 discuss the exile of a Jewish tribe, Bani Nadeir of Al-Madinah for treason against Mohammed. Hypocrites were lukewarm Muslims who sympathised with these Jews).

**59:2** Allah's scourge fell on them (Jews) when they did not expect it, casting such terror into their hearts that their dwellings were destroyed by their own hands and by the faithful. In the world to come, the fire shall be their scourge because they have set themselves against Allah and his apostle.

**59:7** The spoils taken from the town-dwellers and assigned by Allah to his apostle shall belong to Allah, to the apostle and his Kinsfolk, to orphans and to the destitute. Allah is stern in retribution.

## SHE WHO IS TESTED (v.10).

**60:1** If you came to fight for my cause, and out of a desire to please me, you left your city, how can you be friendly to them in secret? Note: This says that Muslims please Allah by fighting.

## BATTLE ARRAY (v.4).

**61:3** It is most hateful in Allah's sight that you should say one thing and do another.

Note: This contradicts 66:2 where Allah allowed Mohammed to say one thing and do another.

**61:4** Allah loves those who fight for his cause in ranks as firm as a solid structure.

**61:6** Jesus, the son of Mary, said to the Israelites, I am sent to you from Allah to confirm the Torah, and to give news of an apostle that will come after Me whose name is Ahmed (the praised one).

Note: Muslims claim that Mohammed was the fulfillment of Jesus' Prophecy in John 14:16-18; 16:7-14 of sending the Comforter. Jesus declared that this Comforter was the Holy Spirit, not Mohammed.

i) John 14:16 "Another Comforter, that he may abide with you forever."

Note: Mohammed died and did not abide with us forever.

The disciples never knew Mohammed, nor did Mohammed dwell with the disciples in 33AD.

ii) John 14:17 "ye shall know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you."

iii) John 14:26 "But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost"

iv) John 16:13 "When he, the Spirit of Truth, is come..."

v) John 16:14 "He shall glorify me (Jesus)..". Note: Mohammed did not glorify Jesus.

**61:9** He sent his Apostle... so that he may exalt it above all other religions.

**61:10,11** Believers, shall I point out to you a profitable course that will save you from a woeful scourge? Have faith in Allah and his apostle, and fight for Allah's cause with your wealth and persons.

That would be best for you, if you but knew it. He will forgive your sins and admit you to Gardens....

**61:14** Believers, be Allah's helpers. When Jesus, the son of Mary, said to the disciples, "Who will come with me to the help of Allah?" The disciples replied, "We are Allah's helpers."

Note: Neither Jesus nor his disciples ever said this in New Testament. Allah is not mentioned in the NT FRIDAY or THE DAY OF CONGREGATION (v.9).

**62:9** Believers, when you are summoned to Friday prayers hasten to the remembrance of Allah and cease your trading.

**THE HYPOCRITES** (v.1,8).

**63:3,4** They believed and then renounced their faith... they are the enemy. Guard yourself against them. Allah confound them!

**CHEATING** (v.9 When good Muslims will cheat the damned of the places in paradise which would have been theirs had they been true believers.)

**64:10** Those that disbelieve and deny our revelation shall be made the inmates of the Fire, and shall abide therein forever.

**64:12,13** Obey Allah and obey the apostle. Allah! there is no god but him.

**64:14** Believers you have an enemy in your wives and in your children: beware of them.

Note: What nonsense. The Bible says "Husbands love your wives as Christ loved the church." Eph 5:25 DIVORCE (v.1-7).

**PROHIBITION** (v.1 Mohammed was once found by his wife Hafsa with Maria, a beautiful Coptic slave girl, whom he had promised Hafsa he would separate from. To free Mohammed from his promise to Hafsa was the object of this chapter).

**66:1,2** Prophet, why do you prohibit that which Allah has made lawful to you in seeking to please your wives? Allah has made lawful for you (Muslims) absolution from your oaths.

Note: Many Muslims, living like Mohammed, often think they can lie when it suits them.

**66:9** Prophet, make war on the unbelievers and the hypocrites, and deal sternly with them. Hell shall be their home. **SOVEREIGNTY** (v.1).

**67:5** We have adorned the lowest heaven with lamps, missiles to pelt the devils with.

**67:3** Turn up your eyes: Can you detect a single crack (in the sky)?

**THE PEN** (v.1).

**68:15** When our revelations are recited to him he says: "They are but fables of the ancients." We shall brand him on the nose. Note: Unbelievers rightly said this because much in the Koran was copied from earlier writings such as 26 Arabian, Jewish and Christian sources into the Koran.

**68:33** The punishment of the life to come is more terrible if they but knew it.

**68:37,38,39** Have you a scripture that promises you whatever you choose?

....that you shall have what you yourselves ordain.

Note: No wonder Muslim terrorists kill people to go to such a place.

**68:51** When they hear our revelations, unbelievers say "Surely he is possessed".

Note: When Mohammed gave a revelation, he would fall onto the ground in a trancelike fit. Witnesses thought him to be possessed.

**THE CATASTROPHE** (v.1). **69:16** The sky will be rent asunder on that day...

Note: Muslims thought the sky was solid that could crack or be split asunder, but it is gas.

**69:30-36** We shall say “Bind him. Burn him in the fire of Hell, then fasten him with a **chain** 70 cubits long. For he did not believe in Allah..filth shall be his food...this is the utterance of a noble messenger.”

**69:44-47** Allah says of Mohammed: “Had he invented lies concerning us, we would have seized him by the right hand and severed his heart vein:

Note: Mohammed sought to justify himself by this. It is foolish because, “Why does this not happen to others who tell lies about Islam?” Their heart vein is not severed when criticising the Allah of Islam.

**THE LADDERS** (v.3). **70:4** A day whose span is 50,000 years.

Note: This contradicts (32:5) where a day is 1000 years. Which is right?

**70:15** The fire of Hell shall drag him down by the scalp.

**70:22** Not so the worshipers, who.... Dread the punishment of the Lord (for **none** is secure from the punishment of their Lord), who restrain their carnal desire (except with their wives and slave girls, for these are lawful to them).

Note: All Muslims fear Allah's punishment, because none are secure from Allah's punishment. Koran allows taking girls into sexual slavery. The God of the Bible is against slavery. God wills young women marry one man (I Cor.7:2-5; I Tim.1:10; 5:14). The Koran does not confirm earlier scriptures.

## **NOAH.**

**71:11** Noah said: “Seek forgiveness...He sends down abundant waters from the sky for you.”

Note: The Koran is wrong here because it claims Noah told his generation how God sends rain for their benefit. Yet Genesis 2:5,6 tells: “The Lord God had not caused it to rain upon the Earth... but there went up a mist from the Earth, and watered the whole face of the ground.” Nobody before the flood had ever seen rain, “By faith Noah, being warned of God of things not seen as yet.” Hebrews 11:7.

**71:15,16** Allah created the seven heavens one above the other, placing in them the moon for a light and the sun for a lantern? Question: What are these 7 heavens? Not defined. (5 planets, sun, moon). The Bible tells us of 3 heavens: the atmosphere, space, and where God's throne is (II Cor. 12:2).

**THE JINN.** The Jinn are demon spirits lower than angels able to appear in human or animal form, and having supernatural power over man.

**72:1** Say (Mohammed): “It is revealed to me that a **band of jinn** listened to Allah's revelations and said: We have heard a wonderous Koran giving guidance to the right path. We believed in it and shall henceforth serve none besides Allah. **He has taken no consort**, nor has **he begotten any children**. The Blaspheming One among us has uttered a wanton falsehood against Allah. Some men have sought the help of the jinn, but they misled them into further error. We made our way to high heaven, and found it filled with mighty wardens and fiery comets. We sat eavesdropping, but eavesdroppers find flaming darts in wait for them. Some of us are Muslims and some are wrongdoers. Note:

i) If demons endorse the Koran (saying that the Koran guides in the right path), then demons whose nature is evil and deception, tell us that the Koran is the wrong path for man. Do you trust demons? ii) Evil demons serving Allah show that Allah is not the God of the Bible. Demons only serve Satan. iii) These demons deny that Jesus is God the Son. “Every Spirit that confesseth not that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh is not of God, this is the spirit of the antichrist.” I John 4:3. See I John 2:2.

iv) Muslims hate Christianity because they think we blaspheme by calling Jesus Christ “Son of God”. v) This passage teaches that demon Jinn lead men into error. Jinn have led the entire Muslim world into error. Paul rejected the support of demons (Acts 16:16-18). So should we.

vi) v.8,9 claim that Allah sends fiery comets to hit jinn when they listen to conversations in heaven.

vii) Verse 14 says that some jinn became Muslims by surrendering to Allah. If some demons are now Muslims and they help spread Islam, then Islam is a religion of demons.

“Now the Spirit speaketh expressly, that in the latter times some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of devils, speaking lies in hypocrisy.” I Timothy 4:1,2.

**72:23** Those that disobey Allah and His Apostle shall abide forever in the Fire of Hell.

Note: Mohammed, in order to terrify people into submission to his will, equated his will with Allah's will, threatening them with going to hell fire if they disobeyed his/Allah's commands.

## **THE MANTLED ONE**

**73:1** You that are wrapped up in your mantle, keep vigil all night, save for a few hours; half the night or less and recite the Koran.

Note: Psalm 127:2 “It is vain for you to rise up early, to sit up late, to eat the bread of sorrows: for so he giveth his beloved sleep.” The Devil wants to rob the Muslims of God’s gift of a full nights sleep.

**73:8** Remember the name of Allah and dedicate yourself to him utterly... there is no god but him. Accept him as your protector.

**73:12** We have in store for them (unbelievers) heavy fetters and a blazing fire, choking food and harrowing torments.... mountains shall crumble into heaps of shifting sand.

**73:20** Your Lord knows that you (Mohammed) sometimes keep vigil nearly two thirds of the night ... Recite from the Koran as many verses as you are able. He knows that others are fighting for the cause of Allah. What ever good you do, you shall be...richly rewarded by him.

**THE CLOAKED ONE.** **74:24** Unbelievers said: “This is but sorcery counterfeited, the speech of a mere mortal man” I will surely cast him into the fire. It burns the skins of men.

## **THE RESURRECTION**

**75:6-9** When will be the day of resurrection? When Sun and the Moon are brought together.

Note: These bodies are 93 million miles apart but to Muslims of 600AD they looked close.

**MAN.** **76:4** For the unbelievers we have prepared chains and fetters and a blazing fire.

Note: The God of the Bible loves sinners, died for them, wants them to go to heaven, and is not willing that any should perish. He prepared everlasting fire for the Devil & his angels, not for man (Mat 25:44). Allah of the Koran delights in sending people to hell. He is very different from the God of the Bible.

## **THOSE THAT ARE SENT FORTH**

**77:29** Woe on the day to the unbelievers! Begone to that hell which you deny.

## **THE TIDINGS**

**78:21** Hell will lie in ambush, a home for the transgressors. There they shall abide long ages; there they shall taste neither refreshment or drink, save scalding water and decaying filth: a fitting recompense.

**78:31** As for the righteous, they shall surely triumph. Theirs shall be the gardens and vineyards, and high-bosomed maidens for companions: a truly overflowing cup.

**THE CESSATION** **81:22** No, your compatriot (Mohammed) is not mad, He saw him (Gabriel) on the clear horizon.. nor is this the utterance of an accursed devil.

**THE CATAclysm.** **82:14** The wicked shall burn in hell upon the Judgment Day nor shall they escape from it  
**THE UNJUST** **83:16** They shall burn in Hell.

**THE RENDING** **84:14** He shall call down destruction on himself and **burn in the fire of hell**.

**THE MOST HIGH** **87:12** He shall **burn in the gigantic fire**, where he shall neither die nor live.

## **THE OVERWHELMING EVENT**

**88:1-7** On that day there shall be downcast faces, of men broken and worn out, burnt by a scorching fire, drinking from a scalding fountain. Their only food shall be bitter thorns.

**THE CITY** **90:4** We created man to try him with afflictions.

**THE PROOF** **98:4-6** The unbelievers among the People of the Book and all the pagans shall burn forever in the fire of hell. They are the vilest of all creatures (worst created beings).

Note: i) The Koran tells Muslims that Jews and Christians are the vilest and worst of all creatures. This partly explains why many Muslims hate Jews and Christians, particularly Israel and America.

ii) The Koran tell Muslims that Jews and Christians will burn forever in the fire of Hell.

God loves Israel (Jeremiah 31:3; Isaiah 43:4), Christians (John 13:34,35) and all the World (John 3:16).

**AL-LAHAB** (Mohammed’s grandfather’s first cousin who opposed him). **111:1-5** May the hands of Abu-lahab perish. May he himself perish. He shall be **burned in a flaming fire**, and his wife laden with firewood, shall have a rope of fibre round her neck.

**UNITY** **112:1-4** SayAllah is One, the Eternal god. He begot none, nor was he begotten. None is equal to him  
**THE SLANDERER** **104:4** He shall be flung into the destroying flame.

**THE ELEPHANT.** **105:2** Did he not confound their stratagem and send against them flocks of birds which pelted them with clay stones, so that they became like withered stalks of plants.

Note: Birds dropping stones on an invading Ethiopian army that flattened and destroyed them is fiction.

## **121. Koran Arranged into Topics.** These explain why many Muslims behave as they do.

### **1. TERROR commanded by the Koran (5 references).**

**3:151** Obey Allah and the Apostle that you may find mercy. We shall put terror in the hearts of the unbelievers, because they ascribe unto Allah partners...their habitation is the Fire.

Note: i) This permits Muslims to commit acts of terror.

ii) The Koran refers to Christians as hellbound because we believe that Jesus is the Son of God.

**8:12** Allah revealed his will to the angels saying: "I shall cast terror into the hearts of the infidels, strike off their heads, strike off the very tips of their fingers...that was because they defied Allah and his apostle."

**8:59** Let not the unbelievers think that they will ever get away...Muster against them all the men and cavalry at your command, so that you may strike terror into the enemy of Allah, and your enemy and others beside them who are unknown to you but known to Allah.

**34:51** If you could only see the unbelievers when they are seized with terror.

**59:2** Allah's scourge fell on them (Jews) when they did not expect it, casting such terror into their hearts that their dwellings were destroyed by their own hands and by the faithful. In the world to come, the fire shall be their scourge because they have set themselves against Allah and his apostle.

### **2. FIGHTING commanded in the Koran. (61 references).**

#### **2:216 Fighting is obligatory for you, much as you dislike it.**

But you may hate a thing although it is good for you. Allah knows.

**2:218** Those that have embraced the faith and those that have fled their land and fought for the cause of Allah, may hope for Allah's mercy.

**2:244** Fight for the cause of Allah.

**2:246** The Israelites demanded of one of their prophets: "Raise up for us a king and we will fight for the cause of Allah. He replied: "What if you refuse to fight when ordered to do so?" They said: "Why should we refuse to fight for the cause of Allah?" But when at last they were ordered to fight, they all refused except a few of them. Allah knows the evil-doers."

Note: i) This comes from 1 Samuel 8:1-22 which says: "Make us king to judge us like all the nations" (v.5) .. "that our king may judge us, and go out before us, fight our battles." (v.20).

The people gave no promise here to fight for the cause of Allah, nor did the Koran's alleged conversation take place.

ii) This passage in the Koran portrays Allah declaring as evil-doers those who refused to fight.

This motivates Muslims to fight if they wish to please Allah.

**2:273** As for those needy men who, being wholly pre-occupied with fighting for the cause of Allah, cannot travel the land in quest of trading ventures... whatever alms you give are known to Allah.

Note: Here the Koran teaches that it is right to sponsor terrorism by paying those who fight for Allah.

**3:125** If you have patience and guard yourselves against evil, Allah will send to your aid 5000 angels, if they suddenly attack you.

Note: This angelic assistance promised to Muslims gives them confidence to provoke war.

**3:157,158** If you should die or be slain in the cause of Allah, His forgiveness and mercy would be better than all the riches they amass. (If you should die or be slain) before Allah you shall all be gathered. Note: This promises heaven to all Muslims who die fighting for the cause of Allah.

**3:169** Never think that those who were slain in the cause of Allah are dead. No, they are alive, and well provided for by their Lord. Allah will not deny the faithful their reward.

**3:195** Those who fought and were slain (for my cause): I shall forgive their sins and admit them to gardens watered by running streams, as a reward from Allah.

**4:66** Had we commanded them saying: "Lay down your lives" ...only a few would have complied. Yet had they done what they were admonished to do, it would have been better for them...We would have bestowed on them from ourself a rich reward.

**4:74** Let those who would exchange the life of this world for the hereafter, fight for the cause of Allah; whoever fights for the cause of Allah, whether he dies or triumphs, we shall richly reward him.

**4:76** True believers **fight** for the cause of **Allah**.

**4:77** When they were ordered to fight, some of them feared man as much as they feared Allah. They said: "Lord, why do you bid us **fight**? Could you not give us a brief respite?"

**4:84** Therefore **fight** for the cause of Allah. Rouse the faithful: perchance Allah will overthrow the might of the unbelievers.

**4:91** If these do not keep their distance from you, nor offer you peace, nor cease their hostilities against you, lay hold of them, and kill them wherever you find them.

**4:94** Believers, show discernment when you go to fight for the cause of Allah.

**4:95** i) The believers who stay at home are not the equals of those who **fight** for the cause of Allah, with their goods and persons.

ii) Allah has given those that **fight** with their good & persons a higher rank than those that stay at home

iii) Far richer is the reward of those who **fight** for **Allah**.

Note: Jesus said: "all they that take the sword shall perish with the sword." Matthew 26:52.

"if my kingdom were of this world, then would my servants fight." John 19:36.

**4:100** He that leaves his dwelling to **fight** for **Allah** and his apostle, and is then overtaken by death, shall be rewarded by **Allah**.

Note: This reminds us of terrorists who go overseas to fight for Allah and who die as a result.

**4:104** Seek out your enemies relentlessly.

Note: Jesus said: "Love your enemies." Matthew 5:44.

**4:141** Allah will not let the unbelievers triumph over the faithful.

Note: This is false as seen by Charles Martel of Europe who defeated the Muslim invaders at the Battle of Tours in 732 AD. This promise makes Muslims feel invincible in warfare.

**5:35** Fight valiantly for His cause, so that you may triumph.

**7:167** He would raise against them (Jews) others who will oppress them cruelly till the day of Resurrection

**8:39** Make war on them until idolatry shall cease and **Allah's religion** shall reign supreme.

**8:65** Prophet, rouse the faithful to arms. O Prophet, exhort the believer to **fight**. If there are 20 steadfast among you, they shall vanquish 200; and if there are 100, they shall route 1000 unbelievers, for they are devoid of understanding.

**8:67** A prophet may not take captives until he has **fought** and triumphed (made slaughter) in the land.

**8:69** Enjoy the good and lawful things you have gained in war.

**8:74** Those that have..**fought for the cause of Allah, sheltered & helped them**, they are the true believers

**9:5** When the sacred months are over, slay the idolaters wherever you find them. Arrest them, besiege them and lie in ambush everywhere for them.

**9:12** If, after coming to terms with you, they break their oaths, and revile your faith, make war on the leaders of unbelief.

**9:14** Make war on them: Allah will chastise them at your hands and humble them. He will grant you victory over them.

**9:19** Worthy is the man that believes in Allah and the last day and **fights for Allah's cause**.

**9:20** Those that have embraced the faith and left their homes and **fought for Allah's cause** with their wealth and persons are held in higher regard by Allah. It is they who shall triumph. Their Lord has promised them joy and mercy, and gardens of eternal bliss where they shall dwell forever. Allah's reward is great indeed.

**9:25** Allah has given you victory on many battlefields.

**9:29** **Fight** against such of those to whom the Scriptures were given as believe neither in Allah nor the last Day, who do not forbid what Allah and his apostle have forbidden, and do not embrace the true faith, until they pay tribute out of hand and are utterly subdued.

**9:30** The Jews say Ezra is the Son of God, while Christians say the Messiah is the Son of God. Such are their assertions, by which they imitate the infidels of old. Allah (Himself) **fights** against them. How perverse are they.

Note: Jesus warned about groups like Islam who think that God wants them to kill Christians:

"..the time cometh, that whosoever killeth you will think that he doeth God service." John 16:2.

**9:33** It is he who has sent forth his apostle with guidance and true faith to make it triumphant over all religions.

**9:36** You may **fight** against **idolaters** in all those months since they fight against you in all of them.

**9:39** If you do not go to war, He will **punish you severely**, and replace you by other men.

**9:41** Whether unarmed or well-equipped, march on and **fight** for the **cause of Allah**, with your **wealth** and with your **persons**.

**9:49** Some say “Give us leave to **stay behind**...” Hell shall engulf the unbelievers.

**9:73** Prophet, make **war** on the **unbelievers** and the **hypocrites** and **deal harshly** with them. Hell shall be their home: an evil fate.

**9:81** They said to each other: “**Do not go to war**, the heat is fierce.” Say unto them, “More fierce is the heat of Hell-fire.” ... **thus shall they be rewarded** for their misdeeds.

**9:93** The **offenders** are those that **seek exemption** although they are men of wealth...

**9:95** Hell shall be their **home**, the **punishment** for their **misdeeds**.

**9:111** Allah has **purchased** from the **faithful** their **lives** and worldly goods and **in return** has promised them the Garden. They will **fight** for the cause of Allah, **slay**, and **be slain**. Such is the true promise which he has made them in the **Torah**, the **Gospel**, and the **Koran**. And who is more true to His people than Allah? Rejoice then in the **bargain** you have made. That is the **supreme triumph**.

**9:122** It is not right that all the faithful should go to **war** at once.

**9:123** Believers, make **war** on the infidels who dwell around you. Deal harshly with them. Know that Allah is with the righteous.

**22:78** **Fight** for the **cause of Allah** with the devotion due to him. He hath named you “Muslims” (those who have surrendered).

**29:69** Those that **fight** for our **cause** we will surely guide to our own paths.

**47:4-6** When you **meet the unbelievers** in the battlefield **strike off their heads**, and when you have laid them low, bind your captives firmly . . . **thus shall you do**. Had Allah willed, He could Himself have punished them; but He has ordained it thus that He might test you. As for those who are **slain** in the **cause of Allah** . . . He will admit them to the Paradise.

**47:20** When **war** is mentioned . . . they faint away for fear of death. Should **war** be decided upon, it would be better for them to be **true to Allah**.

**47:35** Do not falter or sue for peace when you have gained the upper hand. Allah is on your side, and will not grudge you the reward of your labours.

**48:16** Say to the desert Arabs who stayed behind: “You shall be called upon to **fight** a mighty nation, unless they embrace Islam.”

Note: Here Muslims are told to fight to convert non Muslims.

**48:29** Mohammed is Allah’s apostle. Those who follow him are **ruthless** (hard) against the unbelievers, but merciful to one another.

**49:15** The **true believers** are those that have faith in Allah and never doubt; and who **fight** with their **wealth** and their **persons** for the **cause of Allah**.

**57:10** Those of you that gave of their wealth before the victory, and took part in the **fighting**, shall receive **greater honour** than others who **gave** and **fought** thereafter.

Note: This motivates Muslims to start wars and conflicts, so as to get greater rewards from Allah.

**60:1** If you came to **fight** for my **cause**, and out of a desire to **please me**, you left your city, how can you be friendly to them in secret?

Note: This says that Muslims **please Allah by fighting**.

**61:4** Allah **loves** those who **fight** for his **cause** in ranks as firm as a solid structure.

**61:10,11** Believers, shall I point out to you a **profitable course** that will save you from a **woeful scourge**? Have faith in Allah and his apostle, and **fight** for Allah’s **cause** with your **wealth** and **persons**. That would be **best for you**, if you but knew it. He will **forgive your sins** and admit you to Gardens....

**66:9** Prophet, make **war** on the **unbelievers** and the **hypocrites**, and **deal sternly** with them. Hell shall be their home.

**73:20** Your Lord knows that you (Mohammed) sometimes keep vigil nearly two thirds of the night.... Recite from the Koran as many verses as you are able. He knows that others are **fighting** for the **cause of Allah**. What ever good you do you shall be....richly rewarded by him.

### **3. WOMEN mistreated in the Koran. (20 References) 2:228** Men have a status above women.

**2:221** You shall not wed **pagan** women, unless they embrace the faith.

**2:223 Women are your fields:** go, then, into your fields whence you please,

Note: Women are here compared to an impersonal field of dirt to be used for a man's own benefit.

The Bible gives much greater honour to wives in 1 Peter 3:7: "Husbands, dwell with them according to knowledge, giving honour unto the wife,.... as being heirs together of the grace of life."

**4:3** If you fear that you cannot treat orphan girls with fairness, then you may marry other women who seem good to you. 2, 3, or 4 of them. But if you fear that you cannot maintain equality among them, marry one only or any slave girls you may own.

Note: This endorsement of the Koran that a man is allowed to marry as many slave girls as he wishes, inevitably leads to them being treated as second class citizens, and denies them the chance of having an husband who is exclusively their own. It denies many men the chance of ever getting married.

**4:11** A **male** shall inherit twice as much as a **female**.

**4:15** If any of your women commit fornication, call in 4 witnesses from among yourselves against them; if they testify to their guilt confine them to their houses till death overtakes them, or till Allah finds another way for them.

**Question:** What penalty exists for men committing fornication? None. He can fornicate by having a "temporary marriage" called Mutah, or a one-night stand.

**4:20** If you wish to replace a wife with another, do not take from her the dowry you have given her...

**4:34** Men have authority over women because God has made the one **superior** to the other, and because they spend their wealth to maintain them.

**4:34** As for those from whom you fear disobedience, admonish them, send them to their beds apart, and beat (scourge) them. Note: The Arabic word "beat" is "edribu-hunna" means small or severe.

Note: Here the Koran encourages men to scourge (beat severely) their wives even on the suspicion of disobedience. (**No limit on the beating's severity**). The Bible never permits domestic violence, but commands "husbands love your wives as Christ loved the church and gave himself for it." (Eph. 5:25).

**23:1-6** Blessed are the believers . . . who restrain their carnal desires (except with their wives and slave girls, for these are lawful to them). Note: The Koran here legitimises slavery of females.

### 33. THE CONFEDERATE TRIBES/THE CLANS

i) This Surah contains the seige of Mohammed's city Yathrib by the Qureysh and Ghatafan clans (Ibn Khaldun narrative). V.26,27 refer to Mohammed's punishment of the **Jewish tribe** Bani Qureyzah who had broken their alliance with the Muslims & made common cause with the Qureysh. All their men were put to death, their women and children taken captive & their property divided among the Muslims

ii) 37- **Mohammed ordered the divorce of his adopted son Zeyd** from his wife Zeynab because Mohammed wanted to marry Zeynab. When people protested this, Mohammed claimed to have a command from Allah for Zeyd to divorce Zeynab and for Mohammed to marry Zeynab.

iii) Pickthall says, "With the exception of Aveshah, the daughter of his closest friend, Abu Baker, whom **he married** at her father's request when she was still a child, all his later marriages were with widows whose state was pitiable. . ." Koran (Pickthall) p.428. In the West, this is Paedophilia.

**33:30** Wives of the Prophet! Those of you who commit a proven sin/lewdness will be doubly punished

**33:37** You (Mohammed) said to the man (Zayd, Mohammed's adopted son) whom God and yourself have favoured: "Keep your wife and have fear of God". You sought to hide in your heart what Allah was to reveal (your intention to marry Zayd's wife). You were afraid of man . . . When Zayd divorced his wife, we gave her to you in marriage.

**33:38** No blame shall be attached to the prophet for doing what is sanctioned for him by Allah.

Note: When David took another man's wife, God judged him.

**38:25,26** David sought forgiveness of his Lord and fell down penitently on his knees. We forgave him his sin.

**Question:** How is it a sin for **David** to murder and take another man's wife (Bathsheba), and not a sin for **Mohammed** to murder and take another man's wife (Zeynab)? Allah has double standards between Mohammed and David. It appears that Mohammed is using Allah as a rubber stamp to endorse whatever he wants to do.

**33:50** Prophet, we have made lawful to you . . . the **slave girls** whom Allah has given you as booty; and any believing woman who gives herself to the Prophet and **whom the Prophet wishes to take in marriage**. This privilege is yours alone.

**33:51** You may put off any of your wives you please, and take to your bed any of them you please.

**33:52** It is unlawful for believers to take more wives...except where **slave girls** are concerned.

**33:59** Prophet, enjoin your wives, your daughters, and the wives of true believers to draw their veils close round them . . . so that they may be recognized and not molested.

**58:2** Those of you who divorce their wives by declaring them to be their mothers should know that they are not their mothers.

**64:14** Believers you have an **enemy** in your **wives** and in **your children**: beware of them.

Note: What rubbish! The Bible says “Husbands love your wives as Christ loved the church.” Eph. 5:25.

**70:22** Not so the worshippers, who.... Dread the punishment of the Lord (for none is secure from the punishment of their Lord), who restrain their carnal desire (except with their wives and **slave girls**, for these are lawful to them.). Note: All Muslims must live in fear of Allah's punishment. “None are secure from Allah's punishment”. The Koran allows taking girls into sexual slavery but the God of the Bible is against slavery and wills that the younger women marry one man only (I Cor. 7:2-5; I Tim. 1:10; 5:14).

#### **4. DEATH to those leaving Islam (5 References)**

**2:217** Whoever of you recants and dies an unbeliever,... shall be the tenants of the Fire, wherein they shall abide forever.

Note: This verse keeps Muslims trapped in Islam for fear of hell.

**4:89** If they desert you, seize them and put them to death wherever you find them.

Note: Fear of death is why so few people leave Islam.

**16:106** Those who deny Allah after professing Islam and open their bosoms to unbelief shall incur the wrath of Allah, grievous punishment awaits them.

Note: This means death to those who leave Islam.

**47:25,27** Those who turn back (from Islam) angels shall gather them, smiting their faces & their backs

**63:3,4** They believed and then renounced their faith...they are the **enemy**. Guard yourself against them. Allah confound them!

#### **5. ONLY true faith is Islam (7 References)**

**3:19** The only true faith in Allah's sight is Islam.

**3:62** This is the whole truth: “There is no god but Allah.”

**3:85** He that chooses a religion other than Islam (surrender to Allah), it will not be accepted of him, and he will be a loser in the hereafter.

**9:33** It is he who has sent forth his apostle with guidance and true faith to make it triumph over all religions.

**48:28** It is He that has sent forth his apostle . . . so that He may exalt it above all religions.

**61:9** He sent his Apostle... so that he may exalt it above all other religions.

**43:30** Now the truth has come to them, they say: “This is sorcery. We utterly reject it.”

#### **6. PUBLIC OPINION about Mohammed, Allah and the Koran (16 References)**

**10:3** Unbelievers say: “This man is a skilled enchanter.”

**13:7,27** The unbelievers ask: “Why has no sign been given him by his Lord?”

Note: The Biblical apostles were given signs: “Confirming the word with signs following.” Mark 16:20

**16:101** When we change one verse for another (Allah knows best what he reveals), they say, “You (Mohammed) are an imposter.”

**17:47** The wrong-doers declare: “The man (Mohammed) you follow is surely bewitched.”

**25:5** And they say: “Fables of the ancients he has written.”

**34:43** Others say: “This (Koran) is nothing but an invented falsehood.” Others declare: “This (Koran) is but plain sorcery.”

**37:36** Are we to renounce our gods for the sake of a mad poet?

**41:26** Unbelievers say: “Give no heed to this Koran. Cut short its recital with boiling and laughter..” We will sternly punish the unbelievers . . . The Fire shall for ever be their home.

**44:14-16** They denied him (Mohammed) saying: “A madman taught by others”. On that day we will inflict on them the supreme punishment and avenge ourself.

**46:11** Unbelievers say: “This is an ancient lie.”

**53:1,2,3** By the declining star, your compatriot (Mohammed) is not in error, nor is he deceived. He does not speak out of his own fancy.

**53:19** Have you thought on AL-LAT and AL-UZZA, and on MANAT, the third other.

Note: These are names that early Meccans gave to Allah’s daughters.

**68:15** When our revelations are recited to him he says: “They are but fables of the ancients.” We shall brand him on the nose. Note: Unbelievers rightly said this because much in the Koran was copied from earlier writings such as 26 Arabian, Jewish and Christian sources.

**68:51** When they hear our revelations, unbelievers say “Surely he is possessed”.

Note: When Mohammed gave a revelation, he would fall onto the ground in a trancelike fit. Witnesses thought him to be possessed. No Bible prophet did this. This is a sign of demon possession (Mark 9:20)

**81:22** No, your compatriot (Mohammed) is not mad, He saw him (Gabriel) on the clear horizon.. nor is this the utterance of an accursed devil.

## 7. HELL’S TORMENTS in the Koran to motivate Muslims to obey Mohammed (70 References)

**2:217** Whoever of you recants and dies an unbeliever,... shall be the tenants of the Fire, wherein they shall abide forever.

Note: This verse keeps Muslims trapped in Islam for fear of hell.

**3:4** Those who disbelieve Allah’s revelations shall be sternly punished.

**3:11** Allah is severe in punishment.

**3:12** Say to the unbelievers: “You shall be overthrown and driven into hell.”

**4:56** Those that deny our revelations we will burn in the Fire. No sooner will their skins be consumed than we shall give them other skins, so that they may truly taste the scourge.

Note: What terror inducing rubbish! Thankfully the love & permanent salvation of Jesus Christ delivers us from such fear. (John 10:28). Jesus said, “I give unto them eternal life, and they shall never perish.”

**11:119** The word of your Lord shall be fulfilled: “I will fill Hell with jinn and mankind together.”

**14:16** Hell is before him, and he is made to drink a festering water (liquid pus), which he will sip, but can hardly swallow.

**19:71** There is not one among you who shall not pass through it (the fire of hell v.68): such is the absolute decree of your Lord. We will deliver those who fear us, and leave the wrongdoers there.

Note: This states that every Muslim will spend time in hell. What a shocking prospect to face. Islam thus offers nothing to solve man’s fear of death. The Bible says, “He that has the Son has life”. This means that even Mohammed went to hell. Whoever wrote the Koran wants people to go to hell.

**20:113** Thus we have revealed it as a lecture (Quran) in Arabic, and have displayed therein certain threats, that they may keep them from evil, or that it may cause them to take heed.

Note: Many of the verses in the Koran are threats of punishment, torture or hell fire for those who don’t do what the Koran says. Fear is a major motive for Muslims in the Koran. In Hebrews 2:15, Christ’s salvation, “delivers them who through fear of death were all their lifetime subject to bondage.”

**22:19** Garments of fire have been prepared for the unbelievers. Scalding water shall be poured upon their heads, melting their skins and that which is in their bellies.

**22:21** They shall be lashed with hooked rods of iron.

**22:22** Whenever, in their anguish, they try to escape from hell, back they shall be dragged.

**32:13** “I will surely fill Hell with jinn and humans all.”

**33:8** For the unbelievers He (Allah) has prepared a woeful punishment.

**33:17** Say, “Who can protect you from Allah if it is His will to scourge you? ”

**33:64** Allah has cursed the unbelievers and prepared for them a blazing fire on the day when their faces (heads) will roll about in the fire..Lord, mete out to them a double scourge, lay on them a mighty curse.

**34:5** Those who strive to refute our revelations shall suffer the torment of a harrowing scourge.

Note: Nobody is allowed to question the Koran.

**37:62-68** We have made this (Zaqqum) tree a scourge for the unjust. It grows in the nethermost part of Hell, bearing fruit like devils heads: on it they shall feed, and with it they shall cram their bellies, together with draughts of scalding water. Then to hell they shall return.

**38:56-58** The transgressors shall burn in hell, a dismal resting place. There let them taste their drink, scalding water, fester blood and other putrid things.

**39:16** Above them shall be sheets of fire and sheets of fire shall be beneath them. By this, Allah puts fear into his servants' hearts. Note: Islam appears as a religion of fear and terror.

**39:31** In throngs the unbelievers shall be led to hell. They will be told to enter the gates of hell and stay there forever.

**40:18** Warn them of the approaching day, when men's hearts will leap up to their throats & choke them

**40:21** Allah scourged them for their sins . . . they had none to protect them.

**40:71** When with chains and shackles round their necks, they shall be dragged through scalding water and burnt in the fire of Hell.

**41:16** . . . more shameful still will be the scourge of the life to come.

**41:17** The thunderbolt of a humiliating scourge struck them for their misdeeds.

**41:19** Forewarn them of the day when the enemies of Allah will be brought together & led into the Fire

**42:26** Grievous punishment awaits the unbelievers.

**42:45** Wrongdoers shall surely suffer everlasting torment.

**43:74** Evildoers shall endure forever the torment of Hell. Their punishment will never be lightened, and they shall be speechless with despair.

**44:43-48** The fruit of the Zaqqum tree shall be the sinners food. Like molten brass, like scalding water, it shall simmer in his belly. A voice will cry, "Seize him and drag him into the depths of hell. Then pour scalding water over his head."

**44:14-16** They denied him (Mohammed) saying: "A madman taught by others". On that day we will inflict on them the supreme punishment and avenge ourselves.

**45:9** Those that deride our revelations when they know but little of them shall suffer degrading torment

**45:10** Hell is behind them.

**45:11** Those that deny their Lord's revelations shall suffer the anguish of a woeful scourge.

**45:33** The scourge at which they scoffed will encompass them.

**45:34** The Fire shall be your home and none will help you.

**46:20,34** We shall say to unbelievers: "Your reward will be degrading torment".

**48:6** Allah is angry with them (hypocrites, idolaters). He has laid on them his curse and prepared for them the fire of Hell.

**48:13** Those that disbelieve in Allah & his apostle, we have prepared a blazing fire for the unbelievers.

**50:24** A voice will cry: "Cast into Hell every hardened unbeliever".

**51:12,13** On the Day of Judgment they shall be scorched in the Fire.

**52:13** On that day they (unbelievers) shall be sternly thrown into the fire of hell . . . burn in its flames.

**54:48** On the day when wrongdoers are dragged into the Fire upon their faces, we shall say to them: "Feel the touch of Hell".

**THE MERCIFUL(???)**

**55:35** Flames of fire shall be lashed at you, and molten brass.

**55:41** The wrongdoers . . . shall be seized by their forelocks and their feet.

**55:44** They shall wander between fire and water fiercely seething.

**56:52-54** As for you sinners who deny the truth, you shall eat the fruit of the Zaqqum tree and fill your bellies with it. You shall drink scalding water.

**56:92-95** If he is an erring disbeliever, his welcome will be scalding water, and he will burn in hell. This is surely the indubitable truth.

**57:15** The fire shall be your home (unbelievers and hypocrites): you have justly earned it, a dismal end.

**57:19** Those that disbelieve our revelations and deny them are the heirs of Hell.

**58:14** Do you not see those that have befriended a people with whom Allah is angry? (98:6). Allah has prepared for them a grievous scourge. They are inmates of the fire, there shall they abide forever.

**61:10,11** Believers, shall I point out to you a profitable course that will save you from a woeful scourge? Have faith in Allah and his apostle, and fight for Allah's cause with your wealth and persons. That would be best for you, if you but knew it. He will forgive your sins and admit you to Gardens....  
**64:10** Those that disbelieve and deny our revelation shall be made the inmates of the Fire, and shall abide therein forever.

**68:33** The punishment of the life to come is more terrible if they but knew it.

**69:30-36** We shall say "Bind him. Burn him in the fire of Hell, then fasten him with a chain 70 cubits long. For he did not believe in Allah...filth shall be his food...this is the utterance of a noble messenger"  
**70:15** The fire of Hell shall drag him down by the scalp.

**72:23** Those that disobey Allah and His Apostle shall abide forever in the Fire of Hell.

Note: Mohammed, in order to terrify people into submission to his will, equated his will with Allah's will, threatening them with going to hell fire if they disobeyed his/Allah's will.

**73:12** We have in store for them (unbelievers) heavy fetters and a blazing fire, choking food and harrowing torments.... mountains shall crumble into heaps of shifting sand.

**74:24** Unbelievers said: "This is but sorcery counterfeited, the speech of a mere mortal man". I will surely cast him into the fire. It burns the skins of men.

**76:4** For the unbelievers we have prepared chains and fetters and a blazing fire.

Note: The God of the Bible loves sinners, died for them, wants them to go to heaven and is not willing that any should perish. He prepared everlasting fire for the Devil & his angels, not for man (Mat 25:44). Allah of the Koran delights in sending people to hell. He is very different to the God of the Bible  
**77:29** Woe on the day to the unbelievers! Begone to that hell which you deny.

**78:21** Hell will lie in ambush, a home for the transgressors. There they shall abide long ages; there they shall taste neither refreshment or drink, save scalding water and decaying filth: a fitting recompense.

**82:14** The wicked shall burn in hell upon the Judgment Day nor shall they escape from it.

**83:16** They shall burn in Hell.

**84:14** He shall call down destruction on himself and burn in the fire of hell.

**87:12** He shall burn in the gigantic fire, where he shall neither die nor live.

**88:1-7** On that day there shall be downcast faces, of men broken and worn out burnt by a scorching fire, drinking from a scalding fountain. Their only food shall be bitter thorns.

**98:4-6** The unbelievers among the People of the Book and all the pagans shall burn forever in the fire of hell. They are the vilest of all creatures (worst created beings).

Note: i) The Koran tells Muslims that Jews and Christians are the vilest and worst of all creatures. This partly explains why many Muslims hate Jews and Christians, particularly Israel and America.

ii) The Koran tell Muslims that Jews and Christians will burn forever in the fire of Hell. The Bible says that God loves Israel (Jeremiah 31:3; Isaiah 43:4), Christians (John 13:34,35) and all the World (John 3:16). "He that has the Son has life." I John 5:13.

**104:4** He shall be flung into the destroying flame.

**111:1-5** May the hands of Abu-lahab perish. May he himself perish. He shall be burned in a flaming fire, and his wife laden with firewood, shall have a rope of fibre round her neck.

## 8. CHRIST greater than MOHAMMED in the Koran (9 References)

**19:29** Christ raised to life.

**19:29** Christ sinless.

**2:253** Christ did miracles, Moh didn't. We gave Jesus clear signs.2:118 Allah does not give us a sign

**3:49** Jesus healed the blind, leper, and the dead. Jesus said:

"By Allah's leave I shall heal the blind man, and the leper, and raise the dead to life."

Christ's miracles prove that He is much greater than Mohammed who never did miracles.

**5:46,47** Jesus...We gave him the gospel. Note: The Koran never defines the gospel of Christ but the Bible does (I Corinthians 15:1-4). Mohammed never preached the New Testament gospel.

**43:63** When Jesus came with evident signs, he said: "I have come to give you wisdom . . . Fear God and FOLLOW me."

Note: Jesus gave evident signs/miracles, but Mohammed could not. Hence Jesus is greater than Mohammed. Jesus commands Muslims to "Follow me". Do Muslims obey this?

**57:25** We have sent our apostles with veritable signs, and through them have brought down scriptures and the scales of justice, so men might conduct themselves with fairness.

Note: This fairness and justice are found in the Bible, not in the Koran.

**57:27** Jesus, the son of Mary. We gave him the Gospel and put compassion and mercy in the hearts of his followers.

Question: Why couldn't Allah put compassion and mercy in the hearts of Muslims? (He is different).

Question: What is the Gospel that Jesus preached that can save sinners from sin and hell.

Answer: That Christ died for our sins, was buried and rose again the third day? (1 Cor.15:1-4).

**70:22** Not so the worshipers, who.... Dread the punishment of the Lord (for none is secure from the punishment of their Lord), who restrain their carnal desire (except with their wives and slave girls, for these are lawful to them.)

Note: All Muslims live in fear of Allah's punishment, since none are secure from Allah's punishment.

## 9. ANTI-CHRIST and ANTI-CHRISTIAN (People of the Book) quotes in the Koran (29 Quotes)

**3:69** Some of the People of the Book (Jews and Christians), wish to mislead you.

**3:70** People of the Book! Why do you disbelieve in the revelations of Allah? See 22 reasons page 993.

**4:157** They did not kill him (Jesus), nor did they crucify him, but they thought they did... They did not slay him for certain. Allah lifted him up to himself. Note: This contradicts the prophets David (Psalm 22:16), Isaiah (53), Daniel (9:26), NT prophets, as well as Quran 19:33: "Blessed I shall be on the day of my death " and **Q 3:55** "Allah said "O Isa! I will make you sleep and raise you to myself."

**4:171** People of the Book (Christians): Believe in Allah and his apostles and do not say "THREE". God is but one God. God forbid that He should have a son.

Note: Yes Christians believe that God is one God, but that He has 3 parts (Father, Son, Holy Spirit) each of which is fully God. Jesus is fully God and fully man. As humans have a body, soul, and spirit, so God is Father, Son and Holy Spirit, all fully and equally God. The OT and the NT teach this.

**5:16** Unbelievers are those who declare: "God is the Messiah, the son of Mary." Say, "Who could prevent Allah, if he so willed, from destroying the Messiah, the son of Mary, his mother, and all the people of the earth?" Note: This is what Satan wants. ("devour the man child". Revelation 12:3-5).

**5:51** Believers (Muslims), take neither the Jews nor the Christians for your friends ... wrongdoers.

**5:56** Believers (Muslims), do not seek friendship of the infidels and those who were given the Book (Bible) before you, who have made your religion a jest.

**5:72** Unbelievers are those that say; "God is the Messiah, the son of Mary."

**5:73** Unbelievers are those that say: "God is one of three."

**5:116** Allah will say: "Jesus, son of Mary, did you ever say to mankind: "Worship me and my mother as gods beside Allah?""

Note: The Koran's error in thinking that the Trinity is God, Jesus and Mary.

**6:102** How should he have a son when he had no consort?

**9:29** Fight against such of those to whom the Scriptures were given as believe neither in Allah nor the last Day, who do not forbid what Allah and his apostle have forbidden, and do not embrace the true faith, until they pay tribute out of hand and are utterly subdued. Note: See John 16:2 "Whosoever kills you..."

**9:30** The Jews say Ezra is the Son of God, while Christians say the Messiah is the Son of God. Such are their assertions, by which they imitate the infidels of old. Allah (Himself) fights against them. How perversion are they.

**10:38** This Koran...confirms what was revealed before it and fully explains the Scriptures. (False).

**10:69** They say: "Allah has begotten a son." God forbid.

**10:95** If you (Mohammed) doubt what we have revealed to you, then ask those who read the scriptures that were before you.

**16:43** Ask the People of the Book, if ye know not.

**17:111** Cry unto Allah and say: "Praise be to Allah who has never begotten a son; who has no partner in His kingdom; who needs none to defend Him from humiliation."

Note: This denies Jesus Christ being the Son of God and God the Son.

**18:4,5** Admonish those who say that God has begotten a son.

A monstrous blasphemy is that which they utter. They preach nothing but falsehood.

**19:88** Those who say: “The Lord of mercy has begotten a son” preach a monstrous falsehood, at which the heavens might crack, the earth break assunder, and the mountains crumble to dust.

Note: The Koran’s hatred to God having a Son is comparable to Satan’s hatred of Christ (Revelation 12:4). Mohammad did not know that Greek has 2 different words for “son”, huios and teknon.

**23:91** Never has Allah begotten a son.

**29:46** Be courteous when you argue with the People of the Book, except with those among them who do evil. Say: ‘We believe in that which is revealed to us, and which was revealed to you. Our God and your God is one.

Note: This is 100% false. Allah and the God of the Bible have very different natures and personalities. Allah is the moon god of 6<sup>th</sup> Century Arabia. In reality Muslims do not believe in the Bible. If they did, they would study it, obey it and worship Jesus Christ as Saviour and God. See p.1026.

**34:5** Those who strive to refute our revelations shall suffer the torment of a harrowing scourge.

Note: Nobody is allowed to question the Koran.

**36:8** We have bound their necks (unbelievers) with chains of iron reaching up to their chins, so that they cannot bow their heads.

**43:81** Say to Christians: “If the Lord of Mercy had a son, I would be the first to worship him”.

Note: The prophets refute the Koran here by saying that God does have a Son: Solomon (Proverbs 30:4), Daniel (3:25), David (Psalm 2:7,12), even Gabriel (Luke 1:32,35).

**72:1** Say (Mohammed): “It is revealed to me that a band of jinn listened to Allah’s revelations and said: We have heard a wonderous Koran giving guidance to the right path. We believed in it and shall henceforth serve none besides Allah. He has taken no consort, nor has he begotten any children. The Blaspheming One among us has uttered a wanton falsehood against Allah. Some men have sought the help of the jinn, but they misled them into further error. We made our way to high heaven, and found it filled with mighty wardens and fiery comets. We sat eavesdropping, but eavesdroppers find flaming darts in wait for them. Some of us are Muslims and some are wrongdoers. Note:

i) If demons endorse the Koran (by saying that the Koran guides in the right path), then demons whose nature is evil and deception, tell us that the Koran is the wrong path for man.

ii) Evil demons serving Allah show that Allah is not the God of the Bible.

iii) These demons deny that Jesus is God the Son. “Every Spirit that confesseth not that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh is not of God, this is the spirit of the antichrist.” I John 4:3.

iv) Muslims hatred of Christianity is because they think we are preaching blasphemy by calling Jesus Christ the Son of God.

v) This passage teaches that demon Jinn lead men into error. Jinn have led the entire Muslim world into error. Paul rejected the support of demons (Acts 16:16-18). So should we.

vi) v.8,9 claim that Allah sends fiery comets to hit jinn when they listen to conversations in heaven.

vii) Verse 14 says some jinn became Muslims by surrendering to Allah. If some demons are now Muslims and they help spread Islam, then Islam is a religion of demons.

“Now the Spirit speaketh expressly, that in the latter times some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of devils, speaking lies in hypocrisy.” I Timothy 4:1,2.

**98:4,5** The People of the Book ...are ordered to serve Allah, to worship none but him, to attend to their prayers, and to render the alms levy.

**98:6** The unbelievers among the People of the Book and all the pagans shall burn forever in the fire of hell. They are the vilest of all creatures (worst created beings).

Note: i) The Koran tells Muslims that Jews and Christians (who don’t believe in Allah) are the vilest and worst of all creatures. This partly explains why many Muslims hate Jews and Christians, particularly Israel and America.

ii) The Koran tells Muslims that Jews and Christians will burn forever in the fire of Hell. The Bible says that God loves Israel (Jer 31:3; Isaiah 43:4), Christians (John 13:34,35)& all the World (John 3:16

**112:1-4** Say Allah is One, the Eternal god. He begot none, nor was he begotten. None is equal to him. (Jesus claimed equality with God in John 5:18 “making himself equal with God.”

## **10. CONTRADICTIONS between the Bible and the Koran (35 References)**

### **God never commanded Satan and the angels to bow down to Adam:**

**2:34** When we said to the angels: “Prostrate yourselves before Adam”, they all prostrated themselves except Satan who in his pride refused and became an unbeliever.

Note: This story is contrary to the Bible. It is recorded about 7 times in the Koran for no purpose but to lengthen the book. (2:34; 7:11; 15:30-33; 17:61,62; 18:50; 20:115; 38:75).

**15:28-38** Allah said to the angels: “...fall down and prostrate yourselves unto Adam.”

All angels prostrated themselves, except Satan. Allah asked Satan why he won't bow down to Adam. Satan said: “I will not bow to a mortal whom you created of dry clay...”

Allah says: “Be gone, my curse shall be on you till Judgment day.” Satan asks Allah: “Rephrase me till the day of Resurrection.” Allah agrees: “You are reprieved till the appointed day.”

Satan says to Allah: “Since you have seduced me, I will tempt mankind on earth.”

Allah replies: “You shall have no power over my servants, only the sinners who follow you. They are all destined for hell.” Notice 6 errors in this passage:

**1) In the Bible, God never told angels to fall down to Adam.**

**2) By Satan refusing, Satan is shown to be doing right.**

**3) God's curse on Satan seems unjust, thus attacking God's justice. Satan wants God to seem unjust.**

**4) Satan is seen manipulating God out of being cursed.**

**5) Satan's excuse for tempting mankind, is because God seduced him. This legitimises seduction.**

**6) God only gives Satan power over those destined for hell. (God doesn't predestine anyone to hell.)**

**7) If Allah is all-knowing, why did he ask Satan to tell him why he did not bow down? He should know**

### **The Koran does not confirm the Bible, but contradicts it:**

**2:41** Have faith in my revelations which confirm your scriptures.

Note: The Koran does not confirm the Bible, but contradicts it on almost every page and on every doctrine, such as Salvation, God, and heaven. This lie is repeated in 2:89,91; 3:81;10:38; 12:111; 46:12. **5:48** The Koran confirms the Scriptures which came before it.

**12:111** It is no invented story but a confirmation of the existing scriptures...

### **Gabriel and the Apostles refute the Koran:**

**2:97** Say: “Whoever is an enemy of Gabriel (who has by Allah's grace revealed to you the Koran... confirming previous scriptures)...an enemy of Allah, His angels, His apostles, of Gabriel, or Michael, will surely find that Allah is the enemy of the unbelievers.”

Note: The Koran in order to build acceptance and credibility claims support from previous sources of the truth such as God, angels, prophets, apostles, Gabriel and Michael. Their words in the Bible are totally different from the Koran. How many Muslims have carefully studied and understood the Bible?

Note: i) Michael the archangel stands for Israel (Daniel 12:1), but the Koran opposes Israel (98:6).

ii) Gabriel's message is opposite to the Koran's about Christ, “in the sixth month the angel Gabriel was sent from God... to a virgin (v.26,27). The angel said unto her “Fear not, Mary, for thou hast found favour with God. And behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name JESUS. (v.30,31) He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest... of his kingdom there shall be no end. (v.32,33) that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God.” (v.35). Luke 2:26-35.

The Koran denies that God has a Son, yet the Bible, the apostles, and prophets Daniel (3:25), David (Psalm 2), Solomon (Proverbs 30:4), and Gabriel all say that God has a Son. Whom do you believe?

### **Bible prophets do not support the Koran, but refute it:**

**2:136** Say: “We believe in Allah and that which is revealed to us (Koran); in what was revealed to Abraham, Ishmael, Isaac, Jacob and the tribes; to Moses, Jesus and the other prophets by their Lord.

Note: Again the Koran appeals to these men to support the Muslim faith. If Muslims studied their writings they would see how opposite their teachings are to Mohammed and to the Koran.

### **Divorced persons who marry another, cannot remarry each other:**

**2:230** If a man divorces his wife he cannot remarry her until she has wedded another man and been divorced by him; in which case it shall be no offence for either of them to return to the other.

Note: This clearly contradicts God's law given to Moses in Deuteronomy 24:1-4 “Her former husband which sent her away, may not take her again to be his wife,... for that is abomination before the Lord.”

## Israel demands a King, not a fight:

**2:246** The Israelites demanded of one of their prophets: “Raise up for us a king and we will **fight** for the cause of Allah. He replied: “What if you refuse to fight when ordered to do so?” They said: “Why should we refuse to fight for the cause of Allah?” But when at last they were ordered to fight, they all refused except a few of them. Allah knows the evil-doers.”

Note: i) This is from 1 Samuel 8:1-22 which says: “Make us a king to judge us like all the nations” (v.5) “that our king may judge us, and go out before us, and fight our battles.” (v.20).

The people gave no promise here to fight for the cause of Allah, nor did the Koran’s alleged conversation take place.

**ii)** This passage in the Koran portrays Allah declaring as evil-doers those who refused to fight. This motivates Muslims to fight in order to please Allah. “Devil ..was a murderer.” John 8:44; I John 3:15.

## Saul confused with Gideon:

**2:249** When Saul marched out with his army, he said: “Allah will prove you at a certain river. He that drinks from it shall cease to be my soldier, but he that... contents himself with a taste of it in the hollow of his hand, shall fight by my side.”

**iii)** Error in the Koran: The writer of the Koran here confused Saul (1100 BC) with Gideon (1250 BC). It was Gideon who God told to take his troops to a river to reduce their numbers from 10,000 to 300 by this same drinking test. (Judges 7:1-7).

## Salvation cannot be purchased with money.

**2:271** To give alms (money) in private is better and will atone for some of your sins.

Note: This teaches the error that man can buy his way into heaven. Psalm 49:7, Acts 8:20 refutes this.

**Q:** What about a poor man of no money? Does he go to hell, while a rich man buys his way to heaven?

**2:284** Allah will forgive whom he will and punish whom he pleases.

**3:81** When Allah made his covenant with the prophets, he said: “Here are the scriptures and wisdom which I have given you. Afterward there will come unto you a messenger (or apostle) to confirm them. You shall believe in him and help him.”

Note: This comes from Deuteronomy 18:18,19 where God says: “I will raise them (Israel) up a Prophet (Christ, not Mohammed) from among their brethren (Mohammed was not a Jew, but a Gentile Arabian), like unto thee (Moses), and will put my words in his mouth...”

Muslims claim that this prophecy refers to Mohammed, but the Prophet was Jesus Christ because:

i) Jesus was an Israelite, Mohammed was not.

ii) Jesus Christ prophesied the future, Mohammed did not.

iii) Jesus was like Moses in 63 ways, Mohammed was not. See Answers p.1087.

iv) Jesus spoke kind words of God, Mohammed spoke words of hate.

v) Jesus “went about doing good.” (Acts 10:38), Mohammed gave terrorism, Jihad, suicide bombers, hatred.

**3:96, 97** The first temple ever to be built for mankind was that at Bakkah (Mecca). In it there are clear signs and the spot where Abraham stood to pray... Pilgrimage to the House is a duty to Allah for all who can make the journey.

Note: i) There is no Biblical or historical evidence that Abraham ever visited Mecca.

ii) The Tabernacle, Solomon’s temple or Herod’s temple were earlier than the Kabah at Mecca.

**3:166** The misfortune which befell you when the two armies met was ordained by Allah.

**4:116** Allah will not forgive idolatry.

Note: Error in the Koran here. Jesus said: “All manner of sin and blasphemy shall be forgiven unto men: but the blasphemy against the Holy Ghost shall not be forgiven unto men.” Matthew 12:31,32.

**4:124** Believers who do good works, both men and women shall enter paradise.

Note: This contradicts over 50 New Testament references that good works don’t save us. None of us are good compared to God. “Not of works, lest any man should boast.” Ephes. 2:8-10; Titus 3:5. p.387.

**4:157** They did not kill him (Jesus), nor did they crucify him, but they thought they did... They did not slay him for certain. Allah lifted him up to himself.”

Note: This contradicts the prophets David (Psalm 22:16), Isaiah (53), Daniel (9:26), NT prophets, as well as Quran 19:33: “Blessed I shall be on the day of my death.”

**4:163** We have revealed our will to you (Mohammed) as we revealed it to Noah, Abraham, Ishmael, Isaac, Jacob, Jesus, Job, Jonah, Aaron, Solomon and David.

Note: The true prophet David in Psalm 2:12 calls Jesus the “Son.” (“Kiss the Son.”) contradicting the false prophet Mohammed.

**5:116** Allah will say: “Jesus, son of Mary, did you ever say to mankind: `Worship me and my mother as gods beside God?’”

Note: The Koran’s error in thinking that the Trinity is God, Jesus and Mary. Jesus accepted worship.

**6:51** They have no guardian or intercessor besides Allah. Note: Jesus is our intercessor (I Timothy 2:5)

**6:101** How should he have a son when he had no consort?

**Did Allah create the heaven and the earth in 6 or 8 days?**

**7:24** Allah who created the heaven and the earth in 6 days.

**10:4** Allah created the heaven and earth in 6 days (11:7).

**41:9** Do you disbelieve in him who created the earth in 2 days? He set upon the earth mountains towering high above it. (FALSE).

**41:10** . . . in 4 days provided it with sustenance for all alike.

**41:12** In 2 days He formed the sky into 7 heavens.

Note: Two mistakes in this are as follows:

i) According to Genesis 7:19,20 there were no towering high mountains before Noah’s Flood because there were only high hills then which the waters covered by 15 cubits or 22 feet.

ii) According to Exodus 20:11, “In six days the Lord made heaven and earth, the sea and all that in them is,” not 8 days.

**Mohammed was not described in the Torah and Gospel, it was Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit.**

**7:157** Those who follow the Prophet- whom they shall find described in the Torah and the Gospel.

**7:179** We have predestined for hell numerous jinn and men. (*Islam offers no hope to many people.*)

**9:103** Take alms from them, so that they may thereby be cleansed and purified.

Note: This teaches the error of salvation by giving money.

**10:101** None can have faith (believe) except by the will (permission) of Allah.

**11:34** If Allah’s will is to keep you astray.

**11:114** Good deeds annul ill deeds. Note: This teaches the error of salvation by good works.

**17:101** To Moses we gave 9 clear signs. Note: False. He was given 10 signs. (Exodus 7:14-11:1).

**27:12** One of 9 signs to Pharaoh.

**17:104** We said to the Israelites: “Dwell in the land. When the promise of the hereafter comes to be fulfilled, we shall assemble you all together.” (Out of various nations).

Note: This is a clear false prophecy, because Israelites have already been assembled in the land, and the promise of the hereafter (ie. Day of Judgement) has not yet happened. This is one reason why devout Muslims want Israelites destroyed and out of the land.

**37:147** Jonah . . . we sent him to a nation 100,000 strong or more.

(Jonah 4:11 states that Nineveh had 120,000 children under age about 7 who could not tell their left hand from their right hand. A total of 100,000 is way out.)

**40:36** Pharaoh said to Haman: “Build me a tower that I may reach the heavens and look upon the god of Moses.” Note: Pharaoh (1500 BC) and Haman (500 BC) never knew each other.

**53:32** To those who avoid the grossest sins and indecencies, and commit only small offences, your Lord will show abundant mercy.

Note: This allows Muslims to commit any sins that they define as “only small offences”. This proves the Koran came from a sinful human mind, not from the Holy God of the Bible who sees all sin as sinful

**57:22** Every misfortune befalling the Earth, or your own persons, is ordained before we bring it to pass.

**61:6** Jesus, the son of Mary, said to the Israelites, I am sent from you to Allah to confirm the Torah , and to give news of an apostle that will come after Me whose name is Ahmed (the praised one).

Note: Muslims claim that Mohammed was the fulfillment of Jesus’ Prophecy in John 14:16-18; 16:7-14 of sending the Comforter. **Key:** Jesus declared that this Comforter is the Holy Spirit, not Mohammed.

**i)** John 14:16 “Another Comforter, that he may abide with you forever.”

Note: Mohammed died and did not abide with us forever.

The disciples never knew Mohammed, nor did Mohammed dwell with the disciples in 33AD.

ii) John 14:17 “ye shall know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you. ”

iii) John 14:26 “But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost. ”

iv) John 16:13 “When he, the Spirit of Truth, is come...”

v) John 16:14 “He shall glorify me (Jesus)..”. Note: Mohammed did not glorify Jesus.

**61:14** Believers, be Allah’s helpers. When Jesus, the son of Mary, said to the disciples, “Who will come with me to the help of Allah?” The disciples replied; “We are Allah’s helpers. ”

Note: Neither Jesus nor his disciples ever said this in New Testament.

**71:11** Noah said: “Seek forgiveness...He sends down abundant waters from the sky for you.”

Note: The Koran is wrong here because it claims Noah told his generation how God sends rain for their benefit. Yet Genesis 2:5,6 tells “The Lord God had not caused it to rain upon the Earth... but there went up a mist from the Earth, and watered the whole face of the ground.” Nobody before the flood had ever seen rain, “By faith Noah, being warned of God of things not seen as yet.” Hebrews 11:7.

**90:4** We created man to try him with afflictions.

## 11. OBEY Allah and OBEY Mohammed (13 References)

Note: The Bible warns us to test, identify and reject false apostles:

i) “thou hast tried them which say they are apostles, and are not and hast found them liars.” Rev. 2:2.

ii) Question: How do we try, test and identify true and false apostles?

Answer: By them doing miraculous signs “Truly the signs of an apostle were wrought among you in all patience, in signs, and wonders, and mighty deeds.” 2 Cor.12:12. Since Mohammed did no miracles, he fails the test of an apostle. We rightly identify him as a false apostle. “For such are false apostles, deceitful workers, transforming themselves into the apostles of Christ..whose end is..” 2 Cor.11:13.

**3:32** Say “Obey Allah and the Apostle (Muhammed).” If they give no heed, then Allah does not love the unbelievers. Note: The God of the Bible loves the world of unbelievers (John 3:16,17).

**3:132** Obey Allah and the Apostle that you may find mercy.

**3:151** We shall put terror in the hearts of the unbelievers, because they ascribe unto Allah partners ...their habitation is the Fire. Note: i) This permits Muslims to commit acts of terror.

ii) The Koran refers to Christians as hellbound because we believe Jesus is the Son of God.

**4:80** He that obeys the Apostle (Mohammed) obeys Allah.

Note: This was a clever trick by Mohammed to manipulate people into obeying him. God said no such thing. Jeremiah 23:16 “Thus saith the LORD of hosts, Hearken not unto the words of the prophets that prophesy unto you: they make you vain (1891= vain in expectation, to lead astray): they speak a vision of their own heart, and not out of the mouth of the Lord. ”

**5:34** Those that make war against Allah and his apostle and spread disorder in the land shall be put to death or crucified, or have their hands and feet cut off on alternate sides, or be banished from the land.

**9:61** Those that wrong the apostle of Allah shall be sternly punished.

**9:63** The man who defies Allah and His apostle shall abide forever in the fire of Hell.

**33:57** Those who speak ill of Allah and His Apostle shall be cursed by Allah in this life and in the life to come. He has prepared for them a shameful punishment.

**47:33** Believers, obey Allah and obey the Apostle.

**48:13** As for those that disbelieve in Allah and His apostle, we have prepared a blazing fire for the unbelievers.

**58:5** Those that oppose Allah and His apostles shall be brought low. Shameful punishment awaits the unbelievers.

**59:7** The spoils taken from the town-dwellers and assigned by Allah to his apostle shall belong to Allah, to the apostle and his Kinsfolk, to orphans and to the destitute. Allah is stern in retribution.

**64:12,13** Obey Allah and obey the apostle. Allah! there is no god but him.

**72:23** Those that disobey Allah and His Apostle shall abide forever in the Fire of Hell.

Note: Mohammed, in order to terrify people into submission to his will, equated his will with Allah’s will, threatening them with going to hell fire if they disobeyed his/Allah’s commands.

## **Did Jesus Christ Die (19:29) or Did He not Die (4:157)?**

**4:157** They did not kill him (Jesus), nor did they crucify him, but they thought they did... They did not slay him for certain. Allah lifted him up to himself.

Note: This contradicts the prophets David (Psalm 22:16), Isaiah (53), Daniel (9:26), NT prophets, Quran 19:33: "Blessed I shall be on the day of my death."

**3:55** Allah: "Jesus, I will make you sleep & raise you"

**19:29** How can we speak with a babe in the cradle? Whereupon he (Jesus) spoke and said, "he has purged me of vanity and wickedness. Blessed was I on the day I was born, & blessed I shall be on the day of my death and on the day I shall be raised to life". Such was Jesus, the Son of Mary, that is the whole truth. God forbid that He himself should beget a son. Note: From this we learn that:

- 1) Jesus claimed to be sinless, making him greater than Mohammed.
- 2) Jesus states that He will die and be raised to life. This contradicts 4:157 which denies that He died.
- 3) Jesus rising from the dead, makes him greater than Mohammed who remains dead.
- 4) Jesus speaking from the cradle is clearly false and not in the Bible. It does not confirm the Bible.

## **12. UNSCIENTIFIC Statements in the Koran (14 References)**

**18:84-91, See v.86:** They will ask you about Dhul-Qarnayn (Alexander the Great).

Say "he followed a road until he reached the setting place of the sun and saw the sun setting in a spring (pool) of black muddy water. Hard by he found a certain people."

**18:90,91** Then he followed a road till, when he reached the rising-place of the sun, he found it rising on a people for whom we had appointed no shelter therefrom.

Note: The sun does not set in a pool of black mud, nor does it have a fixed rising place. Mohammed in 620AD did not know how the earth moves around the sun.

This is a clear unscientific error in the Koran, showing that it cannot be from the true God.

**22:65** Allah holds the sky from falling down upon the earth.

Note: This is false nonsense because the sky is gas/empty space, not something that can fall down on us

**24:43** From heaven's mountains he sends down the hail.

**28:38** Pharaoh said: "Make me, Haman, bricks of clay and build for me a tower that I may climb to the God of Moses".

Note: The error is that the Koran has Pharaoh (1500 BC) living alongside Haman (510 BC) who built the Tower of Babel (2250 BC). This is a serious mistake in the Koran. 7<sup>th</sup> Century Arabs thought of time as in cycles, not as we think of it as linear. This is fatal to the Koran's claim of Divine inspiration.

**36:39** The sun is not allowed to overtake the moon . . . Each in its own orbit runs.

Note: False. If the Koran was from God it would have said that the earth & moon have orbits, not the Sun

**50:6** How we built the sky up, . . . leaving no crack in its expanse.

FALSE: 7<sup>th</sup> Century Arabs thought the sky was a solid dome without a crack. It is just space.

**50:7** We spread out the earth and set upon it immovable mountains.

FALSE: Mountains move during earthquakes. **56:5** "The mountains crumble away."

52:11 contradicts this: "On that day.... the mountains move and pass away". See Revelation 16:18-20.

**51:47,48** We built the heaven . . . giving it a vast expanse, and stretched the earth beneath it.

Note: FALSE: The earth was not stretched flat beneath heaven. It is a spherical planet.

**54:1** The hour of doom is drawing near, and the moon is cleft in two.

Question: How can the moon be split in two?

**67:3** Turn up your eyes: Can you detect a single crack (in the sky)?

**69:16** The sky will be rent asunder on that day...

Note: Muslims thought the sky was solid that could crack or be split asunder, but it is gas.

**75:6-9** When will be the day of resurrection? When Sun and the Moon are brought together.

Note: These bodies are 93 million miles apart but to Muslims of 600AD they looked close.

**21:33** The sun and the moon: They float each in an orbit.

Note: This idea that the sun moves in an orbit is clearly scientifically false. The sun does not move in an orbit. It only seemed to cross the sky to the 7<sup>th</sup> Century Arabians. Should read "The earth & Moon"

### **13. PARADISE / HOURIS fabricated in the Koran (18 References)**

**2:25** Proclaim good tidings to those who have faith and do good works. They shall dwell in **gardens** ... fruit to eat. Wedded to **chaste spouses**, they shall abide therein forever.

Note: This Muslim concept of heaven is clearly man made because:

i) It only contains the best things imaginable to males of 7<sup>th</sup> Century Arabia: gardens, fruit, wine and sex with many women.

ii) Allah is rarely mentioned in the Muslim heaven.

iii) Women are rarely if ever mentioned in the Muslim heaven.

iv) There are no mentally stimulating benefits in the Muslim heaven such as service to God, opportunity to serve others, ruling in a new universe, only the satisfaction of selfish sensual desires.

**3:15** The righteous shall be rewarded with... **spouses** of perfect chastity and contentment before Allah.

**4:57** As for those that have faith and do good works, we shall admit them to the gardens... where, wedded to **chaste spouses**, they shall abide forever.

**36:54** On that day the heirs of Paradise will be busy with their joys. Together with their **spouses**, they shall recline in shady groves upon soft couches. They shall have fruits and **all that they desire**.

**37:48,49** The true servants of Allah . . . shall sit with **bashful, dark eyed virgins**, as chaste as the sheltered eggs of ostriches.

**38:53** The righteous . . . reclining there with **bashful virgins for companions**, they will call for abundant fruit and drink.

**43:70** Enter Paradise, you and your wives, in all delight. Abiding there forever, you shall find all that your souls desire and all that your eyes rejoice in.

**44:51** As for the righteous, they shall be lodged in peace together amidst gardens and fountains, arrayed in rich silks and fine brocade. We shall wed them to **dark eyed hours**. They shall call for every kind of fruit.

Note: This shows clearly that the Koran comes from man and not from God, because these good things are the best that a **7<sup>th</sup> Century Arab male** could imagine heaven to be. The True God would have things in heaven beyond our understanding.

Question: What about Muslim women? What will they have and who will they be wed to? Houris?

**47:15** Therein (Paradise) shall flow rivers of **water** undefiled, and rivers of **milk** for ever fresh; rivers of **wine** . . . and rivers of clear **honey**. They shall eat therein of every fruit and receive forgiveness from their Lord. Those in Hell forever shall drink scalding water which will tear their bowels.

**52:20** They (the righteous) shall recline on couches ranged in rows. To **dark-eyed houris** we shall wed them.

Question: What benefits do women have in heaven? No comment.

**52:24** There shall wait on them young boys of their own, as fair as virgin pearls.

**55:56** There are **bashful virgins** whom neither man nor jinnee will have touched before.

Virgins as fair as corals and rubies.

**55:72** In each (garden) there shall be **virgins chaste and fair**. **Dark eyed virgins sheltered in tents**, whom neither man nor jinnee will have touched.

**55:76** They shall recline on green cushions and fine carpets.

**56:22-24** Theirs shall be the **dark-eyed houris**, chaste as hidden pearls; a reward for their deeds.

**56:35-38** We created the **houris** and made them **virgins, loving companions** for those on the right hand. Those on the left hand....shall dwell among scorching winds and scalding water.

**68:37,38,39** Have you a scripture that promises you whatever you choose?

....that you shall have what you yourselves ordain.

Note: No wonder Muslim terrorists kill people to go to such a place.

**78:31** As for the righteous, they shall surely triumph. Theirs shall be the gardens and vineyards, and **high-bosomed maidens** for **companions**: a truly overflowing cup.

#### **14. NONSENSE or FARFETCHED passages in the Koran (21 References)**

**2:63-65** Two far-fetched fables are that:

i) Allah “raised the Mount (Sinai) above Israel when giving the covenant.” 4:154; 2:63,93.

ii) You have heard of those of you that broke the Sabbath. We said to them: “You shall be changed into detested apes.” We made their fate an example to their own generation...

**2:259** Allah killed a man, and after 100 years brought him back to life.

This was a Jewish fable of the time that Mohammed put in the Koran.

**2:260** Allah told Abraham to “Take four birds, draw them to you, and cut their bodies to pieces.

Scatter them over the mountain tops, then call them back. They will come swiftly to you.”

This was a well known fable in Mohammed’s time.

**3:49** Allah said: “I bring you a sign from your Lord. From clay I will make for you the likeness of a bird. I shall breathe into it and, by Allah’s leave it shall become a living bird.”

Note: This fable was copied from Thomas’ “Gospel of the Infancy of Christ” and placed in the Koran here. The Bible tells us that Jesus’ first miracle was at Cana of Galilee, not as a child. (John 2:11).

**5:30** Raven taught Cain how to bury Abel.

**5:60** Those whom Allah has cursed...transforming them into apes and swine. (7:166).

Note: This is unscientific. It never happens.

**7:163** Each Sabbath the fish appeared before them floating on the water, but on week days they never came near them. Thus did we tempt them because they did wrong.

**12:96** He threw Joseph’s shirt over the old man’s face, and he regained his sight. (False, not in Bible).

**15:17,18** We have guarded the heavens from every cursed outcast devil. Eavesdroppers are pursued by fiery comets. (72:8).

**27:16** Solomon said: “We have been taught the language of birds.”

**27:17** Solomon’s forces of jinn and man and birds were called to Solomon’s presence, and ranged in battle array.

**27:28** When they came to the Valley of the Ants, an ant said, “Go into your dwellings, ants, lest Solomon and his warriors should unwittingly crush you.”

This is clearly a fable, that birds and ants talk with Solomon.

**37:6** We have decked the lower heaven with constellations (Dawood), (Planets – Pickthall). They guard it against rebellious devils, so that they may not listen in to those on high. Meteors are hurled at them from every side . . . Eavesdroppers are pursued by fiery comets.

**42:30** If a misfortune befalls you, it is the fruit of your own labours (what your right hands have earned

Note: This is false from experience and from Bible characters who were persecuted for righteousness.

Were Job’s, Jesus’, Joseph’s and Daniel’s suffering due to their own sins? No.

**43:36** He that does not heed the warning of the Merciful shall have a devil for his companion.

**47:15** Therein (Paradise) shall flow rivers of water undefiled, and rivers of milk for ever fresh; rivers of wine . . . and rivers of clear honey. They shall eat therein of every fruit and receive forgiveness from their Lord. Those in Hell forever shall drink scalding water which will tear their bowels.

**57:22** Every misfortune that befalls the Earth, or your own persons, is ordained before we bring it into being.

**64:14** Believers you have an enemy in your wives and in your children: beware of them.

Note: Total nonsense. The Bible says “Husbands love your wives as Christ loved the church.” Eph 5:25

**67:5** We have adorned the lowest heaven with lamps, missiles to pelt the devils with.

**69:44-47** Allah says of Mohammed: “Had he invented lies concerning us, we would have seized him by the right hand and severed his heart vein.”

Note: Mohammed sought to justify himself by this foolish verse. It is foolish because, “Why does this not happen to others who tell lies about Islam?” Their heart vein is not severed when criticising Allah.

**105:2** Did he not confound their stratagem and send against them flocks of birds which pelted them with clay stones, so that they became like withered stalks of plants.

Note: Birds dropping stones on an invading Ethiopian army that flattened and destroyed them is fiction.

## **15. SELF-CONTRADICTIONS in the Koran (16 References)**

1) **2:106** If we abrogate a verse or cause it to be forgotten, we will replace it by a better one or one similar. Did you not know that Allah has power over all things?

Note: This verse is **fatal to Islam** and the Koran, because if Allah can change his mind about whether a verse is in Quran and replace it with a better verse, then Allah is not the all-knowing God of the Bible.

2) **2:127** Abraham and Ishmael built the house (The Kabah at Mecca) and dedicated it...Make of our descendants a nation that will submit to you.

Note: There is no Bible evidence or historical evidence that Abraham or Ishmael ever went to Mecca. This is only in Mohammed's imagination in order to gain support from the Bible.

3) **2:256** There shall be no compulsion in religion.

Note: i) This is contradicted by Sura 8:39 "Make war on them until idolatry shall cease and Allah's religion shall reign supreme."

ii) 2:256 is intended to convince non-Muslims that Islam is a peaceful religion. This is contradicted by "True Muslims **fight** for Allah." (4:76).

4) **2:285** They all believe Allah, His angels, His Scriptures, and His apostles. We make no distinction (don't discriminate) against any of His messengers.

Note: Muslims do give Mohammed a greater distinction than Jesus and all other Bible prophets.

5) **4:82** If it (the Koran) had not come from Allah, they could have surely found in it many contradictions. Note: People have found many contradictions in it such as those listed in this section.

6) **4:157** They did not kill him (Jesus), nor did they crucify him, but they thought they did... They did not slay him for certain. Allah lifted him up to himself.

Note: This contradicts the prophets David (Psalm 22:16), Isaiah (53), Daniel (9:26), NT prophets, as well as Quran 19:33: "Blessed I shall be on the day of my death."

**19:29-** How can we speak with a babe in the cradle? Whereupon he (Jesus) spoke and said, "he has purged me of vanity and wickedness. Blessed was I on the day I was born, & blessed I shall be on the day of my death and on the day I shall be raised to life." Such was Jesus, the Son of Mary, that is the whole truth. God forbid that He himself should beget a son.

7) **7:64** We saved him (Noah) and all who were with him in the ark.

**10:74** We saved Noah and those who were with him in the ark.

**11:42,43** Noah cried to his son who stood apart, "Come ride with us, and be not with the unbelievers!" He replied: "I shall seek refuge in a mountain, which will protect me from the flood." The wave rolled between them and Noah's son was drowned.

**21:76** We saved him (Noah) and all his kinsfolk from the great calamity.

Contradiction: This contradicts 11:42,43 which states that one of Noah's sons was drowned.

8) **7:124** Pharaoh said, "Then I will crucify you all." Crucifixion was not invented in 1500BC.

9) **41:34** Requite evil with good, and he who is your enemy will become your dearest friend.

Note: This is contradicted by 42:40 'Let evil be rewarded with like evil.'

10) **61:3** It is most hateful in Allah's sight that you should say one thing and do another.

Note: This contradicts 66:2 where Allah allowed Mohammed to say one thing and do another.

11) **70:4** A day whose span is 50,000 years. Which is right? 1000 years or 50,000 years?

This contradicts **32:5** All will ascend to him in a single day, a day whose space is 1000 years.

12) **71:15,16** Allah created the seven heavens one above the other, placing in them the moon for a light & the sun for a lantern? Question: What are these 7 heavens? A product of Mohammed's imagination?

The Bible tells us of 3 heavens: the atmosphere, space, and where God's throne is (II Corinthians 12:2).

13) **21:35** Every soul shall taste death. This is false, because Enoch and Elijah did not die. Christians living when Christ returns will be caught up to heaven without dying. (I Corinthians 15:51-53).

14) **17:36** Do not follow what you do not know. (7 commandments in v.31-37.)

15) **45:28** You will see every nation on its knees. (Question: Even today's Muslim nations?)

Note: This terror, horror, threats of hell, scourge, torment contradicts God's love to man in the Bible, Christ's preaching & in beautiful creation. 'The goodness of God leads us to repentance' not threats. Romans 2:4

16) **42:15** says "I believe in all the Scriptures that Allah has revealed".

Note: This, they say includes the Bible, yet Muslims do not believe, understand, study or obey the Bible

## **16. ALLAH'S NATURE (17 References)**

**3:16** Those of Allah's servants who say: "Allah we believe in you, forgive us our sins and keep us from the torment of the Fire."

Note: This shows that no Muslim is sure of escaping hell and going to heaven. Allah offers no salvation.

**3:54** Allah is the supreme plotter (best of schemers).

Note: This permits Muslims to plot & scheme treachery because they are following Allah's example.

**35:43** Evil shall recoil on those that plot evil. Note: The God of the Bible is honest and truthful.

**3:57** Allah does not love the evil-doers.

**4:107** Allah does not love the treacherous or the sinful.

Note: This proves that the Koran is not from the Holy God of the Bible, because all men are sinful compared to God. Man's typical thinking is that he is good compared to others. If God wrote the Koran, it would teach that all men are sinful.

**5:88** Allah does not love the transgressors. (7:55). 'ye all have transgressed against me, says JHVH' Jer2:29

**6:39** Allah confounds whom He will, and guides to the right path whom He pleases.

Note: This is the error of Fatalism. All is not predestined.

**6:87** We gave him Isaac, Jacob, Noah, David, Solomon, Job, Joseph, Moses, Aaron, Zacharias, John, Jesus, Elias (Elijah), Ishmael, Elisha, Jonah, Lot. Note: Islam considers these as prophets.

**8:30** Allah is the best of plotters. **9:27** Allah will show mercy to whom he will.

**13:42** Allah is the master of all scheming (plotting).

Note: If Allah can scheme, plot and deceive, then Muslims think they can do so as well.

**28:77** Allah does not love the evildoers.

**30:45** He does not love the unbelievers.

**40:21** Allah scoured them for their sins . . . they had none to protect them.

**3:32** Say "Obey Allah and the Apostle." If they give no heed, then Allah does not love the unbelievers.

Note: The God of the Bible loves unbelievers.

i) Jesus was proven by HIS miraculous signs, but Mohammed gave no miracles. Hence Jesus, the prophets and apostles who worked miracles are superior to Mohammed, who worked no miracles.

ii) Allah the moon god of Arabia did not give Jesus clear signs, but it was Jesus' Heavenly Father, the Jehovah God of the Bible who gave these miracles to authenticate Jehovah God the Son as the Messiah and Saviour of the world. Muslims suffer a case of mistaken identity. Their Allah is not the God of the Bible, but the pagan moon god of Arabia.

**2:275,276,278** Allah has permitted trading and made usury (charging & receiving interest) unlawful.

Those that turn back shall be inmates of the Fire. Allah has laid his curse on usury. Waive what is still due to you from usury.

Note: Most Muslims, Muslim banks, and Muslim governments disobey the Koran here by charging interest and paying interest. This law against interest makes banks unviable. Hence, a pure Islamic state like the Taliban's Afganistan could have no banks. They use Pakistan's banks on the border.

**19:16-23** The story of Mary . . . We sent to her Our Spirit in the semblance of a full grown man . . . who said I have come to give you a holy son. Mary said, "How shall I bear a child when I have neither been touched by any man nor ever been unchaste?" Thus did your Lord speak: "That is easy enough for me. When she felt the throes of childbirth, she lay down by the trunk of a palm tree."

Note: From this we learn the following:

i) Christ being virgin born is "easy enough for God" so why should Muslims protest God having a Son?

ii) This teaches the virgin birth of Christ.

iii) Muslims agree that God has a Spirit. Christians call him the Holy Spirit.

iv) This does not confirm the Bible, but contradicts it. Mary gave birth to Jesus in a stable, not under a palm tree

**16:57** They assign unto Allah daughters. See Q53:19,20 "Al-Lat, Al-Uzza and Manat."

## **17. MUSLIM Practices (17 References)**

**5:39** As for the man or woman who is guilty of theft, cut off their hands to punish them for their crimes  
**16:115** He has forbidden you carrion, blood, and the flesh of swine; also any flesh consecrated other than in the name of Allah.

**17:45** When you recite the Koran, we place between you and those who deny the life to come a hidden barrier.

**17:78** Recite your prayers at sunset, at nightfall, and at dawn. Pray during the night as well.

**22:27** Exhort all men to make the pilgrimage. Let them spruce themselves, make their vows and circle the Ancient House. Such is Allah's commandment. He that reveres the sacred rites shall fare better.

**24:2** The adulterer and adulteress shall each be given 100 lashes.

**24:4** Those who accuse/defame honourable women & cannot produce 4 witnesses shall be given 80 lashes.

**29:46** Be courteous when you argue with the People of the Book, except with those among them who do evil. Say: "We believe in that which is revealed to us, and which was revealed to you. Our God and your God is one."

Note: This is absolutely false. Allah and the God of the Bible have very different natures and personalities. Allah is the moon god of 6<sup>th</sup> Century Arabia. In reality Muslims do not believe in the Bible. If they did, they would study it, obey it and worship Jesus Christ as Saviour and God.

**33:59** Prophet, enjoin your wives, your daughters, and the wives of true believers to draw their veils close round them . . . so that they may be recognized and not molested.

**39:38** A Koran (lecture) in the Arabic tongue, free from any flaw, that they may guard themselves against evil. Note: The Koran has many flaws. See Section 9,10,12,14,15.

**41:33** Who speaks better than he who calls men to serve Allah, does what is right & says 'I am a Muslim'?

**62:9** Believers, when you are summoned to Friday prayers hasten to the remembrance of Allah and cease your trading.

**64:12,13** Obey Allah and obey the apostle. Allah! there is no god but him.

66. PROHIBITION (v.1 Mohammed was once found by his wife Hafsa with Maria, a beautiful Coptic slave girl, whom he had promised Hafsa he would separate from. To free Mohammed from his promise to Hafsa was the object of this chapter.)

**66:1,2** Prophet, why do you prohibit that which Allah has made lawful to you in seeking to please your wives? Allah has made lawful for you (Muslims) absolution from your oaths.

Note: Many Muslims, living like Mohammed, often think they can lie when it suits them.

**73:1** You that are wrapped up in your mantle, keep vigil all night, save for a few hours; half the night or less and recite the Koran.

Note: Psalm 127:2 "It is vain for you to rise up early, to sit up late, to eat the bread of sorrows: for so he giveth his beloved sleep." The Devil wants to rob the Muslims of God's gift of a full nights sleep.

**73:8** Remember the name of Allah and dedicate yourself to him utterly... there is no god but him. Accept him as your protector.

**73:20** Your Lord knows that you (Mohammed) sometimes keep vigil nearly two thirds of the night... Recite from the Koran as many verses as you are able. He knows that others are fighting for the cause of Allah. What ever good you do you shall be.....richly rewarded by him.

**17:1 THE NIGHT JOURNEY/ THE CHILDREN OF ISRAEL**

(v.1 relates Mohammed's vision, in which he was carried by night on a heavenly steed to the Temple at Jerusalem, from where he claims that he was caught up through 7 heavens to the presence of Allah).

Note: The Temple of Jerusalem had been destroyed by Rome in 70 AD and did not exist in Mohammed's day. This is one reason why Muslims want control of Jerusalem.

(Quotations are from "The Koran", translated with notes by N.J.Dawood. Penguin. 1956)

## **122. Why Nobody Should Become a Muslim**

The following things lacking from Islam, make it an unsatisfactory religion. Islam has:

- 1) No sacrifice for our sins. "without shedding of blood is no remission (of sins)." (Hebrews 9:22).
- 2) No sinless Founder. "in him is no sin". (I John 3:5).
- 3) No Saviour from sin. "ye know that he was manifested to take away our sins." (I John 3:5).
- 4) No resurrected Saviour. "he was seen of above 500 brethren at once." (I Cor. 15:6).
- 5) No fulfilled prophecy in the Koran. "shew the things that are to come hereafter, that we may know" Is41:23
- 6) No certainty of a home in heaven. "that ye may know that ye have eternal life." (I John 5:13; 2:25)
- 7) No equality of Muslims and Christians in law.
- 8) No equality of Muslim men and women in law (Q4:34..women ye fear rebellion...scourge them)
- 9) No consistent standard of sin, eg: Muslim heaven has free sex and wine, which is wrong on earth.
- 10) No genealogies and no dates in the Koran.
- 11) No freedom to leave Islam. Grievous punishment or death to those who leave Islam (Q16:106).
- 12) No mercy shown to a thief, or to those of other religions. (Q5:38).
- 13) Forced female circumcision as part of forced conversion to Islam in Maluku Islands of Indonesia.
- 14) No one raised from the dead by Mohammed. Jesus raised 4 people from the dead. (inc.Himself)
- 15) No one healed miraculously by Mohammed. "As many as touched him were made whole"Lk 6:56
- 16) No Old Testament prophecies telling us the time, place, or events to expect Mohammed. Micah5:2
- 17) No democracy in Muslim countries, but rule is by dictators.
- 18) No agreement with the Bible and with Old Testament prophets.
- 19) Allah is a very different personality from Jehovah of OT. Allah seduces 15:39,lies74:39,enslaves 33:50.
- 20) Islam worships the wrong god. "And God spake all these words, saying, I am the LORD (JHVH) thy God...Thou shalt have no other gods before me." (Exodus 20:1-3). Worship JHVH, not Allah.
- 21) Islam trusts the wrong line of God's blessing. God promised the Messiah to come through Isaac (Genesis 17:19-21; 21:12) not through Ishmael. [The Bible teaches us to love our enemies.
- 22) Quran teaches terror against non Muslims (Q8:12,60,65,67,74; 9:39,41,111,123). (Matthew 5:44) "Christina Sagat shakes with fear...as she tells her story of brutal circumcision in a forced conversion to Islam. Her physical wounds have healed but this 32-year-old is left with the deep pain of sorrow and humiliation. She is among hundreds of Christians, including children and pregnant women, forcibly circumcised as part of a campaign by extremists (terrorists) to spread Islam through the war-ravaged Maluku islands in Eastern Indonesia. In the biggest city in the (Maluku) Islands (of Indonesia), Ambon, church and other groups have gathered evidence that 3,928 villagers on at least six islands have been forced to convert to Islam under the threat of death, torture or destruction of their homes. They believe that local Muslim clerics, possibly under duress from extremists, circumcised almost all the converts. Kostantinus Idi, 22,... said one of the clerics urinated on his wound, saying it would stop infection." The Sydney Morning Herald, page 1,2,41. Saturday, January 26,27, 2001.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <a href="#">1. The Meaning of Islam</a>                              | <a href="#">17. Is the Quran the Perfect Word of God?</a>                 |
| <a href="#">2. Pre-Islamic Arabian Origin of the Quran</a>           | <a href="#">18. Mistakes In The Quran</a>                                 |
| <a href="#">3. Why is the Crescent Moon Islam's Symbol?</a>          | <a href="#">19. Major Mistakes in the Quran</a>                           |
| <a href="#">4. Is Allah the One True God of the Bible?</a>           | <a href="#">20. Arabian, Jewish, Christian Sources of the Quran</a>       |
| <a href="#">5. Importance of Islam</a>                               | <a href="#">21. Nonsense in the Hadith</a>                                |
| <a href="#">6. The Goal of Islam</a>                                 | <a href="#">22. Jihad or Holy War</a>                                     |
| <a href="#">7. The Life of Mohammed</a>                              | <a href="#">23. Islam and Violence</a>                                    |
| <a href="#">8. Mohammed's Wives.</a>                                 | <a href="#">24. Common and Repeated Statements in the Quran</a>           |
| <a href="#">9. Allah, Mohammed and Quran Permit Lying.</a>           | <a href="#">25. Six Basic Muslim Beliefs</a>                              |
| <a href="#">10. 2 Sermons by Demons in Quran to Spread Islam.</a>    | <a href="#">26. Six Religious Duties of Islam</a>                         |
| <a href="#">11. Death to those Who Leave Islam</a>                   | <a href="#">27. Why You Should Not Become a Muslim</a>                    |
| <a href="#">12. The Hijra</a>  | <a href="#">28. What is Allah Like? Is he the God of the Bible? No!</a>   |
| <a href="#">13. Raiding (Mohammed's Profession) to Spread Islam.</a> |   |
| <a href="#">14. Predestination.</a>                                  | <a href="#">29. Allah's Similarities to the Biblical Devil/Satan are:</a> |
| <a href="#">15. Mohammed's Death</a>                                 | <a href="#">30. The Sonship of Jesus</a>                                  |
| <a href="#">16. Mohammed Compared with Jesus Christ</a>              | 993   |

# **123. ISLAM -- a Case of Mistaken Identity**

**Allah** is not the God of the Bible. **Mohammed** is not a prophet of God. **Quran** is not the Word of God. Islam is worship of Allah the Moon God of Arabia. Mohammed cannot save (Vol.1,372-375; Vol.5,266 "I am the **LORD (JHVH)** thy God,...Thou shalt have **no other gods** before me." (Exodus 20:2,3). "Blessed is the nation whose God is the LORD (JHVH)." (Psalm 33:12). (8 Issues to discuss, p.1070).

## **INTRODUCTION**

Islam (1.1 billion) is the second largest religion in the world to nominal Christianity (1.9 billion). Due to liberal immigration policies, millions of Muslims have migrated to the West to seek a better life. In England, there are more Muslims than Methodists or evangelical Christians. They are buying abandoned Anglican churches and converting them to mosques, hoping to convert England to Islam. There are 2.6 million Muslims in the USA and 200,000 in Australia in 1990.

Under Islamic law, no criticism of Islam is allowed. In Muslim countries, any criticism of Muhammad or the Koran is punishable by death. Muslim countries have no freedom of religion.

If Muslims are happy to criticise Christianity, then why do they get upset if Christians criticise Islam?

### **To refute Islam, we must check the Quran, the Hadith, history and the Bible.**

Islam is **cultural imperialism**, where 7th Century Arabian religion and culture have been raised to the status of divine law.

In the West, Church and State are separated, in order to avoid a repeat of religious persecution by the Roman Catholic inquisition of the dark ages.

This is exactly what happens in Muslim countries, where Muslim law and religion control the State and persecute other religions.

Whenever Islam dominates a country, it transforms the culture to that of 7th Century Arabia.

Arab racism claims that Arabs descended from Abraham through his son Ishmael.

The Quran transfers the historical setting of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob from Palestine to Mecca.

The Quran even has Abraham rebuilding the Kabah, yet archaeological evidence clearly proves that Abraham never lived in Mecca, but that he left Ur (in Iraq) and moved to Haran, then to Israel.

**Question:** Why is it that of the 21 Arab nations, not one of them is a democracy

**Answer:** Muhammad took the political laws governing 7th Century Arabian tribes, where the sheikh or chief had absolute authority, and made them the laws of Allah. They had no idea of civil rights. This is why modern Islamic countries are always ruled by "strong men" as dictators. Islamic law does not recognise freedom of **speech**, freedom of **assembly**, freedom of **religion**, or freedom of **the press**.

- i The Muslim is required to pray five times a day toward Mecca. This reminds him five times daily, that he must bow in obedience to Arabia.
- ii Muhammad adopted the pagan pilgrimage to Mecca to worship the Kabah, to appease the Meccan merchants who made a lot of money from these pilgrimages. Thus, for financial gain and cultural control, Islam adopted the pagan pilgrimage to Mecca.
- iii What Muhammad ate and did not eat is made to be a divine law for all people.
- iv What an illiterate, nomadic tribeswoman wore in the desert of 7th Century Arabia to protect her from the hot sun, is compulsory dress code for all Muslim women today.

Imprisonment without a fair trial, torture, cutting off a person's hands, feet, ears, tongue, gouging eyes out, and murdering your opponents, are all part of Islamic law today, just as they were in 7th Century Arabia. Allah told Mohammed to "ask forgiveness for your sins" (40:55; 48:1,2). No miracles(17:91-95

## **1. THE MEANING OF ISLAM**

“Islam” is an Arabic word which originally referred to manliness or heroism or bravery in battle. It meant “defiance of death, heroism, to die in battle.”

M. Bravmann. “The Spiritual Background of Early Islam.” (Leiden 1972).

The word “Islam” only slowly developed to mean “submission to Allah’s will”. (Dr Jane Smith, University of Montana Press 1970). “Islam” today is the name for the religion of Muhammad . A ‘Muslim’ is a follower of the Islam religion. Muslims follow the teachings of the book called the Koran or Quran.

The English translation of the Quran by A J Arberry comes closest to conveying the impression made on Muslims by the Arabic Quran.

**Aim:** To show that the Quran is not the word of God, by highlighting its mistakes.

To show that Mohammad is not a true prophet of the true God.

To show that Allah is not the God of the Bible, or of Bible prophets.

To lead Muslims to receive Jesus Christ as their Saviour and God.

To inform Westerners of facts showing Islam to be a false, violent and dangerous religion.

## **2. PRE-ISLAMIC ARABIAN ORIGIN OF THE Quran**

Muslims are taught that the Quran and Muhammad’s revelations were given from heaven, and that they do not have earthly human origin.

This belief can be shown to be false if we can find Quranic stories that come from pre-Islamic Arabian culture, custom and religion.

Muslims have done very little research into pre-Islamic Arabian customs, because they are told it is blasphemous to suggest that the Quran and Muhammad’s teachings came from pre-Islamic Arabia rather than from heaven.

Archaeology and linguistics since 1890 have shown overwhelming evidence that Muhammad produced his religion and the Quran from pre-existing Arabian material, and that, with all its mistakes, could not have come from heaven.

Examples of pre-Islamic Arabian culture brought into the Quran and into Islam are:

- i) Raiding other tribes to obtain wealth, wives and slaves was a common practice before Muhammad.
- ii) Pre 600 AD Arabian tribes often punished stealing or crimes by cutting off people’s hands, feet, ears, tongues, heads and gouging out eyes.
- iii) **Forcing people into slavery** or **kidnapping women from other tribes** to rape them in your harem as your wives, concubines or slave girls, was considered acceptable behaviour. This happens today in Muslim atrocities against non-Muslims in Sudan.
- iv) To sneak up behind someone and cut his throat was sometimes seen as the right thing to do. This taking the law into their own hands can be seen today in Ayatollah Khomeini’s call for the death of Salman Rushdie.

The Koran commands violence against non-Muslims: “Fight and slay the pagans wherever you find them.” (Sura 9:5).

What must Muslims do to people who resist Islam? “Their punishment is ... execution, or crucifixion, or the cutting off of hands and feet from the opposite sides, or exile from the land.” (Sura 5:33).

In the West, cutting off someone’s hands or feet because he would not accept your religion, is criminal madness.

- i Since Mecca was controlled by Muhammad’s Quraysh tribe, and because Mecca was on a major East-West trade route, we are not surprised to find **stories in the Quran that came from Egypt, Persia, India, Greece and Babylon**.
- ii **Magic, genies, superstition, curses, magic stones, fatalism, evil eye and jinn** being part of pre-Islamic Arabia, all found their way into the Quran. (Q55,72).
- iii Pre-Islamic Arabs believed in **Animism**, that spirits or jinn existed in trees, stones, rivers and mountains. Sacred **magic stones** were believed to protect the tribes. The Quraysh tribe adopted the black stone at Kabah as their magic stone.

- iv Pre-Islamic pagan Arabs taught that everyone should bow and pray toward Mecca at certain times of the day. This was brought into Islam as divine law.
  - v They taught that everyone should make a pilgrimage to Mecca at least once in their life to worship at the Kabah. On arrival, they ran around the Kabah seven times, kissed the black stone, and then ran a mile to the Wadi Mina to throw stones at the devil. This has been carried over into Islam.
  - vi They condemned usury or charging interest. (Q 2:275,276).
  - vii They fasted during a certain month of the year, which was carried over to Ramadan in Islam.
  - viii The main religion just before Muhammad's time was that of the Sabeans. They worshipped the moon as a male deity & the sun as a female deity. The Quran warns not to worship the sun or moon (41:37), yet Islam adopted the crescent moon as its symbol. The Sabeans began a month-long fast at the appearance of a crescent moon. This was later adopted as one of the five pillars of Islam.
  - ix Many wealthy Jews in Arabia had spread stories from the Old Testament, the Talmud and Jewish apocryphal works such as the Testament of Abraham, which found their way into the Quran. Christianity was well-established in Arabia in Muhammad's time, even though the New Testament had not yet been translated into Arabic. This was done by 850AD. This explains how oral tradition brought corrupted stories of Jesus into the Quran.
- These facts show that the Quran did not come from heaven, but from Arabian culture of the day. Hence Muhammad of 7th Century Arabia wrote the Quran, not Allah from heaven.
- Guillaume wrote: "The customs of heathenism have left an indelible mark on Islam, notably in the rites of the pilgrimage". (*Islam*, Penguin books 1954, p.6).
- Nazar-Ali, the Arab scholar wrote: "Islam retained many aspects of pagan religion." (*Islam a Christian Perspective*, Westminster Press, 1983, p21).
- Professor A H Strong stated: "Islam is heathenism in monotheistic form." *Systematic Theology*, p.186.

#### **Key: If Muslims give up the belief in the Quran's heavenly origin, then Islam will fall.**

Western scholars asked the question: "Why does the Quran never explain its ideas or rites as the Bible does? Why does it never define words such as Allah, Islam, Mecca, jinn, pilgrimage, Kabah, etc?"

Answer: Because Muhammad assumed that whoever read the Quran would already be familiar with these terms, stories and people from pre-Islamic sources, culture and religious life.

### **3. WHY IS THE CRESCENT MOON ISLAM'S SYMBOL?**

The use of the crescent moon as Islam's symbol, which is placed on the Islamic nation's flags and on top of mosques and minarets, comes from pre-Islamic Arabia where Allah was worshipped as the moon god in Mecca.

The reason that Muhammad never had to explain who Allah was in the Quran is because his listeners had already heard about Allah from paganism.

The word "Allah" comes from abbreviating the Arabic word "AL-ILAH" meaning "the god". "Allah" was known to the pre-Islamic Arabs as one of the Meccan deities" (*Encyclopaedia of Islam*, Gibb I:406) "Allah is a pre-Islamic name...corresponding to the Babylonian Bel" (*Encyclopaedia of Religion*, I:117) Allah was the personal name of the moon god, a male deity worshipped in pre-Islamic Arabia, who was married to the female sun goddess. Together they produced three goddesses called "the daughters of Allah". These were known as AL-LAT, AL-UZZA and MANAT (Q 53:19,20).

The Quraysh tribe of Muhammad was strongly devoted to Allah the moon god, and to Allah's three daughters, as intercessors between the people and Allah.

Mohammad's father's name was ABD-ALLAH. His uncle's name was OBIED-ALLAH, thus showing Muhammad's family's devotion to Allah the moon god.

Archaeologists have dug up many statues and inscriptions where a crescent moon was placed on a deity's head to symbolise worship of the moon god. The entire fertile crescent was involved in worship of the moon. Hence, Islam adopting the crescent moon as its symbol, helped to convert people throughout the Middle East.

#### **4. IS ALLAH THE ONE TRUE GOD OF THE BIBLE?**

"All the gods of the nations are idols, but the LORD (JHVH) made the heavens." Psalm 96:5.

Islam claims that Allah is the same God as revealed in the Bible (**Q29:46**). This means that their attributes should be identical. **If they are different**, then **Allah is a false god** because the **Quran endorses the Bible** and its prophets.

Mohammad's god is radically different from Jehovah or the Godhead of the New Testament.

It is just as pagan to worship the wrong god as it is to worship no god or to worship a multitude of gods. The key issue is the nature of God and how He relates to man.

Let us compare the attributes of the **Biblical God** (The Triune Jehovah) with **Allah**:

##### **1. Knowable versus Unknowable.**

Jesus Christ came that we might know God as a personal friend. (John 17:3; I John 1:3).

Allah of the Quran is so distant, so abstract, so unpredictable, so angry that no-one can know him.

##### **2. Personal versus Non Personal.**

The Biblical God created man in His own image, having personality of mind, emotions and will.

Allah is not to be understood as personal, as it would lower him to the level of man. Genesis 1:26,27

##### **3. Spiritual versus Non-spiritual.**

The Biblical "God is a Spirit" (John 4:24), but Islam thinks that it is demeaning to Allah to be a spirit or person. (See Q19:17 "We sent unto her Our spirit...")

##### **4. Trinitarian versus Unitarian.**

The Biblical God is one God in three persons (Matthew 28:19,20): the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit. The Quran denies the Trinity and confuses it as the Father, Jesus Christ and Mary. (**Q5:116**).

##### **5. Limited versus Unlimited.**

The Biblical God limits Himself to be bound by His own righteous moral attributes: "God cannot lie." (Titus 1:2).

Allah is not limited by anything, not even his own nature. Allah has no morality; he can lie, cheat, deceive, do anything, any time, anywhere with no limitations.

##### **6. Trustworthy versus Capricious.**

The Biblical God limits Himself by His own righteous nature to be completely trustworthy, consistent, honest and always keeping His word.

Allah is totally capricious, untrustworthy, dishonest and unreliable. He is not bound by his nature or his word. (Q2:106 "If we abrogate a verse...").

##### **7. A Loving God versus an Unloving God.**

The Biblical God loves mankind: by "God so loved the world." (John 3:16).

Allah shows little love for mankind, but is detached. Islam believes that for God to have feelings of love for man would reduce him to being a mere man. All Muslims go to hell (**Q19:71**).

##### **8. Active in History versus Passive in History.**

Allah never personally enters human history, but deals with the world through his word, prophets and angels. The **Biblical God** enters human history through the second person of the Trinity, Jesus Christ becoming a man as well as God& paying for our sins as our Saviour to bring us back to God.

##### **9. Grace or Works**

The Biblical God graciously provides free salvation for man through the Saviour Jesus Christ, who is also man's intercessor to God.

Allah has no sure method of salvation, no Saviour, no intercessor, no certain forgiveness of sins, and no certainty of heaven.

Just because Christians and Muslims worship one god, it doesn't mean that the one god worshipped is the true God. The Canaanites could have taught that Baal was the one true god, but Baal is not Jehovah, just as Hitler is not the same identity as Elvis Presley.

"There is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved." (Acts 4:12).

This is the name of Jesus Christ, not Allah. **Allah did not die for our sins** and **rise again**.

- Allah's name is nowhere mentioned in the Bible, because up to 610 AD Allah was the name of a pagan moon deity in Arabia. Biblical writers would never have confused Allah with Jehovah. If some Bible translators translate the Biblical God as Allah, it would be due to either:
  - i) Their **ignorance** of the differences between Allah and Jehovah;
  - ii) **Propaganda** of Muslim evangelists who say that Allah is just another name for Jehovah, as an opportunity to convert Westerners to Islam.
  - iii) Political and religious **pressure** to put Allah in the Bible.

## **5. IMPORTANCE OF ISLAM**

Militant Islamic fundamentalism is growing in power today. Islam is important because:

1. Islam's doctrine and leaders have vowed to **destroy Israel**. Islam believes that God gave the promised land to the Arabs rather than to the Jews (Gen.17:19-21)
2. Islam wishes to **take over the world** by conquering one nation at a time, then imposing Sharia Islamic law. History shows that they then persecute, torture and murder Christians, Jews and all who resist Islam. All people under Muslim law lose all personal freedoms.
3. **Terrorism** is their method to gain control, as seen by their 1972 Munich Olympics massacre, their hijacking of the Achille Lauro ship, their bombing of US marine barracks in Lebanon, their constant suicide bombings of civilians travelling in Israeli buses, & the September 11 WTC attacks.
4. **Ayatollah Khomeini** has ordered Muslim women to have 16 children each, so they can conquer the world by becoming the majority in all countries. They already have 1.1 billion Muslims worldwide.
5. Their influence will increase due to their control of most of the world's **oil reserves**.

## **6. THE GOAL OF ISLAM**

The ultimate goal of Islam is to **conquer the world** and **rule it by Islamic law**.

They allow conversion to Islam by **persuasion**, by **force**, or by **murdering opponents**.

In the Hadith, Muhammad said, "Hear O Muslims the **meaning of life** ... The pillar is Rakatin prayer. The **topmost part** is **Jihad - holy war**."

Jihad is being fought by Iran, Saddam Hussein of Iraq, President Assad of Syria, Colonel Quadafi of Libya, Al Quaeda and by Sudanese massacres of Christians.

The Quran in Sura 4:93 commands Muslims to kill non-Muslims as follows:

"**Slay them** wherever you find them".

Islam is now the second largest religion in Europe, and the third largest in the US.

France now has 1,600 mosques. England has 1,500 mosques.

## **7. THE LIFE OF MOHAMMED**

The name Muhammed means "praised one". Muhammed's life can be known from the Quran, the Hadith and early Muslim traditions. These facts are not disputed.

Muhammed was born on 8 June 570 AD in Mecca to Abdullah (Abd-Allah) and Aminah of the Quraysh tribe. Both his parents died when he was young, so he was sent at the age of six to live with his grandparents, then to a rich uncle, then to a poor uncle.

In **his childhood**, he began to experience **spirit visitations**.

His mother, Aminah, often claimed that she was visited by spirits or jinn. This occult association was inherited by her son.

Early Muslim tradition records that, when Muhammed was about to receive a revelation from Allah, he would often fall on the ground, his body would jerk uncontrollably, his eyes would roll backward, and he would perspire profusely. After the trance, he would rise and tell the message given to him.

What caused this? These effects are very similar to an epileptic fit or to demon possession.

Never did a Bible prophet of God give a revelation in such a trancelike violent manner.

Most of Muhammed's **early pagan religious upbringing** was **transferred** into Islam and did not come from new revelations from Allah as Islam claims.

Muhammed is regarded as the **perfect example** for all Muslims to follow, so all Muslims should treat other humans following Mohammed's example, such as the way he treated his enemies, his wives, his manner of eating, drinking, prayer, etc. "He who obeys the apostle, obeys Allah." (4:80).

If Muhammed murdered his enemies, so can Muslims.

If Muhammed stole whatever he wanted, so can Muslims.

If Muhammed took as many wives/slave-girls as he wanted, so can Muslims.

Fundamental to Muslim belief is the idea that Islamic writings are historically accurate.

Most Muslims are not given any opposing evidence.

Islamic thinking is very different from Western thinking, such as **lying** is not a major sin; **murdering** non-Muslims in Jihad is heroic.

The traditional view is that Muhammed was a sinless prophet, yet he often asked Allah to forgive his sins. (Q 40:55 and 48:1,2).

Well-known **prophets** among Muslims in the Quran are: Adam, Enoch, Noah, Abraham, Lot, Ishmael, Isaac, Jacob, Joseph, Job, Jethro, Moses, Aaron, David, Solomon, Elijah, Elisha, Ezekiel, Jonah, Zechariah of Luke 1, John the Baptist, Jesus and Muhammed.

Muslims believe that all the prophets were without sin, because the Quran says that they were on a straight path. Muslims ignore that the Quran says that: Adam sinned (2:36; 7:22,23); Abraham sinned (26:82); Moses sinned (28:15,16); Jonah sinned (37:142); David sinned (38:15,16); Muhammad sinned (47:19; 48:1,2; 33:36-38).

**The only sinless prophet mentioned in the Quran is Jesus Christ** (19:19 and 31). “He has purged me of vanity and wickedness”. Main events in Mohammed’s early life are:

- He obtained employment with a wealthy woman, Khadijah, ran her business for three years (591-594 AD), and in 595 AD he married her when he was age 25 and she was age 40. She was his only wife for 26 years until she died in 621 AD, after which he took many wives.
- At age 40 in 612 AD, when Muhammed was meditating in the cave of Hira, he received his **first revelation**. He then claimed that Allah had called him to be a prophet and an apostle.  
There was no tradition of prophets or apostles in any Arabian religion. The term “**prophet**” was used in the hope that Jews would accept Muhammed as the next prophet, while the term “**apostle**” was used in the hope that Christians would accept him as the next apostle.  
He hence sought to attract Jews, Christians and pagans.
- The Quran gives us **four conflicting accounts** of Allah calling Muhammed to be a prophet:
  - i) In Sura 53:2-18 and 81:19-24 we are told that **Allah** personally appeared to Muhammed as a man, and that Muhammed saw and heard him.
  - ii) This is later abandoned and Sura 16:102 and 26:192-194 tell us that Muhammed’s call was given by the **Holy Spirit**.
  - iii) This is also abandoned and Sura 15:8 tells us that **angels** came down and announced to Muhammed that Allah had called him to be a prophet.
  - iv) This account is amended in Sura 2:97 so that it is only the angel **Gabriel** who calls Muhammed and gives him the Quran. This account is well known by Muslims.

Islamic revelation is not the same as Biblical revelation, but means that there are no human authors of the Quran. It means “handed down” directly from Allah to Muhammed.  
The Quran denies any human or earthly sources for itself.
- After this revelation, Muhammed thought that he may be **mad** or **demon possessed**. This made him so depressed that he went to commit suicide, but on the way, he fell into another seizure, where he was told in a vision not to kill himself because he was called of God. Yet, he was still depressed and doubtful. When other people saw him in a trance, they also concluded that he was demon possessed. (Q 81:25). He then experienced three years of doubt and darkness. The Quran says that many jinn (demons) became Muslims and promised to spread Islam (Q72:14).
- **Muhammed practically demands more respect than Allah.** This is why, according to Islamic law, people are put to death whenever they say anything unfavourable about Muhammed. When he became ruler of Mecca, many were killed who criticised his brutality, including two young girls who sang a song critical of Muhammed.

Before the people of Mecca were forced to surrender to Islam, they accused Muhammed of being:

- i) "A **madman** taught by others" (44:13); "A mad poet" (37:35; 68:2; 81:22; 52:29);
- ii) "A **skilled enchanter**" (10:2) influencing people to follow him with lies;
- iii) **Bewitched and controlled by evil spirits** and demons, as a medium (17:50; 81:25);
- iv) **Soothsayers** divination (69:42) revealing secrets from jinn.

When he received a revelation, he heard a bell ring, he got off his horse or camel, covered his head, and "the angel presses so hard on me that I think I am going to die".

**1.** The Meccans concluded that Muhammed was an **impostor** because he kept on changing his statements in the Quran. To defend Muhammed, Allah said that it is not Muhammed but Allah himself who keeps on changing his words because he knows best. "When we change one verse for another (Allah knows best what he reveals), they say: "You are an impostor"" (Q 16:101).

## **2.** As far as the **Jews** were concerned, Muhammed had no credentials.

A true prophet of God could prove his identity by forthtelling events that lay beyond his ability to know. When these prophecies were fulfilled, believers knew the speaker was a true prophet of God. (Deuteronomy 18:22; Isaiah 41:21-24).

In the Quran, Muhammed repeatedly mentioned that he brought no signs and performed no miracles; neither did he prophesy future events:

"The unbelievers ask: "Why has no sign been given him by his Lord?"" (7:203; 2:118).

"But you are only to give warning". (Q13:7,31; 6:37,109).

Q 7:203 gives the Quran as the only proof available, yet the Quran contains **no fulfilled prophecies** to prove it is from God. 'Say, "This book is a veritable proof from your Lord".'

## **3.** Muhammed's friendship with demons was a big stumblingblock for the Jews (72:1-15; 46:29-31).

The law of Moses commanded Jews to keep away from all who contacted spirits or demons (jinn).

"Regard not them that have familiar spirits ... to be defiled by them." (Leviticus 19:31).

Such people were to be put to death: "A man or woman that hath a familiar spirit, or that is a wizard, shall surely be put to death." (Leviticus 20:27; Deuteronomy 18:10-12).

Allah ordered Muhammed that when anything is not clear to him, then he should go to the people of the Book (Jews and Christians) for clarification (Q 10:93,94):

"If you doubt what we have revealed to you, ask those who have read the Scriptures before you".

**The Quran refers to the Bible** as: "God's Book" (3:23).

## **When Muhammed could provide no signs of being a true prophet, the Jews rejected him**, so

Muhammed bound them by a treaty and changed his attitude toward them by:

- i) Declaring the Kaba stone at Mecca as the direction of prayer (Qibla) instead of praying toward Jerusalem. **This was idolatry** by Muhammed because the Kaba at Mecca had 360 idols in it. Eight years later, these idols were removed 'The foolish will ask, "What has made them turn away from their qiblah (direction of prayer)?"" (21:142).
- ii) He changed the fast of Ashura to the fast of Ramadan.
- iii) He charged the Jews with distorting, concealing and misrepresenting their Scriptures (4:46).
- iv) He received a revelation from Allah, accusing the Jews of worshipping Ezra as the Son of God (Q 9:30), which they never did. It was an excuse to kill them two years later.

Muhammed's first converts were his family. When his message first became public, the people of Mecca angrily laid siege to his part of Mecca. To appease these pagans, he said it was right to pray to and worship Allah's three daughters, Al-Lat, Al-Uzza and Manat. This polytheism led to the Satanic Verses being included, whereby Muhammed, supposedly inspired by Satan, succumbed to the temptation to add this passage to appease the pagan mobs in Mecca. (53:19).

When his disciples at Medina heard of his lapse into polytheism, they rebuked him strongly.

Muhammed then reverted to monotheism and stated that Allah can abrogate (or cancel) a past revelation. He later claimed Gabriel came and rebuked him for this polytheism. After Muhammed's death, the Satanic Verses were not included in the text of the Quran and were cancelled. This led the pagan Meccans to ridicule Muhammed's Allah as being unable to make up his mind.

Hence, initially, Muhammed claimed that Allah said they **could not** worship Allah's three daughters. Then Allah said they **could** be worshipped. Finally, Allah said they **could not** be worshipped.

### **Can't Allah make up his mind?**

Due to growing hostility and ridicule, Muhammed fled to Taif. Here he made no converts, so he returned to Mecca. On his way back to Mecca, Muhammed claimed to preach to and convert the jinn (genies) in Sura 46:29-35 and 72:1-28. The Quran then claims that the **jinn agreed to preach Islam to the people** (Shamanism). He soon realised that his family and tribe would not give up idolatry unless they were forced to by violence.

**The First Battle:** He sent six followers to attack and loot a caravan during the truce month. This was known as the Nakhla raid.

**The Second Battle:** Muhammed led the second battle, winning the battle of Badr.

This great success led to more followers who wanted to take part in the looting and fighting.

**The Third Battle being against the Jews:** Muhammed first tried to get the Jews to accept him as a prophet by preaching monotheism, keeping the Sabbath, praying toward Jerusalem, appealing to Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and praising their Scriptures. When it became clear that the Jews would not follow him, he began killing individual Jews then attacking Jewish settlements. This made him wealthy.

**The Fourth Battle:** The Meccans approached Muhammed with a large army. He lost this battle, was struck in the mouth by a sword and almost died, even though he predicted victory.

**The Fifth Battle:** He then attacked Jewish settlements which were easier targets than the Meccans.

After one Jewish town surrendered, 800-1000 Jewish men were beheaded in one day, their women and children were enslaved, and their possessions looted.

**The Sixth Battle:** Having a larger army, he made a 10-year peace treaty with the Meccan authorities. Yet within one year, he broke the treaty and, with a large army, forced Mecca to surrender and accept him as political and religious leader. He stopped idol worship by violence. He murdered a woman who ridiculed him for including some of her father's poems in the Quran. As leader of Mecca, Arab tribesmen began to flock to him from all sides.

## **8. MOHAMMED'S WIVES**

Muhammed's greatest weakness was women.

Several problems here are:

- i) Because the Quran in Sura 4:3 **forbids taking more than four wives**, for Muhammed to have taken **more wives** would have been a sin against Allah's word. Being Allah's prophet, he considered himself above all such laws. The Muslim scholar Ali Dashti, states that Muhammed had **16 wives** & 6 concubines.
- ii) In his 50's **Muhammed wanted to marry his friend Abu-Bakar's six-year-old daughter, Aesha**. When Abu-Baker resisted the idea, Muhammed claimed it was the will of Allah, so Muhammed got his way and married her while she was still playing with dolls, aged 6 years. Muhammed consummated the marriage when she was aged 9 years. (Muhammed's will and Allah's will were almost identical). In the West this behaviour is paedophilia and child abuse, one of the most despised crimes. "Khadija died three years before the prophet departed to Al-Madina. He stayed there for two years or so and then he wrote the **marriage** contract with Aishah when she was a **girl of 6 years of age, & consummated that marriage when she was nine years old.**" (Sahih Al-Bukhari, Vol.5, 3896).
- iii) When Muhammed wanted to **marry his adopted son's wife, Zainab**, his son, being happily married, protested. Muhammed claimed it was Allah's will (Q33:35-37), so they had to divorce and allow Zainab to marry Muhammed. If Allah had been the true God of the Bible, he would have disciplined Muhammed like God did to David for stealing Uriah's wife.
- iv) Muhammed taught that a Muslim man can have **up to four wives**, but only if he can treat them justly. According to his desires, he got revelation to have more wives. He tried to treat his wives justly by allocating them certain time slots. When it was **Hafsa's** turn, Muhammed broke his oath and went off with a **beautiful slave girl, Maria the Coptic**. As a result, his wives protested against Muhammed continually breaking his oaths and promises with them. Muhammed consulted Allah who, not surprisingly, supported the prophet, rebuking the wives, calling on them to repent, threatening them with divorce, and allowing Muhammed to marry other women instead. (Q 66:1-5). "Allah has allowed you to break your oaths." (Q 66:2).

Pickthall thinks that this privilege of breaking oaths is for all Muslims.

Hence Muslims can lie as much as they want. The God of the Bible says: “Let your yes be yes and your no be no, all else cometh of evil.” (Matthew 5:37; James 5:12).

v) **Allah gave Mohammed full licence to marry or have sex with any woman** (33:50-55).

“Prophet, we have made lawful to you the wives to whom you have granted dowries and the slavegirls whom Allah has given you as booty; and any believing woman who gives herself to the prophet and whom the prophet wishes to take in marriage. This privilege is yours alone, being granted to no other believer. You may put off (divorce) any of your wives.” (33:50,51).

vi) **Temporary Marriage or Mutah.** Today known as a one-night-stand.

Mohammed allowing Muslims to have a temporary wife was another **attraction** to follow him.

Temporary marriage was practised alongside permanent marriage by Muslims from the beginning of Mohammed’s migration to Medina (622 AD) until the second Caliph banned it in 640 AD.

Muslims do not like non-Muslims knowing about them being allowed to make a temporary marriage.

**Why?** A Muslim man may marry temporarily a Western woman in the West. This will enable him to bring his own wife or wives and children from overseas. Since Mohammed and Allah allow Muslims to lie to their wives, or in the case of Holy War, they can easily tell any woman that they are not married at all, even though they may have several wives overseas.

The Western woman marries the Muslim man, unaware of his wives overseas. The Muslim man then arranges with the Immigration Department to bring his wives and children into the Western country. When they are here, he may divorce his Western wife or, better still for him, make her live separately so he can collect large weekly payments from social security for his Western wife, as well as family allowance for her children and his newly migrated children. If each of his four wives plus his temporary wife have four children (sometimes up to 12 children each), this is about \$2,000 per week family allowance for a total of 20 children. The Muslim man can live comfortably on government handout without having to go to work. Also, he can assure himself of a place in paradise for contributing to Jihad (holy war) against the West and in spreading Islam.

Since Mohammed allowed and **did not forbid temporary marriage**, Muslims today consider it as legitimate marriage and not adultery. Their reasoning is: “Whatever is allowed by Muhammed is all right for Muslims”. Even the Quran allows it by calling spouses of temporary marriage as “wives” or “slave girls”: “Who restrain their carnal desire (save with their wives and slave girls, for these are lawful to them”. (Q 23:5-7 and 70:25-31).

It may seem attractive to men to have four or more wives, but the downside is that often the wives have terrible fights with each other, and family life becomes a nightmare.

## **9. ALLAH, MOHAMMED and the QURAN GIVE MUSLIMS PERMISSION TO LIE WITHOUT GUILT**

Samuel Zwemer, one of the greatest experts on Islam, says: “According to orthodox Islamic tradition, a lie is justifiable in three cases:

1. To reconcile two parties;
2. To satisfy one’s wife;
3. In case of war.” (*El Itidayah*, Vol 4, p 81; *The Moslem Doctrine of God*, p 41).

Professor Abdul Natiq explains that “it is quite lawful to tell something which is not true at all, that may reconcile people”. He adds a tradition from Umal Kalsum (daughter of Mohammed) that “Mohammed only allowed people to lie, firstly, in the case of war to deceive the enemy; secondly, to reconcile two parties, and thirdly, when husband and wife talk together.”

He says that Allah and Muhammed are well pleased by this as it is for the betterment of Islam. (*Islam Studies for Degree Class*, p. 77-79).

Examples of Allah and Muhammed in the Quran permitting Muslims to tell lies:

1. **If non-Muslim masters persecute Muslim slaves**, the Muslim slaves may lie that they have **renounced Islam to avoid trouble**: “Whoso, after he has believed in Allah denies him, if he were forced to do it, and if his heart remains steadfast in the faith, shall be guiltless”. (Q16:106-110). This applies to Muslims today who are in a difficult situation because of their faith, to lie saying that they are not Muslims, to save their skins.

2. When Mohammed wanted to **kill the Jews** for rejecting Islam, he had Allah saying that the Jews must be killed because they worshipped Ezra as the Son of God. This is a complete lie, but remember Allah can lie any time to get his own way, and so can Muslims. “Allah has given you absolution from such oaths”. (Q 66:2). Allah in Quran 9:29 commanded Mohammad to fight against Jews and Christians. “Fight” (Qatlova) in Arabic means to “kill”.

**Fight** (Qatlova = kill) those to whom the Scriptures (Bible) were given ... who do not believe in Allah, ... and do not embrace the true faith (Islam), until they pay tribute and are utterly subdued. The Jews say Ezra is the Son of God, while Christians say the Messiah is the Son of God. Allah confound them! How perverse they are.” (Q9:29,30).

Thus, Allah, Mohammed and Muslims can **lie for the betterment of Islam**. Muslims may take an oath, but in reality it means nothing, because Allah has stated that Muslims are free from their oaths (Q 66:2)

3. When Muhammed had promised to spend the night with one of his wives named Hafsa, **he met beautiful Maria the Coptic and spent the night with her instead of Hafsa**.

This broke his promise to his wives. Allah jumped to his defence with a threat to divorce all his wives if they kept protesting. (Q66:1-5).

4. When Allah put love (lust) in Mohammed’s heart for his adopted son’s wife Zainab, Mohammed wanted to marry her. He realised that there would be a public outcry for him stealing his son’s wife. So Mohammed made up a revelation from Allah rebuking him for hiding his love for Zainab.

This gave Allah’s sanction to Mohammed stealing his son’s wife (33:36-38). Since Allah was always there to help Mohammed get any woman he wanted, he could always make rules to justify his deeds.

**Question: Was Mohammed a true prophet of the true God?**

**Answer:** It seems that **Muhammed made up his own god who gave him a licence to sin**.

The Quran tells us that all Mohammed’s past and future sins were forgiven (48:1,2).

## **10. TWO SERMONS BY DEMONS in the Quran and THEIR PROMISE TO SPREAD MOHAMMED’S RELIGION ISLAM.** (72:1-15 and 46:29-31).

When Mohammed could not stop idol worshippers and, with division in his ranks, his wife Khadijah and his uncle/protector died in 620 AD. He felt totally rejected and very depressed, so he went to Al Taif for help. Nobody helped him there except a Christian slave who gave him some food to eat. Here Mohammed cried to Allah for help and jinn (demons) came to help him. These demons accepted his religion and went out as missionaries for Islam.

**If evil demons agree to spread Islam, then Islam must be evil and of the devil.**

How can we believe a speech of demons whose very nature is to lie and to spread error?

Notice that the demons support the Muslim false understanding about Jesus Christ as follows:

“Our lord hath taken no spouse, neither hath he any offspring.” (72:1-15).

**Jinn (demons) said**, “O our people, listen to the one who invites you to Allah, and believe in him: he will forgive you your sins and deliver you from a woeful scourge.” (Q 46:29-31).

These demons readily agreed with Muhammed in his denial of Jesus Christ being the Son of God.

They point people away from Christ to Muhammed for forgiveness of sins.

This should convince any thinking person that, **if evil demons recommend us to Mohammed, then we should reject Mohammed and Islam, and turn to Jesus Christ** whom demons hate.

## **11. DEATH TO THOSE WHO LEAVE ISLAM**

The Quran teaches that there is no compulsion in religion. (Mohammad made this statement early in his mission to get the cooperation of Jews and Christians in Medina). Yet this is proven to be another lie of Allah’s, as seen from statements to the contrary in the Quran such as:

1. Allah says: “**If they desert you**, seize them and **put them to death** wherever you find them.” Q4:89
2. Allah says: “If, after coming to terms with you, they break their oaths, and revile your faith, make war on the leaders of unbelief - for no oaths are binding on them. **Make war** on them: Allah will chastise them at your hands and humble them.” (Q9:12-14). S Zwemer in *The Law of Apostasy in Islam* says. “If anyone turns away from Islam he becomes “Kaffir”. Whosoever is a Kaffir deserves death at the hands of Muslims.” Mohammad’s followers today fight those who leave Islam. 1003

## **12. THE HIJRA**

On 20 June 622 AD, Mohammed accompanied by Abu-Bakar, arrived at Medina (from Mecca) where he lived till his death. This is called the Hijra (or flight) marking the beginning of the Muslim calendar. The Jews at Medina mocked him when he posed as a prophet. Medina was 60% Jewish, and was 450 km north-west of Mecca. The Quran often mentions the Hypocrites who did not accept Mohammed in their hearts, but put up with him because they were not powerful enough to fight him.

## **13. RAIDING (Mohammed's profession) - THE MEANS TO SPREAD ISLAM**

When Muhammed moved to Medina, he had been preaching for 13 years and had gained only about 100 followers, most of whom were poor. Farming was difficult in the desert. The only short-cut to wealth was looting caravans and raiding weaker tribes. They stole women and children, selling them back to their husbands and fathers.

The Quran says: "True believers are those who fight for Allah." (49:15 and 4:76).

In Mohammed's 10 years at Medina, he planned 150 battles. Mohammed organised raiding parties because he loved women, wealth, fame and to spread his religion. The aim of raiding parties was to steal animals, women and children and to loot the caravans. He sold those he didn't like into slavery and kept the pretty women for himself. 20% of the loot had to go to Mohammed. When Muslims grew stronger, they looted stronger tribes, Arabia, other countries and finally hope to conquer the world.

There was no change in people's spiritual or moral state after they became Muslims.

The only attraction was to be protected from Islamic raids and to loot non-protected people.

Although Muslims were commanded to brutally kill and loot non-Muslims, they were forbidden to deceive Mohammed and Allah. They were to honestly give them 20% of the loot captured.

Mohammed ordered his men to "kill those who disbelieve in Allah". (LOM, p 672).

After the battle of Badr, Muhammed became so powerful that nobody could criticize him.

A woman named Asma criticised Mohammed for killing so many of her tribe.

Mohammed had her killed and their fear of death was so strong that the whole tribe became Muslim.

The poet Kab ibn Al Ashraf wrote against Mohammed. So Mohammed sent some men to kill Kab.

They threw his head at Mohammed's feet, shouting "Allah is great."

### **► The Quran is full of verses where Mohammed incites people to war and bloodshed:**

1. "**Fight valiantly** for Allah's cause, so that you may prosper." (5:35).
2. "**Whoever fights for the cause of Allah** ... we (Allah) shall richly reward him." (4:74).
3. "Fight for the cause of Allah." (2:244; 4:84).
4. "Lay hold of them and **kill them** wherever you find them." (4:91).
5. "Prophet, rouse the faithful to arms (Al-katal means killing). If there are 20 steadfast men among you, they shall vanquish 200." (8:65).
6. "**Fight** against those to whom the Scriptures were given (Christians and Jews)." (9:29).
7. "If you do not go to war, **Allah will punish you sternly.**" (9:39).
8. "Whether unarmed or well equipped, march on and **fight** for the cause of Allah, with your wealth and persons." (9:41).
9. "Prophet, **make war on the unbelievers** and hypocrites." (9:73).
10. "When the sacred months are over, **slay the idolaters** wherever you find them. Arrest them, besiege them, and lie in ambush everywhere for them." (9:5).
11. "**Make war on them:** Allah will chastize them at your hands and humble them." (9:14).
12. "Believers, **make war on the infidels** who dwell around you. Deal firmly with them. Allah is with you." (9:123).
13. "Allah loves those who **fight for his cause.**" (61:4).
14. "Allah has given **those that fight** ... a higher rank than those that stay at home." (4:95).
15. "The offenders are those that seek exemption (from war). They are content to be with those who stay behind ...**Hell shall be their home**, the punishment for their misdeeds." (9:93-95).

These Quran quotes show that if a Muslim did not join the looting and killing of non-Muslims, he was disobedient to Allah and would surely go to hell. What a motivation to murder! An example of Mohammed's butchery was in the seventh year of his stay at Medina where he attacked Khaibur,

a **Jewish settlement fort** on the way to Syria. The Jews surrendered the fort on condition that they be free to leave the country, giving up all their wealth to the Muslims. The chief's 15-year-old wife was taken as Mohammed's wife and the chief was tortured to death. Mohammed then decreed that the men should be killed, the women and children be sold into slavery, and the spoils divided among the Islamic army. During the night, trenches were dug, and in the morning male captives were beheaded in groups of five and their bodies cast into the trench. This butchery lasted all day and into late at night.

What a genocidal man of Allah was Mohammed. What a lie is "Allah the compassionate, the merciful." Jesus said, "Ye are of your father the devil, and the lusts of your father ye will do. He was a murderer from the beginning ... he is a liar, and the father of it." (John 8:44). Mohammed was inspired by Satan.

#### **14. PREDESTINATION**

Orthodox Muslims believe that "by the force of Allah's eternal decree, **man is not free to do what he wants to do**". One well-known Hadith on predestination says: "Allah said to Adam, I have created this family for paradise ... and I have created another family for hell."

A man said to Mohammed, "Of what use will good or bad deeds be?"

Allah said, "When Allah creates one person for the fire, his actions will be like those of the people of hell till he dies." It seems that Mohammed adopted predestination to cover all his evil deeds.

**Predestination gave Mohammed the right to do anything he liked because it was the predestined will of Allah**, such as marry a six-year-old, marry his son's wife and butcher people.

The Quran teaches that people should obey Allah and Mohammed.

#### **15. MOHAMMED'S DEATH (See youtube.com Who Killed Mohammad? Acts17Apologetics)**

Mohammed loved three things: women, scents and food. It was delicious mutton cooked by a beautiful woman that caused his death.

Mohammed went to dine with a beautiful Jewess belonging to a tributary Jewish tribe. She cooked for him a shoulder of lamb that she had poisoned. Mohammed tasted a mouthful, detected the poison and spat it out, but his companion died on the spot. Mohammed asked her why she had done this, and she replied because he had enslaved the Jews. She reckoned that if he died, the Jews would be restored to their former prosperity; but if Mohammed was really a prophet, he would recognize the poison beforehand, no harm would be done, and she herself would believe. (*Islam and the West*. p 103).

When Muhammed died, he was supposed to ascend to heaven after three days, but this didn't happen. So, after waiting 12 days, they had to bury the body because of the smell. Only Jesus Christ rose from the dead. Jesus Christ, being the true prophet, clearly predicted his death in Matthew 16:21.

#### **16. MOHAMMED COMPARED WITH JESUS CHRIST**

Since Islam claims that both Jesus and Mohammad were Muslim prophets sent by Allah, then both must agree in all points and never contradict each other. If they contradict, then:

1. Allah is contradicting himself and, thus, could not be the true God;
2. Mohammed is a false prophet, because true prophets never contradict.

Some Muslims try to avoid any comparison between Jesus and Mohammed by claiming that the Bible is corrupt. This is wrong for two reasons:

1. If the Bible is corrupt, when was it corrupted and who corrupted it? We have documents of the New Testament every decade as far back as 90 AD and the vast majority of these are identical to today's KJV New Testament. The Dead Sea Scrolls, dated 200-100 BC, contain every Old Testament book except Esther, and are identical to today's KJV Old Testament.
2. If the New Testament is corrupt, so is the Quran, because the Quran uses the New Testament gospels for its information on Jesus, such as His virgin birth, etc.  
Which parts of the New Testament are supposed to be corrupt?

Let us compare the life of Jesus Christ from the Bible with the life of Muhammed from the Quran to see who had the credentials of being the true prophet of God.

**1) Prophecy:** Jesus Christ's birth, life, death and resurrection were clearly predicted in the Old Testament. Micah 5:2 predicts Bethlehem as Jesus' birthplace. Neither the Bible nor pagan soothsayers predicted anything about the coming of Mohammed. Examples of such prophecies include:

<b>45 PROPHECIES of Jesus Christ</b>	<b>OT PROPHECY</b>	<b>NT FULFILMENT</b>
1. Born of a <b>virgin</b>	Isaiah 7:14	Matthew 1:18,22-25
2. Tribe of <b>Judah</b>	Genesis 49:10	Luke 3:23,33
3. House of <b>David</b>	Jeremiah 23:5	Luke 3:31
4. Born at <b>Bethlehem</b>	Micah 5:1,2	Matthew 2:1
5. Visited by <b>wise men</b> with gifts.	Isaiah 60:3,6,9	Matthew 2:1-12
6. Given <b>Gold</b> and <b>Incense</b> .	Isaiah 60:6	Matthew 2:11
7. Would be in <b>Egypt</b> for a time.	Hosea 11:1	Matthew 2:13-15
8. <b>Infants killed</b> at His birthplace.	Jeremiah 31:15	Matthew 2:16-18
9. Preceded by <b>messenger</b> (John the Baptist)	Isaiah 40:3	Matthew 3:1-3
10. Ministry to begin in <b>Galilee</b>	Isaiah 9:1	Matthew 4:12-18
11. Suddenly come to His <b>Temple</b>	Malachi 3:1;Psalm 69:9	John 2:13-21
12. Perform <b>Miracles</b>	Isaiah 35:5,6	Matthew 9:35
13. Teacher of <b>Parables</b>	Psalm 78:2	Matthew 13:34,35
14. <b>Heal</b> many.	Isaiah 42:7,16	Matthew 8:16,17;15:30
15. His miracles <b>not believed</b> .	Isaiah 53:1	John 12:37
16. Enter Jerusalem's <b>East Gate</b> . Later shut.	Ezekiel 44:1,2.	Mark 11:1-11.
17. Enter Jerusalem on a <b>donkey</b>	Zechariah 9:9	Matthew 21:6-11
18. <b>Betrayed</b> by a friend	Psalm 41:9	Matthew 10:4; 26:48
19. <b>Sold</b> for 30 pieces of silver	Zechariah 11:12	Matthew 26:15
20. Money to be thrown on the Temple <b>Floor</b>	Zechariah 11:13	Matthew 27:5
21. Money used to buy a <b>potter's field</b>	Zechariah 11:13	Matthew 27:7
22. <b>Forsaken</b> by His disciples	Zechariah 13:7	Matthew 26:56
23. <b>False witnesses</b> accuse Him	Psalm 35:11	Matthew 26:59,60
24. <b>Silent</b> before His accusers	Isaiah 53:7	Matthew 27:12
25. <b>Beaten</b> , scourged and spat on.	Isaiah 50:6	Matthew 26:67
26. Crucified with <b>thieves</b>	Isaiah 53:12	Matthew 27:38
27. <b>Mocked</b> by onlookers.	Psalm 22:7,8; 109:25	Matthew 27:39-43.
28. <b>Hands</b> and <b>feet</b> pierced	Psalm 22:16	Luke 23:33
29. His <b>side</b> pierced	Zechariah 12:10	John 19:34
30. <b>Prayed</b> for His enemies.	Isaiah 53:12.	Luke 23:34.
31. Gall and <b>vinegar</b> offered Him to drink	Psalm 69:21	Matthew 27:34,48
32. <b>Garments</b> parted and lots cast	Psalm 22:18	John 19:23,24
33. <b>No bones</b> broken	Psalm 34:20	John 19:33
34. His <b>forsaken</b> cry	Psalm 22:1	Matthew 27:46
35. <b>Darkness</b> over land from midday	Amos 8:9	Matthew 27:45
36. Buried in <b>rich man's tomb</b>	Isaiah 53:9	Matthew 27:57-60
37. In grave <b>3 days</b> and <b>3 nights</b> .	Jonah 1:17	Matthew 12:38-40
38. <b>Rise</b> from the dead	Psalm 16:10	Matt 28:6; Acts 2:31
39. <b>Ascend</b> to Heaven	Psalm 68:18	Acts 1:9
40. <b>Rejected</b> by His own nation, Israel.	Isaiah 53:3	Mark 8:31; Luke 17:25
41. <b>Gentile</b> Nations to believe on Him	Isaiah 60:3	Acts 13:47,48
42. Messiah offer Himself as Prince to Israel <b>173,880 days</b> after 10pm 4March, 444BC	Daniel 9:25	Luke 19:37-44
43. Messiah comes and is <b>cut off</b> (dies).	Daniel 9:26	John 19:33-35
44. Jerusalem, <b>Temple</b> destroyed after J death	Daniel 9:26	by Titus in 70 AD
45. Jews to <b>lose power</b> to pass death sentence 23 years before the trial of Christ.	Genesis 49:10	11 AD (Josephus, Antiquities, 17:13:1-5)

Some Muslims claim that Jesus' promise of the coming of the Comforter in John 14:16-16:15 was fulfilled in Mohammed. This is wrong because:

- a) The Comforter is **said to be the Holy Spirit** in John 14:26;
- b) The Comforter will **stay with Christians forever** (John 14:16) and shall be **in you** (John 14:17), yet Mohammed did not stay with Christians forever, as he died in 632 AD, nor could he be in Christians;
- c) The Holy Spirit Comforter came at **Pentecost** in Acts 2:1-4, not 500 years later.

**2) Birth:** Jesus Christ was conceived miraculously in the womb of the virgin Mary.

The Quran and orthodox Islam fully accept Jesus Christ's virgin birth.

On the other hand, Mohammed was conceived naturally of human parents.

This means Mohammed was born with a sin nature, but Jesus inherited no sin nature.

**3) Sinlessness:** The New Testament states that Jesus Christ lived a sinless, perfect life.

It says He "knew no sin." (II Corinthians 5:21). His enemies could find "no fault" in Him. (Luke 23:4). Jesus was "in all points tempted like as we are, yet without sin". (Hebrews 4:15).

But Mohammed was a sinner just like all humans.

He lied, he cheated, he lusted after women, he broke his promises, he murdered people, etc.

Mohammed was not sinless.

**Ask:** "Where in the Quran does it state that Mohammed was sinless?"

Nowhere, but in the following places the Quran states that Mohammed was a sinner:

- i Allah commands Mohammed in Sura 40:55 "**Ask forgiveness for your sins.**"
- ii "We have given you (Mohammed) a glorious victory (taking of Mecca in 630 AD), so that Allah may **forgive you your past** and **future sins ..**" (Sura 48:1,2).

Mohammed was just another sinner needing forgiveness and Jesus Christ's salvation.

**4) Miracles:** In Jesus' three-year ministry, He did many miracles such as healing the sick, raising the dead, casting out demons, multiplying loaves and fishes, stilling the wind and the waves, etc.

Mohammed never performed any miracles, as stated in Sura 17:91-95. In the Quran, when doubters asked Mohammed to perform a miracle, he either stayed quiet or referred to his Quran, which contain no prophecies. Every Biblical prophet either did miracles or correctly foretold future events, but Mohammed could do neither, thus making him inferior to every Biblical prophet. The Quran mentions Jesus' miracles: "I shall heal the blind man and leper, and raise the dead to life." (3:49).

**5) The Love of God:** Jesus lived and preached the love of God.

The New Testament shows that God loves sinners:

- i "For God **so loved** the world that he gave his only begotten Son that whosoever believeth in Him should not perish but have everlasting life." (John 3:16).
- ii. "He that loveth not, knoweth not God; for **God is love.**" (I John 4:8).
- iii. "We love him, because **he (God) first loved us.**" (I John 4:19).
- iv. "Then Jesus beholding him **loved him** (the rich young ruler)." (Mark 10:21).
- v. Jesus was called "**a friend** of publicans and sinners." (Matthew 11:19).
- vi. "Love one another, as **I have loved you.**" (John 15:12).
- vii. "God commends **his love toward us**, in that while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us." Rom 5:8
- viii. "As the Father hath loved me, **so have I loved you**: continue ye in my love." (John 15:9).
- ix. Jesus prayed for those who crucified him "Father **forgive them** for they know not what they do." Luke 23:34
- x. Jesus said: "Love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you." Matt 5:44
- xi. "Nothing shall be able to separate us from the **love of God** which is in Christ Jesus our Lord" Rom 8:39
- xii. "Walk in love, as **Christ also hath loved us.**" (Ephesians 5:2).
- xiii. "Husbands love your wives as **Christ also loved the church** and gave himself for it." (Ephesians 5:22). Don't beat them. (Q4:34).

In contrast, Mohammed never preached the love of God. The Quran never mentions Allah loving man, or man loving Allah. Instead, Allah delights in sending everyone to hell (Q 19:71). Allah lies (**13:27**), hates his enemies, demands that multitudes be killed (**47:4**) and sent to hell (**11:119**), etc.

- 6) Jesus is both God and Man:** Mohammad was only a man. Bible calls Jesus **God** in these places:
- i "Verily, verily, I say unto you, Before Abraham was, I AM." John 8:58,59. Exodus 3:14 God is I AM
  - ii "Unto us a child is born ... his name shall be called **The Mighty God.**" (Isaiah 9:6).
  - iii Jesus allowed Thomas to call Him "My Lord and **my God.**" (John 20:28).
  - iv "Feed the church of **God** which **He** hath purchased with **His** own blood." (Acts 20:28).
  - v "**God** was manifest in the flesh." (I Timothy 3:16).
  - vi "Looking for that blessed hope and glorious appearing of the **great God** and our Saviour Jesus Christ." (Titus 2:13). God and Jesus are one. (II Peter 1:1).
  - vii "Unto the **Son** he saith: "Thy throne, **O God.** is forever and ever.". (Hebrews 1:8).
  - viii "In the beginning was the Word, the Word was with God and **the Word was God.**" (John 1:1).
  - ix "There are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost; and **these three are one.**" (I John 5:7).

**7) Killing and Robbing People:** Jesus never killed or robbed anyone. If he had, it would have been brought up at His trial. On the other hand, Mohammed killed, robbed and enslaved tens of thousands of people. Robbing and looting caravans, tribes and cities was his chief source of income (20% to Moh).

**8) Telling Disciples to Kill:** Jesus never commanded or set an example for His disciples to kill, rob or fight enemies in His name. But Mohammed taught his disciples by command and example to kill, rob, lie and terrorize people to submit to Islam.

**9) Physical Violence and Terrorism:** Jesus forbade His disciples from using physical violence to force people to believe His message. When a Samaritan village rejected Jesus, His disciples asked: "Shall we command fire to come down from heaven and consume them?"

Jesus rebuked them and said, "For the Son of man is not come to destroy men's lives, but to save them". (Luke 9:51-56). In Matthew 26:51-54 Jesus forbade Peter from using a sword.

But Mohammed's main method of gaining converts was by physical violence of the sword, terrorism and fear of death unless they accept Islam.

**10) Taking Other Men's Wives:** Jesus never took another man's wife to be his wife.

But Mohammed often did. This is one of the most disgusting aspects of his life. Mohammed saw his adopted son's wife without her veil, he lusted after her, asked Zaid to divorce his wife Zainab and, to quieten the public outcry, manufactured a convenient revelation from Allah allowing it, so they were married. "Allah's commandment (to marry Zainab) must be performed. There is no fault in the prophet, touching what Allah had ordained for him." (Sura 33:36-38).

This Quranic passage has led many thinking Muslims to renounce Islam.

When Mohammed conquered a town, he often killed all the men and married the prettiest women. For example, when he conquered Khaibar, a Jewish settlement, he tortured to death the chief Kinana, and married Safiyye his 15-year-old wife.

**11) Child Brides:** Jesus was never a child molester, nor a paedophile, nor was He sexually involved with young children. But when Mohammad was in his 50's he married six-year-old Aesha when she was playing with dolls, consummating the marriage when she was age 9 (Hadith 3896 Bukhari).

**12) Dying for the Sins of the World:** Islam has no concept of a Saviour paying the penalty for our sins. When Jesus died, He died for the sins of all people to save us from hell:  
"That he by the grace of God should taste death for every man." (Hebrews 2:9).  
But when Muhammad died, he was poisoned for murdering a tribe of people.  
He did not die for anyone else's sins. There is no Saviour or Sin Bearer in Islam.

**13) Jesus Rose from the Dead After Three Days:** When Mohammed died, he stayed dead, as any man does. Muslims therefore have no victory over the grave and death.

**14) Jesus Ascended Bodily to Heaven** as witnessed by the disciples in Acts 1:8-11. But Mohammed stayed dead and buried. Why follow a dead man?

- 15) Jesus is now in Heaven as our Intercessor, Mediator and Saviour.** But neither Mohammed nor the Quran ever regard Mohammed as a saviour or intercessor. The Quran states that man has no intercessor or saviour. You have to save yourself: "They have no guardian or intercessor besides Allah". (6:51,70). "None has power to intercede for you." (10:3).
- 16) Jesus was Often Worshipped as God.** "Let all the angels of God worship Him". (Hebrews 1:6). But the Quran never speaks of worshipping Mohammed. That would be blasphemy. The Quran contradicts itself here by saying that Allah commanded the angels to worship Adam (Q 2:34). This is blasphemy. Yet the Quran doesn't ask us to worship Mohammed. Is Adam greater than Muhammed? Is Adam God? Jesus accepted worship in Matthew 2:11; 14:33; 28:9,17; Luke 24:52; John 9:38; etc..
- 17) Personal Relationship with Jesus Christ.** When anybody receives Jesus Christ as their Saviour, they become sons of God, with God becoming their loving Heavenly Father. We love Jesus for saving us and giving us eternal life. Which Muslim ever has a personal, loving friendship with Mohammed? Nobody can have a friendship with Mohammed because he is dead.
- 18) Jesus Gives us a High Moral Example to Follow** by living for others, dying for sinners, living a sinless life and always pleasing God the Father. Mohammed did not give us a high moral example. His many sinful, murderous actions explain why so many Muslims are keen to kill their enemies.
- 19) Jesus Christ's Beauty of Speech.** When you study Jesus Christ's speeches such as the *Sermon on the Mount*, (Matthew 5,6,7); the *Parables* (Matthew 13,20,22,25); rebuking the Scribes and Pharisees (Matthew 15,16,23); the *Olivet Discourse* (Matthew 24); the New Birth (John 3); the woman at the well (John 4); Jesus' credentials (John 5); Jesus the Bread of Life (John 6); Jesus the Light of the World (John 8); Jesus the Good Shepherd (John 10); Jesus raises Lazarus (John 11); Jesus sending the Comforter (John 14-16); Jesus the True Vine (John 15); Jesus' High Priestly Prayer (John 17), etc, these show Him to be the greatest speaker that ever lived.  
Compare Jesus' speeches with Mohammed's repetitive speeches with no logical train of thought, filled with hatred of non-Muslims, threats of hell torture and many commands to go to Jihad war, etc. with little style or substance, and you will realise that Jesus is infinitely superior to Mohammed.
- 20) Jesus will Return to Earth to Resurrect and Judge all Men.** Orthodox Muslims admit this. The Quran never mentions Mohammed returning to earth, raising the dead or judging all men. Jesus is the coming King and Judge. Mohammed can't do this because he is dead.
- Years later in debates with Christians, embarrassed Muslims being faced with the obvious fact that Mohammed was inferior to Jesus Christ, invented myths about Mohammed being sinless, doing miracles, ascending to heaven, etc. These claims are not found in the Quran or in early Muslim traditions.  
Later Muslim theologians borrowed events from the life of Jesus and attributed them to Mohammed. The Muslim myths of Mohammed's miracles all date after heated debates between Christians and Muslims, and were invented in response to the challenge that Jesus Christ was obviously superior to Mohammed. On all the essential issues, Jesus is vastly superior to Mohammed.
- 17. IS THE QURAN THE PERFECT WORD OF GOD?**
- The Bible has much historical narrative - the Quran has very little.  
The Bible explains unfamiliar terms - the Quran does not.  
The Bible is ordered according to time and subject - the Quran has no logical order of thought.
- a) Although Muhammed claimed to be a prophet of God, he did not foresee his own death by poisoning, so he made no preparations to gather his revelations into one document.**  
If he were a true prophet of God, he would have known the meal was poisoned and would not have eaten it. It was left to his followers to try to write down what he said.  
The *Concise Encyclopedia of Islam* p 230 states:  
"The Quran was collected from the chance surfaces on which it was written: from papyrus, flat stones, palm leaves, shoulder blades, ribs of animals, pieces of leather, wooden boards and the hearts of men".

- b) Sometimes animals ate the palm leaves or mats on which the only original Suras were written**  
 (Ali Dashti, 23 years, p28). Some men who were the only ones who remembered certain Suras, died in battle before they could write them down.
- c) The Quran is arranged beginning with the longest Sura to the shortest Sura. This results in the confusion of no logical chronology.**
- d) Commands early in the Quran are contradicted by later commands.**
- e) The Quran repeats statements and stories many times**
- f) The Quran is incomplete. It has no beginning of the universe, nor does it conclude with the end of earth's history as does the Bible.**
- g) The Quran could not be a continuation of the Bible as it claims, because it does not fit the Bible's doctrines, literary style or structure.** To go from the Bible to the Quran is to go from the superior to the inferior, from the greater to the lesser, from the real to a counterfeit, from the loving to the hateful.
- 1. Missing Verses.** Professor Guillaume in his book *Islam* p 191 states that one of the Suras (Sura 33) originally had 200 verses in the days of Aesha, Mohammed's favourite wife, but by the time the third Caliph Uthman standardized the text of the Quran, it only had 73 verses. A total of 127 verses had been lost forever from that Sura. "The Shiite Muslims claim that Uthman left out 25% of the original verses of the Quran for political reasons." (McClintock and Strong, Vol 5, p 152).
  - 2. Verses Changed.** One of Mohammed's scribes, Abdollah Sarh, would make suggestions to Mohammed about rephrasing, adding or leaving out parts of the Quran's Suras. Mohammad often did as he suggested. Ali Dashti, 23 Years, p 98 explains: "Abdollah renounced Islam because the revelations, if from God, could not be changed at the prompting of a scribe as he. After he left Islam, he went to Mecca and joined the Qorayshites." When Mohammed conquered Mecca, one of the first people he killed was Abdollah, because he knew too much and opened his mouth too often.
  - 3. Verses Abrogated (removed from the text).** Verses which are contradictory to Islam have been removed from the text. Examples include the *Satanic Verses* where Mohammed approved the worship of Allah's three daughters as goddesses. (**16:101** "When we change one verse from another." p977).
  - 4. Verses Added.** For example, Ubai had several Suras in his Quran which Uthman omitted from his standard text used today. Uthman did not approve of these so he omitted them.
  - 5. No Original.** When Mohammed died, there was no collected text of the Quran.  
 Any original writings on palm leaves, tree bark, stones, leather, etc. have long been lost.  
 If a Muslim claims that they have the original Quran, ask where this original manuscript is stored.
  - 6. The Third Caliph, Uthman** (650 AD) established the official text of the Quran and destroyed earlier conflicting texts. Ask:
    - Why did Uthman **destroy other manuscripts** if there were no other conflicting manuscripts?
    - Why did he **use death threats to force people to accept his text**, if everyone had the same text?
    - Why did many people **reject his text** in favour of their own texts?
    - Why did he have to **standardize a common text** if a perfect text already existed?
 Some of these older Quran texts have survived and clearly show that Uthman's text did not contain all the Quran. Encyclopedia Britannica under "Caliphate" states:  
 "Encouraged by the Caliph's weakness, and by preachers who denounced his errors and innovations, notably **his issue of an official text of the Quran** and **his order to destroy all others**, the troops in Kufia and Al Fustat rebelled. A party from Egypt, headed by the son of Abu-Bakr, marched to Medina, besieged Uthman in his house and killed him on June 17, 656 AD."
  - 7. Mohammed's Fingerprints.** Muslims claim that the Quran was handed down from heaven and Mohammed was not its human author. Then why does its **dialect**, vocabulary, style and content happen to be the same Arabic used by a member of the Quraysh tribe living in Mecca around 600 AD? Does heaven speak 7th Century Quraysh Arabic? No! Muslim claims of the Quran having a heavenly origin are fictitious. It is of human origin.

## **18. MISTAKES IN THE Quran**

Many modern Muslims love to criticize the Bible as being corrupt and contradictory, but when anyone dares to criticize the Quran, they label this as rude, offensive and racist. Muslims claim the Quran to be true, but they cannot prove it. If Muslims are free to criticize the Bible, then others should be free to criticize the Quran. Muslims must agree that in the West, everybody is free to criticize the Bible, the Quran, the Hadith, the Book of Mormon or any “holy” book. Any religion which doesn’t allow people to examine its sacred book, using normal rules of research and logic, **obviously has something to hide**.

Since the Quran claims to have no errors as proof of its inspiration in Sura 85:21,22, the presence of just one error in the Quran shows it to be false and not from God.

“Surely this is a glorious Koran, inscribed on an imperishable tablet.” (Sura 85:21,22).

Throughout his early ministry, Mohammed constantly endorsed the truth of the Bible as the basis of his Quran. “Children of Israel, ... have faith in my revelations, which confirm your Scriptures.” (2:40).

“We gave Moses the Scriptures and knowledge of right and wrong, so that you might be rightly guided” (2:53).

“the Koran ... confirming previous scriptures.” (2:97,101).

**Question:** Why is the New Testament God’s Word?

**Answer:** Because it fulfils prophecies given in the Old Testament.

**Question:** Why is the Quran NOT God’s Word?

**Answer:** Because it confirms NO prophecies in the New or Old Testament. The Quran is not a continuation of the New Testament, because the Quran contradicts the New Testament:

- 1) The Quran claims itself to be a continuation of the Bible and that it will not contradict it. Say: “We believe in Allah and that which is revealed to us (Quran) in what was revealed to Abraham, Ishmael, Isaac, Jacob and the tribes; to Moses and Jesus and the other prophets by their Lord. We make no distinction among any of them.” (2:136).
- 2) Hence Muslims believe that the same God (Allah) revealed the Bible and the Quran.
- 3) Hence the Quran should never contradict the Bible, otherwise Allah would be contradicting himself.
- 4) If Allah contradicted himself, he is not perfect.
- 5) If Allah is not perfect, then he is not God.
- 6) Since the Bible was before the Quran, and the Quran appeals to the Bible for verification, then whenever there is a conflict between the two, the newer (Quran) must give way to the older (Bible).

**Muslim statement:** Muslims say that the Quran is always right because the Bible has been corrupted and is untrustworthy.

**Christian reply:** “Prove it has been corrupted. Who corrupted it. When did they corrupt it?”

There is no manuscript evidence supporting the Quran’s claim that Jesus was not crucified.

The Bible always taught that Jesus died on the cross.

Two choices face the Muslim, both of which disprove the Quran. Either,

1. If the Muslim rejects the Bible, he must also reject the Quran because it claims the Bible to be God’s Word, (Q 5:48 “Quran confirms the scriptures which came before it.”) or,
2. If he accepts the Bible, he still must reject the Quran because it contradicts the Bible.

Instead of giving up the Quran, some Muslims say that the Bible was corrupted after the Quran was written. This is false because we have Bible portions going back as far as 200 BC in the Dead Sea Scrolls of the Old Testament, and as far back as 90 AD with the New Testament. These are identical to the KJV Bible we have today. Hence the majority of Bible manuscripts have not been corrupted.

Logically, then, the Bible must be preferred above the Quran because:

1. The Bible was written before the Quran, and
2. The Quran appeals to the Bible as the already established higher authority.

## **19. MAJOR MISTAKES IN THE QURAN**

1. **Six or Eight Days of Creation?** How many days did it take God to create heaven and earth?

a) The Quran in Sura 41:9,10,12 says God took  $2 + 4 + 2 = 8$  days to create the earth and heavens: "Him who created the earth in 2 days ... in 4 days provided it with sustenance for all alike. In 2 days he formed the sky into seven heavens." (41:9-12).

b) The Bible in Genesis 1:31 and Exodus 20:11 says: "In 6 days the LORD made heaven and earth, the sea and all that in them is, and rested the seventh day."

**Question:** Is the Bible corrupt by saying 6 days?

If it is, then so is the Quran in **7:51** and **10:3** where it also says 6 days:

"Your Lord is God, who created the heavens and the earth in 6 days." (Q7:51).

Hence, if **6 days is right**, the Quran is wrong in 41:9,10,12.

If **8 days is right**, the Quran is wrong in 7:51 and 10:3.

2. **Scientific Mistakes.** The Quran in **18:85,86** states that Alexander the Great (Dhul-Qarnayn) "journeyed on a road until he reached the setting place of the sun and saw it setting in a pool of black muddy water." The sun does not set in a pool of water, but earth orbits the sun in space.

3. **The Trinity.** Mohammed never understood the doctrine of the Trinity.

He wrongly thought that Christians worshipped three gods: "The Father, Mary and Jesus".

"Unbelievers say: "Allah is the Messiah, the son of Mary". (5:72).

Unbelievers say: "Allah is one of the three". There is but one God." (5:73).

"Then Allah will say: "Jesus, son of Mary, did you ever say to mankind: "Worship me and my mother as gods beside Allah?"?"(5:116).

Christians believe in one God in three persons, the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit. Matt 28:19 Christians do not believe that Mary is part of the Trinity. The Quran is so clearly wrong here.

4. **Usury (Charging Interest)** Mohammed condemned usury in the Quran:

"Allah has permitted trading and made usury unlawful." (2:275).

"Allah has laid his curse on usury." (2:276).

"Believers, ... waive what is still due to you from usury." (2:278)

"We forbade the Jews good things ... because they practise usury." (4:161).

In 7th Century Arabia, charging interest on money loaned to people was condemned as usury.

Modern Muslims openly disobey the Quran here.

Today Muslim banks, Muslim governments and Muslims all charge interest and pay interest on money loaned and borrowed. If Muslims strictly obeyed the Quran's teachings here, there would be no Muslim banks at all.

Muslims defend their practice of charging interest (usury) by saying that this was a 7th Century Arabian **cultural practice** and could be disregarded today. If this principle applied to all other cultural practices in Islam such as dress code, the five pillars, civil and dietary laws, then Islam would collapse immediately.

Either the Quran is **cultural** and can be disobeyed, or it is the **word of Allah** and must be obeyed.

5. **With Allah, is a Day Equal to 1 000 Years or 50 000 Years?**

"All will ascend to Him in a single day, a day whose space is a thousand years by your reckoning".(32:5). "angels and the spirit will ascend to Him in one day: a day whose space is fifty thousand years." (70:4). Which is right? – 1,000 years or 50,000 years? Let us be consistent.

6. **Did Jesus Die and Rise (19:33) or Did He Not Die (4:157)?**

"He spoke and said: He has ... ordained me a prophet. He has purged me of vanity and wickedness. Blessed was I on the day I was born, and blessed I shall be on the day of my death and on the day I shall be raised to life. Such was Jesus, the son of Mary.

That is the whole truth, which they still doubt." (19:33).

"They did not kill him, nor did they crucify him, but they thought they did. ... they did not slay him for certain. God lifted him up to Him." (4:157). 1012

**Question:** How can something stated in 19:33 be denied in 4:157? Which is correct?

**Think:** If Muslims and the Quran state that Jesus never died, but was taken up to heaven alive, then they must admit that:

- i) Jesus is **still alive today in heaven**, because people cannot die in heaven;
- ii) If Jesus has not died (and never will), then Mohammed **cannot claim to be Jesus' successor**.
- iii) If Jesus never died and Mohammed did die, then **Jesus is superior to Mohammed**.

#### 7. Did All of Noah's Sons Survive (21:76) or Did One Son Drown (11:42,43)?

a) The Quran in 11:42 says that one of Noah's sons refused to enter the Ark and was drowned in the flood. "Noah cried out to his son, who stood apart "Embark with us, my child. Do not remain with the unbelievers!"

He replied: "I shall seek refuge in a mountain, which will protect me from the flood". ... the billows rolled between them, and Noah's son was drowned". (11:42,43).

b) The Quran contradicts itself in 21:76 by saying that **all Noah's kinsfolk** were saved: "Noah invoked us, and we answered his prayer. We saved him and all his kinsfolk from the great calamity." (21:76).

The Bible in Genesis 7:1,7,13 and 10:2,6,22 states that Noah's three sons Shem, Ham and Japheth, all entered the Ark and survived the flood.

Hence, the Bible and the Quran state that the Quran is wrong here in 11:42.

#### 8. Historical Characters Out of Their Time

Mohammed and 7th Century Arabs did not think in terms of a historical time line as we do today. They viewed time as never ending cycles, with people of different periods living at the same time. This is why the Quran has Nimrod (2300 BC), Abraham (2000 BC), Moses (1500 BC), Haman (510 BC) and Mary (2 BC) all living and working together.

The Quran has the Flood (2418 BC), Tower of Babel (2250 BC) and Pharaoh (1500BC) all living at the same time. (28:38).

This is a **very serious** and **obvious blunder** that proves the Quran to be man-made and NOT the Word of God, because it violates Bible chronology and secular history. Examples include:

- i) "**Pharaoh** (1500 BC) said: Make me, **Haman** (510 BC), bricks of clay and build me a **tower** (2250 BC) that I may climb to the God of Moses." (28:38). Here the Quran has Pharaoh (1500 BC) telling Haman (510 BC) to build the Tower of Babel (2250 BC) with clay bricks to reach to heaven (40:36).
- ii) "When **Saul** marched out with his army, he said, Allah will put you to the proof at a certain river. He that drinks from it shall cease to be my soldier, but he that does not drink from it, or contents himself with a taste of it in the hollow of his hand, shall fight by my side." (Quran 2:249). Here the Quran confuses **King Saul** (1000 BC) with **Gideon** (1249 BC) eliminating his soldiers by the water drinking test.
- iii) "Pharaoh said, "... I will **crucify** you all!..." (7:124). Here the Quran has Pharaoh (1500 BC) threatening to crucify people, when crucifixion was not invented until over 1000 years later.
- iv) "We plagued them with **floods** and locusts, with lice and frogs and blood." (7:136). Noah's flood did not occur in Moses' day. Nor was a flood one of the 10 plagues on Egypt. The Quran is wrong in 17:101 "To Moses we gave **nine** clear signs." God sent **10 plagues on Egypt, not 9** (Exodus 7-12)
- v) Mohammed confused **Mary the mother of Jesus** with **Miriam** (the daughter of Amran 3:34; 66:12) who was the sister of Moses and Aaron. "Carrying the child, she came to her people who said to her, **Mary**, this is indeed a strange thing! Sister of **Aaron** ..." (19:27,28,30). "In **Mary**, **Imran's** (**Amram's**) daughter, who preserved her chastity and into whose womb we breathed of our spirit". (66:12).

Quran 66:12 proves the Quran wrong here because Mary, Jesus' mother, is stated as being the **daughter of Imran** (or Amram of Exodus 6:20) who was also the father of Moses and Aaron.

This mistake was made because Mary and Miriam are spelt the same in Arabic.

Mohammed, not having a Bible, would have been unable to distinguish between the two.

Mary did not give birth to Jesus under a palm tree (Q 19:22) but in a manger (eating-trough in a stable in Luke 2:1-20). Mohammed made up false speeches and miracles for Mary in 19:23-26.

9. **“The Jews say Ezra is the Son of God.” (Quran 9:30).**

The Quran is very wrong here because the Jews have never believed this. Why did Mohammed make up this false statement? Because he wanted an excuse to justify murdering the Jews.

10. **“Unbelievers are Those That say: “Allah is the Messiah, the Son of Mary”.” (5:72).**

Christians never said that Allah is the name of the Messiah, Jesus Christ as 5:72 claims.

The Messiah is Jehovah the Son, Jesus Christ, fully God & fully man,not Allah. Mistaken identity!

11. **A Carnal, Sinful Heaven.**

The Quran offers a heaven full of wine and free sex. (2:25; 4:57; 11:23; 47:15).

If drunkenness and gross immorality are sinful on earth, how are they right in heaven?

The Quran’s picture of paradise is exactly what a carnal, pagan 7th Century Arab male would have loved. What benefits do women have in heaven? Women don’t count!

12. **Mohammed Misunderstood What “Son of God” Meant.**

In Mohammed’s mind, to say that God had a Son was to blaspheme God because he thought it meant that God had a male body that had sexual intercourse with Mary.

“God forbid that he himself should beget a son!” (Quran 19:35).

“How should He have a son when he had **no consort**?” (Quran 6:101).

Jesus Christ was the “Son of God” **before** He was born of Mary (Proverbs 30:4; Psalm 2:12; Daniel 3:25; 7:13). Neither was Jesus created sexually. ”Son of God” is a title of Jesus Christ.

**“Son of God” does not mean that He was produced by sex between God and Mary.**

Adam was called a “son of God” (Luke 3:38), but Adam was not created by God having sex with a woman. Angels are called “sons of God” (Job 1:6; 2:1), but God did not create them by sexual means. Jesus is the Huios (same nature) as God, not the Teknon boy of God. The Quran is 100% wrong here.

13. **Noah was age 600 years when the Flood came, not 950 years. (Q29:14).** See Genesis 7:11.

“We sent Noah to his people. He stayed with them 950 years, so the Flood overtook them.” 29:14.

20. **ARABIAN, JEWISH AND CHRISTIAN SOURCES OF THE QURAN**

Remember that in Mohammed’s lifetime the Old Testament and New Testament had not been translated into Arabic. Mohammed had the Jewish **“Targum”** and **“Apocryphal Gospels”** which contained many fictitious stories which he made small changes to and put them into the Quran. This proves that Mohammed wrote the Quran from **earthly sources** available to him.

Therefore the Quran is not of heavenly origin, nor should we believe it as God’s Word.

1. **Arabian Sources** The Quran repeats Arabian fables as if they were true. Examples include:

i) The story of an entire village of people who were turned into apes for fishing on the Sabbath day, was a popular legend in Mohammed’s day.

“Each Sabbath the fish appeared before them floating on the water, but on the week days they never came near them. Thus did we tempt them because they had done wrong.” (7:163).

“We said to them, “Turn into detested apes”.” (7:166; 2:65).

ii) The story of seven men and their animals who slept for 309 years in a cave and then woke up (Q 18:9-26): “We made them sleep in the cave for many years, and then awakened them (Q 18:12) after 309 years.” (18:26).

iii) The fable of four dead cut-up birds getting up and flying was well known in Mohammed’s time: “Take four birds, cut their bodies to pieces, Scatter them over the mountain tops, then call them back. They will come swiftly to you.” (Quran 2:260).

**2. Jewish Sources.** The Quran takes stories from the Jewish Talmud, the Midrash and Apocrypha. Abraham Geiger in 1833 and Abraham Katsh in 1954 (New York University) documented this.

i) The birth of Mary and the story of Allah giving her food comes from the *Protoevangelium* of James the Lesser.

“Whenever Zacharias visited her in the Shrine he found that she had food with her.

“Mary”, he said, “where is this food from?” “It is from Allah” she answered”. (Q 3:35-37).

ii) The Quran 19:22-26 claims that Mary gave birth to Jesus under a palm tree which gave her fresh ripe dates. This came from the *Protoevangelium* of James the Lesser.

iii) Sura 27:17-44 comes from the Second Targum of Esther.

**Solomon's forces of jinn (demons), men and birds were called to Solomon.** The lapwing was absent, so Solomon threatened to kill it. The lapwing on arrival told Solomon about the Queen of Sheba ruling a nation of idolators. One of Solomon's jinn offered to bring her throne 600 miles in an instant. When the Queen came to Solomon, she submitted to Allah.

iv) In 2:259 we read the unrealistic tale about Allah causing a man and his ass to die for 100 years, then raising them up to see that his food and drink had not rotted.

This was a Jewish fable that Mohammad put in the Quran.

v) In the Targum of Jerusalem, the Targum of Jonathan ben Uzziah, and in pirke Rabbi Eleazer, we find the legend of how, when Cain killed his brother Abel, a raven taught him how to bury the dead body. This story was included in the Quran in 5:30,31: “Then Allah sent down a raven which dug the earth to show him how to bury the naked corpse of his brother.”

vi) The story of **two angels, Harut and Marut, who teach mankind magic** and cause division between man and wife, was taken from the Midrash Yalkut Chapter 44 and included in Quran 2:102.

vii) The story in the Quran 7:171 of Allah lifting up Mount Sinai and holding it over the Jews' heads as a threat to squash them if they rejected the law came from the Jewish book *Abodah Sarah*. “We suspended the mountain over them (they feared it was falling down on them) ...” 7:171.

viii) Mohammed taught that a scale will be used on judgment day to weigh a person's good deeds and bad deeds, to determine whether one goes to heaven or hell. He learned this from the Testament of Abraham and put it in the Quran 101:6-9. “Then he whose scales are heavy shall dwell in bliss; but he whose scales are light, the Abyss shall be his home.” (101:6-9).

The problem with this is that, compared with God, we are all big sinners, none of us are righteous. Mohammed is comparing sinners with sinners, but if the true Holy God was writing it, sinners would be compared to God.

ix) The idea of seven hells and seven heavens comes from the Jewish books *Zohar* and the *Hagigah*. “God created the seven heavens one above the other” (71:15; 67:3; 65:12). The Bible (2 Corinthians 12:2) says there are only **three heavens**: the atmosphere, space and where God's throne is located.

x) The false story of **Jesus as a baby speaking in the cradle**, came from Egypt (150 AD). Mohammed wrote this in the Quran 19:29,30, copying it from the false *First Gospel of the Infancy of Jesus Christ*.

xi) The false story of **Jesus as a child making clay birds** and **breathing life into them**, was copied from *Thomas' Gospel of the Infancy of Christ* and placed in the Quran (3:49).

The Bible tells us in John 2:11 that Jesus' **first miracle** was at Cana of Galilee, not as a child.

xii) The Jewish idea, “**whosoever kills a man**, it shall be as if he had killed the whole of mankind”, was written in *Mishna Sanhadrin* (4:5) and found its way into the Quran (5:32).

xiii) The tale of **Abraham being delivered from Nimrod's fire** (Q 37:97,98) came from the Midrash Rabbah, because the city of “Ur” sounded like fire “Or” in Aramaic.

### **3. Pagan Sources.** Mohammad got some of his ideas from Hinduism and Zoroastrianism.

The following were previously known stories which were later attributed to Mohammad:

- i) The flying trip through the seven heavens.
- ii) The Houries of paradise.
- iii) Paradise with rivers of wine and women (Persian origin).
- iv) The Peacock story.
- v) Praying five times a day toward Mecca, came from the Serbians.
- vi) Imraul Qaais' daughter, on hearing Q 54:1,29,31,46, recognised them as her father's poem and demanded to know how her father's verses had become part of divine revelation, supposedly preserved on stone in heaven. (Dr A Shorroh p 193).
- vii) Worshipping at the Kabah stone.
- viii) Fasting for part of a day for one month.
- ix) Temporary marriage (Mutu) was a well-known pagan Arabian custom.
- x) Cutting off a thief's hand (Q 5:38) came from the Code of Hammurabi, Law 253.

**Conclusion:** Although devout Muslims sincerely believe that Islam's doctrines came from heaven and not from earthly sources, historians have clearly proven them to come from pre-Islamic Arabian culture. Thus, Mohammad did not preach anything new.

Even the idea of the one true God was borrowed from Jews and Christians.

**These facts prove Islam to be false, Allah is not God, Mohammed was not His prophet and the Quran is not the Word of God.**

## **21. NONSENSE IN THE HADITH**

Muslims believe that the *Hadith* is just as divinely inspired and as authoritative as the Quran.

The *Hadith* is a collection of early Muslim traditions which record Mohammed's words and deeds according to his wives, family, friends and Muslim leaders.

The Muslim scholar, Dr Muhammed Hamidullah, in *Introduction to Islam* states that, "The original teachings of Islam are found above all in the Quran and the *Hadith*" (p 250), and that these are "the basis of all Islamic law" (p 163), and "both the Quran and *Hadith* are based on divine inspiration". (p 23).

The Muslim writer, Abdalatati, in his book *Islam in Focus* says,

"All the articles of faith are based upon and derived from the Quran and the Traditions (Hadith) of Muhammed." (p 21).

Hence, orthodox Muslims consider the *Hadith* to be divinely inspired and authoritative.

We use the nine-volume translation of Al-Bukhari's Hadith by Dr Muhammad Muhsin Khan entitled *The Translation of the Meaning of Sahih Al-Bukhari*. (Kazi Publications, Lahore, Pakistan, 1979). It is recommended and approved by all Muslim authorities.

The Introduction states: "Al-Bukhari only chose 7275 Hadiths, of which there is **no doubt about their authenticity**. Allah revealed to Muhammad the Glorious Quran and the *Second Inspiration* ie: his traditions".

"Al-Bukhari's work is the most authentic book after the Quran." (p 14).

**Every Muslim must believe and obey the *Hadith*.**

**Key:** Many Muslims, when confronted with some of Mohammed's absurd teachings in the *Hadith*, will deny the *Hadith*'s authority and inspiration.

**Mohammed's absurd statements** in the *Hadith* prove clearly that it could not be God inspired.

Muslims, when faced with Mohammed's absurd statements in the *Hadith*, are forced to:

- i) **defend the ridiculous** and to bury their rational mind in an attempt to defend the indefensible; or
- ii) **admit that Muhammed is not a true prophet of God**, that Muhammed is wrong, and that they must hence leave Islam as error.

Any thinking, honest Westerner, when faced with Muhammed's foolish statements in the *Hadith*, would never consider Islam as a serious religion again.

The *Hadith* sets forth the rules and rituals Muslims must follow to earn their salvation and obtain Allah's forgiveness. One mistake can cancel all good works you have done so far.

Consider these "gems of wisdom" from Muhammed in the *Hadith*:

1. **He did not like people asking him questions** about his claims to prophethood or revelation. He said: "Allah has hated you..for asking too many questions". (Vol 2, No 555 and Vol 3, No 591).
2. When a Muslim man converted to Christianity, died and was buried, the **earth would not accept his body but kept throwing it out of the grave**. (Vol 4, No 814, 3617).
3. **Shouting Food.**  
As Muhammed ate food, the food would shout out loud and glorify Allah (Vol 4, No 779, 3579).
4. **Muhammed taught that the majority of people in hell were women.**  
The Prophet said, "I was shown the Hell-fire and the majority of its dwellers were women".
5. **Women are deficient in intelligence.** (Vol 1, No 28,301 and Vol 2, No 161).  
Vol 2, No 541 tells us that most people in hell are women because,  
"O women! I have not seen anyone more deficient in intelligence and religion than you." This is why women are not given equal rights under Islamic law.
6. **A woman's court testimony is worth only half that of a man.** "The Prophet said: "Isn't the witness of a woman equal to half that of a man?" The woman said, "Yes". He said, "This is because of the deficiency of a woman's mind"." (Vol 3, No 826).
7. Muhammed taught that **people are tortured in hellfire because they soil themselves with urine.** (Vol 2, No 443, 1378). "One of the major sins is not to protect oneself (one's clothes and body) from one's urine. Once the Prophet, while passing a graveyard, heard the voices of two persons being tortured in their graves. The Prophet then said: "Yes! (they are being tortured for a major sin). Indeed, one of them never saved himself from being soiled with his urine"."(Vol.1,Ch 57,215)  
What about when some people become old and incontinent? Do they become outcasts?
8. **Muhammed ordered people to drink camel urine mixed with milk as medicine.**  
"So the Prophet ordered them to go to the herd of camels and to drink their milk and urine (as a medicine)". (Vol 1, No 234, 233).
9. **Rules for urinating and defecating are:**
  - i) You must not face Mecca when urinating or defecating. (Vol 1, No 144, 145, 148, 149).
  - ii) You must not use your right hand to hold or wipe yourself. (Vol 1, No 153, 154).
  - iii) Whoever cleans his private parts with stones should do it with an odd number of stones. (Vol 1, No 162). This was because he was superstitious about odd numbers.
  - iv) He feared that evil spirits might enter his body whenever he urinated or defecated.  
Thus he prayed for special protection. (Vol 1, No 144).
10. **He was afraid of a strong wind:** "Narrated Anas: Whenever a strong wind blew, anxiety appeared on the Prophet's face (fearing that the wind might be a sign of Allah's wrath)." (Vol 2, No 1034).
11. **The Fly in the Cup:** If a fly falls into your cup, do not worry about it because Muhammed said that while one wing has the disease, the other wing has the antidote. So drink up. (Vol 4, No 537).
12. **600 Wings:** Muhammed tells us that the angel Gabriel has 600 wings. (Vol 6, No 380).
13. **"Satan stays in the upper part of the nose all night"** (Vol 4, No 156) so said Muhammad.  
This is why he would suck in water up his nose and then blow it out.

14. **Satan urinates in your ears** if you fall asleep during prayers. (Vol 2, No 1144).
15. **Passing wind:** Muhammed tells us that if you commit the sin of “hadath” (passing wind out the bowel) while you are praying, then Allah will not hear your prayers. (Vol 1, No 445; Vol 9, No 86)
16. **Bad breath** means that Allah will not hear your prayers. You may not eat garlic before prayers.
17. **Yawning is from Satan** according to Muhammed in Vol 4, No 509.  
It was really Muhammed, not God, that was offended by yawning, bad breath and passing wind, so he banned them in Allah’s name. Illiterate people believed him or they’d be killed.
18. **What do spirits eat?** The jinn or spirits eat dung and bones, according to Muhammed. Vol 5, 200
19. **Muhammed spat** into the hands of his followers so they could smear his saliva on their faces.  
“Whenever Allah’s Apostle spitted, the spittle would fall in the hand of one of them who would rub it on his face and skin”. (Vol 3, No 891; Vol.1, Chap.70, 241).
20. **Adam was 90 feet tall** states Muhammed in Vol 4, No 543.  
“The Prophet said, “Allah created Adam, making him 60 cubits tall (90 feet)”.  
How tall was Eve, and their children? Why are we not that tall?  
Which Muslim will defend this idea of a 90 ft tall Adam?
21. **Stars as missiles.** The stars were created by Allah as missiles to throw at devils, to keep them away from listening to God’s conversations, according to Muhammed in Vol 4,Ch3, p282. **Q41:12**
22. **Muhammed had no assurance of salvation.** “The Prophet said, “By Allah, though I am the Apostle of Allah, yet I do not know what Allah will do to me”. (Vol 5, No 266). (Q **46:9**).
23. **Death to those leaving Islam.** The *Hadith* makes the repeated claim that no-one ever leaves Islam: “Does anybody who embraces Islam become displeased and renounce Islam afterwards? I replied ‘No’.” (Vol 1, No 6 and 48).  
Then it contradicts itself by saying that death is the punishment for those who leave:  
“The Prophet said: “If a Muslim discards his religion, kill him”.” (Vol 4, No 260). (**Q 4:89**).  
It even records the execution of those who left Islam for another religion (Vol 5, No 630).  
*Hadith* (Vol 9) warns those leaving Islam that they will be murdered. (p 10,11,26,45-50, 341,342). Vol 9, No 64 says, “So wherever you find them kill them, for whoever kills them shall have reward on the Day of Resurrection”.
23. **Gabriel opened Mohammed’s chest** and washed his insides with Zam-Zam water.  
He poured wisdom and faith into his chest and then closed it up. (Vol 1, No 345; Vol.2, 1636).
24. **Muhammed cuts the moon in half.** When the Meccans asked Muhammed to do a miracle to prove he was Allah’s prophet, he supposedly reached up with his sword and cut the moon in half. This is stated as fact in Vol 4, No 3636, 3637, 3638; Vol 5, No 208; Vol 6, No 387, 388, 389, 390. How the two sides of the moon were put together and by whom, we are not told. That would have been an even greater miracle. Maybe Muhammed had a sword that was 250,000 miles long. The Arabs of 600 AD believed that the sun and moon were the actual size they appeared to the naked eye. Why did he have to conquer the Meccans by force? Would not such a miracle convert them?
25. **A palm tree cried like a baby** because Muhammed preached from a pulpit instead of standing beneath the tree to preach. So Muhammed left his pulpit and caressed its trunk until it stopped crying. (Vol 2, No 41; Vol 4, No 3583, 3584, 3585).
26. **Muhammed referred to black people as raisin heads** (Vol 1, No 662 and Vol 9, No 256).

27. **Muhammed owned black slaves.** When Al-Khattab came to Muhammed's house, he found "a black slave of Allah's apostle sitting on the first step". (Vol 6, No 435). Jesus Christ did not own slaves, but came to set men free. Luke 4:18.
28. **Muhammed was a white man, not black** as some claim. A man entered a mosque and asked "Who among you is Mohammed?" We replied, "This white man reclining on his arm". (Vol 1, No 63). Also Vol 2, No 122 refers to Muhammed as a white person.
29. **Bad tempered.** Since he claimed to be a prophet, a man asked Muhammed where to find his lost camel. "The Prophet got angry and his cheeks and face became red." (Vol 1, No 91).
30. **Sins of Muhammed** included torturing people by:
- cutting off their hands and feet;
  - burning their eyes out with hot irons (Vol 1, No 234);
  - leaving them to bleed to death after cutting off their limbs (Vol 8, No 794, 795);
  - making people die of thirst.
- Jesus Christ was the only one not touched (corrupted) by Satan at birth (Vol 4, No 506). This means Muhammed was touched by sin. Jesus being sinless, is superior to Muhammed being a sinner. Therefore Jesus can save us, but Muhammed cannot.
31. **People could turn into rats, monkeys, apes and pigs** according to Muhammed who claimed that Jews were transformed into rats. (Vol 4, No 524, 569). (**Q 5:60**).
- Conclusion:** There are no recorded miracles of Muhammed in the Quran, as he readily admitted. But after his death, his disciples began to invent miracles for him in order to escape the embarrassment that he was inferior to the miracles of Moses, Jesus and pagan soothsayers. Many of his pretended miracles were originally performed by Jesus, Moses and pagan magicians, but now transferred to Muhammed.
- ## 22. JIHAD or HOLY WAR
- The *Hadith* is filled with commands to **make violent war on non-Muslims** in order to force them to become Muslims. Muhammed wanted Islam to be spread mainly by the sword. Jihad was so important to Muhammed that he made it the **second most important deed in Islam**.
- Allah's apostle was asked, "What is the best deed?" He replied, "To believe in Allah and his Apostle". The questioner asked, "What is the next (in goodness)?" He replied, "To participate in Jihad (religious fighting) in Allah's cause." (Vol 1, No 25).
- Muslims must force Jews, Christians & pagans to embrace Islam or pay the Jizya tax for non-Muslims. Jihad uses several methods:
- Jihad of the Sword.** People must either convert or by military violence be killed and enslaved.  
Muhammed warned the Byzantine king,  
"If you become a Muslim you will be safe". (Vol 1, No 6).  
If the king did not convert, he and his kingdom would be destroyed and enslaved.  
In Vol 3, No 495 we read, "Allah made the Prophet wealthy through conquests".  
**Key:** When a Muslim murdered someone during a Jihad, he got to take the man's property. The prophet said, "Whoever has killed an enemy & has proof of that, will possess his spoils". Vol 4, 379  
This is the driving force behind Muslim violence in Africa today.  
In Nigeria and Sudan, over 1 million Christians and pagans have been brutally slaughtered and enslaved by Jihad because they would not become Muslims.  
"Our Prophet has ordered us to fight you, till you worship Allah alone or give Jizya." (Vol 4, 386)
  - Jihad of Taxation.** Those who refuse to become Muslims must pay a special tax called Al-Jizya (Vol 4 , Chapter 21, p 251-2). This financial burden suppresses non-Muslims, making their life as hard as possible. (**Q 9:29**).

3. **Jihad of Financial Reward.** In Iraq a free university education has been offered to any Jew or Christian who will embrace Islam.  
\$1000 is offered to any South African black who will renounce Christianity and embrace Islam. They will be paid \$500 for any other blacks they convert to Islam.  
In Tanzania, a Muslim receives 25,000 shillings for winning a Christian to Islam, and 100,000 shillings (\$150) for winning a priest or pastor to Islam.  
No church is allowed to be built on Saudi soil, in order to suppress Christianity.
4. **Jihad of Fear.** The death penalty is applied to anyone who renounces Islam to follow another religion such as Christianity. In Egypt, many Christians are being tortured in prison, whose only “crime” was to convert to Christianity.
5. **Jihad of Kidnapping and Slavery.** The only place in the world today where black slavery occurs is in Muslim countries. Sudanese Muslims capture and sell black women and children of the Dinka Christian tribe for \$15 each (*London Economist*, Jan 1990).  
Non-Muslim women who go to Saudi Arabia to work as maids are often enslaved, beaten and raped by their Muslim employers. When they try to escape, the Saudi government will not let them leave the country, but returns them to their masters.
6. **Jihad of the Courts.** Non-Muslims are denied equal access to and equal protection before the law, because their testimony in court is not valid against a Muslim. (Vol 3, Chap 31, p 525, 526). This applies even to murder: “No Muslim should be killed for killing an infidel.” (Vol 4, 283; Vol 9, 50)
7. **Jihad of Paradise.** Any Muslim who is killed while fighting in a Jihad is told that he will go straight to the sexual pleasures of paradise. (Vol 1, No 35 and Vol 4, No 386). (**Q 3:195**)
8. **Jihad of Breeding.** Muslims are told to marry several wives and breed more Muslim children in order to overpopulate the world, migrate to the West, become a majority and take over politically.

### **23. ISLAM AND VIOLENCE**

Why do Muslims commit such horrific acts of violence? They are simply being true to what their religion dictates. Allah in Q 9:19-22 states that Jihad attracts more rewards than other religious duties in Islam. “If victory is won in Jihad, Muslims receive the enormous booty of a country, which cannot be equalled to any other source of income. If there is defeat or death, there is everlasting paradise.” (Q 61:10-12).

**Hence Jihad is NOT extremism, but normal in Islam.**

A Christian once asked a Muslim man, “What would you do if your son becomes a Christian?” He replied, “I’d cut his throat”.

The greatest hindrance to a Muslim following Christ is **FEAR** of what other Muslims would do to him.

Where immediate invasion of a country is not possible, the **policy** has always been as follows:

“Migrate to Christian areas because they are tolerant. Pretend to be peaceful, friendly and hospitable; begin to clamour for religious, political and social rights and privileges that you will not allow Christians in an Islamic country; breed fast there and settle down; as you increase in a particular area, insist that there should be no Christian activities in your community. You may speak or write to discredit their religion, but they must not talk about Islam. Begin to expand your community. Christian activities should be restricted in all the places you expand to; the moment you have enough military might against the “disbelievers”, these trinitarian *kaferis*, go ahead and eliminate them or suppress them as much as you can, and be in control.” (*Who is This Allah*, G J O Moshay, p 18).

**A typical Muslim, following the Quran, must be violent, especially if he wants to get any reward in heaven.** “Whoso fights in the way of Allah, be he slain or be he victorious, on him we (Allah) shall bestow a **vast reward.**” (**Q 4:74**).

In the *Hadith*, *Mishkat* (p 721, 810) Muhammad said, “The **last hour** will not come before the **Muslims fight the Jews** and the **Muslims kill them**”. Read Ezekiel 37-39 to see what God will do to Iran, Libya, Sudan, Turkey and Russia when they invade Israel.

Many Westerners who are bothered by Islamic terrorism, are so engrossed with technology that they forget history. Islam originally meant “bravery, heroism, defiance of death, to die in battle.”

Ayatollah Khomeini said, “**The purest joy in Islam is to kill and be killed for Allah**”. (*The Arabs*, D Lamb p 287).

In 1984 he said, “**In order to achieve the victory of Islam in the world**, we need to provoke repeated crises, restore value to the idea of death and **martyrdom**. The important thing is to engulf the world in crises”. (*Le Point Magazine* No 599, 12 March 1984, p 89,91).

Serious Muslims are morbidly worried about the way Christianity is growing today.

“Kuwait (a Muslim country) had just one Arab Christian family 50 years ago. Now they have over 35 evangelical churches in Kuwait”. In 2000, 5.3% of Kuwait claims to be Christian. Indonesia has over 6000 full-time Christian missionaries and 10% of its 200 million people claim to be Protestants.

### **Question: How can Islam spread without using violence?**

What message of salvation have they to offer to a sinning, dying world, except to repeat “Allah is great” one million times? Muslims see Christianity as its greatest threat in any land.

What Muslims need is a complete overhaul of the heart, a spiritual heart transplant, an operation done by the Spirit of God on their hearts, and to be born again.

### **Until a Muslim is born again, he cannot be peaceful.**

To imagine a real, peaceful, gentle Muslim is like imagining a round square or a holy devil.

Who is this Allah that is so offended by the Gospel of Christ? Can he be the God of the Bible who said, “This is my beloved Son, hear him”. (Luke 9:35).

Jesus said to Christians, “Whosoever killeth you will think that he doeth God service. These things will they do unto you, because they have not known the Father, nor me”. (John 16:2,3).

The Allah that Muslims claim is God, is not the true God.

### **Muslim Violence in Nigeria** includes these examples:

1. In 1980 the Islamic uproar in Kano saw 4,177 people slaughtered.
2. On 30 October 1983, eight big church buildings were burnt in Kano.
3. In 1984, Muslims in Yola and Jimeta went berserk killing 700 people and rendering 6000 people homeless.
4. In March 1987, Muslim students went on a rampage in Kafanchan, spreading to Kaduna and Zaria. All 150 churches but one in Zaria were burnt down in three days of Jihad. Many Christians were killed. The cause of the riot was a female Muslim student who accused a preacher of misinterpreting the Quran.

The Muslim atrocities against Christians in Nigeria and Sudan are so unspeakable that decency forbids a discussion of them.

For Islam, peace is not achieved until Islam has swallowed the nations.

To **Muslims**, peace means total eradication of their enemies. Nobody should even think of giving peace a chance in a nation with a large number of Muslims. Peace to Islam does not mean happy co-existence, but it means destruction of their enemies.

For Muslims, it does not take two to fight; all they need to do is to take the Quran seriously. When the International Islamic Conference was held in Britain in 1976, Muslims determined & vowed “If we can win London for Islam, it won’t be hard to win the whole Western world”. (*Battle Cry*, Chick, Sept 1990)

**Challenge:** If Muslims want their god, Allah, to rule us in the free world, they should allow us to study their god thoroughly first:

1. Do we want to **lose** our freedom of religion, freedom of speech, freedom of the press, and lose our basic human rights?
2. Do women want to **lose** their right to vote? Do we want the god of Saudi Arabia where women cannot drive a car? Should a wife need an exit permit from her husband to leave the house?

Muslims do not want to be offended, but they can go to any length to offend and assault Christianity. If we take the attitude of “live and let live” towards Islam, it will surely live; but it will live to destroy us and our freedoms.

**Question: Why are you a Muslim?**

**Answer:** Not because you sat down and compared different religions to see which one had the Divine supernatural credentials. You are a Muslim because centuries ago Muslims invaded your country, **killed your ancestors** and threatened everybody else with death unless they became Muslim.

Why be loyal to Islam when Muslims murdered your ancestors and would do the same to you today?

**Ask:** We must study who this Allah (the god of the Quran) really is, who has been inspiring Muslims to **hate Christ** and to **murder Christians**.

**Could Allah be the devil disguising himself as God?** Is Islam a case of mistaken identity?

If Muslims are convinced that a person is blaspheming Allah or Mohammed, why don't they let Allah or Mohammed punish the blasphemer? Is Allah so weak that he needs weak human beings to defend him? If Allah is so powerful, let Allah punish his Christian enemies.

The first war the Israelites fought was because of a direct assault from the Amalakites. Israel never started an unprovoked war.

When King David wanted to build a temple for God, God told him,  
“Thou shalt not build an house for my Name, because thou hast been a man of war, and hast shed blood.” (I Chronicles 28:2,3).

This is the **God of the Bible - a peacelover**.

We are sure He is completely different from the Allah god of the war-making Mohammed. Allah promises great rewards in paradise to Muslims who shed blood.

**The God of the Bible disapproves of murder** and says that **murderers shall not inherit the Kingdom of God**:

“The works of the flesh are these ... murders ... they which do such things shall not inherit the Kingdom of God. The fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, ...” (Galatians 5:21,22).

“Ye know that no murderer hath eternal life abiding in him.” (I John 3:15).

“But ...murderers ...all liars shall have their part in the lake which burns with fire and brimstone, which is the second death.” (Revelation 21:8).

Muslims who are murderers and Allah who is a liar, “deceiving who he will” (Q 74:31) will be thrown into the lake of fire.

The true religion will have Satan as an enemy who must be fought against with the strongest weapons available. With what weapons does Allah recommend to fight Satan? Stones and pebbles, because every Muslim pilgrim to Mecca must throw seven pebbles at a pillar regarded as the great Satan.

Throwing pebbles cannot hurt a spirit. Satan must be laughing at such foolishness.

Muslims saw that Mohammed by using peaceful means could only convert 100 people in 13 years, but through raiding, looting and holy war, he could force or entice hundreds of thousands of people to embrace Islam in no time at all. “War is ordained for you.” (Q 2:216).

According to Islam, Muhammed is the perfect man, so all Muslims should treat their enemies, their wives and other people as Muhammed set the example.

New Muslim converts were gained by them seeing **Allah fixing their economic problems** by allowing them to raid and loot surrounding tribes all year round.

Muslim **hunger** was satisfied by the silly story that “when any dweller of paradise desires bird meat, the bird will automatically fly to him, well roasted and sliced into pieces. After eating their fill, the remaining birds will fly away.” (*Hadith*).

## 24. JESUS CHRIST STATED THAT HE WOULD SOON DIE ON THE CROSS

" he that believeth not shall be damned." Mark 16:16

### I. 29 Direct Statements by Jesus Christ Himself of His Death at Jerusalem in 33AD.

**Matthew 12:40** So shall the Son of man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth.

**Matthew 16:21** From that time forth began Jesus to show unto his disciples, how that he must go unto Jerusalem, and suffer many things of the elders, and chief priests and scribes, and be killed, and be raised again the third day. (Mark 8:31; Luke 9:22)

**Luke 9:30,31** There talked with him two men, which were Moses and Elias: who appeared in glory, and spoke of his decease which he should accomplish at Jerusalem.

**Matthew 20:17-19** Jesus going up to Jerusalem took the 12 disciples apart on the way, and said unto them, Behold we go up to Jerusalem; and the Son of Man shall be betrayed unto the chief priests and unto the scribes, and they shall condemn him to death, and shall deliver him to the Gentiles to mock,& to scourge, and to crucify him:& the third day he shall rise again.Mk10:32-34; Lk 18:33

**Matthew 20:28** The Son of Man came..to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many. Mark 10:45

**Matthew 21:37,39** But last of all he sent unto them his Son...(Mark 12:78; Luke 20:15). And they caught him, and cast him out of the vineyard and slew him. He spake of them. (v.45).

**Matthew 26:2** After two days...the Son of Man is betrayed to be crucified.

**Matthew 26:12** In that she hath poured this ointment on my body, she did it for my burial. (John 12:7)

**Matthew 27:35** And they crucified him.

**Matthew 27:38** Then were there two thieves crucified with him.

**Matthew 27:50** Jesus when he had cried again with a loud voice, yielded up the ghost. (Luke 23:46).

**Matthew 27:53** And came out of the graves after his resurrection.

**Matthew 27:57,58** Joseph...went to Pilate, and begged the body of Jesus.

**Matthew 27:63** That deceiver said, while he was yet alive, after three days I will rise again.

**Matthew 28:5** The angel answered ... I know that ye seek Jesus, which was crucified.

**Matthew 28:6,7** Come, see the place where the Lord lay...tell his disciples that he is risen from the dead. (Luke 24:4-8). (*Spoken by angels*).

**Mark 9:9** And as they came down from the mountain, he charged them that they should tell no man what things they had seen, till the Son of man were risen from the dead.

**Mark 9:31** He... said unto them, The Son of Man is delivered into the hands of men, and they shall kill him; and after that he is killed, he shall rise the third day.

**Luke 23:43** Jesus said unto him... "Today shalt thou be with me in paradise."

**Luke 24:46-48** Jesus...said unto them, "Thus it is written, and thus it behoved Christ to suffer, and to rise from the dead the third day ...And ye are witnesses of these things."

**John 2:19-22** "Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up... But he spake of the temple of his body. When therefore he was risen from the dead, his disciples remembered that he had said this unto them; and they believed the scripture, and the word which Jesus had said."

**John 3:14** "As Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of Man be lifted up: that whosoever believeth in him should not perish but have everlasting life."

**John 8:28** Then said Jesus...,"When ye have lifted up the Son of Man, then shall ye know that I am..."

**John 10:15-17** I lay down my life for the sheep (v.15)...Therefore doth my Father love me, because I lay down my life, that I may take it again.

**John 12:32,33** And I, if I be lifted up from the earth, will draw all men unto me. This he said, signifying what death he should die.

**John 19:30** When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, it is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

**John 19:34** But one of the soldiers with a spear pierced his side, and forthwith came there out blood and water. (*This is medical proof that Jesus was dead from a ruptured pericardium*).

**John 20:19,20** Came Jesus and stood in the midst..he shewed unto them his hands and his side.

**John 20:27** Then saith he to Thomas, Reach hither thy finger, and behold my hands; and reach hither thy hand, and thrust it into my side: and be not faithless but believing.

## **II. Witnesses** who saw Jesus Christ being crucified:

- i) Simon a Cyrenian who carried his cross. (Mark 15:21).
- ii) Roman soldiers who crucified him and parted his garments. (Mark 15:24-26).
- iii) Two thieves who were crucified next to him. (Mark 15:27).
- iv) Passers by who recognized him and mocked Him. (Mark 15:29,30).
- v) Chief priests who mocked him at the cross. (Mark 15:31,32).
- vi) Centurion who said that He was the Son of God. (Mark 15:39).
- vii) Mary Magdalene, Mary mother of James, Joses, and Salome. (Mark 15:40).
- viii) Many other women which came up with him to Jerusalem. (Mark 15:41).
- ix) Joseph of Arimathea who begged the body of Jesus. (Mark 15:43-44).
- x) Jesus Himself on cross who said "It is finished: he bowed his head, & gave up the ghost" John 19:30
- xi) Angel at the tomb said "Ye seek Jesus of Nazareth which was crucified. (Mark 16:6).
- xii) A great company of people (Luke 23:27). All the people beholding. (Luke 23:48).
- xiii) Cleopas and his friend on the road to Emmaus. (Luke 24:18-23).
- xiv) Roman soldier who speared Jesus' side. (John 19:31-37).

## **III. Old Testament Prophets who said that Jesus Christ Would Die**

**Daniel 9:25,26** After 62 weeks (483 years) shall Messiah be cut off but not for himself: and the people (Romans) of the prince that shall come (antichrist) shall DESTROY the CITY (Jerusalem in 70 AD) and the SANCTUARY (Temple in 70 AD).

**Zechariah 12:10** They (*the house of David*) shall look upon me (Jehovah) whom they (*the house of David*) have pierced.

**Zechariah 13:6** And one shall say unto him (*Messiah at his second coming*), what are these wounds in thine hands? Then he shall answer, Those with which I was wounded in the house of my friends.

**Psalm 22:1** My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me? This prophecies Jesus' words on the cross.

**Psalm 22:14** I am poured out like water, and all my bones are out of joint: my heart is like wax.

**Psalm 22:15** My tongue cleaveth to my jaws; thou hast brought me into the dust of death.

**Psalm 22:16** They pierced my hands and my feet.

**Psalm 22:18** They part my garments among them, and cast lots upon my vesture.

**Psalm 16:10** Neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.

**Isaiah 53:8** He was cut off out of the land of the living.

**Isaiah 53:9** He made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death.

## **IV. Jesus Christ's Sacrificial Death was Announced in Seven Ways**

- 1) The Sacrificial Lamb. John the Baptist announced Jesus Christ to Israel at His baptism, "Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world". (John 1:29,36).
- 2) The Destroyed Temple. Jesus answered the Jews, "Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up. (v.19)...But he spake of the temple of his body." (John 2:19,21).
- 3) The Uplifted Serpent. Jesus told Nicodemus, "As Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of man be lifted up, That whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life." (John 3:14,15). Jesus compared himself to a serpent because on the cross, Jesus was made a curse for us and redeemed us from the curse of the law." (Galatians 3:13).
- 4) The Good Shepherd who willingly laid down his life for the sheep. "I lay down my life." John 10:17
- 5) The Corn of Wheat buried in the ground to bear much fruit. "The hour is come that the Son of man should be glorified...Except a corn of wheat fall into the ground and die, it abideth alone: but if it die, it bringeth forth much fruit." (John 12:23,24). Jesus' body was like a dead seed when placed in the tomb, but was raised on the third day. Since then, gospel preaching has brought much fruit.
- 6) Jesus' Baptism in, under & up out of the water pictured His death, burial, resurrection. Matt.3:13-15  
God the Father spoke from heaven. God the Son entered the water. God the Holy Spirit came on Jesus.
- 7) Jonah's 3 days and 3 nights in the whale's belly. Jesus identified Himself with Jonah to picture His soon death, burial and resurrection after 3 days. (Matthew 12:38-40).  
If you don't believe this, you are damned (Mark 16:16), the wrath of God abides on you (John 3:36).

## **25. SIX BASIC MUSLIM BELIEFS**

1. Belief in Allah who claims to be the only God. He is described in the Quran as being unknowable, impersonal, distant, unloving, not holy, unpredictable, the author of both good and evil, not a moral being, but of absolute power.
2. Angels.
3. The Quran is God's message, and the *Hadith* are authoritative.
4. Main prophets are: Adam, Noah, Abraham, Moses, Jesus and Muhammad.
5. Predestination - Everything that happens, both good and evil is predestined by Allah's will. They see Allah as the author of evil.
6. Day of Judgment - Good deeds are weighed against bad deeds to determine entry into heaven. All first go to hell. Nobody, not even Muhammad, is sure of going to heaven. Vol.1, 372-5; Vol.5,266.

## **26. SIX RELIGIOUS DUTIES OF ISLAM**

1. Reciting the creed of Islam: "There is no god but Allah, and Muhammad is his prophet".
2. Prescribed prayers five times a day.
3. Observing the month of fasting each day, called Ramadan.
4. Giving money to the poor. This has created a class of professional beggars and has discouraged the provision of care for the needy.
5. Pilgrimage to Mecca, Muhammad's birthplace.
6. Involvement in Holy War (Jihad) against other religions.

The Crusades came as a response to Muslims attempting to conquer Christian lands. Islam conquered all of North Africa, then crossed the Strait of Gibraltar and took Spain. During Islam's first 100 years, they destroyed about 3200 churches, and much of the population became Muslims by force. These nations fell from being civilized to being poor and backward.

Islam is one of the greatest enemies of Christianity. Muslims view Christians as blasphemers for proclaiming Jesus Christ as the Son of God.

## **27. WHY YOU SHOULD NOT BECOME A MUSLIM (See page 993).**

1. If you later on choose to leave Islam, **Muslims will kill you**.
2. If you are accused of stealing, you may have **your hand cut off**.
3. You will **lose your freedom of speech**.
4. You will enslave your future generations to a **religion of violence** against other religions, from which they cannot escape.
5. **You will end up in hell**, because they insist you reject Jesus Christ as Saviour. (John 8:24).
6. You will be called to **join a Jihad** to kill non-Muslims when your Islamic dictator ruler tells you.
7. As a woman, you will be a **second-class citizen** with half the rights of a man.

## **28. WHAT IS ALLAH LIKE ? IS HE THE GOD OF THE BIBLE? NO!**

Allah is totally different to Jehovah the triune God of the Bible. What differences exist between them?

1. Allah is a distant god. No-one can have a close personal relationship with him, as we can with the Biblical God.
2. Allah lacks attributes of holiness, love for sinners, and grace (undeserved favour in offering free salvation to all sinners).
3. Allah has a different nature and character. Allah only loves those who do good, but he is not merciful to those who do bad. He does not love the sinner, as the Biblical God does (John 3:16).
4. Allah is the author of evil, just as the Biblical devil is. The Biblical God is infinitely holy and righteous, and is not the author of evil.
5. Allah is not a Trinity of one God, existing as three persons, Father, Son and Holy Spirit (Mat28:19)
6. Allah was a pagan god before Muhammad was born. (Psalm 96:5).

## **29. ALLAH** is like the Biblical SATAN, but different from the Biblical GOD JEHOVAH as in:

<b>ALLAH</b>	<b>SATAN</b>	<b>JHVH</b> (God of the Bible)
1. Allah is a <b>murderer</b> . ‘Muslims should strike off the heads of unbelievers in the battlefield and massacre them.’ ( <b>Q47:4</b> ).	‘The devil was a <b>murderer</b> from the beginning’ John 8:44	No <b>murderer</b> has eternal life’ (I John 3:15). Mat 5:44 ‘Love your enemies.’
2. Allah is a <b>liar</b> . ‘Allah <u>misleads</u> whom he will.’ ( <b>13:27</b> ).	‘The devil is a <b>liar</b> and the father of lies’. (John 8:44).	‘God that cannot <b>lie</b> .’ (Titus 1:2). (Hebrews 6:18) ‘Impossible for God to <b>lie</b> .’
3. Allah is a <b>deceiver/seducer</b> . Satan said, ‘Allah, since you have misled me’ <b>15:39</b> ‘Allah is the best of plotters.’ ( <b>Q 3:54; 8:30; 13:42</b> ).	‘Satan which <b>deceives</b> the whole world’. (Rev. 12:9). Satan said, ‘I will seduce/ deceive men on earth’. 15:39	‘God of <b>truth</b> ’ (Deuteronomy 32:4).
4. Allah does <b>not love unbelievers</b> . ( <b>Q 30:45; 5:87</b> ).	‘Jesus healed all that were <b>oppressed</b> of the devil’. Acts10:38	JHVH <b>loves</b> unbelievers. ‘God so loved world’ Jn 3:16
5. Allah <b>hates Jews</b> . ‘Idolaters and Jews are the worst enemies of Muslims.’ ( <b>Q 5:82; 98:6</b> ).	‘Your <b>adversary</b> the devil.’ (I Peter 5:8).	JHVH <b>loves Jews</b> ‘They are beloved’ (Romans 11:28).
6. Allah <b>hates Christians</b> . ‘True Muslims do not choose to be friends with Christians’. ( <b>Q 5:57</b> ).	‘Your <b>adversary</b> the devil’. (I Peter 5:8).	JHVH <b>loves Christians</b> ‘He loved us’ (I John 4:8-11).
7. Allah <b>hates Jesus</b> being Son of God. ‘Allah can destroy the Messiah’ Q <b>5:17</b> ‘Never has Allah begotten a Son.’ <b>23:91</b>	‘The dragon stood before the woman to <b>devour her child</b> as soon as it was born. Rev12:4	Father <b>loveth</b> the <b>Son</b> ’ (John 3:35; 5:20).
8. Allah <b>enslaves/binds people</b> . ‘slave-girls whom Allah has given you as booty.’ ( <b>Q 33:50</b> ).	‘whom Satan hath <b>bound</b> , these 18 years.’ Luke 13:16. ‘ <b>snare</b> of the devil, who are taken captive by him. 2 Tim2:26	JHVH gives freedom from sin: ‘To proclaim <b>liberty</b> to the captives.’ Isa 61:1; Luk 4:18; Gal 5:1,13
9. Allah <b>wants people to go to Hell</b> . ( <b>Q 11:119; 32:13; 7:179</b> . p 978). ‘I will fill hell with mankind.’ ( <b>11:119</b> ).	‘The devil that deceived them was <u>cast</u> into the <b>lake of fire</b> and brimstone..’ (Rev. 20:10).	JHVH <b>doesn't</b> . ‘God is not willing that any perish’. (2 Peter 3:9).
10. Allah <b>permits murderers to build mosques</b> . Mohammad elevated murder and war to the status of divine law. (p 973,1032 Umar built mosque in 637)		JHVH <b>doesn't</b> . God forbade David building the temple. (I Chronicles 28:2,3).
11. Allah <b>allows wife beating</b> . ‘Those wives you fear disobedience..beat them.’ <b>4:34</b>		JHVH <b>doesn't</b> . (Eph 5:25) ‘Husbands love your wives’
12. Allah <b>approves Mohammad taking other men's wives</b> (Moh. took his son's wife, Zainab in Q <b>33:37,38</b> page 1001).		JHVH <b>disapproved</b> of David taking Bathsheba. (II Samuel 12:9).

## **30. THE SONSHIP OF JESUS CHRIST**

Jesus Christ, being the Son of God and the second person of the Trinity Godhead, has been a major offence to Muslims.

Question: Is Jesus Christ the Son of God? Can God have a Son? Bible says “Yes”. Quran says “No” Because Christians insist that Jesus Christ is the Son of the living God, the Quran says, “Allah’s curse be upon them”. (**9:30**). If a Muslim believes the Quran, he cannot believe that Jesus is the Son of God.

**What evidence proves that Jesus Christ is both the Son of God and God the Son?**

1. The Quran is full of statements saying that Jesus is not the Son of God. The Bible describes Jesus as the Son of God. Which is right? English has only one word for son, but the Greek of the New Test. has **2 words** for “son”, “Teknon” meaning “boy” which is never used to describe Jesus as Son of God. The other word is “**HUIOS**” meaning Jesus is the “**SAME NATURE AS**” God. Eg: Son of **peace** (Luke 10:6); Barnabas “son of **consolation**” (Acts 4:36); “children of **disobedience**” Eph 2:2

2. The Allah of Muhammad hates Jesus being the “Son of God”, as seen here:
  - a) “They said Allah has a Son? NEVER! Say “He is Allah alone; God the eternal! He begetteth not, and he is not begotten (3). There is none like Him.” (**112:4**). This is the key Sura for all Muslims.
  - b) “God forbid that He Himself should beget a Son.” (**Q 19:35**).
  - c) “God is but one God. God forbid that He should have a Son!” (**Q 4:171**).
  - d) Because God having a Son cannot be imagined by men, does not make it impossible with God. “How should He have a Son when He had no consort?” (**Q 6:101**).

Notice that this is NOT Allah speaking (because it is written in the **third person “He”**). This disproves the Muslim claim that all the words spoken in the Quran are spoken by Allah.

**Key:** Mohammad never knew Greek, so he never understood that Jesus is not the TEKNON (boy of God), but the HUIOS Son of God with the SAME NATURE as God. Eg: “son of peace” means one has the nature of peace. This is fatal to Islam, proving the Quran is man-made, not from God.
3. The Quran misunderstands the Trinity by saying, “Unbelievers say: “Allah is one of three.”” (**5:73**) Christians never believed this. Christians believe that God is One God, in three persons (Father, Son and Holy Spirit). (Matthew 28:19; I John 5:7; II Cor. 13:14; Isaiah 48:16).
4. The Quran misunderstands when Jesus became the Son, thinking that He became God’s Son when he was born of Mary: “How should He have a Son when he had no consort?” (**Q 6:101**). The Bible prophets (Daniel, David, Solomon, Isaiah) teach that Jesus, the Son of God, existed eternally in the past, well before He was born of Mary.
  - a) “Who hath established all the ends of the earth? What is his name, and what is his SON’S name?” (Proverbs 30:4 in 1000 BC).
  - b) “Kiss the SON, lest he be angry, and ye perish from the way.” (Psalm 2:12).
  - c) “The form of the fourth is like the SON of God.” (Daniel 3:25 in 550 BC).
  - d) “Unto us a SON is given ... his name shall be called the Mighty God.” (Isaiah 9:6 in 700 BC).
5. If Allah is indeed “All-wise, and All-knowing” as the Quran tells us, we would expect Allah to correctly understand the Bible’s doctrine of the Trinity (Father, Son and Holy Spirit) and not to think of the Trinity as Father, Son and Mary, as in **5:116**. “Allah will say: “Jesus, Son of Mary, did you ever say to mankind: “Worship me, and my mother as gods, besides Allah?”” (**5:116**).
6. If Allah has three daughters “Al-Lat, Al-Uzza, Manat” (**53:19,20**), why can’t God have a Son? God said at Jesus’ baptism, ‘Thou art my beloved Son (huios), in whom I am well pleased’ Mrk 1:11
7. In *Hadith Kudsi* Allah is quoted as saying, “The poor are members of my family (my sons).” Here Allah talks of “my family.” If Muslims have this statement in their *Hadith*, why do they object to the Christian God having a Son? Why do they presume that Jesus’ Sonship had a sexual origin? It is pride and arrogance for man to insist he must understand everything about something before accepting its reality. We believe it because God said it, whether or not we understand it. The Trinity doctrine is the belief that God is made up of three parts, and the HUIOS is one of them.
8. The belief by Muslims that Jesus was supernaturally born of a virgin, opens the door to other supernatural possibilities. Two are: a) The deity of Jesus Christ; b) Jesus being the Son of God. “I (Holy Spirit) have come to give you a holy son”. “How shall I (Mary) bear a child when I have neither been touched by any man nor ever been unchaste?” said Mary. “That is easy enough for Me ... Thereupon she conceived.” (**Q 19:20-22**). So, the Quran’s question in 6:101 “How should he have a son when he had no consort (wife)?”, let Allah answer: “That is easy enough for me.” (**19:22**).
9. If the nature of man is a mystery, how much greater a mystery is the nature of God? If man is a triune being (body, soul, spirit) (I Thessalonians 5:23), each part of which is 100% human, then why can’t God be a Trinity (Father, Son, Holy Spirit) (Matthew 28:19) each part of which is 100% God, especially since God created man in His own image and likeness? (Genesis 1:26,27). We would expect God and man to have a Triune similarity (Ans 462; Understanding p1266-1273)

10. (a) The New Testament says that God sent the angel Gabriel to announce Jesus' birth to the virgin Mary: "That holy thing that shall be born of thee shall be called the Son (huios) of God." Luke 1:35  
(b) 640 years later, Muhammed claimed that the same angel Gabriel came to him with a different message from Allah that Jesus was not the Son of God that the Bible and Gabriel earlier said he was, but that He was just a prophet. Do Gabriel & God change their minds? Was Gabriel confused?  
Question: Which Gabriel came to Muhammed?

Paul warns us of Satan's deceptive disguises in II Corinthians 11:14: "Such are false apostles (Muhammed), deceitful workers (Muhammed), transforming themselves into the apostles of Christ. And no marvel, for Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light".  
It is an angel of the devil that will contradict what God has already said.

11. The only reason Muslims say the Bible is corrupted is because it states that Jesus is the Divine Son of God. They say they cannot bow down to the man of Galilee. They claim that Jesus was a created being just as Adam was. "Jesus is like Adam in the sight of Allah. He created him of dust."(Q3:59). The Quran says in eight places that, when Adam was created, Allah commanded all the angels to bow down and worship the man He had made. "We said to the angels, "Bow down yourselves to Adam", and all bowed themselves, except Satan, who in his pride refused and became an unbeliever". (Sura 2:34; 7:11; 15:29-335; 17:61-62; 18:50; 20:115-; 38:71).

So the Quran tells us that what made Satan an unbeliever was his refusal to bow down to Adam, a created being. In Suras 15 and 38, Allah put curses on Satan for this arrogance.

Question: If Muslims would have bowed down to Adam (the lesser), but refuse to bow down to Jesus Christ (the greater than Adam), then you have joined the forces of rebellion and arrogance with Satan, and you are under the same curse released on Satan.

12. Some illustrations of Jesus (the Son of God) revealing God to man are:

(a) As the fruit of a tree will reveal the kind of tree, so Jesus reveals the nature of God.

This is what is meant by Jesus being the Son of God, revealing the hidden nature of God to man.

(b) "Who (Jesus Christ) being the brightness of His glory." (Hebrews 1:3). As the sun and its rays are distinct, in another sense they are one. So God the Father and God the Son are distinct yet one. As the sun has fire, heat and light, as well as  $\alpha, \beta, \gamma$ -rays, so God is Father, Son and Holy Spirit.

(c) How would a tree that cannot see a man, yet convinced of his existence, describe man to other trees? A tree would describe man as a kind of super tree, because that is all it can understand. Similarly, man being of a lower order and nature than God, can only understand God in human terms. Even the Quran explains Allah in human terms as having a face, hands, fingers, feet, eyes. "Yet still abides the Face of thy Lord, majestic, splendid." (55:27).

"Why do you not bow to him whom my own hands have made." (38:75).

13. Jesus as "Son of God" does not mean "offspring of God" as seen from different Greek words.

a) "paidion" (3813) "young child" is not used to describe Jesus' pre-existence as Son of God.

b) "teknon" (5043) meaning "a child" is not used to describe Jesus as "teknon Theou" a "child of God". The word teknon (child) comes from the verb "tiktoo" meaning "to give birth" which never applies to Jesus Christ in His eternity. God the Father never gave birth to God the Son. "Teknon" (child) means "derivation from" and "huios" (son) means "same nature as", going out from God.

c) "huios" (5207) "Son" means "same nature as" describes Jesus as "the Son of God" because he has the same nature as God & proceeded from God. Jesus has twin nature, 100% man (from Mary) and 100% God the Huios (Son). (Luke 1:35). Adam was a son of God not by sexual generation (Luke 3:38). In Greek, "the Son of God" (ho huios tou Theou) means the fellowship of two equal, eternal, same nature personalities. Jesus claimed to have equality with God (John 5:18) & the prerogatives of God. See p.862.

14. Son + genitive = quality, character. Sons of the prophets (I Kings 20:35) means "of the order of the prophets", Son of consolation (Acts 4:36), sons of thunder (Mark 3:17), son of peace (Luke 10:6), son of disobedience (Eph.5:6), son of perdition (John 17:12), "children of light" (Luke 16:8), sons of Asaph (Neh.11:28), "children of disobedience" (Eph 2:2), "child of hell" (Mat 23:15)

### **31. Mohammed's Battles and Wars (Is Mohammed a man of Peace or a Butcher?)**

#### **1. Raiding Meccan Caravans**

After 6 months in Medina, Mohammed sent out raiding parties to attack and capture Meccan caravans on their way to Syria. Unsuccessful at first, Mohammed's men finally captured a Meccan caravan by attacking it in the pagan sacred month. Mohammed took 20% of the booty for himself.

#### **2. Battle of Badr (624)**

Mohammed learned that a rich caravan was to pass nearby and decided to attack it at Badr. The Meccans learned of Mohammed's plans and so gathered a superior army (1000 men) to teach the Muslims (313 men) a lesson. The Muslims, inspired by Mohammed and Allah, won a resounding battle. 70 Meccans were killed and Mohammed ordered the execution of 2 prisoners.

#### **3. Battle of Uhud (625)**

3000 Meccans marched to Medina to avenge their defeat at Badr. They faced 700 Muslims. Meccans attacked the Muslims from the front and rear. Many Muslims were killed, Mohammed was seriously wounded, but the Meccans were not able to completely destroy the Muslims.

#### **4. Seige of Bani Nazir (a Jewish tribe).**

Mohammed went here to collect some blood money. They seated Mohammed under the shadow of a wall while they collected the money. Mohammed suspected the Jews might kill him, so Mohammed returned to Medina, and sent an order for the Jews to vacate the settlement. The Muslims besieged Bani Nazir for 21 days. The Jews then surrendered and migrated to Syria.

#### **5. Battle of the Trench (627)**

A 10,000 man Meccan army set out to conquer the Muslims in Medinah. The Muslims could not face such a large force in the open, so they dug a trench around the city. The siege lasted 30 days, with the Meccans being unable to cross the trench. When a storm came, the Meccans retreated.

#### **6. Massacre of the Bani Qurayza (a Jewish tribe). (627, p.1030)**

Because Mohammed disliked the Bani Qurayza, he besieged them in Medina for 2 weeks, then decapitated their 800 men in groups of 5 or 6, threw their bodies into a large trench dug in the market place, confiscated all their possessions, and sold their women and children as slaves. Mohammed sat watching the butchery from morning, all day, into the night. Are Muslims proud of their leader for this? Do Muslims recommend this for today?

#### **7. Conquest of Khyber.**

After being expelled from Medina, the Jews of Bani Qainuqa and Bani Nazir had settled at Khyber. Mohammed thought they were planning revenge for his massacring the 800 Jewish males of Bani Qurayza. So Mohammed led a Muslim force who conquered the Jewish fortress after a 21 day siege. The Jews surrendered. To mark the end of hostilities, some Jews gave a feast in honour of Mohammed, but they poisoned the food, killing Mohammed's friend. After taking a few morsels, Mohammed fell sick of the poison and died later on 8<sup>th</sup> June 632 AD in Medina.

#### **8. Conquest of Mecca (630).**

Mohammed led a force of 10,000 to conquer Mecca. The Quraish of Mecca lost the will to defend, so surrendered and agreed to become Muslims.

#### **9. Battles of Hunain and Taif (630).**

Tribes surrounding Mecca rejected Islam, so Mohammed invaded the valley of Hunain with 13,000 soldiers. These tribes were routed and retreated to the impregnable fort of Taif. The Muslims besieged the fort for 2 months, without success, then returned to Mecca.

#### **10. Battle at Tabuk (630) (halfway between Mecca and Damascus).**

The Christian Arab prince of Aylah did not agree to forsake Christianity, but agreed to pay the annual jizya tax. Ukaidar, the chief of Daumatul Jandal refused to accept Islam or pay tax to the Muslims. The Muslim Khalid led an expedition who took Ukaidar prisoner, brought him to Mohammed, where he was released on agreeing to pay the annual jizya tax.

## **32. Mohammed's Murders, Assassinations, Tortures, Cruelty and Slavery.**

Mohammed spoke "messages from heaven" to justify fighting battles, executing opponents, annexing territories, taking another man's wife Zainab, taking as many wives as he pleased, taking people into slavery, and restoring order to his harem.

Muslim's sources are full of references to Mohammed's strange fits when he received revelations: "The process was attended by a fit of unconsciousness accompanied by the sound of bells in the ears or the belief that someone was present; by a sense of fright causing perspiration, by foaming at the mouth, by a sense of headache." (Why I am not a Muslim, Ibn Warraq, p.89).

These are Biblical symptoms of demon possession ("he foaming & gnashing his teeth." Mark 9:17-29.

Mohammed hated the Jews for rejecting his claims of being a prophet.

**1. The Battle of Badr.** Mohammed's army killed 49 Meccans. When the severed head of his enemy was cast at Mohammed's feet he said: "It is more acceptable to me than the choicest camel in Arabia." Then began a series of assassinations as Mohammed moved against his enemies, settled old scores and ruthlessly established his power.

**2. Mohammed ordered the execution of al-Nadar** who scoffed at him at Mecca.

**3. Muir describes the execution of Ocba:** "Ocba was ordered out for execution. He asked: "Who shall take care of my little girl?" "Hell-fire!" said Mohammed. Ocba was then killed. Mohammed said "I give thanks unto the Lord that hath slain thee, and comforted mine eyes thereby." Assassinations are approved in **8:67,69**. "It is not for any prophet to have captives until he has made slaughter in the land."

**4. When the poetess Asma bint Marwan** wrote against Mohammed, Mohammed said "Will no one rid me of this daughter of Marwan?" One zealous Muslim, Umayr ibn Adi, decided to execute Mohammed's wishes and that night crept into her house, removed the suckling baby from her breast and plunged his sword into the poetess. Next morning Mohammed praised Umayr in front of the Muslims at the Mosque.

**5. Soon, Abu Afak** (over 100 years old), who criticized Mohammed was murdered while he slept.

**6. In 627** the Meccans attacked Medina in the Battle of the Trench. The last Jewish tribe in Medina, the Bani Qurayza, helped defend Medina, but remained neutral. Mohammed questioned their loyalty and after the 2 week siege, moved against them. Realising they had no chance of surviving, the Bani Qurayza agreed to surrender on condition that their fate be decided by their allies, the Bani Aws, who were inclined to show mercy. Mohammed nominated one of the Bani Aws (Sa'd ibn Muaadh) to be the judge. He pronounced, "My judgment is that the men shall be put to death, the women and children sold into slavery, and the spoil divided among the army."

Mohammed adopted the verdict as his own: "Truly the judgment of Sa'd is the judgment of Allah pronounced on high from beyond the seventh heaven."

Muir ((1), p.307,308) writes: "During the night trenches sufficient to contain the dead bodies of the men were dug across the market place of the city. In the morning, Mohammed himself a spectator of the tragedy, commanded the male captives to be brought forth in companies of 5 or 6 at a time. Each company as it came up was made to sit down in a row on the brink of the trench destined for its grave, there beheaded, and the bodies cast therein. The butchery, begun in the morning, lasted all day, and drenched the market place with the blood of about 800 victims. Having given command for the earth to be smoothed over their remains, Mohammed returned from the horrid spectacle to solace himself with the charms of Rihana, whose husband and all her male relatives had just perished in the massacre."

The booty was divided, slave girls given as presents, women sold and property auctioned. Q **33:25-27** ("people of the Scriptures..Some ye slew..captive some") was given as a revelation justifying his cruelty, barbarity and inhumanity meted out to the Jews. It is difficult to accept Mohammed's innocence.

Mohammed taught that true nobility lay in forgiveness and that in Islam those who restrain their anger and pardon men shall receive Paradise (Q **3:128; 24:22** "those who possess dignity..Let them forgive"). Yet Mohammed failed to do this in treating the Bani Qurayza.

**7. Mohammed ordered the murder of the chief of the Jews (Abi'l Huqayq)** of the banished Banu'l-Nadir. Mohammed's henchmen assassinated Huqayq in his bed.

8. Mohammed, realizing this assassination had not solved his problems, sent a delegation to Khaybar to persuade their new leader **Usayr b. Zarin** to come to Medina to discuss him being made ruler of Khaybar. Mohammed solemnly guaranteed his safety. Usayr set out unarmed with 30 of his men. On the way the Muslims killed all but one of their invited, unarmed guests. Mohammed gave thanks on learning of their fate saying, "Verily, the Lord hath delivered you from an unrighteous people". Later, Mohammed gave his philosophy of war saying, "**War is deception**".

9. Mohammed and his men attacked and destroyed the forts in the vale of **Khaybar** one by one, saying, "O you who have been given victory, kill! kill!"

10. All the forts fell, until the Muslims arrived at the fort of Khamus, where the chief of the Jews, **Kinana b. al-Rabi** was accused by Mohammed of concealing the treasure of Banu'l-Nadir. The Jews protested that they had nothing left. Ibn Hisham quotes "Mohammed gave Kinana over to al-Zubayr", saying "Torture him until you extract it from him." He burned his chest, then cut off his head.

**Conclusion:** Thus Mohammed organised assassinations and massacres, secured and divided plunder as a robber chief, encouraged the same passion in his followers, authorizing and justifying his crimes by fabricating revelations from his deity Allah. (See "Why I am Not a Muslim", Ibn Warraq, p.93-99).

### **33. BATTLES STARTED BY MUSLIMS** ("History of Islam", Masudul Hasan, Vol.1, 1998, p96-).

**Abu Bakr** (632-634AD)

1. Battle of Dhu Qissa and Abraq
2. Battle of Buzakha
3. Battle of Zafar
4. Battle of Naqra
5. Battle of Bani Tamim
6. 4 Battles against Bani Hanifa (Musailma)  
Battle of the Garden of Death.
7. Battle of Bahrain
8. Battle of Daba in Uman (10,000 killed)
9. Battle of Mahrab
10. Battle of Yemen
11. Battle of Hadramaut
12. Battle of Kazima (633AD) opened Iraq.
13. Battle of Mazar on the Tigris (30,000 killed)
14. Battle of Walaja against Persians
15. Battle of Ulleis (70,000 Persians killed)
16. Conquest of Hirah (surrendered)
17. Battle of Anbar (633AD)
18. Battle of Ain-at-Tamr (Christian Arabs)
19. Battle of Daumatul Jandal (S.Iraq, Aug. 633)
20. Battle of Firaz (Iraq, Dec. 633)
21. Battle of Busra (July 634). **Syria**.
22. Battle of Ajnadein (50,000 Byzantines killed)
23. 3 Battles of Damascus (Aug 634. Abu Bakr died).

**Umar Farooq** (634-644AD) conquered Iraq, Persia,  
Syria, Egypt. Enforced Sharia in all matters.

24. Battle of Namaraq (against Persians).
25. Battle of Saqatiah (between Tigris and Euphrates)
26. Battle of the Bridge (635. Muslims defeated)
27. Battle of Buwaib
28. Battle of Qadisiyah (636)
29. Battles of al-Madain, Babel, Kutha, Bahra Sher.
30. Battle of Jalula (637 completed conquest of Iraq)

31. Battle of Fahl (in Jordan)  
 32. Battle of Yermuk (70,000 Byzantines killed).  
 33. Battle of Antioch (Syria).  
 34. Battle of Jerusalem (637, Umar occupied it).  
 35. Battle of Jazirah  
 36. Battle of Caesarea (649)  
 37. Battle of Ahwaz (in Persia)  
 38. Battle of Manadhar  
 39. Battle of Sus  
 40. Battle of Ramharz (Capital)  
 41. Battle of Shustar  
 42. Battle of Jandi Sabur  
 43. Battle of Nihawand (641; 30,000 Persians killed)  
 44. Battle of Ray  
 45. Battle of Azerbaijan (643)  
 46. Battle of Tabaristan (643)  
 47. Battle of Armenia.  
 48. Battle of Farama (640, East Egypt)  
 49. Battle of Bilbais  
 50. Battle of Babalyun  
 51. Battle of Naqyus  
 52. Battle of Alexandria (641)  
**Uthman** (644-656AD)  
 53. Battle of Istakhar (Persia)  
 54. Seige and surrender of Nishapur  
 55. Battle of Herat  
 56. Battle of Tus  
 57. Battle of Meru  
 58. Battle of Roz  
 59. Battle of Kerman  
 60. Battle of Seistan  
 61. Conquest of Cyprus  
 62. Recapture of Alexandria  
 63. Battle of Tripoli (646) (Uthman standardized Quran to remove different readings. *History of Islam*, p.122). In 652, Islamic expansion stopped.  
**Ali** (656-661AD)  
 64. Battle of the Camel (Civil war in 656. 10,000 died)  
 65. Battle of Siffin (657)  
 66. Battle of Nahrawan (658)  
**Mu'awiyah** (660-680AD)  
 67. Reconquered North Africa  
 68. Conquered Sicily (666)  
 69. Conquered Rhodes (672)  
 70. Conquered Crete (674)  
 71. Seiged Constantinople unsuccessfully (668).  
 72. Conquered Kabul (670)  
 73. Conquered Khurasan (663-671)  
 74. Conquered Turks (674).  
**Yazid I** (680-683AD).  
 75. Tragedy of Kerbalा. Husain beheaded & abused.  
 76. Battle of the Lava (683 at Medina).
- Marwan I** (684-685)  
 77. Campaign against North Syria.  
 78. Conquest of Egypt.  
**Abdul Malik** (685-705). Built Dome of the Rock.  
 79. Battle of Ain-ul Wada (Syria).  
 80. Battle of Kufa (687, 3 competing caliphs).  
 81. Battle of Deir al Jaliq (691, 2 competing caliphs)  
 82. Battle of Mecca (692, Civil War)  
 83. Battle of Deir al Jumajim (702)  
 84. Battle and razing of Carthage (695)  
 85. Battle of Tabarka (702), won North Africa  
**Al-Waleed** (705-715) eldest son of Abdul Malik.  
 86. Conquered Balkh and Takharistan (706)  
 87. Conquered Bukhara (bloody battle).  
 88. Conquered Khawarzam (711)  
 89. Conquered Samarkand (712). Learnt paper making  
 90. Conquered Khojand and Shash (714).  
 91. Conquered Kashgar (in Chinese Turkestan, 714)  
 92. Conquered Kabul to Khyber pass (North).  
 93. Conquered Makran and Daibal (711 in India)  
 94. Conquered Al Nirun (Hyderabad)  
 95. Conquered Multan (713) and all Pakistan.  
 96. Conquered Byzantine forts (711).  
 97. Conquered Antioch in Pisidia (712)  
 98. Conquered Medina, Sidonia, Carmona, Granada, Cordova & Toledo in Spain with 7000 men (711)  
 99. Conquered Seville, Saragossa, Terragossa, Barcelona  
**Sulaiman** (715-717) son of Abdul Malik.  
 100. Imprisoned, tortured and executed the Muslim conquerors of Spain (Tariq and Musol)& India. Ruthlessly slaughtered the Turks (716).  
 101. Attacked Constantinople (716).  
**Umar** (717-720)  
 102. Conquered Southern France to Toulouse.  
**Yazid II** (720-724)  
 103. Conquered Kish and Nasf  
 104. Conquered Khazars of Azerbaijan & Armenia.  
 105. Conquered Qonia city, Dalsa fort (Byzantine, 722)  
 106. Suppressed revolts in Yemen.  
**Hisham** (724-743) brother of Yazid II.  
 107. Captured Nimes. Went up Rhone Valley, France 725  
 108. Captured Bourdeaux. Ravaged countryside (732).  
 109. Lost Battle of Tours to Charles Martell (Oct. 732)  
 110. Captured Avignon, then lost it. Left France 737  
 111. Captured Georgia (730)  
 112. Captured several Byzantine forts.  
 113. Battle of the Nobles (740)  
 114. Battle of Bagdoura (741). N.Africa lost to Berbers  
 115. Re-conquered North Africa.  
 116. Conquered islands of Majorca, Minorca, Ivica, Corsica, Sardinia, Crete, and Rhodes making the Mediterranean Sea a Muslim Lake. (742).

- 34. Islamic Conquests Atrocities, Massacres and Genocide.** “Why I am not a Muslim”, Ibn Warraq, 1995
1. Patriarch Sophronius of Jerusalem (634-638) saw the Muslim invaders as “godless barbarians” who burnt churches, destroyed monasteries, profaned crosses, horribly blasphemed Christ and His church.
  2. Abu Bakr invaded Syria (634), the entire region from Gaza to Caesarea was devasted. 4000 peasants were massacred. In the campaigns of Mesopotamia (635-642) monasteries were sacked, and monks killed. In Elam the population was put to the sword.
  3. The “Chronicle of John”, Bishop of Nikiu (693-700) describes the Muslim conquest of Egypt. Amr exterminated the inhabitants of Behnessa, Fayum and Aboit: “Whoever gave himself up to the Muslims was massacred. They spared neither the old, nor the women or children.” At Nikiu, the entire population was put to the sword.
  4. In Armenia, the entire population of Euchaita was wiped out. Muslims decimated the populations of Assyria, forcing some inhabitants to accept Islam. (7<sup>th</sup> Century Armenian Chronicles).
  5. Michael the Syrian tells how Mu’awiya sacked Cypus, dominating it by a “great massacre”.
  6. Tripoli was pillaged in 643. Carthage was razed and most of its inhabitants were killed.
  7. The same happened in Anatolia, Mesopotamea, Syria, Iraq and Iran.
  8. North India was conquered by Hajjaj, governor of Iraq (712). He ordered his commander Qasim to “bring destruction on the unbelievers...whoever does not submit to Islam, treat him harshly and cause injury to him till he submits.” (Chachnamah, p.155). At Port Debal, the Muslim army took 3 days to slaughter the inhabitants, then allowed some to practice their religion. Hajjaj disapproved of Qasim’s weakness and wrote to him: “The great God says in Koran (47:4): “O true believers, when you encounter the unbelievers, strike off their heads.” This command of the great God must be respected and followed. You should not be so fond of showing mercy. Henceforth grant pardon to no one of the enemy and spare none of them.” Qasim went to Brahminabad and ordered all men of military classes to be beheaded with swords. Between 6000 and 16000 men were massacred.
  9. Mahmud of Ghazni, head of a Turco-Afghan dynasty (1000AD) passed through India, destroying, massacring and plundering. He justified his actions by the Koran’s commands to kill idolaters. He invaded India 17 times, seeing it as a duty and pleasure to slay idolaters. He forcibly converted the inhabitants of Ghur to Islam. At the Battle of Somnath, he killed 50,000 Hindus.
  10. Firuz Shah (1351AD) ruled North India. He made “the laws of the prophet his guide”. He indulged in wholesale slave-raiding, having 180,000 slaves in his city, all of whom became Muslims.
  11. Aurangzeb (1618-1707) destroyed 123 Hindu temples at Udaipur, 63 at Chitor, and 66 at Jaipur.
  12. Throughout Persia, forced conversions from the 16<sup>th</sup> to 20<sup>th</sup> Centuries decimated the Christian and Jewish communities. (Bat Ye’Or (1), p.61).
  13. Muslims massacred over 6000 Jews in Morocco in 1033. Muslim rioters massacred the entire Jewish community of 4000 people in Granada, Spain in 1066.
  14. Walid I (704-705) gathered the nobles of Armenia in the church of St. Gregory in Naxcawan and burned them to death. The rest were crucified or decapitated. Their women & children were enslaved.
  15. The Sultan Baibars, had all the Christians of Damascus decapitated.
  16. Timur the Lame (Tamerlane) constantly referred to the Koran and tried to turn every battle to a holy war. In 1403 he destroyed 700 large villages and minor towns in Georgia, massacring the inhabitants, and destroying all the Christian churches of Tifflis. He killed out of Koranic piety. Tamerlane ordered the execution of 100,000 Hindu prisoners at Delhi in cold blood, on the pretext that they presented a grave risk to his army. Tamerlane buried 4000 alive at Sivas, 70,000 at Isfahan, 100,000 at Saray, and 90,000 at Baghdad.
  17. At the conquest of Istakr, Muslims slaughtered more than 40,000 Iranians.
  18. From 1894-1896 Muslims massacred over 250,000 Armenians in Sasun, Trapezunt, Edessa, Wan Biredjik, Kharput & Niksar. Many villages were burned down & hundreds of churches were plundered.
  19. A Muslim historian reports their destruction of 30,000 Greek churches in Egypt & Syria(Tritton,p54)
- Conclusion:** All these massacres resulted from a divinely sanctioned Koran policy toward non-Muslims. These were perpetrated to keep the conquered territories under Islamic control.

### **35. Modern Muslim Atrocities**

1. Sudan had Sharia law imposed in 1983 with the Muslim north waging a pitiless war against Christians and Animists in the South. Since 1983 Muslims have killed about 2 million people, displacing many others & selling many into slavery. This was financed by Iran (Economist, 9 April 1994).
2. Indonesian Muslim youth and army massacred about 600,000 Chinese peasants in 1965.  
“They cut off women’s breast .... In the morning young muslims would come in swaggering with necklaces of human ears.” (Guardian Weekly, 23 Sep. 1990).
3. East Timor was invaded by Indonesia in 1975, resulting in over 200,000 civilians being killed.
4. Irani, Pakistani, Saudi Arabian Christians are often arrested, imprisoned, flogged and tortured for “crimes” of blasphemy, owning Bibles, crosses & pictures of Jesus (Amnesty International 62, July 1993)
5. Slavery is accepted by the Koran and recognises the superiority of master over slave (Q 16:77; 30:28). According to the French magazine L Vie (no. 2562, 6 Oct 1994) 45,000 black Africans are kidnapped and sold into slavery a year in the Gulf States and Middle East. Slaves have no legal rights under Islam.

### **Conclusions:**

1. Mohammed consciously fabricated revelations to conveniently sort out his domestic problems. Battles were fought, executions ordered, territories annexed, the affair with Maria the Coptic sanctioned, and passions for his adopted son’s wife were sanctioned by convenient revelations from his deity Allah. Mohammed’s revelations fitted in with his desires and pandered to his selfish pleasures.
2. Abraham, Isaac and Ishmael never went to Mecca, nor did they build the Kabbah because:
  - a) The Bible is silent about it.
  - b) No pre-Muslim sources mention it.
  - c) Early Muslims prayed toward Jerusalem, not Mecca, as seen by the alignment of early Mosques & Christian sources. This shows that Muslims fabricated Abraham, Isaac, Ishmael’s visit to Mecca.
  - d) Mecca was only chosen as the Muslim sanctuary later in order to completely break from Judaism after the Jews rejected Mohammed’s claim of being a prophet like Moses for the Jews.
3. Islam assimilated many foreign influences of people they conquered, such as rabbinic Judaism, Christianity (Nestorian and Jacobite), Hellenism, Persian ideas, Byzantine art and architecture.
4. There was a tendency for the information to grow the further away one went from the events described. For example, if one storyteller mentioned a raid, the next one would tell the exact date of the raid, and the third would tell us even more details.  
An example is, Waqidi (died 823) who wrote 30-50 years after Ibn Ishaq (died 768), will always give precise dates, locations, names and details where Ibn Ishaq has none. No wonder that Muslim scholars love Waqidi. Where else do they find such wonderfully precise information about everything they want to know? Waqidi’s information is extremely doubtful, because all this was unknown to Ibn Ishaq.
4. Muhammed would never have succeeded had he preached humility and submission. He converted people by force of the sword.
5. Female circumcision in Islam results from the Muslim males’ fears of female sexuality.
6. Muslim association of sex with pollution is absurd and obsessive.
7. Concubinage is permitted by the Koran (Q 4:3; 23:6; 33:50-52; 70:30).
8. Military defeat at the hands of Christian Europe brought into doubt the truth of the Muslim revelation itself. (Kedourie, p.322 The World of Islam, 1976). Every failure and ill in the Muslim world is still blamed on the West, Israel, or some Zionist Conspiracy.
9. Regarding Mohammed’s concession to idolatry in the Satanic verses, Sura 53:19,20, we are told that Satan put words of reconciliation and compromise into Mohammed’s mouth:

“These (Alat, Uzza, Manat) are exalted Females, whose intercession is verily to be sought after.”  
The Meccans were delighted with Mohammed’s recognition of their deities, but Mohammed claimed that Gabriel visited and reprimanded him for making such a concession to idolatry.

Question: Even if Satan really put these words into Mohammed’s mouth, what faith can we put in a man so easily led astray by Satan? Why did Allah let it happen?

Question: How do we know there are no other passages where Mohammed has not been led astray?  
Here Mohammed abandoned the unity of God to please the Meccans.

### **36. QUESTIONS TO ASK MUSLIMS**

- Q1: What archaeological proof is there that Abraham rebuilt the Kabah in Mecca? (2:127) (p.994).
- Q2: Can you prove that the Quran is of heavenly origin? How, in light of its many earthly sources?
- Q3: How do you justify the Koran's commands to commit violence (fight and slay the pagans. 9:5).
- Q4:** How do you explain the presence of stories in the Quran from Christianity, Judaism, Arabia? 1014.
- Q5: Why does Quran never explain its rites or define words like Allah, jinn, gospel, Kabah? (996).
- Q6: The fertile crescent worshipped the pagan moon god. Doesn't this show pagan influence in Islam?
- Q7: Why do you worship a god Allah when you should worship the God of Abram, JHVH? (Ps. 96:5).
- Q8. Doesn't the different nature of Jehovah from Allah, show that Muslims worship a wrong god? 997
- Q9. How do you explain Mohammed's fits when giving a revelation? No Bible prophet did this? 998.
- Q10. Doesn't Mohammed asking forgiveness of sins prove He is a sinner? (40:55; 48:1,2).
- Q11. How can you believe prophets are sinless when the Bible and Quran say they sinned (Adam (2:36), Moses (28:16), Jonah (37:142), David (38:15), Mohammed (47:19))?
- Q12.** How do you explain Mohammed's 3 disqualifications of prophethood? (changing verses (16:101), no fulfilled prophecies (7:203), friendship with demons (Q 72:1-15; 46:29-31..19:31; 20:27). (p.1000)
- Q13. Why don't you obey the Quran by obeying the Bible? (10:93,94 Ask those who read scriptures before).
- Q14.** Why did M command prayer to the Kabah which had 360 idols in it, not destroyed till 6 years later?
- Q15. How do you explain the Satanic Verses being abrogated (cancelled) from the Quran? (p.1000).
- Q16. At what age was Aesha when Mohammed married her and consummated the marriage? Isn't this the sin of paedophilia?
- Q17. Why did Allah permit Mohammed to take Zaynab, his son's wife, when Jehovah never permitted this of other prophets, such as David?
- Q18. Do you believe a temporary marriage (Mutah) is right?
- Q19. Do you believe slavery is right? Slave girls (70:22-31; 23:1-7).
- Q20. Where did Jews say Ezra was the Son of God? (9:30).
- Q21.** Do you believe it is right for Muslims to fight and kill Jews and Christians? (9:29,30).
- Q22.** Do you think that Mohammed made up his own god who gave him a license to sin? (p.1003).
- Q23. How can you believe a speech by evil, lying demons in the Koran? (72:1-15; 46:29-31).
- Q24. Do you believe it is right to kill those who leave Islam? (4:89). (p.12,13,1006).
- Q25.** Doesn't the 45 Old Testament prophecies about Jesus show him to be greater than Mohammed?
- Q26. Doesn't Jesus' virgin birth and no sin nature, show Him to be greater than Mohammed's normal birth? (p.1007).
- Q27. Doesn't Jesus' sinlessness make Him greater than Mohammed? (40:55; 48:1,2).
- Q28. Doesn't Jesus' many miracles (3:49) make Him greater than Mohammed? (17:91-95).
- Q29. Do you look forward to going to hell as the Quran says all will go there? (19:71).
- Q30.** If prophets say Jesus is God, why don't you believe them? (p.1008). (The Mighty God, Isaiah 9:6).
- Q31.** Doesn't Jesus give a higher moral example for us to follow than Mohammed? Jesus never killed, lied, took men's wives. (Every murderer gives excuses why he killed someone).
- Q32. Don't you think that Jesus' beauty of speech is greater than Mohammed speeches of hell torture, hatred and killing non Muslims?
- Q33. How could Quran come from the true God, when it is an entirely different literary style to Bible?
- Q34. Why did Uthman have to standardize a common text of the Quran if a perfect text already existed? How did Uthman know which readings were correct? (in 650AD).
- Q35.** What manuscript evidence exists to support Quran's claim that Jesus was not crucified? Who knows best that Jesus died & rose, hundreds of eyewitnesses in 33AD or Mohammed 600 yr later? Who knows best that Jesus died, prophets David, Isaiah, Daniel, Zechariah, or Mohammed 1600 yr later?
- Mistakes in Quran**
- Q36.** How did the Quran misunderstand the Trinity was Allah, Jesus and Mary? (5:116; 5:73).
- Q37.** Will you reject the Quran because it mistakenly says that Pharaoh of Moses time (1500 BC), the Tower of Babel (2250 BC) and Haman (510BC) all existed at the same time? (28:38; p.1013)
- Q38. Quran mistakenly says that there were 9 signs (17:100) but the Bible says 10 signs (p.1013, Ex 7-12)

**Q39.** How can the sun set in a pool of black mud? (18:85,86) (p.1012).

Q40. Did all of Noah's sons survive (21:76) or did one son drown (11:42,43)? p.1013.

Q41. Noah was aged 600 when the flood came, not 950 years (Q29:14; Genesis 7:11). (p.1023).

Q42. How can the Quran be from God when it copied 26 stories from Arabian, Jewish, Christian and Pagan sources? (p.1014-1016).

### **Hadith**

Q43. Do you believe people are tortured in hellfire because they soil themselves with their urine? (1017)

Q44. How can Allah be just if he predestines some men to hell? (7:179). Jehovah doesn't (2 Peter 3:9).

Q45. Do you believe Mohammed cut the moon in half? How did he put it back together? (p1018) Use?

Q46. How can you hold Mohammed as your role model when he burnt peoples eyes out? (p.1019)

Q47. Isn't Jihad morally wrong and against Moses' and Jesus' law for Muslims to force conversion to Islam or die? (p.1021).

**Q48.** Why do Muslims commit such horrible acts of violence? Are they all naturally violent, or are they doing what Islam dictates? (61:10-12, 4:74).

**Q49.** Why be loyal to Islam when Muslims murdered your ancestors and would do the same to you today? (p.1022).

**Q50.** Who is this Allah who has been inspiring Muslims to hate Christ and to murder Christians?

Could Allah be the devil disguising himself as God? (p.1022).

Q51. If Allah is so powerful, why not let Allah punish his Christian enemies? (p.1022).

Q52. How can throwing 7 pebbles at a pillar at Mecca hurt Satan? (p.1022).

Q53. How can you believe in a religion that permits husbands to beat (edribu) their wives? (4:34).

Q54. How can you remain a Muslim when the Quran says Allah predestines many men to hell? (7:178).

Q55. How can you remain a Muslim when Allah commands Muslims to strike off the heads of unbelievers and massacre them? (47:15). (p.1024).

**Q56.** Have you compared the differences and attributes of Allah and Jehovah? (p.1025,1026).

(Allah is not holy, not a Trinity, distant, author of evil, different nature, hates Jews, Christians, Jesus Christ and unbelievers).

**Q57.** Who is right about Jesus being the Son of God, Mohammed denying it or 12 prophets teaching it?

Q58. Is all the Quran spoken by Allah? What about 6:101 "How should He have a son when He had no consort" written in the third person by some man?

Q59. If the nature of man is a mystery, how much greater a mystery is the nature of God? (p.1027).

Q60. Why does the Quran have Gabriel saying Jesus is not the Son of God, which contradicts Gabriel's message in Luke 1:35 that Jesus is the Son of God? (p.1028). Do Gabriel and God change their minds?

**Q61.** How can Mohammed be a man of peace when he started so many wars and inspired others to start wars? (p.1029). (Massacre of 800 Bani Qurayza Jews, Khyber, Mecca, Hunain, Tabuk).

Q62. Could Mohammed's revelations and visions have come from Satan? Could Mohammed have been demon possessed as evidenced by the symptoms of Mark 9:17,18?

Q63. Is it right to kill those who speak against you as Mohammed did in the case of al-Nadar, Ocba, Asma, Abu Afak, Huqayq, Usayr, and Kinara? (p.1030).

**Q64.** Do you agree with Mohammed's massacre of 800 innocent Jewish men and taking their wives and children into slavery from the Bani Qurayza tribe? (p.1030).

**Q65.** Do you approve of over 130 battles that Mohammed inspired his successive Caliphs to start from 632-742AD against innocent civilians? (p.1031).

**Q66.** Do you approve of Muslim invaders massacring the entire populations of Elam (634), Behessa, Fayum, Aboit, Nikiu, Euchaita, Cyprus, Carthage, Anatolia? (p.1033).

Q67. Do you approve of the Koran's command to enslave people? (16:77; 30:28).

Q68. Do you approve of Mohammed and Islam converting people by the sword?

**Q69.** Do you approve of and practice female circumcision? Why?

Q70. If Satan put the Satanic verses into Mohammed's mouth, could there have been other places in the Koran where this happened?

Q71. Do you approve of the Quran commanding fighting to spread Islam? (61 references, p.973)

Q72. Do you approve of terror to spread Islam as Quran commands in 3:151; 8:12; 8:59; 34:51; 59:2? p.973

**Q73.** Do you approve of the Quran's 20 occasions of mistreating women? (slave girls (4:3); enemies (64:14), beating wives (4:34), your fields (2:223), inherit twice (4:11), replace a wife (4:20). (p.976-977).

**Q74.** Why does the Quran permit a divorced couple to remarry after being divorced from the 2nd spouse, when the Bible forbids this? (Jeremiah 3:1).

**Q75.** Don't you suspect that the many threats of hell in the Quran were Mohammad's way of scaring people into submission? (p.978). This shows Allah is a different god to Jehovah the God of the Bible who loves all and wants all to be saved. (32:13 "I will surely fill hell with Jinn and humans all").

**Q76.** Why does the Quran vilify Jews and Christians as the "vilest of all creatures" or "worst of created beings" (98:4-6) when the Bible says God loves Jews and Christians? (John 13:34; Romans 11:28).

**Q77.** Do you notice the difference between the Bible saying God loves all mankind and wants all to be saved (John 3:16; 2 Peter 3:9) with the Quran saying Allah does not love unbelievers and delights in massacring them (8:12) and torturing them in hell? (70 references. p.978).

**Q78.** Do you obey Jesus' command in the Quran to "Follow me"? (43:63). Why could Mohammed not do miracles? (2:118).

**Q79.** How do you reconcile the contradiction where the Quran says Jesus did not die (4:157), with the Bible prophets saying Jesus did die, eg: David (Psalm 22:16), Isaiah (53:8,9,12), Daniel (9:26), Zechariah (13:6), ('day I die, and the day I shall be raised alive' Q19:33; 3:55), and all 7 NT writers?

**Q80.** Why does Quran command Muslims to fight against those to whom the Scriptures were given (9:29)? Don't you think the devil would want Muslims to kill those who believe in the prophets' message? Wouldn't this make the devil the author of the Quran? (John 16:2,3; Luke 9:51-56).

**Q81.** Do you ask the people of the Book if you don't know some spiritual truth? (10:95; 6:43).

**Q82.** How does the Quran confirm existing Scriptures when it denies Jesus' death, resurrection, sonship? (2:41; 5:48; 12:111). (p.983).

**Q83.** Why did the Quran confuse Saul with Gideon? (2:249).

**Q84.** Why did the Quran contradict the Bible on whether giving money atones for some sins. Acts 8:20; (To give alms will atone for some of your sins, 2:271. Take alms from them, so they may be cleansed, 9:103)

**Q85.** Why does the Quran contradict the Bible on works for salvation. (Good deeds annul ill deeds 11:114; 53:32), ("not of works, lest any man should boast" Ephesians 2:8,9,10).

**Q86.** Holy Spirit is the Comforter, not Mohammed because He shall :

- a) Be with you forever. (John 14:16). b) The disciples knew Him "ye know him." (John 14:17).
- c) Be in you. (John 14:17). d) The world could not receive Him because they could not see Him. v.17
- e) Be called the Holy Ghost. (John 14:26).

f) Be called the Spirit of Truth. (John 16:13); Mohammed abrogated some verses.

g) Glorify Jesus. (John 16:14); Mohammed did not glorify Jesus as the Son of God. (p.985,6).

**Q87.** Quran is wrong in thinking it rained before Noah's flood. Pre Flood people never saw rain till the Flood came. (Genesis 2:5,6; Hebrews 11:7). (p.986).

**Q88.** How can the sky have a crack in it? Doesn't this show Mohammed's ignorance of the gaseous atmosphere? (50:6; 67:3).

**Q89.** How does the sun move in an orbit? (21:33). It only appeared to orbit earth to Mohammed.

**Q90.** Quran is man made because the best that men could think heaven to be was sex. (p.988). 18 refs.

**Q91.** If Allah can change his mind about a verse in the Quran, this proves he is not the all knowing God of the Bible. (2:106).

**Q92.** Doesn't Q 2:256 "no compulsion in religion" contradict Q8:39 "make war on them till idolatory shall cease..." (p.990).

**Q93.** Do you believe in all the Scriptures that God has revealed (42:15), such as the Bible?

**Q94.** How can every soul taste death (21:35) when I Corinthians 15:51-53 says "we shall not all sleep" due to the rapture (catching away) of living believers who will not experience death at Christ's return?

**Q95.** Doesn't Allah being a Plotter and Schemer (3:54; 8:30; 13:42) equate him with the devil who deceives the whole world (Revelation 12:9)?

**Q96.** Doesn't Allah not loving the sinful (4:107), evil doers (3:57), transgressors (5:88) and unbelievers (30:45) prove that Allah is a different god to Jehovah of the Bible Who loves all mankind? (John 3:16).

**Q97.** How can Mohammed be a true prophet when he broke 9 of the 10 commandments ?

Mohammed broke the following of the 10 commandments:

10 Commandments - Exodus 20:1-17

1. No other gods than Jehovah	1. Allah is a different god to Jehovah. 'all the gods of the nations are idols, but Jehovah made the heavens.' (Psalm 96.5).
2. No graven images	2. Mohammed prayed to the Kabah with 360 idols before he removed them (21:142; 53:19).
3. Don't take the name of Jehovah thy God in vain	3.
4. Keep Sabbath day holy	4. Mohammed taught people to worship on Friday not Saturday
5. Honour thy Father and Mother	5. Mohammed massacred many Fathers and enslaved many Mothers, such as the Bani Qurayza tribe.
6. Thou shalt not kill	6. Mohammed killed many people and commanded others to kill people (8:12 strike off their heads) (9:29 fight/kill those to whom the Scriptures were given).
7. Thou shalt not commit adultery	7. Mohammed committed adultery by having sex with Maria the Coptic whom he was not married to (66:1-5).
8. Thou shalt not steal	8. Mohammed stole from caravans, from those he massacred (Bani Qurayza) and by the jizya tax on people he conquered.
9. Thou shalt not bear false witness	9. Mohammed lied by saying "war is deception" and "Allah has given you absolutions from your oaths". "Allah has allowed you to break your oaths." (66:2).
10. Thou shalt not covet thy neighbour's house, wife, manservant, maidservant, ox, ass nor anything that is his.	10. Mohammed coveted and took his neighbours houses in lands he conquered, his neighbour's wife, his son's wife Zainab (33:36-38), as well as slaves and 20% of the booty had to go to Mohammed.

**56 – THE BOOK OF JIHĀD (Fighting for Allāh's Cause)** ، البَهَادُ وَالسَّيْرُ

(94) CHAPTER. Fighting against the Jews.

**2925.** Narrated 'Abdullāh bin 'Umar رضي الله عنهما said: Allah's Messenger ﷺ said, "You (Muslims) will fight against the Jews till some of them will hide behind stones. The stones will (betray them) saying, 'O 'Abdullāh (i.e., slave of Allāh)! There is a Jew hiding behind me; so kill him!'"

لَئِنْ إِسْحَاقَ بْنَ حَدَّثَنَا مَالِكُ عَنْ أَبِي عَمْرَ رَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنْهُ لَقَالَ شَيْءٌ يَخْبِئُ أَخْلَمُ مَنْ يَعْذِلُ اللَّهُ هَذَا

/>. [انظر: ٣٥٩٣]

**2926.** Narrated Abū Hurairah رضي الله عنه عن Allāh's Messenger ﷺ said, "The Hour will not be established until you fight against the Jews, and the stone behind which a Jew will be hiding will say, 'O Muslim! There is a Jew hiding behind me, so kill him!'"

لَئِنْ إِسْحَاقَ بْنَ جَرِيرٍ، عَنْ عَمَّارَةَ بْنِ رَزْعَةَ، عَنْ أَبِي هُنَّةَ عَنْ رَسُولِ اللَّهِ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ هَذَا يَهُودِي

**3896.** Narrated Hishām's father : Khadija died three years before the Prophet ﷺ departed to Al-Madīna. He stayed there for two years or so and then he wrote the marriage (wedding) contract with 'Āishah when she was a girl of six years of age, and he consumed that marriage when she was nine years old.

1038

صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ هَذَا يَهُودِي



Jesus Christ, the Good Samaritan, came to bind up the sinner's wounds. (Luke 10:25-37). Jesus Christ tells believers to help new Christians grow. "Take care of him; and whatsoever thou spendest more, when I come again, I will repay thee." (v.35). This book helps you do this.

#### **THE WAY TO GOD and HEAVEN**

1. We have sinned by breaking God's laws, the 10 commandments. We have been selfish, putting ourselves first, taking God's good gifts of creation without thanking Him as Provider. We have broken the chief commandment of not loving God with all our heart, soul, mind and strength. We have not loved others as we love ourselves. This is sin. We are all big sinners compared to God.
2. God's Law demands that we receive the penalty for our sin in hell forever. This is bad news. God loves us and is offering everybody the free gift of eternal life which we get through Jesus Christ.
3. Jesus Christ, who is God the Son, came to earth, lived a sinless life, and at the age of 33 died on the cross to take the full punishment due for everybody's past, present and future sins. Having received the full penalty for our sins, He died, was buried and rose from the dead three days later. He is now available to be our Saviour from sin if we want Him to be.
4. If you believe that Jesus Christ is:
  - a) God the Son.
  - b) Died for your sins in your place; and
  - c) Rose again bodily from the dead, then

Receive or ask Jesus Christ to be your Saviour from sin,  
then God will forgive all your sins and give you eternal life immediately.

**Question:** Will you receive Jesus Christ as your Saviour? If Yes, then tell this to God right now:

"Almighty God. I know that I have sinned against you. I believe that Jesus Christ died on the cross to pay the penalty for my sins to be my Saviour. I now receive you, Lord Jesus Christ, as my Saviour and my God. I now call on you, Lord Jesus, to save me from my sins, take me to heaven when I die, and give me the gift of eternal life right now. I now open the door of my heart and life for You, Lord Jesus, to come in to be my Saviour, my Friend and my God forever. In Jesus Christ's name, I pray. Amen."